


UNIVERSITY OF ARIZONA



39001023544193



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2025

GH
76.8
M3
C48
1987
V.2

MacintoshTM Revealed

Volume Two: **Programming**
with the Toolbox

Second Edition

Stephen Chernicoff

HAYDEN BOOKS

A Division of Howard W. Sams & Company

4300 West 62nd Street

Indianapolis, Indiana 46268 USA

For

Ann,

who likes the one with the mouse.

©1985 by Hayden Book Company

©1987 by Stephen Chernicoff

SECOND EDITION

FIRST PRINTING—1987

All rights reserved. No part of this book shall be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without written permission from the publisher. No patent liability is assumed with respect to the use of the information contained herein. While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this book, the author and publisher assume no responsibility for errors or omissions. Neither is any liability assumed for damages resulting from the use of the information contained herein.

International Standard Book Number: 0-672-48401-3

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 87-60909

Acquisitions Editor: *Michael McGrath*

Cover Art: *Celeste Design*

Index: *Ted Laux*

Composition: *Shepard Poorman Communications Corp., Indianapolis*

Printed in the United States of America

Trademark Acknowledgments

All terms mentioned in this book that are known to be trademarks or service marks are listed below. In addition, terms suspected of being trademarks or service marks have been appropriately capitalized. Hayden Books cannot attest to the accuracy of this information. Use of a term in this book should not be regarded as affecting the validity of any trademark or service mark.

AppleTalk, LaserWriter, and Lisa are registered trademarks of Apple Computer Inc.

ImageWriter, ImageWrite II, Macintosh, MacPaint, MacWrite, and MacWorks are trademarks of Apple Computer Inc.

Turbo Pascal is a registered trademark of Borland International.

LightSpeed Pascal is a trademark of THINK Technology.

Preface

If you're reading this book, you probably don't need to be told that Apple Computer's Macintosh is an extraordinary personal computer. It does things you may never have seen a computer do before, in ways you'd never even imagined. If you've wondered what goes on behind the scenes to make the magic happen, this book is for you. By the time you've finished it, the inner workings of the Macintosh will stand revealed before your eyes, and you'll be able to use its built-in User Interface Toolbox to perform the same magic in your own programs.

One thing must be said, however, right at the outset: the Toolbox is for experienced programmers, not beginners. To get the most out of this book, you should have some previous experience (the more the better) in at least one high-level programming language. The programming examples given here are written in Pascal, but the general principles they embody are applicable in other languages as well. If Pascal isn't your native programming tongue, you should at least be able to pick up enough of it to follow the logic of the programming examples and apply them in your own preferred language. The book will offer a few hints to help you over the rough spots, but in general it's assumed that you're already acquainted with the syntax and semantics of standard Pascal. (For hard-core bit bangers, there's also information on how to use the Toolbox in assembly language.)

The only other assumption is that you want to know how the Macintosh user interface works from the inside. Whether you're a professional software developer, a college student, a midnight hacker, or just the kind of person who likes to take watches apart and see what makes them tick, read on and behold the Macintosh revealed.

STEPHEN CHERNICOFF
Berkeley, California

Acknowledgments

No book is ever the product of one person working alone—especially a book of the size and complexity of this one. These are some of the people who have helped me bring the book to completion, and to whom I owe a special debt of gratitude and appreciation:

First and forever, to my wife, **Helen**, whose love and understanding through the ordeal of living with an author have brought new meaning to the word “patience”; and to my parents, **Murray and Annette Chernicoff**, for their unwavering encouragement and support.

To **Chris Espinosa** and **Mike Murray**, who, as my managers at Apple, graciously afforded me the freedom to pursue this project as an independent agent.

To **Mike McGrath**, **Ronnie Groff**, **Mary Picklum**, and **Nancy Ragle** of Hayden Book Company, professionals all in the noblest sense of the word, whose contributions were manifold and invaluable.

To **Don Herrington**, **Jennifer Ackley**, and **Wendy Ford** of Howard W. Sams & Co., for their aid in preparing the second edition.

To **David Cásseres** of Apple Computer, for his indispensable assistance with the programming examples and his wise and thoughtful counsel throughout.

To **Scott Knaster** of Apple Computer, for his thorough technical review of the manuscript and his inexhaustible patience with my questions, intelligent and otherwise.

To **Steven Smith** of CommuniTree Group, who executed the illustrations with imagination and panache.

And finally, to the men and women of Apple Computer's Macintosh Division, as talented and creative a group of people as I have ever been privileged to work with; and to **Steven Jobs**, erstwhile chairman of the board of Apple Computer and general manager of the Macintosh Division, who provided the vision and inspiration for these remarkable people to bring Macintosh to reality.

Contents

Chapter 1	All the Tools You Need	1
	How This Book Is Organized	2
	How to Use This Book	4
	What's in the Reference Sections	5
	Some Terms and Conventions	8
Chapter 2	Keeping Up with Events	11
	The Event Queue	13
	The System Clock	14
	Living with Desk Accessories	15
	Event Types	17
	Keyboard Events	18
	Event Records	18
	Event Masks	19
	Event Reporting	20
	Intercepted Events	21
	Responding to Events	23
	Posting and Removing Events	27
	Reading the Mouse and Keyboard	29
	Cursor Display	31
	Nuts and Bolts	35
	Reference	37
	2.1 Internal Representation of Events	37
	2.1.1 Event Records	37
	2.1.2 Event Types	39
	2.1.3 Event Masks	41
	2.1.4 Event Messages	42
	2.1.5 Event Modifiers	44
	2.2 Event Reporting	45
	2.2.1 Retrieving Events	45
	2.3 Posting and Removing Events	47

2.3.1	Emptying the Event Queue	47
2.3.2	Posting Events	48
2.4	The Mouse	50
2.4.1	Reading the Mouse Position	50
2.4.2	Reading the Mouse Button	51
2.5	The Cursor	52
2.5.1	Cursor Records	52
2.5.2	Setting the Cursor	54
2.5.3	Showing and Hiding the Cursor	56
2.5.4	Obscuring and Shielding the Cursor	57
2.6	The Keyboard	58
2.6.1	Reading the Keyboard	58
2.7	The System Clock	60
2.7.1	Reading the System Clock	60
2.7.2	Performing Periodic Tasks	61
2.8	The Speaker	62
2.8.1	Beeping the Speaker	62
2.9	Event-Related Resources	63
2.9.1	Resource Type 'CURS'	63
2.9.2	Resource Type 'FKEY'	64

Chapter 3

Windows on the World**67**

Window Fundamentals	67
Anatomy of a Window	69
Window Records	79
Creating and Destroying Windows	83
Window Types and Definition Functions	90
Window Events	92
Activate and Deactivate Events	92
Update Events	95
Responding to the Mouse	100
Nuts and Bolts	109
Reference	112
3.1 Internal Representation of Windows	112
3.1.1 Window Records	112
3.2 Creating and Destroying Windows	116
3.2.1 Initializing the Toolbox for Windows	116
3.2.2 Creating Windows	117
3.2.3 Destroying Windows	120
3.2.4 Setting Window Properties	121
3.3 Window Display	122
3.3.1 Showing and Hiding Windows	122
3.3.2 Moving and Sizing Windows	124

3.3.3	Front-to-Back Ordering	126
3.3.4	Window Highlighting	127
3.4	Updating Windows	128
3.4.1	Update Processing	128
3.4.2	Manipulating the Update Region	129
3.4.3	Window Pictures	130
3.5	Responding to the Mouse	132
3.5.1	Locating Mouse Clicks	132
3.5.2	Window Selection	133
3.5.3	Click in a System Window	134
3.5.4	Tracking the Mouse	135
3.6	Nuts and Bolts	137
3.6.1	Nuts and Bolts	137
3.7	Window-Related Resources	139
3.7.1	Resource Type 'WIND'	139

Chapter 4	What's on the Menu?	141
-----------	----------------------------	------------

Anatomy of a Menu	141
Menu Records	144
Building Menus	146
Listing Resources on a Menu	151
Menus as Resources	153
Choosing from a Menu	155
Controlling Menu Items	165
Text of an Item	165
Character Style	166
Enabling and Disabling Items	166
Marking Items	167
Item Icons	169
Reference	170
4.1 Internal Representation of Menus	170
4.1.1 Menu Records	170
4.2 Creating and Destroying Menus	173
4.2.1 Initializing the Toolbox for Menus	173
4.2.2 Creating Menus	174
4.2.3 Destroying Menus	175
4.3 Building Menus	176
4.3.1 Adding Menu Items	176
4.3.2 Modifier Characters	177
4.3.3 Adding Resource Names to a Menu	178
4.3.4 Deleting Menu Items	180
4.3.5 Counting Menu Items	181
4.4 Building the Menu Bar	182

4.4.1	Adding and Removing Menus	182
4.4.2	Reading Menu Bars as Resources	183
4.4.3	Drawing the Menu Bar	184
4.4.4	Changing Menu Bars	185
4.4.5	Getting Menus from the Menu Bar	186
4.5	Responding to the Mouse and Keyboard	187
4.5.1	Choosing Menu Items	187
4.5.2	Opening and Closing Desk Accessories	189
4.5.3	Editing in Desk Accessories	190
4.5.4	Highlighting Menu Titles	191
4.6	Controlling Menu Items	192
4.6.1	Text of an Item	192
4.6.2	Enabling and Disabling Items	193
4.6.3	Character Style of Menu Items	195
4.6.4	Marking Items	196
4.6.5	Item Icons	198
4.7	Nuts and Bolts	200
4.7.1	Menu Dimensions	200
4.7.2	Flashing Menu Items	201
4.8	Menu-Related Resources	202
4.8.1	Resource Type 'MENU'	202
4.8.2	Resource Type 'MBAR'	203

Chapter 5	Scissors and Paste	205
-----------	---------------------------	------------

Edit Records	205
Destination and View Rectangles	206
Line Starts	209
Preparation for Editing	211
Text Display	216
Text Selection	219
Tracking the Mouse	220
Selection Display	223
Keyboard Input	224
Cutting and Pasting	226
Access to the Scrap	229
Nuts and Bolts	236
Search and Replace	236
Automatic Scrolling	236
Word-Break Routines	237
Customized Text Selection	238
Reference	239
5.1 The Editing Environment	240
5.1.1 Edit Records	240

5.1.2	Text Representation	244
5.2	Preparation for Text Editing	244
5.2.1	Initializing the Toolbox for Text Editing	244
5.2.2	Creating and Destroying Edit Records	245
5.2.3	Text to Be Edited	246
5.3	Text Display	247
5.3.1	Wrapping and Justification	247
5.3.2	Displaying Text on the Screen	249
5.3.3	Scrolling	250
5.4	Text Selection	251
5.4.1	Selection with the Mouse	251
5.4.2	Selection Control	253
5.4.3	Selection Display	254
5.5	Editing Operations	256
5.5.1	Keyboard Input	256
5.5.2	Cutting and Pasting	257
5.5.3	Scrapless Editing	258
5.5.4	Scrap Access	259
5.5.5	Scrap Transfer	260
5.5.6	Search and Replace	261
5.6	Nuts and Bolts	263
5.6.1	Click-Loop Routine	263
5.6.2	Word-Break Routine	265

Chapter 6	At the Controls	267
-----------	------------------------	------------

Standard Control Types	267
Part Codes	269
Creating and Destroying Controls	271
Control Display	273
Setting and Range of a Control	276
Responding to the Mouse	277
Pushbuttons	279
Checkboxes and Radio Buttons	281
Scrolling	283
Dragging the Scroll Box	286
Continuous Scrolling	288
Automatic Scrolling	291
Resizing a Window	293
Reference	301
6.1 Internal Representation of Controls	301
6.1.1 Control Records	301
6.2 Creating and Destroying Controls	304
6.2.1 Creating Controls	304
6.2.2 Destroying Controls	306

6.2.3	Setting Control Properties	307
6.2.4	Control Setting and Range	309
6.3	Control Display	310
6.3.1	Showing and Hiding Controls	310
6.3.2	Moving and Sizing Controls	312
6.3.3	Control Highlighting	313
6.4	Responding to the Mouse	315
6.4.1	Locating Mouse Clicks	315
6.4.2	Tracking the Mouse	317
6.4.3	Dragging a Control	319
6.5	Control-Related Resources	321
6.5.1	Resource Type 'CNTL'	321

Chapter 7	Meaningful Dialogs	323
-----------	---------------------------	------------

Creating and Destroying Dialogs	325
Dialog Pointers	326
Item Lists	328
Item Types	329
Static Text	329
Icon and Picture Items	330
Control Items	331
Text Boxes	333
User Items	333
Error Sounds and Staged Alerts	334
Using Alerts	335
Using Modal Dialogs	341
Using Modeless Dialogs	343
Filter Functions	344
Nuts and Bolts	347
Reference	349
7.1 Internal Representation of Dialogs	349
7.1.1 Dialog Records	349
7.1.2 Item Types	351
7.1.3 Alert Templates	353
7.1.4 Dialog Templates	355
7.2 Creating and Destroying Dialogs	356
7.2.1 Initializing the Toolbox for Dialogs	356
7.2.2 Creating Dialogs	357
7.2.3 Destroying Dialogs	359
7.3 Manipulating Items	360
7.3.1 Access to Items	360
7.3.2 Text of an Item	362
7.3.3 Showing and Hiding Items	363

7.3.4	Locating Mouse Clicks	364
7.4	Using Alerts and Dialogs	365
7.4.1	Static Display	365
7.4.2	Using Alerts	367
7.4.3	Using Modal Dialogs	369
7.4.4	Using Modeless Dialogs	371
7.4.5	Filter Functions	373
7.4.6	Text Substitution	374
7.4.7	Editing in Text Boxes	375
7.5	Nuts and Bolts	376
7.5.1	Text Font and Error Sounds	376
7.5.2	Alert Stages	378
7.5.3	Preloading Dialog Resources	379
7.6	Dialog-Related Resources	380
7.6.1	Resource Type 'ALRT'	380
7.6.2	Resource Type 'DLOG'	381
7.6.3	Resource Type 'DITL'	383

Chapter 8	Files at Your Fingertips	385
-----------	---------------------------------	------------

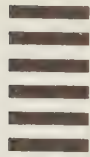
Disk Format	385
The File System	387
Error Reporting	389
Volumes	392
Directories	395
Files	398
Working with Files	400
The Standard File Package	407
File to Read From	408
File to Write To	415
Nuts and Bolts	420
Reference	421
8.1 Volume Operations	421
8.1.1 Volume Information	421
8.1.2 Current Volume	422
8.1.3 Flushing, Ejecting, and Unmounting	424
8.2 File Operations	426
8.2.1 Creating Files	426
8.2.2 Opening and Closing Files	427
8.2.3 Reading and Writing	429
8.2.4 File Mark	430
8.2.5 End-of-File	432
8.2.6 Locking and Unlocking Files	433
8.2.7 Deleting and Renaming Files	435

8.2.8	Error Reporting	437
8.3	The Standard File Package	438
8.3.1	Reply Records	438
8.3.2	File to Read From	440
8.3.3	File to Write To	443
8.4	Disk Initialization	446
8.4.1	Initializing a Disk	446
8.4.2	Initialization Stages	449
8.4.3	Preloading the Disk Initialization Code	450

Appendix A	Volume Two Toolbox Summary	453
Appendix B	Resource Formats	497
Appendix C	Memory Layouts	515
Appendix D	Key Codes and Character Codes	521
Appendix E	Error Codes	529
Appendix F	Summary of Trap Macros and Trap Words	535
Appendix G	Summary of Assembly-Language Variables	561
Appendix H	MiniEdit Source Listing	565

Glossary	617
Index	655

CHAPTER



1



All the Tools You Need

What sets the Macintosh apart from other personal computers is its revolutionary *user interface*. In plain English, an *interface* is a junction or boundary where two things meet. In computerese, it refers to the set of rules and conventions by which one part of an organized system (like the Macintosh) communicates with another. Wherever two components of the system come together, they exchange information by way of an interface.

The Macintosh system consists partly of hardware (physical components such as chips, circuits, and other electronic and mechanical devices) and partly of software (programs). The most important component of all is the human being “out there,” peering at the screen and fiddling with the mouse and keyboard. This flesh-and-blood component of the system is known, in technical parlance, as the *user*. So the user interface is the set of conventions that allow the human user to communicate with the rest of the system.

In the past, user interfaces were typically based on a screen full of text characters (usually displayed in garish green) and a keyboard for typing them. To tell the computer what to do, you had to memorize a complex command language, so you could press exactly the right keys in exactly the right order. If your actions didn’t conform to what the computer expected of you, it would tell you so in terms ranging from curt to unintelligible. On the whole, it was sometimes hard to tell that the human was the boss and the computer the servant, instead of the other way around.

Macintosh changes all that. In place of the time-honored character screen and keyboard, it uses a high-resolution, “bit-mapped” display and a hand-held pointing device, called a *mouse*. The result is a whole new way of communicating between people and computers. The bit-mapped screen can present information in vivid visual form, using pictorial “icons,” elaborate graphical effects, and varied patterns and textures. Text can be depicted exactly as it will appear on the printed page—in black characters on a white background, with a variety of typefaces, sizes, and styles. The mouse provides a direct, natural way of giving commands, by pointing and manipulating images directly on the screen instead of typing arcane command sequences from the keyboard.

The programmers at Apple have put a great deal of thought and effort into how best to take advantage of these features to produce a user interface that feels natural and comfortable. The result of their efforts is the User Interface Toolbox, a body of tightly engineered, lovingly hand-crafted machine-language code that’s built into every Macintosh in *read-only memory (ROM)*. With it, you can write programs that use overlapping windows, pulldown menus, scroll bars, dialog boxes, and all the other wonders you see on the Macintosh screen. This book will teach you how.

Strictly speaking, the contents of the Macintosh ROM are divided into three parts: the Macintosh Operating System, which handles low-level tasks such as memory management, disk input/output, and serial communications; the QuickDraw graphics routines, which are responsible for everything displayed on the screen; and the User Interface *Toolbox*, which implements the higher-level constructs of the user interface, such as windows and menus. As a rule, we’ll be using the term *Toolbox* to refer loosely to the entire body of built-in code that’s available to a running program; only occasionally will we use it in the narrower sense of the user-interface code alone, as distinct from the Operating System and QuickDraw.

How This Book Is Organized

The book is divided into two volumes. Volume One, *Unlocking the Toolbox*, presents the underlying foundations on which the Toolbox is built: basic conventions and utilities, memory management, QuickDraw graphics, resources (one of the cornerstones of the Macintosh

software design), program startup, and text display. Once you've mastered these fundamentals, you're ready for Volume Two, *Programming with the Toolbox*, which you now have in your hands. Here you'll learn about the various parts of the Macintosh user interface and how they work:

- Chapter 2, "Keeping Up with Events," introduces the concept of *events*, the basic mechanism for monitoring the user's actions with the mouse and keyboard, and shows how to structure a program around them.
- Chapter 3, "Windows on the World," tells how to maintain and manipulate overlapping windows on the screen.
- Chapter 4, "What's on the Menu?" deals with pulldown menus and how to use them to accept commands from the user.
- Chapter 5, "Scissors and Paste," describes the facilities built into the Toolbox for simple cut-and-paste text editing.
- Chapter 6, "At the Controls," discusses controls that the user can manipulate directly with the mouse, such as on-screen "pushbuttons" and scroll bars.
- Chapter 7, "Meaningful Dialogs," covers alert and dialog boxes, used to display status messages and to request information or instructions from the user.
- Chapter 8, "Files at Your Fingertips," is about disk files and how to work with them.

Because the Toolbox includes such a broad range of facilities and features, it's impossible to cover them all in this book. We've tried to include those features that most programmers will need for most applications, but unavoidably, some topics had to be left out because of time and space limitations. Some of these missing topics, such as printing, sound, and desk accessories, will be covered in our forthcoming Volume Three, and the most recent additions to the Macintosh family, the Macintosh SE and Macintosh II, in Volume Four. The ultimate, comprehensive source of information on the Toolbox is Apple's own *Inside Macintosh* manual.

A central feature of this second volume is a fully worked example program, a simple interactive text editor named MiniEdit. As each part of the Toolbox is discussed, its use is illustrated in detail by examining the relevant routines of the example program: those dealing with events in Chapter 2, windows in Chapter 3, and so on. A

complete listing of the program is given for reference and study in Appendix H.

The example program serves two purposes. First, it illustrates concretely how to use the various parts of the Toolbox. Second, once you understand how it works, you can use it as a “shell” within which to develop your own application programs. The MiniEdit program already includes all the Toolbox calls needed to implement the standard features of the user interface—for instance, to display pulldown menus when the user presses the mouse in the menu bar, or move windows around on the screen when the user drags them by their title bars—so it can save you from having to “reinvent the wheel” every time you write a program of your own. By returning the mail-order form at the end of this volume, you can order a software disk containing the source code of the MiniEdit program. Then instead of writing your own programs from scratch, you can just modify the existing program for whatever application you choose.

Beware, however: although the program has been tested and found to work, it is offered with no guarantees. A well-known programmer's axiom states that testing can reveal the presence of bugs, but not their absence. Please report any bugs and suggested corrections to the author, in care of Howard W. Sams & Co.

How to Use This Book

With the exception of Chapter 1, each chapter in this book consists of two complementary parts: the basic text of the chapter and the subsequent reference sections. They are designed to be used in parallel. The text chapters are intended to be read more or less sequentially, from beginning to end. Their purpose is to give you an overall conceptual understanding of the Toolbox and how to use it, without attempting to cover all the minute details. Cross-references enclosed in square brackets, such as [2.1.1], will lead you to the relevant reference sections, where you'll find detailed descriptions of individual Toolbox procedures, functions, constants, variables, and data types. When you encounter one of these for the first time, follow the cross-reference to the reference section for the details. Together, the

text and reference sections will teach you step by step what you need to know to use the Toolbox in your own programs.

After you've learned the basic concepts, you'll find the reference sections useful on their own for refreshing your memory or looking up specific facts and details. The reference sections are organized for quick reference rather than sequential reading. Although their structure generally parallels that of the text chapters, they don't always treat topics in exactly the same order or build logically on what's gone before. Thus you may find some of the material in the reference sections hard to follow at first, because it refers to topics you haven't yet learned. Try not to let this bother you—just skip the parts that don't make sense and come back to them later when you're better prepared to understand them. You'll also find some subjects covered in the reference sections that aren't discussed at all in the text chapters; once you've acquired a working knowledge of the Toolbox, you can come back and pick up these extra topics by browsing the reference sections on your own.

What's in the Reference Sections

Each reference section is headed by a set of Pascal declarations defining the Toolbox entities—procedures, functions, constants, variables, and data types—discussed in that section. The declarations give the names of the entities being defined, along with additional information you need in order to use them, such as the number, order, and types of a procedure's parameters, the type of value a function returns, or the names and types of a record's fields. Following the declarations are a series of notes explaining the meaning and use of the Toolbox entities being discussed. Finally, most reference sections end with a box containing further information of interest to assembly-language programmers only.

```

type
  EventRecord = record
    what      : INTEGER;           {Event type}
    message   : LONGINT;          {Type-dependent information}
    when      : LONGINT;          {Time of event on system clock}
    where     : Point;            {Mouse position in global coordinates}
    modifiers : INTEGER           {State of modifier keys and mouse button}
  end;

```

Program 1-1 A type declaration

For the benefit of readers unfamiliar with Pascal, let's look at a few examples of the reference declarations and how to read them. Program 1-1 shows a typical Pascal type declaration of the kind you'll find in the reference sections. (This one, in fact, is taken from section [2.1.1].) The declaration says that `EventRecord` is the name of a record type with five components, or *fields*. The first field is named `what` and holds a value of type `INTEGER`; the second, `message`, and the third, `when`, both hold values of type `LONGINT`; the fourth is named `where` and is of type `Point`; and the fifth, `modifiers`, is of type `INTEGER`. To the right of each field definition is a comment (enclosed in the Pascal comment brackets `{and}`) describing the meaning of that field: for instance, field `when` represents the time on the system clock when the event occurred. (We'll be learning about events and the system clock in Chapter 2.) If `theEvent` is the name of a record in your program of type `EventRecord`, the expression

```
theEvent.when
```

denotes a value of type `LONGINT` giving the time of the event on the system clock.

```
procedure SetWTitle
    (theWindow : WindowPtr;           {Pointer to the window}
     newTitle  : Str255);             {New title}
```

Program 1-2 A procedure declaration

Program 1-2 shows an example of a procedure declaration, taken from reference section [3.2.4]. This declaration defines the procedure `SetWTitle`, used to set the title of a window. The procedure accepts two parameters named `theWindow` and `newTitle`, of types `WindowPtr` and `Str255`, respectively. As the explanatory comments state, the first parameter is a pointer to the window whose title is to be changed and the second is the new title, a string of up to 255 characters. (The Toolbox utility data type `Str255` was introduced in Volume One, Chapter 2.) If your program has a window pointer named `thisWindow`, the statement

```
SetWTitle (thisWindow, 'Our Founder')
```

will give the title 'Our Founder' to the window it points to.


```
function GetCtlValue
    (theControl : ControlHandle)      {Handle to the control}
    : INTEGER;                       {Current setting}
```

Program 1-3 A function declaration

Program 1-3 shows the declaration for the Toolbox function `GetCtlValue`, taken from reference section [6.2.4]. This function reports the current setting of a control, such as the position of the scroll box within the “shaft” of a scroll bar. Like the procedure declaration we just looked at, a function declaration defines the names and types of the parameters the function expects you to supply. In addition, it also specifies the type of value the function returns as a result, following the colon (:) on the last line of the declaration. In this case the function accepts one parameter named `theControl`, of type `ControlHandle`, and returns a result of type `INTEGER`. You might call this function with a statement such as

```
scrollPos := GetCtlValue (theScrollBar)
```

where `scrollPos` is a variable of type `INTEGER` declared in your program, and `theScrollBar` is of type `ControlHandle`.

If you compare the procedure and function declarations shown in our reference sections with those given in Apple's *Inside Macintosh* manual, you'll find that the names of the parameters are often different. Since you don't actually use the parameter names when you call a routine in your program, the names given in the declaration have no effect on the way the routine is used—so we've taken the liberty of changing many of the names to suggest more clearly the meaning or purpose of the parameters.

Names that you *do* use directly in your own program, such as those of constants and variables or of the fields in a record, are of course listed the same way in our reference sections as in the Apple documentation. Even here, however, you may notice slight variations in capitalization style; these make no difference, since Apple's Pascal compiler doesn't distinguish between corresponding upper- and lower-case letters.

Some Terms and Conventions

Before we get started, let's explain some of the terms and conventions we'll be using. The microprocessor used in the Macintosh (the Motorola MC68000, usually just called the "68000" for short) works with data items of three different sizes: *bytes* of 8 bits each, *words* of 16 bits (2 bytes), and *long words* of 32 bits (2 words, or 4 bytes). All memory addresses are long words, 32 bits in length, of which only the last 24 bits are actually significant. Each address designates a single 8-bit byte in memory. As a rule, word-length and long-word data items in memory must begin at an even-numbered byte address, known as a *word boundary*.

Throughout the book, we use an alternate computer-voice typeface as a kind of implicit quotation mark to distinguish actual program code from ordinary body text. This convention is also used occasionally for characters typed on the Macintosh keyboard or displayed on the screen.

In keeping with the convention used in many programming languages (including Apple's versions of Pascal and assembly language for the Macintosh), we use a dollar sign (\$) to denote hexadecimal (base-16) constants. For instance, the constant \$43 represents the same numerical value as decimal 67 (4 sixteens plus 3). As usual, the letters A to F stand for hexadecimal digits with numerical values from 10 to 15—so the hexadecimal constant \$BD stands for 11 sixteens plus 13, or decimal 189.

We've already mentioned that section numbers enclosed in square brackets, such as [2.1.1], denote cross-references to the designated reference section. References to Volume One are prefixed with a roman numeral I and a colon: for instance, [I:2.1.1] refers to Volume One, section 2.1.1.

Throughout the text chapters, you'll see shaded boxes like this one. These "by-the-way" boxes enclose side comments, helpful hints, exceptional cases, and other material subordinate to the main discussion.

Several chapters end with a section titled "Nuts and Bolts." This section is for miscellaneous topics that don't fit anywhere else in the chapter—the little unclassified odds and ends rattling around in the bottom of the Toolbox. In general these are minor points of only

limited interest, or things that are useful only in unusual or highly specialized circumstances.

In this new Macintosh Plus edition, you'll often see Toolbox routines or features identified in the reference sections as "available only on the Macintosh Plus." This designation is understood to apply also to the Macintosh 512K Enhanced, Macintosh SE, Macintosh II, or any other Macintosh that includes the newer 128K ROM.

That about does it for the preliminaries—it's time to get down to the business at hand. If you're ready to see the Macintosh revealed, read on and let's get started!

CHAPTER

2

Keeping Up with Events

One of the cornerstones of the Macintosh philosophy is that people should tell computers what to do and not the other way around. Too often in the past, using a computer has been an exercise in keeping the machine happy. It was the computer that gave the orders:

Please type a file name

or

Answer Y or N

or

Press any key to continue

If you didn't type just the right magical incantation, the computer would beep angrily and spew some cryptic error message out across your screen.

Macintosh is dedicated to the principle that the user, not the computer, should be in control. Instead of giving the user instructions about what should happen next, a Macintosh program accepts instructions *from* the user about the next step. The user controls the program's behavior by clicking the mouse or typing on the keyboard; each such action constitutes an *event* for the program to respond to.

The program spends most of its time just idling, waiting for an event to occur. Then it responds in whatever way the event calls for and waits for the next one.

A program that works this way is said to be *event-driven*. By way of illustration, we'll be developing an example event-driven program over the remaining chapters of this book, a simple interactive text editor named MiniEdit. Program 2-1 shows the program's high-level structure. This is just a skeleton outline, of course; as we learn more about the Toolbox in the chapters to come, we'll gradually add flesh to the bare bones. You'll find a complete listing of the MiniEdit program in Appendix H.

```
program MiniEdit;

  { Skeleton program to illustrate event-driven structure.  }

var
  Finished : BOOLEAN;                                {Flag to signal end of main event loop}
  . . . ;

procedure Initialize;

  { Do one-time-only initialization [Prog. 2-6].  }

  begin {Initialize}
    Finished := FALSE;                                {Initialize quit flag}
    . . .
  end; {Initialize}

procedure DoEvent; forward;

procedure MainLoop;

  { Execute one pass of main program loop [Prog. 2-2].  }

  begin {MainLoop}
    . . . ;
    DoEvent                                           {Get and process one event}
  end; {MainLoop}
```

Program 2-1 Skeleton of an event-driven program

```

procedure DoEvent;

( Get and process one event [Prog. 2-3]. )

begin (DoEvent)
    . . .
end; (DoEvent)

begin (MiniEdit)

    Initialize;                                (Do one-time-only initialization)

    repeat
        MainLoop                                (Execute one pass of main loop)
    until Finished

end. (MiniEdit)

```

Program 2-1 (continued)

The program begins by calling a procedure named `Initialize` to handle the one-time preliminaries needed to get things started. Then it enters its *main event loop*, in which it repeatedly calls the procedure `MainLoop`. This continues until the global flag `Finished`, set to `FALSE` by the `Initialize` routine, becomes `TRUE`. After a few routine housekeeping chores (not shown in the example), `MainLoop` calls another procedure named `DoEvent` to see if there's an event waiting to be processed and, if so, respond to it as appropriate. Sooner or later an event will occur (such as the user's choosing the Quit menu command) that will set the `Finished` flag to `TRUE`, thereby terminating the program. We'll define the `Initialize`, `MainLoop`, and `DoEvent` procedures later in this chapter. But first, let's talk about events in general and how the Toolbox handles them.

The Event Queue

At the lowest level, events are detected and recorded by an *interrupt* mechanism. When the user presses the mouse button or a key on the keyboard, an electrical impulse is sent to the Macintosh's processor, causing it to temporarily suspend whatever it's doing and immediately execute a special *interrupt handler* routine. The interrupt handler doesn't actually respond to the event right away. Instead, it just records the circumstances of the event for later processing: when it occurred, where on the screen the mouse was pressed, which key was typed on the keyboard, and so forth. Then it returns control to

the running program, which resumes execution right from the point of suspension as though nothing had happened. Later, when the program is ready to process the event, it can retrieve the recorded information through the Toolbox and take whatever action is called for in response.

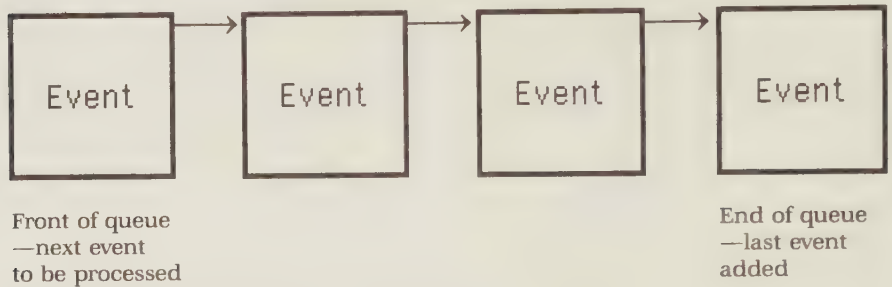


Figure 2-1 The event queue

The list in which events are recorded for later processing is called the *event queue* (see Figure 2-1). Each item in the queue is an *event record* representing one single event. When an event occurs, the interrupt handler stores all the pertinent information about the event into a new event record and adds it to the end of the queue. (This is called *posting* the event.) When the running program calls for the next event to be processed, it receives the first event record from the *front* of the queue. Events move through the queue in “FIFO” order—first in, first out—so that they’re eventually processed in the same order they occurred. The event queue is a device for collecting events that can happen at unpredictable times and feeding them to your program to be processed in an orderly way.

The System Clock

While the Macintosh is running, its video circuitry continually reads out the contents of the screen buffer in memory and paints them onto the screen. Sixty times a second, when it reaches the bottom of the screen, it has to pause and wait for the display tube’s electron beam to return to the top and start over again. Each time this happens, the video circuitry sends a special interrupt signal to the processor.

This regularly recurring *vertical retrace interrupt* (sometimes

called the “vertical blanking” or “VBL” interrupt) is the heartbeat of the Macintosh system. Since nothing has to be read out of the screen buffer while the electron beam is in transit from the bottom of the screen back to the top, a little extra processor time is available for other purposes. This makes the vertical retrace a convenient time to take care of routine “housekeeping” chores that have to be performed periodically, such as checking for mouse movement and updating the position of the cursor on the screen.

The time interval between “heartbeats,” one sixtieth of a second, is called a *tick*, and is the basic unit of time on the *system clock*. The clock is restarted from zero every time the system is started up, and then increases by one at each vertical retrace interrupt. Thus it always registers the elapsed time in ticks since the system was last started. Whenever a new event is posted (added to the event queue), it’s “time-stamped” with the current time on the system clock. Your program can read the system clock at any time with the `TickCount` function [2.7.1]; in assembly language, you can read it directly as a long-word global variable named `Ticks`.

Don’t confuse the system clock with the real-time clock chip discussed in Volume One, Chapter 2. The system clock operates only while the Macintosh is turned on, and gets restarted from zero whenever the system is started up. The real-time clock is battery-powered and continues to record the current date and time even when the rest of the system is switched off.

Living with Desk Accessories

Something you have to bear in mind when writing application programs for the Macintosh is that your program may not have the system all to itself. Don’t forget that the Macintosh software environment includes “desk accessories” like the Alarm Clock, Calculator, and Scrapbook, which can coexist on the screen with any other application. The desk accessories aren’t automatically available, however: if you want your user to have access to them, you have to take the proper steps in your program to make them available. Later on, in Chapter 4, we’ll see how to set up an “Apple menu” listing the various desk accessories, and how to start up an accessory when the user chooses it from the menu. If you offer such a menu, there are

certain other things you have to do as well to support the desk accessories.

Some of the desk accessories have tasks that they must perform periodically in order to work properly. For instance, when the Alarm Clock is active it has to update the time displayed on the screen once a second. It's up to you to make sure the desk accessories get the processor time they need to carry out such periodic tasks. You do this by calling the Toolbox procedure `SystemTask` [2.7.2]. This gives each active accessory a chance to check the system clock, see how much time has elapsed since it last executed its periodic task, and perform the task again if necessary.

To keep the desk accessories functioning smoothly, you should ideally call `SystemTask` at least once per tick, or 60 times a second. (There's no harm in calling it more often than this—it just won't do anything if the system clock hasn't changed since the last call.) The easiest way is to call it on each pass of your main event loop, as shown in our `MiniEdit` program's `MainLoop` routine (Program 2-2). This is also a convenient time to take care of other “housekeeping” chores that need to be performed regularly. For instance, `MiniEdit` uses this opportunity to call one of its routines named `FixCursor`, which adjusts the appearance of the mouse cursor according to the part of the screen the user has moved it into. (We'll look at the definition of `FixCursor` in the section on cursor display later in this chapter.) After seeing to all such periodic chores (including calling `SystemTask`), `MainLoop` calls the program's `DoEvent` procedure to get and process the next available event.

```

procedure MainLoop;

{ Execute one pass of main program loop. }

begin (MainLoop)

    FixCursor;                               {Adjust cursor for region of screen [Prog. 2-8]}
    SystemTask;                             {Do system idle processing [2.7.2]}

    {Perform any other periodic tasks};

    DoEvent                                {Get and process one event [Prog. 2-3, 2-5]}

end; (MainLoop)

```

Program 2-2 Main event loop

To make sure the desk accessories get the processor time they need, you should also call `SystemTask` from time to time during particularly time-consuming operations, when control won't be returning to your main loop for a while.

Event Types

There are sixteen possible *event types*, identified by integer codes from 0 to 15 [2.1.2]. The important ones fall into the following general categories:

- *Mouse events*: The user pressed the mouse button (a *mouse-down* event) or released it (a *mouse-up* event).
- *Keyboard events*: The user pressed a key on the keyboard (a *key-down* event), held it down until it began to repeat automatically (an *auto-key* event), or released it (a *key-up* event).
- *Disk-inserted events*: The user inserted a disk into a disk drive.
- *Window events*: The user deactivated a window (a *deactivate* event), activated it (an *activate* event), or exposed a new part of it to view on the screen (an *update* event). We'll discuss these when we talk about windows in Chapter 3.
- *Null events*: You asked the Toolbox for an event and there weren't any to report.

These are all the event types you should normally have to deal with; *I/O driver* and *network* events are used internally by the Macintosh system, and needn't concern you directly. There are also four *application event* types that you can use in any way you like. These allow you to send a "signal to yourself" that will be received and processed on a later pass through the event loop; they're useful for synchronizing your program's internal communications and control to the overall flow of events.

The last of the four application event types, type 15, is used by Andy Hertzfeld's semi-official Switcher program to notify a running program when it is about to lose or regain control of the system. See Volume Three for more information on such "Switcher events" and how to respond to them.

Keyboard Events

Keyboard events, in particular, require some further discussion. As we learned in Volume One, Chapter 8, every keyboard event includes both a *key code* [I:8.1.3], identifying the physical key that was pressed or released, and a *character code* [I:8.1.1], identifying the character that key represents under whatever keyboard configuration is currently in effect. You can use either of these pieces of information, depending on your program's needs. Usually you want to know what character was typed—you don't particularly care which key the user pressed to produce it. So you'll normally want to look at the character code for a keyboard event, rather than the "raw" key code.

Recall from Volume One, Chapter 8, that the keys on the Macintosh keyboard are divided into *character keys* and *modifier keys*. Keyboard events deal only with character keys. The modifier keys (Shift, Caps Lock, Option, and Command) don't generate any events of their own: you'll never receive an event telling you that the user pressed the Shift key. However, the modifier keys affect the events that you *do* receive in two ways. First, as we'll see in the next section, every event includes information on which of the modifier keys, if any, were down at the time the event was posted. (This information is actually given for all events, not just keyboard events.) Second, the keyboard configuration takes the modifier keys into account in deciding what character to generate for a given key. An event's key code is never affected by the modifier keys, but the character code generally is: for instance, under any reasonable keyboard configuration, the same key that produces a lowercase letter d when pressed all by itself will produce a capital D if the Shift or Caps Lock key is held down at the same time.

When the user presses and holds down any character key, the Toolbox automatically generates auto-key events to make the key repeat continually until it's released. There's a certain *initial delay* from the time the key is pressed until the first auto-key event, then a different (usually shorter) *repeat interval* between the auto-key events themselves. The standard settings are 24 ticks (four tenths of a second) for the initial delay and 6 ticks (10 repeats per second) for the repeat interval; the user can adjust these settings if desired with the Control Panel desk accessory.

Event Records

Everything your program needs to know about an event is summarized in an *event record* [2.1.1]. The fields of the record tell what type

of event it was, when it occurred, where on the screen the mouse was at the time, and so forth. By analyzing the information in the event record, your program can determine what the event means and how to respond.

The most important information about an event is its event type, contained in the *what* field of the event record. The message field contains an *event message* giving further information about the event. Each type of event can use the event message in its own way [2.1.4]. For instance, window events store a pointer to the window in this field; for keyboard events, it contains both the key code and the character code for the key that was pressed or released.

The rest of the information in the event record is filled in the same way for all events, regardless of type. The *when* field gives the time on the system clock when the event was posted, the *where* field gives the screen coordinates of the mouse, and the *modifiers* field gives the state of the mouse button and modifier keys. Each modifier key, as well as the mouse button, corresponds to a bit in the *modifiers* field [2.1.5]: 1 if the key was down at the time the event was posted, 0 if it wasn't. You can examine these bits directly and interpret them in any way that's appropriate for your program.

Unfortunately, there's no easy way to distinguish between the two Shift keys or the two Option keys. The Shift or Option bit in the *modifiers* field is set to 1 if *either* of the corresponding keys is down.

The *when*, *where*, and *modifiers* fields are filled in even for null events. A null event tells you that, for instance, "at 52014 ticks on the system clock, with the mouse at screen coordinates (279, 136) and the Caps Lock key down, nothing happened."

Event Masks

Some of the Toolbox routines dealing with events expect you to supply an *event mask* as a parameter, stating which specific event types the operation should apply to. The event mask is a 16-bit integer, with one bit for each of the possible event types [2.1.3]. A 1

bit in a given position includes the corresponding type in the operation; a 0 excludes it.

The Toolbox defines a set of mask constants for referring to each individual bit within the mask [2.1.3]. You can combine these with BitAnd, BitOr, BitXOr, and BitNot [1:2.2.2] to construct any mask you need. For example, the expression

BitOr (MDownMask, MUpMask)

yields a mask referring to all mouse events, and

BitNot (AutoKeyMask)

refers to all except auto-key events. The mask constant EveryEvent denotes the mask \$FFFF, which refers to all events regardless of type.

Event Reporting

The usual way you find out about events is by calling GetNextEvent [2.2.1]. You supply a mask parameter specifying which types of event you're interested in. The Toolbox finds the next event of any of those types, removes it from the event queue, and returns it to you. All other types are ignored. If there are no pending events of the requested types, you'll get back a null event instead; null events can never be "masked out."

Not all events have the same priority. As we'll see in Chapter 3, window events are treated specially. They're never actually placed in the event queue, but are detected in other ways instead. When you ask for an event with GetNextEvent, the Toolbox checks for activate or deactivate events *before* looking in the event queue, and for update events only *after* looking in the queue and finding no events of the types you've requested. So activate and deactivate events have *higher* priority and update events *lower* priority than all others.

Auto-key events are also special. Instead of placing them in the queue whenever the appropriate time interval has elapsed, the Toolbox waits for you to explicitly request an event. Then, if there aren't any events in the queue of the requested types (and no activate or deactivate events), it checks to see whether the user is holding down a character key and whether the required interval has elapsed since the last event for that key. If all the appropriate conditions are met, the Toolbox generates an auto-key event and returns it in response to your request. Otherwise it goes on to check for update events.

Putting all this together, the priority ranking for all events is as follows:

1. Deactivate events
2. Activate events
3. All except window, auto-key, and null events, in the order posted
4. Auto-key events
5. Update events, in front-to-back order of the windows on the screen
6. Null events

Null events have the lowest priority, since they're generated only if there are no other events to report.

Intercepted Events

Not every event you receive is actually of interest to your program. If you're supporting the use of desk accessories, you have to keep in mind that your program may be sharing the screen with one or more *system windows* containing accessories. Some of the user's actions with the mouse and keyboard may be directed to a desk accessory and not to your program itself.

Each time the Toolbox reports an event, it checks to see whether the event is directed to an active desk accessory. If so, it "intercepts" the event and passes it along to the desk accessory to handle. Then it reports the event to your program, just like any other. But by the time you receive the event, it will already have been handled by the desk accessory—so you can just ignore it and move on to the next event. To let you know whether the event is your responsibility, `GetNextEvent` returns a Boolean result: `TRUE` if you have to respond to the event, `FALSE` if it's already been intercepted and processed.

For instance, window events (activate, deactivate, and update) are your responsibility only if they're directed to one of your windows; those that apply to a system window are intercepted and handled by the desk accessory displayed in that window. Similarly, whenever a system window is active—that is, frontmost on the screen—all keyboard events are intercepted and fed to the window's desk accessory for action. The Toolbox also intercepts all I/O driver and network events, which are strictly for its own private use; and of course there's nothing for you to do in response to a null event. So in all these cases, `GetNextEvent` will return a result of `FALSE` when reporting the event, telling you to ignore it.

Mouse-up events are also intercepted when a system window is

active, but mouse-down events are not. The Toolbox doesn't bother to check whether the mouse was pressed in a system window: it simply reports the event to you with a Boolean result of `TRUE`, telling you to handle the event yourself. As we'll see in Chapter 3, the first thing you do with a mouse-down event is find out which window it occurred in. If it was in a system window, it's then up to you to pass the event along to the appropriate desk accessory.

This exceptional treatment for mouse-down events may seem a bit arbitrary, but there's actually a good reason for it. Even if the Toolbox were to check every mouse-down event and intercept those that occur in system windows, you would still have to repeat the check yourself for every event that *wasn't* intercepted, to find out which of your windows the mouse was pressed in so you could respond appropriately. To avoid going through the same motions twice, the Toolbox simply leaves it to you to perform the check in the first place.

Before reporting a disk-inserted event, `GetNextEvent` automatically does some preliminary housekeeping to prepare the disk for use, such as reading its directory into memory. This operation is known as *mounting* the disk, and we'll have more to say about it in Chapter 8. `GetNextEvent` then copies the result code returned by the mounting operation into the disk event's message field and returns it to you with a function result of `TRUE`, in case you want to take any further action of your own. (For instance, if the disk was unreadable, you might want to offer the user the option of initializing it.) Usually there's nothing more to do and you can simply ignore the event, in spite of the `TRUE` result from `GetNextEvent`.

One other Toolbox routine worth mentioning is `EventAvail` [2.2.1], which works exactly the same as `GetNextEvent` except that it doesn't remove the reported event from the queue. This is sometimes useful when you want to "peek" at the event queue for a particular type of event, but still leave the event in the queue for later processing. Since it's assumed that the event will eventually be dealt with later, `EventAvail` makes no attempt to intercept and respond to system events. The only time it returns `FALSE` is for a null event, meaning that there are no events available of the types specified by the mask parameter. If there *is* an event available, `EventAvail` returns `TRUE` and passes back the event in the variable parameter `theEvent`, just the same way `GetNextEvent` does.

Responding to Events

The routine that forms the heart of our event-driven example program is `DoEvent`. As we've seen, this routine is called repeatedly from the program's main event loop. Each time it's called, its job is to retrieve a single event from the Toolbox and respond to that event.

Program 2-3 shows a preliminary version of the `DoEvent` routine. It begins by calling `GetNextEvent` with a mask parameter of `EveryEvent`, asking for the next available event of any type. If `GetNextEvent` returns a Boolean result of `FALSE`, then our program isn't responsible for handling this event, so `DoEvent` simply returns to the main loop without taking any action in response. If `GetNextEvent` returns `TRUE`, `DoEvent` next looks at the `what` field of the event record to find out the event type, and uses a `case` statement to call the appropriate `MiniEdit` routine to respond to that type of event. We'll be defining all of these other routines in due course in the chapters to come.

Notice that our `DoEvent` routine makes a few assumptions about how certain events are to be handled. For instance, since it makes no difference to our program whether the user is pressing a key for the first time or holding down a repeating key, we call the same procedure, named `DoKeystroke` (Program 4-4), to handle both key-down and auto-key events. If for some reason we wanted to distinguish between these two event types, we could, of course, handle them with separate `DoKeyDown` and `DoAutoKey` procedures. Mouse-up and key-up events are meaningless for our purposes, so our `DoEvent` routine simply ignores them; it also ignores disk-inserted events. Again, we could easily add the appropriate clauses to the `case` statement if we wanted to respond to these events in some way.

Under the straightforward arrangement shown in Program 2-1, event processing continues until an event occurs that causes the global flag `Finished` to be set to `TRUE`. At this point the program falls out of its main loop and terminates. We've already mentioned that the event that causes this to happen is the user's choosing the `Quit` command from one of the program's menus; presumably the response to this command consists of the single statement

```
Finished := TRUE
```

causing the program to terminate forthwith.


```

{ Global variables }

var
  TheEvent : EventRecord;           {Current event [2.1.1]}
  Quitting : BOOLEAN;              {Closing up shop?}
  Finished : BOOLEAN;              {All closed?}

procedure DoEvent;

  { Get and process one event. }

begin {DoEvent}

  if GetNextEvent (EveryEvent, TheEvent) then {Get next event [2.2.1]}

    case TheEvent.what of

      MouseDown:
        DoMouseDown;                {Handle mouse-down event [Prog. 3-7]}

      KeyDown, AutoKey:
        DoKeystroke;                {Handle keystroke [Prog. 4-4]}

      UpdateEvt:
        DoUpdate;                   {Handle update event [Prog. 3-6, 5-3]}

      ActivateEvt:
        DoActivate;                 {Handle activate/deactivate event [Prog. 3-5, 5-14]}

      otherwise
        {Do nothing}

    end {case}

end; {DoEvent}

```

Program 2-3 Get and process one event

The trouble with that approach is that the user can lose valuable work without warning. If there are windows on the screen whose contents have been edited and not yet saved to the disk, all the changes made in those windows will be lost if the program just shuts down immediately on receiving a Quit command. We would like to give the user an opportunity to save the contents of such “dirty” windows before quitting. We’ll see later that our program does in fact offer this option routinely, via a dialog box on the screen, before closing any window; so all we need to do after a Quit command is

close each window on the screen, one by one, just as if the user had chosen the Close menu command or clicked the mouse in the window's close box. Only when all windows have been properly disposed of in this way will we terminate the program.

However, as we'll learn in Chapter 3, the Toolbox itself uses the event mechanism—specifically the category known as window events (activate, deactivate, and update)—to coordinate the changes that take place on the screen as windows are manipulated. As we start closing down windows in response to a Quit command, we have to see to it that window events continue to be processed normally, so that what's happening will be reflected visually on the screen in the proper way.

The way we arrange this is by introducing a second global flag, named `Quitting`, in addition to the `Finished` flag already mentioned. Instead of setting `Finished` to `TRUE` when the user chooses the Quit command, we'll set `Quitting` to `TRUE` instead, as shown in our `DoQuit` routine, Program 2-4. (We'll see when we talk about menus in Chapter 4 how this routine gets called by way of `DoEvent` when the Quit command is chosen.)

```
{ Global variable }

var
    Quitting : BOOLEAN;                {Closing up shop?}

procedure DoQuit;

{ Handle Quit command. }

begin {DoQuit}

    Quitting := TRUE                    {Start closing up shop}

end; {DoQuit}
```

Program 2-4 Handle Quit command

Now we can modify our `DoEvent` routine to take the `Quitting` flag into account (see Program 2-5). When that flag is set, we will continue to process activate and update events, but will ignore mouse and keyboard events. On receiving a null event, meaning that nothing else is happening that needs a response, we'll call our program's `DoClose` routine (Program 3-3) to close the frontmost window on the screen, just as if the user had chosen the Close command from the

```

{ Global variables }

var
  TheEvent : EventRecord;           {Current event [2.1.1]}
  Quitting : BOOLEAN;              {Closing up shop?}
  Finished : BOOLEAN;              {All closed?}

procedure DoEvent;

  { Get and process one event. }

begin {DoEvent}

  if GetNextEvent (EveryEvent, TheEvent) then      {Get next event [2.2.1]}

    case TheEvent.what of

      MouseDown:
        if not Quitting then
          DoMouseDown;                             {Handle mouse-down event [Prog. 3-7]}

      KeyDown, AutoKey:
        if not Quitting then
          DoKeystroke;                             {Handle keystroke [Prog. 4-4]}

      UpdateEvt:
        DoUpdate;                                  {Handle update event [Prog. 3-6, 5-3]}

      ActivateEvt:
        DoActivate;                                {Handle activate/deactivate event [Prog. 3-5, 5-14]}

      otherwise
        {Do nothing}

    end {case}

  else if Quitting and (TheEvent.what = NullEvent) then {Closing up shop after a Quit command?}
  begin
    if FrontWindow <> NIL then                      {Any windows on the screen? [3.3.3]}
      DoClose;                                       {Close the frontmost [Prog. 3-3]}
    else
      Finished := TRUE                             {Signal end of program}
    end {if}
  end {if}

end; {DoEvent}

```

Program 2-5 Get and process one event

menu. If the window has been edited and not yet saved to the disk, DoClose will post a dialog box allowing the user to save the window's

contents before closing. When there *is* no frontmost window—that is, when the screen is empty—then we will finally set the Finished flag to TRUE, causing the program to terminate.

Posting and Removing Events

Ordinarily the system puts events into the event queue and you take them out one by one (via `GetNextEvent`) and respond to them. Occasionally, though, you may have some reason to place an event in the queue yourself. (For instance, if you're using any of the four application event types, you need some way of getting them into the queue.) In these cases, you can use the Toolbox routine `PostEvent` [2.3.2]. You supply the event type and the contents of the message field; the rest of the event record is filled in automatically when the event is posted.

You can also “turn off” the processing of certain event types by preventing them from ever getting posted in the first place. You do this by setting the *system event mask*, which controls exactly which types of event can be posted. A 0 bit in any position of the mask prevents events of that type from being placed in the queue. The mask is initially set to allow all but key-up events to be posted (since they're meaningless for most applications). If necessary, you can change this setting with `SetEventMask` [2.3.2]. For instance, you might want to turn off keyboard repeat by disabling auto-key events. In general, it's a good idea to disable any type of event you know your program has no use for, to conserve space in the event queue: the queue has a limited, fixed capacity and can't be expanded.

Since window events are treated in special ways and are never actually placed in the event queue, the system event mask has no effect on them. Never attempt to post a window event yourself; let the Toolbox handle them in its own way.

The Toolbox routine `FlushEvents` [2.3.1] is used to remove events from the queue without processing them. It takes two mask parameters: the first tells which event types to remove from the queue, the second tells which types should stop the search. For example, the call

```
FlushEvents (AutoKeyMask, KeyDownMask)
```

```

{ Global variables }

var
    Quitting : BOOLEAN;           {Closing up shop?}
    Finished : BOOLEAN;          {All closed?}

procedure Initialize;

{ Do one-time-only initialization. }

var
    theMask : INTEGER;           {New value for system event mask [2.1.3]}

begin {Initialize}

    InitGraf (@ThePort);         {Initialize QuickDraw [1:4.3.1]}
    InitFonts;                   {Initialize fonts [1:8.2.4]}
    InitWindows;                {Initialize windows [3.2.1]}
    InitMenus;                  {Initialize menus [4.2.1]}
    TEInit;                     {Initialize text editing [5.2.1]}
    InitDialogs (NIL);          {Initialize dialogs [7.2.1]}

    theMask := EveryEvent - KeyUpMask - MUpMask; {Disable key-up and mouse-up events [2.1.3]}
    SetEventMask (theMask);      {Set the mask [2.3.2]}
    FlushEvents (EveryEvent, 0); {Clear out event queue [2.3.1]}

    SetUpMenus;                 {Create program's menus [Prog. 4-2]}
    SetUpCursors;               {Get standard cursors [Prog. 2-8]}

    DoStartup;                  {Process Finder startup information [Prog. 8-7]}

    {Perform any other needed initialization};

    Quitting := FALSE;          {Initialize quitting flags}
    Finished := FALSE

end; {Initialize}

```

Program 2-6 One-time initialization

would remove all auto-key events from the beginning of the queue up to the first key-down event.

Another common use for FlushEvents is to clear out the event queue at the beginning of a program, in case there are any unprocessed events left over from a previous program:

```
FlushEvents (EveryEvent, 0)
```


The first parameter, `EveryEvent`, says to remove all events from the queue, regardless of type; the 0 for the second parameter says not to stop until the entire queue has been flushed. This only has to be done once, at the beginning of the program, so we can put it in our one-time-only `Initialize` routine (Program 2-6).

Since our example program attaches no special meaning to mouse-up events, we may as well set the system event mask to ignore them; the `Initialize` routine is the natural place to do this, too. The `Initialize` procedure shown here also performs a few other initialization calls that are needed at the beginning of every program. We've already learned about `InitGraf` and `InitFonts` in Volume One (Chapters 4 and 8, respectively); the others will be covered later in this volume (`InitWindows` in Chapter 3, `InitMenus` in Chapter 4, `TEInit` in Chapter 5, and `InitDialogs` in Chapter 7). `Initialize` also calls a couple of other program routines, to set up the menus and cursors `MiniEdit` will be using and to open any document files the user may have selected in starting up the program from the Finder. The `SetUpCursors` routine is defined later in this chapter, `SetUpMenus` in Chapter 4, and `DoStartup` in Chapter 8.

The sequence of Toolbox initialization calls shown in Program 2-6, from `InitGraf` through `FlushEvents`, forms a kind of magical incantation that you should faithfully intone at the beginning of every program. Even if you don't use a particular part of the Toolbox, you should still initialize them all in case they're needed by other parts of the Toolbox itself. For instance, even a program that never displays any text on the screen must still call `InitFonts`, so that the Toolbox can find its own fonts for window titles, menu items, alert messages, and so forth. Even the order of the calls is critical: `InitGraf` must precede `InitFonts` must precede `InitWindows`, and so on. Wouldn't it be easier if there were just one routine named `InitToolbox` that you could call and be done with it?

Reading the Mouse and Keyboard

Movements of the mouse are not reported to your program as events in themselves: you receive a mouse event only when the user presses or releases the button. If you want to follow the mouse's movements yourself, you can use the Toolbox routine `GetMouse` [2.4.1], which returns a point representing the current mouse position. Unlike the

where field of an event record, which gives the mouse position in global (screen) coordinates, `GetMouse` gives it in the *local* coordinate system of the current graphics port (usually the currently active window). There's also a Boolean function named `Button` [2.4.2] that allows you to read the state of the mouse button directly, rather than indirectly through mouse-down and mouse-up events.

A mouse-down event tells you where and when the user pressed the mouse button. If the button is still down by the time you begin processing the event, then the user is "dragging" the mouse (moving it while holding down the button), and you may want to respond in some special way. But to find this out, it isn't enough just to call `Button`: this function only gives the state of the button at the instant you call it, so it will return `TRUE` even if the user has released the button and pressed it again since the original mouse-down event. To find out whether the button is still down from the original event, use the Toolbox function `StillDown` [2.4.2] instead. `StillDown` returns `TRUE` only if the mouse button is down *and* there are no further mouse events pending in the event queue. This guarantees that the button hasn't been released and pressed again since the original press.

If `StillDown` reports that the user is dragging the mouse, you'll typically want to loop until the button is released, following the mouse's movements and performing some repeated action such as displaying visual feedback to the user on the screen. When the button is released, you'll take some final action and then return to the main loop for the next event. The way to control the loop is with `WaitMouseUp` [2.4.2]. This function works just the same as `StillDown`, except that if it finds a mouse-up event in the queue, it removes the event before returning `FALSE`. Your routine to respond to mouse-down events should contain something like the following to handle mouse dragging:

```

if StillDown then
  begin
    while WaitMouseUp do
      begin
        {Code to track mouse while button is down}
      end;
      {Code to "finalize" drag when button is released}
    end
  else
    begin
      {Code to handle mouse-down events other than drags}
    end
  end
end

```

Occasionally you may want to read the state of the keyboard directly, instead of waiting for it to be reported in the form of keyboard events. You can do this with the Toolbox routine `GetKeys` [2.6.1]. `GetKeys` returns a *key map*, a Boolean array containing one element for every key on the keyboard or keypad. A `TRUE` value for any element of the array means that the corresponding key was down at the time of the call.

Cursor Display

The positioning of the cursor on the screen to reflect the movements of the mouse is handled for you automatically. At every tick of the system clock, the Toolbox checks to see whether the mouse has been moved since the last tick, and repositions the cursor accordingly. Cursor positioning is entirely under system control: there's no way you can force the cursor to a specific location on the screen. However, you can control whether it's visible or invisible and what it looks like.

The cursor's appearance is defined by a *cursor record* [2.5.1]. The data field of the record gives the cursor's actual bit image, a 16-by-16-bit array (see Figure 2-2). The mask field defines which bits of

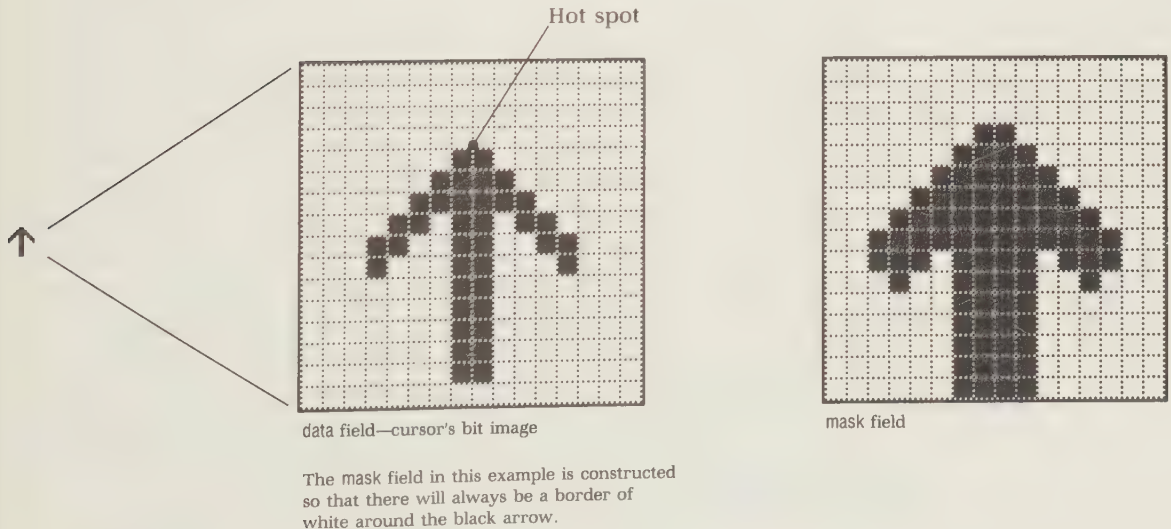


Figure 2-2 Cursor definition

the image actually “count” as part of the cursor. Where the mask has a 1 bit, the corresponding bit of the image, white (0) or black (1), will be copied directly to the screen as part of the cursor. Where the mask has a 0 bit, the image normally has a 0 also: this makes the cursor “transparent” at that position, so that the corresponding pixel already on the screen will be left unchanged.

In Figure 2-2, for instance, the mask extends 1 pixel beyond the edge of the cursor image in all directions. This gives the cursor a border of white pixels for better visibility against black or patterned backgrounds. Outside this border, the cursor is transparent, with 0 bits in both the image and the mask.

The last remaining combination, a 0 in the mask and a 1 in the image, has the exotic effect of *inverting* existing pixels on the screen, from black to white or white to black, as the cursor passes over them. Someday you may think of a good use for this.

The last field of the cursor record defines the cursor's *hot spot*, the point that aligns with the actual mouse position on the screen. It's expressed in the cursor's own coordinate system, with (0, 0) designating the top-left corner of the cursor. As usual on the Macintosh, the vertical coordinate is given first. For example, the cursor shown in Figure 2-2 has its hot spot at coordinates (4, 8). Notice that the hot spot is a point on the coordinate grid, not a pixel of the cursor itself.

Normally, you display a cursor on the screen by passing its cursor record to the Toolbox routine `SetCursor` [2.5.2]. (The one exceptional case is the standard cursor shown in Figure 2-3, the familiar arrow pointing upward at an angle of “eleven o'clock.” There's a special routine, `InitCursor` [2.5.2], for displaying the arrow cursor; you should always use this routine instead of `SetCursor`.) The recommended way of defining cursors for a program is to store them in a resource file under the resource type 'CURS' [2.9.1] and read them into memory with `GetCursor` [2.5.2]. You supply the resource ID and receive a handle to the cursor record in memory; you can then pass the record to `SetCursor` to display the cursor on the screen.

Besides the arrow cursor, a number of other commonly used cursors are available in the system resource file (or in ROM on a Macintosh Plus); their resource IDs are defined as Toolbox constants

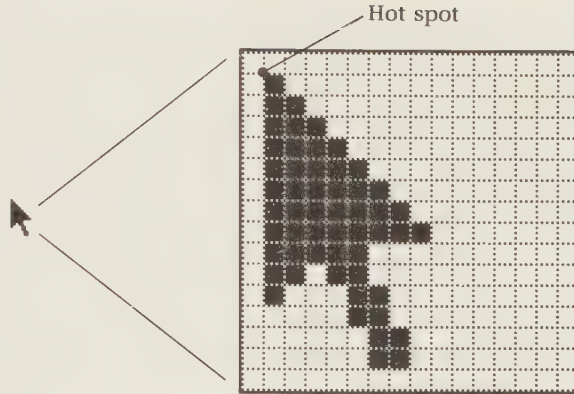


Figure 2-3 Standard cursor

[2.5.2]. Our MiniEdit program will use two of these, the I-beam for text selection and the wristwatch to signal a delay. Program 2-7 (SetUpCursors) is the routine that reads them from the resource file for use; it's called from the one-time Initialize routine that we looked at earlier (Program 2-6). SetUpCursors simply reads in the cursors that the program will use and stores their handles into global variables

```
{ Global variables }
```

```
var
    IBeam : CursHandle;           {Handle to I-beam cursor [2.5.1]}
    Watch : CursHandle;          {Handle to wristwatch cursor [2.5.1]}
```

```
procedure SetUpCursors;

    { Set up program's cursors. }
```

```
begin {SetUpCursors}

    IBeam := GetCursor (IBeamCursor);           {Get cursors from system resource file [2.5.2]}
    Watch := GetCursor (WatchCursor);

    InitCursor                                   {Set standard arrow cursor [2.5.2]}

end; {SetUpCursors}
```

Program 2-7 Set up cursors

of type `CursHandle` [2.5.1], where they'll be available when needed. Then it calls `InitCursor` to start off with the standard arrow cursor.

If you want the cursor to change its form in different areas of the screen, it's up to you to check the mouse location periodically and set the cursor as appropriate. The natural place to do this is in the main event loop. In our example program, the main loop calls procedure `FixCursor` (Program 2-8) to do the job. By Macintosh convention, we want the cursor to change to an I-beam whenever it's within the text area of an active application window. (In Program 2-8, the test for the cursor's location is shown in schematic form; we'll be able to spell it out in more detail when we talk about text editing in Chapter 5.) If the cursor isn't in the window's text area, or if the screen is empty, the `FixCursor` routine calls `InitCursor` to set the cursor to the

```
{ Global variable }

var
    IBeam : CursHandle;                                {Handle to I-beam cursor [2.5.1]}

procedure FixCursor;

    { Adjust cursor for region of screen. }

    var
        mousePoint : Point;                            {Current mouse position in window coordinates [I:4.1.1]}
        textRect   : Rect;                             {Active window's text rectangle [I:4.1.2]}

    begin {FixCursor}

        if {screen is empty} then
            InitCursor                                {Set arrow cursor [2.5.2]}

        else if {an application window is active} then
            begin

                GetMouse (mousePoint);                 {Get mouse position [2.4.1]}

                if {mousePoint in window's text area} then
                    SetCursor (IBeam^^)                {Set I-beam cursor [2.5.2]}
                else
                    InitCursor                          {Set arrow cursor [2.5.2]}

            end {if}

        else
            {Do nothing}                                {A system window is active: }
                                                    { let desk accessory set cursor}

    end; {FixCursor}
```

Program 2-8 Adjust cursor for region of screen

standard arrow shape. If a system window is active, our routine does nothing: we just leave it to the desk accessory contained in the window to set the cursor as appropriate. As we'll see later, our program will also be using the "wristwatch" cursor to notify the user whenever a time-consuming operation (such as disk I/O) is in progress. In this case there's no need to set the cursor back when the operation is finished; it'll be reset by `FixCursor` the next time through the main event loop.

To keep track of the cursor's visibility on the screen, the Toolbox maintains a number called the *cursor level*. A cursor level of 0 makes the cursor appear on the screen; any negative value makes it invisible. Calling `InitCursor` makes the cursor visible by setting the cursor level to 0; `HideCursor` [2.5.3] reduces the cursor level by 1, making the cursor invisible (if it wasn't already). `ShowCursor` [2.5.3] increases the cursor level by 1, undoing the effects of the last call to `HideCursor`; when the cursor level returns to 0, the cursor becomes visible again. Thus calls to `HideCursor` and `ShowCursor` can be paired and nested to any depth. (The cursor level can never go above 0; if it's already 0, `ShowCursor` has no effect.)

Two more Toolbox routines, `ObscureCursor` and `ShieldCursor` [2.5.4], also make the cursor temporarily invisible. `ObscureCursor` makes it disappear until the next time the mouse is moved; `ShieldCursor` removes it from the screen if any part of it lies within a specified *shield rectangle*. Notice that `ObscureCursor` doesn't affect the cursor level, so it should *not* be balanced by a call to `ShowCursor`.

Nuts and Bolts

The low-level keyboard driver has a special mechanism for performing certain useful services directly at the user's request, without any intervention by the running program. The user invokes these operations by typing a numeric character from 0 to 9 while holding down the Command and Shift keys. Standard operations defined in the Macintosh User Interface Guidelines include ejecting disks (Command-Shift-1 for the built-in disk drive, Command-Shift-2 for the "out-board" drive), printing the current contents of the screen (Command-Shift-4), and dumping the screen to a MacPaint file on the disk (Command-Shift-3). If you wish, you can add further operations of your own to be invoked by the same mechanism.

Each such operation is defined by a *keyboard routine* stored on the disk as a resource of type 'FKEY' [2.9.2]. When the user types a Command-Shift-number combination, the keyboard driver looks for

an 'FKEY' resource with the corresponding resource ID and executes it. (For example, typing Command-Shift-9 invokes 'FKEY' resource number 9. If there is no resource with that number, nothing happens.) The operation takes place "behind the back" of the running program: the Command-Shift keystroke is not reported as a keyboard event through the normal event mechanism, so the program never sees it.

In assembly language, you can turn off 'FKEY' processing by setting the global flag `ScrDmpEnb` [2.9.2] to `FALSE ($00)`. Command-Shift keystrokes will then be reported as ordinary keyboard events in the normal way.

All 'FKEY' resources should have resource IDs between 0 and 9. (There's nothing to stop you from numbering them outside this range—they'll just never be executed!) The resource data is simply the machine-language code of the keyboard routine. The routine is always entered at the very beginning, takes no parameters, and returns no results. Since it can be invoked at unpredictable times in the middle of a running program, it must leave the contents of all processor registers undisturbed; this in turn implies that it must be written in assembly language.

The standard system resource file contains 'FKEY' resources numbered 3 and 4, for dumping the current screen image to the disk and the printer, respectively. The disk-eject operations, Command-Shift-1 and Command-Shift-2, are handled automatically by the keyboard driver and have no explicit 'FKEY' resources. To stay within the User Interface Guidelines, you should never redefine any of these operations by numbering your own 'FKEY' resources between 1 and 4.

REFERENCE

2.1 Internal Representation of Events

2.1.1 Event Records



Definitions

```
type
  EventRecord = record
    what      : INTEGER; {Event type [2.1.2]}
    message   : LONGINT; {Type-dependent information [2.1.4]}
    when      : LONGINT; {Time of event on system clock [2.7.1]}
    where     : Point;   {Mouse position in global (screen) coordinates}
    modifiers : INTEGER   {State of modifier keys and mouse button [2.1.5]}
  end;
```



Notes

1. All fields are filled in for every event, regardless of type.
2. where and modifiers give the location of the mouse and the state of the modifier keys and mouse button [2.1.5] *at the time the event was posted*.
3. The mouse location is given in global (screen) coordinates.
4. The contents of message vary with the type of event; see [2.1.4].
5. In assembly language, the high- and low-order bytes of modifiers are separately accessible with the offset constants evtMeta and evtMBut (see Assembly Language Information).



Assembly Language Information

Field offsets in an event record:

(Pascal) Field name	(Assembly) Offset name	Offset in bytes
what	evtNum	0
message	evtMessage	2
when	evtTicks	6
where	evtMouse	10
modifiers	evtMeta	14
	evtMBut	15

Assembly-language constants:

Name	Value	Meaning
EvtBlkSize	16	Size of event record in bytes
EvtMax	30	Maximum number of events in queue

2.1.2 Event Types



Definitions

```
const
    NullEvent      = 0;      {Nothing happened}
    MouseDown      = 1;      {Mouse button pressed}
    MouseUp        = 2;      {Mouse button released}
    KeyDown        = 3;      {Key pressed}
    KeyUp          = 4;      {Key released}
    AutoKey        = 5;      {Automatic keyboard repeat}
    UpdateEvt      = 6;      {Window must be redrawn}
    DiskEvt        = 7;      {Disk inserted}
    ActivateEvt    = 8;      {Window activated or deactivated}
    NetworkEvt     = 10;     {Network event (reserved for system use)}
    DriverEvt      = 11;     {I/O driver event (reserved for system use)}
    App1Evt        = 12;     {Available for application use}
    App2Evt        = 13;     {Available for application use}
    App3Evt        = 14;     {Available for application use}
    App4Evt        = 15;     {Available for application use }
                          { (also used by Switcher)}
```



Notes

1. A null event is generated when the application asks for an event and there's nothing to report.
2. *Mouse events* include mouse-down and mouse-up.
3. *Keyboard events* include key-down, key-up, and auto-key.
4. *Window events* include activate, deactivate, and update; these are discussed further in Chapter 3.
5. Network and I/O driver events are reserved for use by the system.
6. Event type 9 is reserved for future use.
7. The last four event types are reserved as *application events*, to be used for any purpose the application program chooses. They're useful for synchronizing communication and control within the program to the overall flow of events.
8. Event type 15 (App4Evt) is also used by the Switcher program to notify applications when to suspend and resume control. See Volume Three for more information.

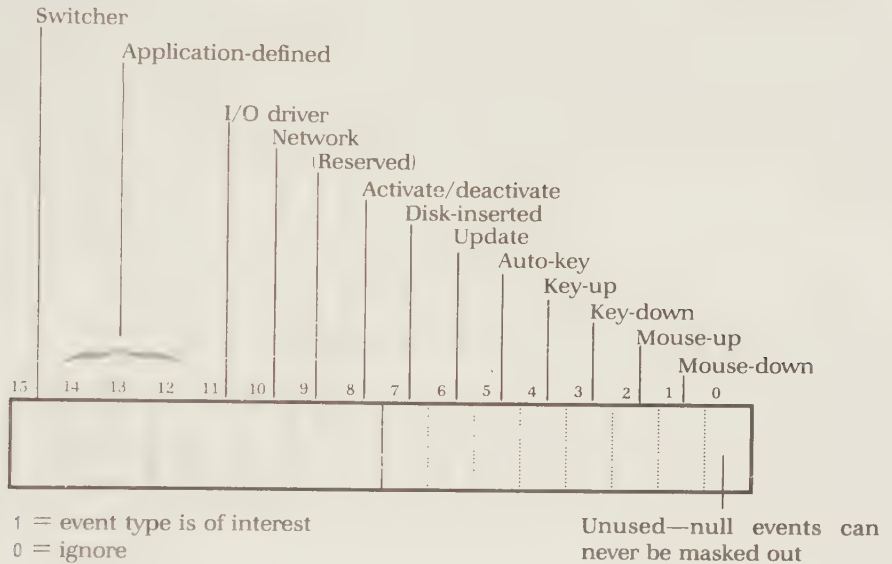


Assembly Language Information

Event types:

Name	Value	Meaning
NullEvt	0	Nothing happened
MButDwnEvt	1	Mouse button pressed
MButUpEvt	2	Mouse button released
KeyDwnEvt	3	Key pressed
KeyUpEvt	4	Key released
AutoKeyEvt	5	Automatic keyboard repeat
UpdatEvt	6	Window must be redrawn
DiskInsertEvt	7	Disk inserted
ActivateEvt	8	Window activated or deactivated
NetworkEvt	10	Network event (reserved for system use)
IODrvrEvt	11	I/O driver event (reserved for system use)
App1Evt	12	Available for application use
App2Evt	13	Available for application use
App3Evt	14	Available for application use
App4Evt	15	Available for application use (also used by Switcher)

2.1.3 Event Masks



Definitions

const

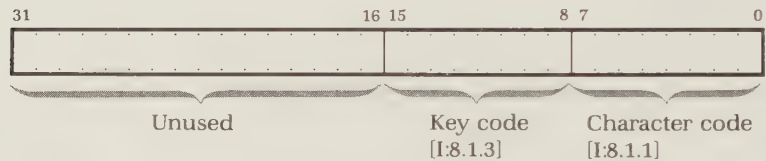
MDownMask	= \$0002;	{ Mouse-down event }
MUpMask	= \$0004;	{ Mouse-up event }
KeyDownMask	= \$0008;	{ Key-down event }
KeyUpMask	= \$0010;	{ Key-up event }
AutoKeyMask	= \$0020;	{ Auto-key event }
UpdateMask	= \$0040;	{ Update event }
DiskMask	= \$0080;	{ Disk-inserted event }
ActivMask	= \$0100;	{ Activate/deactivate event }
NetworkMask	= \$0400;	{ Network event (reserved for system use) }
DriverMask	= \$0800;	{ I/O driver event (reserved for system use) }
App1Mask	= \$1000;	{ Application-defined event }
App2Mask	= \$2000;	{ Application-defined event }
App3Mask	= \$4000;	{ Application-defined event }
App4Mask	= \$8000;	{ Application-defined event (also used by Switcher) }
EveryEvent	= \$FFFF;	{ Any event }



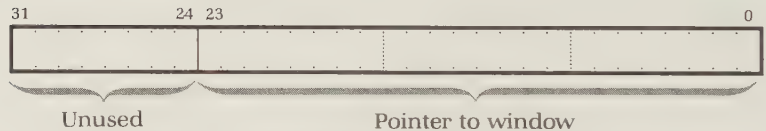
Notes

1. Event masks are used as parameters to some event-related routines, to specify which specific event types an operation applies to.
2. The event mask has one bit for each possible event type. A 1 bit in any position includes the corresponding type in the mask; a 0 bit excludes the type.
3. The mask constants shown can be combined with BitAnd, BitOr, BitXOr, and BitNot [I:2.2.2] to form any combination of event types you need.
4. The mask EveryEvent includes all possible event types.

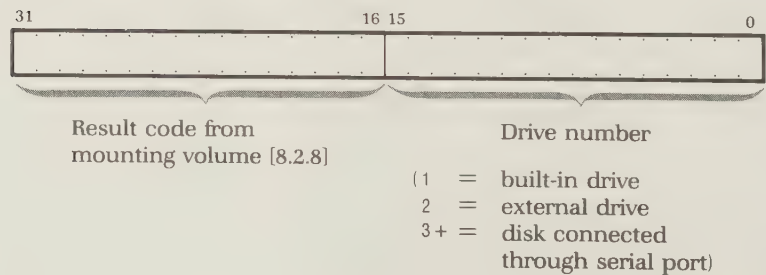
2.1.4 Event Messages



Keyboard events



Window events



Disk events



Definitions

const

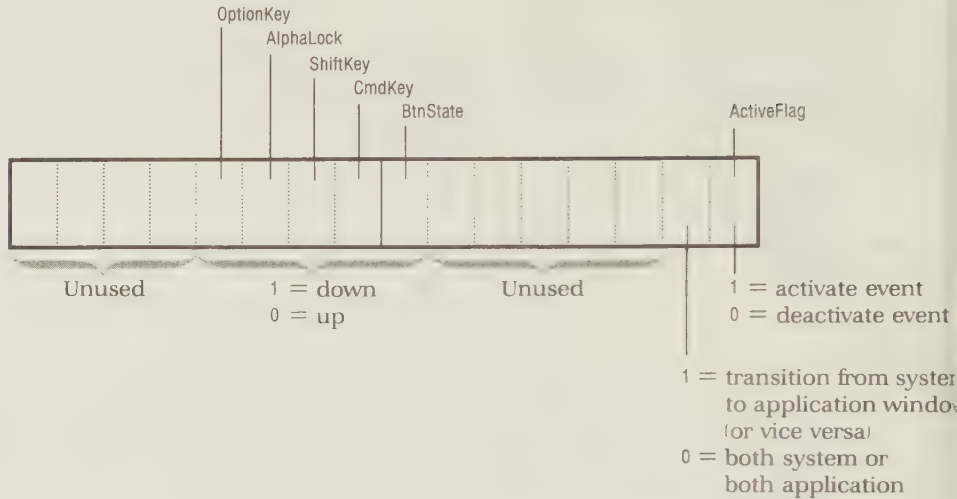
```
KeyCodeMask    = $0000FF00;  {Mask for extracting key code from keyboard event}  
CharCodeMask   = $000000FF;  {Mask for extracting character code from keyboard event}
```



Notes

1. For keyboard events, the event message identifies the key involved, along with the corresponding character as determined by the keyboard configuration currently in effect. Key codes and character codes are listed in [I:8.1.3] and [I:8.1.1], respectively, as well as in Appendix D.
2. The key code and character code can be extracted from the message field with BitAnd [I:2.2.2], using the mask constants KeyCodeMask and CharCodeMask.
3. For window events, the event message contains a window pointer [3.1.1] to the window involved.
4. For disk events, the Toolbox will already have attempted to mount the newly inserted volume before reporting the event to the program. The event message contains the result code returned by this mounting operation. Mounting of volumes is discussed in Chapter 8.
5. For mouse and null events, the message field is meaningless; for network and I/O driver events, its contents are private to the system.
6. For application events, the event message can be used in any way the application chooses.

2.1.5 Event Modifiers



Definitions

const

```

OptionKey = $0800;    {Option key}
AlphaLock = $0400;    {Caps Lock key}
ShiftKey  = $0200;    {Shift key}
CmdKey    = $0100;    {Command key}

BtnState   = $0080;    {Mouse button}
ActiveFlag = $0001;    {Activate or deactivate event?}

```



Notes

1. The state of the modifier keys is recorded for all events, not just keyboard events.
2. No distinction is made between the left and right Shift keys or the left and right Option keys.
3. Bit 0 (ActiveFlag) distinguishes activate (1) from deactivate (0) events. See Chapter 3 for further discussion.
4. For activate/deactivate events, bit 1 is supposed to be set to 1 when

control passes from an application window to a system window or vice versa; 0 if the windows being deactivated and activated are both system or both application windows. However, this bit is not always set reliably; see Chapter 3 for further discussion.

5. The assembly-language constants (below) are bit numbers within the modifiers field, for use with the BTST, BSET, BCLR, and BCHG instructions.



Assembly Language Information

Bit numbers in the modifiers field:

Name	Value	Meaning
OptionKey	11	Option key
AlphaLock	10	Caps Lock key
ShiftKey	9	Shift key
CmdKey	8	Command key
BtnState	7	Mouse button
ActiveFlag	0	Activate or deactivate?

2.2 Event Reporting

2.2.1 Retrieving Events



Definitions

```

function GetNextEvent
    (mask      : INTEGER;    {Mask designating event types of interest [2.1.3]}
     var theEvent : EventRecord) {Returns information about event}
    : BOOLEAN;              {Should application respond to event?}

function EventAvail
    (mask      : INTEGER;    {Mask designating event types of interest [2.1.3]}
     var theEvent : EventRecord) {Returns information about event}
    : BOOLEAN;              {Should application respond to event?}
  
```



Notes

1. Both of these routines check for the next available event of any of the types designated by the mask parameter. Event types excluded by the mask are ignored.
2. An event record describing the event is returned in the variable parameter `theEvent`.
3. `GetNextEvent` removes the reported event from the queue; `EventAvail` doesn't, and can be used to "peek" at an event while leaving it in the queue for later processing.
4. Events are reported in order of priority, as follows:
 1. Deactivate events
 2. Activate events
 3. All except window, auto-key, and null events, in the order posted
 4. Auto-key events
 5. Update events, in front-to-back order of the windows on the screen
 6. Null events
5. If no event of the requested types is available, a null event is returned. Null events are never affected by the mask parameter.
6. The function result tells whether the event must be handled by your program. If `FALSE`, you should simply ignore the event.
7. `GetNextEvent` intercepts certain events involving desk accessories and passes them to the accessory for processing. If the accessory accepts the event, `GetNextEvent` returns `FALSE`, indicating that your program need not respond to it; in the unlikely case that the accessory refuses the event, `GetNextEvent` returns `TRUE`, asking you to handle it yourself if appropriate.
8. Events intercepted by `GetNextEvent` include all keyboard and window events directed to a system window (one containing a desk accessory).
9. Mouse-up events directed to a system window are also intercepted, but mouse-down events are not. You must check all mouse-down events yourself with `FindWindow` [3.5.1] and pass those involving system windows to the appropriate desk accessory for action.
10. Only `GetNextEvent` intercepts events involving desk accessories; `EventAvail` never does.
11. For disk-inserted events, `GetNextEvent` mounts the new volume but still returns `TRUE`. This allows you to take further action if appropriate, based on the result code returned by the mounting operation. (Mounting of volumes is discussed in Chapter 8.) `EventAvail` doesn't attempt to mount the volume.
12. For null events, both `GetNextEvent` and `EventAvail` always return `FALSE`.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
GetNextEvent	_GetNextEvent	\$A970
EventAvail	_EventAvail	\$A971

2.3 Posting and Removing Events

2.3.1 Emptying the Event Queue



Definitions

```

procedure FlushEvents
    (whichMask : INTEGER;    {Event types to be flushed}
     stopMask  : INTEGER);  {Event types on which to stop}
  
```



Notes

1. FlushEvents removes events from the event queue.
2. whichMask tells which event types are to be removed.
3. stopMask tells which event types are to stop the search. After the first such event is encountered, no further events are flushed from the queue.
4. A stopMask of 0 flushes the entire queue of the event types designated by whichMask.
5. Call

FlushEvents (EveryEvent, 0)

to clear out the event queue at the beginning of your program.

6. When called from assembly language, FlushEvents is register-based: see the register usage information below.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
FlushEvents	_FlushEvents	\$A032

Register usage:

Routine	Register	Contents
FlushEvents	DO.L (in)	High word: stopMask Low word: whichMask
	DO.W (out)	Event type that stopped search (0 if none)

2.3.2 Posting Events



Definitions

function PostEvent
 (eventType : INTEGER; {Type of event}
 message : LONGINT) {Event message}
 : OSErr; {Result code}

procedure SetEventMask
 (newMask : INTEGER); {New setting of system event mask}



Notes

1. PostEvent places a new event in the event queue.
2. eventType and message give the new event's type and the contents of its message field.
3. The event's when, where, and modifiers fields will be set to reflect conditions at the time the event is posted.
4. SetEventMask sets the system event mask, which controls which types of event can be posted into the event queue. A 0 bit in any position prevents events of the corresponding type from being posted.

5. The system event mask is initially set to allow all but key-up events to be posted.
6. Window events (activate, deactivate, update) are treated specially and are never actually placed in the event queue. Do not attempt to post such events with `PostEvent`. Window events are also unaffected by the system event mask.
7. When called from assembly language, `PostEvent` is register-based: see the register usage information below.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
<code>PostEvent</code>	<code>__PostEvent</code>	<code>\$A02F</code>

Register usage:

Routine	Register	Contents
<code>PostEvent</code>	<code>A0.W (in)</code>	<code>eventType</code>
	<code>D0.L (in)</code>	<code>message</code>
	<code>D0.W (out)</code>	<code>result code</code>

Assembly-language global variable:

Name	Address	Meaning
<code>SysEvtMask</code>	<code>\$144</code>	System event mask

2.4 The Mouse

2.4.1 Reading the Mouse Position



Definitions

procedure GetMouse

(**var** mouseLoc : Point); {Returns mouse location in local (window) coordinates}



Notes

1. GetMouse returns the current location of the mouse via the variable parameter mouseLoc.
2. The mouse location is expressed in the *local coordinates* of the current graphics port (typically the currently active window). Notice that the where field of an event record [2.1.1] is in *global* (screen) coordinates.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal)

(Assembly)

Routine name

Trap macro

Trap word

GetMouse

_GetMouse

\$A972

2.4.2 Reading the Mouse Button



Definitions

```
function Button
    : BOOLEAN;      {Is mouse button down?}

function StillDown
    : BOOLEAN;      {Is mouse button still down from previous press?}

function WaitMouseUp
    : BOOLEAN;      {Is mouse button still down from previous press?}
```



Notes

1. Button returns TRUE if the mouse button is currently down, otherwise FALSE.
2. Both StillDown and WaitMouseUp return TRUE if the mouse button is currently down and there are no pending mouse events in the event queue. This implies that the button is still down from the last reported mouse-down event, and can't have been released and pressed again.
3. If the event queue does contain a pending mouse-up event, WaitMouseUp removes the event from the queue before returning FALSE; StillDown leaves the event pending.
4. In assembly language, the global variable MBState is a single byte whose low-order bit (bit 0) gives the current state of the mouse button.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
Button	<code>_Button</code>	\$A974
StillDown	<code>_StillDown</code>	\$A973
WaitMouseUp	<code>_WaitMouseUp</code>	\$A977

Assembly-language global variable:

Name	Address	Meaning
MBState	\$172	State of mouse button

2.5 The Cursor

2.5.1 Cursor Records



Definitions

type

`CursHandle` = `^CursPtr`;

`CursPtr` = `^Cursor`;

`Cursor` = **record**

`data` : Bits16; {Cursor image}

`mask` : Bits16; {Transfer mask (see table)}

`hotSpot` : Point {Point coinciding with mouse}

end;

Bits16 = **array** [0..15] of **INTEGER**; {16 rows of 16 bits each}

Mask bit	Data bit	Result
1	1	Black
1	0	White
0	1	Invert screen
0	0	Invisible



Notes

1. data contains the cursor's bit image, 16 by 16 bits.
2. mask is another bit image, also 16 by 16 bits, that defines how the data image is transferred to the screen (see table).
3. hotSpot defines the point in the cursor that coincides with the mouse position on the screen.
4. The hot spot designates a point on the coordinate grid, not a pixel of the cursor. The top-left corner of the cursor has coordinates (0, 0).



Assembly Language Information

Field offsets in a cursor record:

(Pascal) Field name	(Assembly) Offset name	Offset in bytes
data	data	0
mask	mask	32
hotSpot	hotSpot	64

Assembly-language constant:

Name	Value	Meaning
CursRec	68	Size of cursor record in bytes

2.5.2 Setting the Cursor



Definitions

procedure InitCursor;

procedure SetCursor
 (newCursor : Cursor); {Cursor to be made current}

function GetCursor
 (cursorID : INTEGER) {Resource ID of desired cursor}
 : CursHandle; {Handle to cursor in memory}

var
 Arrow : Cursor; {Standard arrow cursor (for general use)}

const
 IBeamCursor = 1; {Resource ID for I-beam cursor (for text selection)}
 CrossCursor = 2; {Resource ID for cross cursor (for graphics selection)}
 PlusCursor = 3; {Resource ID for plus-sign cursor (for "structured selection")}
 WatchCursor = 4; {Resource ID for wristwatch cursor ("wait a minute")}



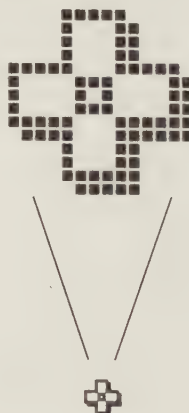
Arrow



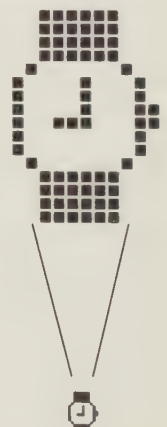
I-beam



Cross



Plus sign



Wristwatch



Notes

1. The current cursor is painted on the screen at the mouse location during the vertical retrace interrupt, sixty times a second.

2. The cursor always follows the movements of the mouse. There is no way for a program to force the cursor to a specific position on the screen.
3. `InitCursor` sets the current cursor to the standard “eleven-o’clock” arrow (see figure). This is the *only* way to make the arrow cursor current.
4. `InitCursor` sets the cursor level [2.5.3] to 0 (visible).
5. `SetCursor` makes the designated cursor (`newCursor`) the current cursor.
6. The `newCursor` parameter is an actual cursor record [2.5.1], not a pointer or handle.
7. The standard arrow cursor cannot be made current with `SetCursor`; use `InitCursor` instead.
8. If the cursor is currently hidden (cursor level < 0), the new cursor will appear when it becomes visible again.
9. `GetCursor` gets a cursor record from a resource file, reads it into memory if necessary, and returns a handle to it.
10. `cursorID` is the resource ID of the desired cursor; its resource type is ‘CURS’ [2.9.1].
11. The standard arrow cursor is kept in the global variable `Arrow`. The other standard cursors are available as system resources, either in ROM or in the system resource file, using the constants shown for their resource IDs.
12. `Arrow` is actually a `QuickDraw` global variable [I:4.3.1]. To access it in assembly language, find the pointer to `QuickDraw`’s globals at the address contained in register A5, then locate the variable relative to that pointer using the offset constant `Arrow` (see table). See Volume One, Chapter 3 and [I:4.3.1, note 4] for further discussion.
13. The cursor record defining the current cursor is kept in the assembly-language global variable `TheCrsr`. There is no straightforward way to access the current cursor from the Pascal level.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
InitCursor	_InitCursor	\$A850
SetCursor	_SetCursor	\$A851
GetCursor	_GetCursor	\$A9B9

Assembly-language constants:

Name	Value	Meaning
IBeamCursor	1	Resource ID of I-beam cursor
CrossCursor	2	Resource ID of cross cursor
PlusCursor	3	Resource ID of plus-sign cursor
WatchCursor	4	Resource ID of wristwatch cursor

Assembly-language global variable:

Name	Address	Meaning
TheCrsr	\$844	Current cursor record

QuickDraw global variable:

Name	Offset in bytes	Meaning
Arrow	- 108	Standard arrow cursor

2.5.3 Showing and Hiding the Cursor



Definitions

procedure HideCursor;

procedure ShowCursor;



Notes

1. These routines control the cursor's visibility on the screen by manipulating the *cursor level*.

2. The cursor is displayed on the screen if the cursor level is 0, hidden if the cursor level is negative.
3. The cursor level is set to 0 (visible) by InitCursor [2.5.2].
4. HideCursor removes the cursor from the screen and decrements the cursor level by 1.
5. ShowCursor undoes the effects of HideCursor and restores the cursor's visibility to its previous state. It increments the cursor level by 1; if the cursor level becomes 0, the cursor is redisplayed on the screen.
6. The cursor level never becomes greater than 0. If it's already 0 (visible), ShowCursor leaves it unchanged.
7. Calls to HideCursor and ShowCursor may be nested to any depth. Every call to HideCursor should be balanced by a corresponding call to ShowCursor.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
HideCursor	__HideCursor	\$A852
ShowCursor	__ShowCursor	\$A853

2.5.4 Obscuring and Shielding the Cursor



Definitions

```
procedure ObscureCursor;
```

```
procedure ShieldCursor
```

```
    (shieldRect : Rect;      {Shield rectangle}
     globalOrigin : Point); {Origin of coordinate system in global (screen) coordinates}
```



Notes

1. ObscureCursor temporarily removes the cursor from the screen; it will reappear the next time the mouse is moved.

2. ShieldCursor removes the cursor from the screen if any part of it lies within the designated shield rectangle.
3. The shield rectangle may be expressed in any convenient coordinate system. globalOrigin establishes the coordinate system relative to global (screen) coordinates. If shieldRect is expressed in screen coordinates, globalOrigin should be (0, 0); if it's in the local coordinates of some graphics port (such as a window), globalOrigin should be the origin of the port's boundary rectangle.
4. ShieldCursor decrements the current cursor level and so must be balanced eventually with a call to ShowCursor [2.5.3]. ObscureCursor doesn't affect the current cursor level and must *not* be balanced with ShowCursor.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
ObscureCursor	__ObscureCursor	\$A856
ShieldCursor	__ShieldCursor	\$A855

2.6 The Keyboard

2.6.1 Reading the Keyboard



Definitions

procedure GetKeys

(var keys : KeyMap); {Returns current state of keyboard}

type

KeyMap = packed array [0..127] of BOOLEAN;

		Second hexadecimal digit															
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	F	E	D	C	B	A	9	8
First hexadecimal digit	\$0	X	Z	G	H	F	D	S	A	R	E	W	Q	B		V	C
	\$1	5	6	4	3	2	1	T	Y	O	]	O	8	-	7	9	=
	\$2		J	L	Return	P	I	[	U		M	N	/	,	\	;	K
	\$3	⌘			Enter	Back-space		space bar	Tab						Option	Caps Lock	Shift
	\$4	Clear	+				*				-	/	Enter				,
	\$5	5	4	3	2	1	0						9	8		7	6
	\$6																
	\$7																



Shaded boxes are map entries for keypad keys.



Notes

1. GetKeys returns a *key map* representing the current state of the keyboard and keypad.
2. The key map is a packed array in which each Boolean element occupies a single bit of memory. A value of TRUE (1) means that the corresponding key was down at the time of the call; FALSE (0) means it wasn't.
3. At most two character keys will be reported down simultaneously, along with any combination of the modifier keys Shift, Caps Lock, Option, and Command.
4. No distinction is made between the left and right Shift keys or the left and right Option keys.
5. At the assembly-language level, although the bytes of the key map read normally from left to right, the bits within each byte read from right to left (see figure).



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
GetKeys	_GetKeys	\$A976

Assembly-language global variables:

Name	Address	Meaning
KeyMap	\$174	System keyboard map
KeypadMap	\$17C	System keypad map

2.7 The System Clock

2.7.1 Reading the System Clock



Definitions

```

function TickCount
    : LONGINT;           {Current time on system clock}

procedure Delay
    (duration      : LONGINT;   {Length of delay in ticks}
    var endTime    : LONGINT);  {Returns time on system clock at end of delay}
  
```



Notes

1. TickCount returns the time in ticks (sixtieths of a second) since the system was started up.
2. Delay suspends program execution for a specified number of ticks.
3. The delay is only approximate; it is usually (but not always) accurate to within one tick of the number specified by the duration parameter.
4. The variable parameter endTime returns the actual time on the system clock when the delay ends.

5. In assembly language, the system clock is accessible directly as the long-word global variable `Ticks`.
6. When called from assembly language, `Delay` is register-based: see the register usage information below.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
<code>TickCount</code>	<code>__TickCount</code>	<code>\$A975</code>
<code>Delay</code>	<code>__Delay</code>	<code>\$A03B</code>

Register usage:

Routine	Register	Contents
<code>Delay</code>	<code>A0.L (in)</code>	<code>duration</code>
	<code>D0.L (out)</code>	<code>endTime</code>

Assembly-language global variable:

Name	Address	Meaning
<code>Ticks</code>	<code>\$16A</code>	<code>System clock</code>

2.7.2 Performing Periodic Tasks



Definitions

procedure `SystemTask`;



Notes

1. `SystemTask` performs any periodic tasks associated with active desk accessories, under the control of the system clock.
2. Each accessory's periodic task is executed only if the appropriate interval has elapsed on the system clock since the task was last performed.

3. You should call `SystemTask` at least once per tick (60 times per second) to ensure that all desk accessories receive the processor time they need. This is normally done by calling it once on every pass of the program's main event loop; it may have to be called more often during time-consuming operations.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal)

(Assembly)

Routine name

Trap macro

Trap word

`SystemTask`

`__SystemTask`

`$A9B4`

2.8 The Speaker

2.8.1 Beeping the Speaker



Definitions

procedure `SysBeep`

(duration : INTEGER); {Length of beep in seconds}



Notes

1. `SysBeep` emits a beep from the Macintosh's speaker.
2. The `duration` parameter gives the length of the beep in seconds.
3. The speaker volume is controlled by the user with the Control Panel desk accessory. If the volume is set to 0, the menu bar flashes instead.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal)

(Assembly)

Routine name

Trap macro

Trap word

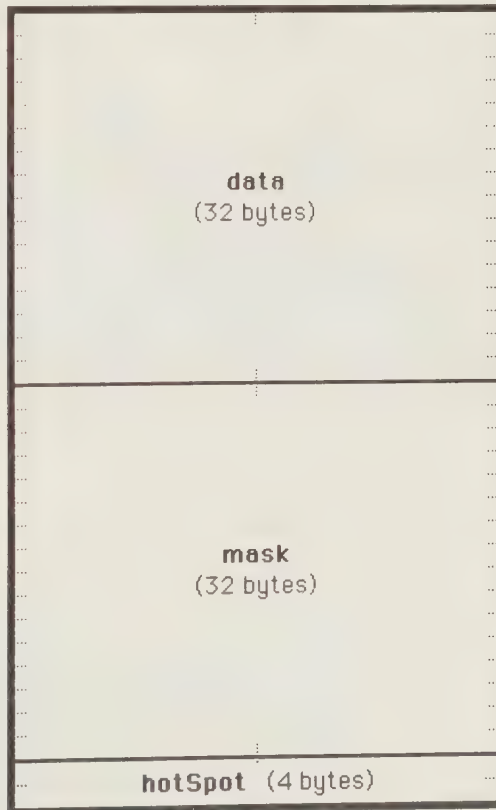
SysBeep

_ SysBeep

\$A9C8

2.9 Event-Related Resources

2.9.1 Resource Type 'CURS'

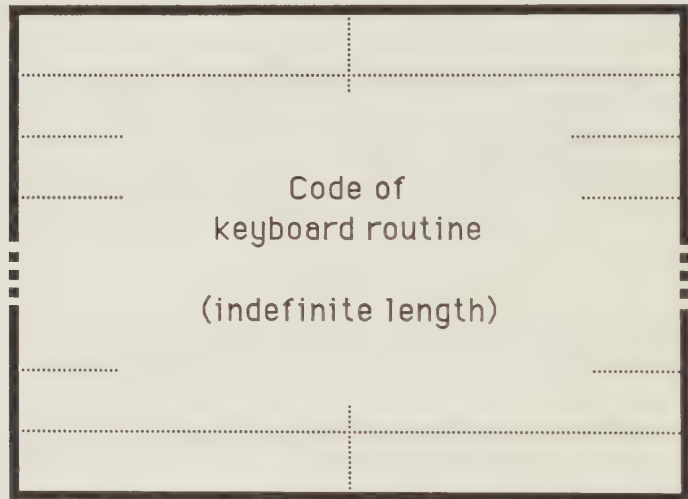




Notes

1. A resource of type 'CURS' contains a cursor record [2.5.1].
2. Use GetCursor [2.5.2] to load a resource of this type.
3. The standard arrow cursor is kept in the global variable Arrow. The other standard cursors are available as system resources, either in ROM (on the Macintosh Plus) or in the system resource file [2.5.2].

2.9.2 Resource Type 'FKEY'



Notes

1. A resource of type 'FKEY' contains a low-level keyboard routine.
2. Keyboard routines are executed automatically when the user types a numeric key (0-9) while holding down both the Command and Shift keys. These keystrokes are intercepted by the low-level keyboard driver and are not reported to your program via the event mechanism.
3. The resource ID of the 'FKEY' resource designates the key that invokes the routine, and must be between 0 and 9.
4. The resource data is simply the machine-language code of the keyboard routine.
5. The routine's entry point must be at the very beginning.

6. The routine must leave all processor registers unchanged.
7. The User Interface Guidelines define the following standard Command-Shift keystrokes, which should not be overridden by 'FKEY' resources of your own:

Keystroke	Meaning
Command-Shift-1	Eject disk in internal drive
Command-Shift-2	Eject disk in external drive
Command-Shift-3	Dump screen to a MacPaint file
Command-Shift-4	Dump screen to printer

('FKEY' resources 3 and 4 are included in the standard system resource file. There are no actual resources numbered 1 and 2; these operations are implemented internally by the keyboard driver.)

8. The keyboard driver intercepts Command-Shift keystrokes only if the 1-byte global flag `ScrDmpEnb` is TRUE (\$FF). If this flag is FALSE (\$00), they're just reported as ordinary keyboard events.

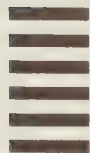


Assembly Language Information

Assembly-language global variables:

Name	Address	Meaning
<code>ScrDmpEnb</code>	<code>\$2F8</code>	Intercept Command-Shift keystrokes? (1 byte)

CHAPTER



3



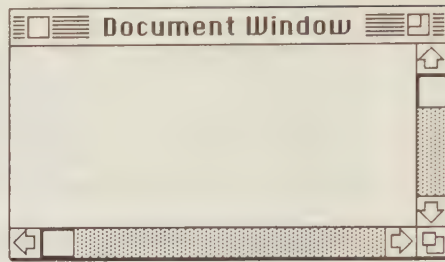
Windows on the World

Anyone who's used a Macintosh knows all about windows. From your program's point of view, they serve as a two-way channel of communication with the user: the program conveys information to the user by displaying it in a window, and the user tells the program what to do by clicking the mouse at strategic places in the window.

Windows can be of various types, each with its own characteristic appearance and structure. All windows, regardless of type, are expected to behave in certain standard ways, spelled out in the Macintosh User Interface Guidelines (part of Apple's *Inside Macintosh* documentation). The User Interface Toolbox includes all the facilities you need to display and manipulate windows in accordance with the Guidelines, but it's up to you to call the right Toolbox routines at the right times to make it all happen. In this chapter we'll see how.

Window Fundamentals

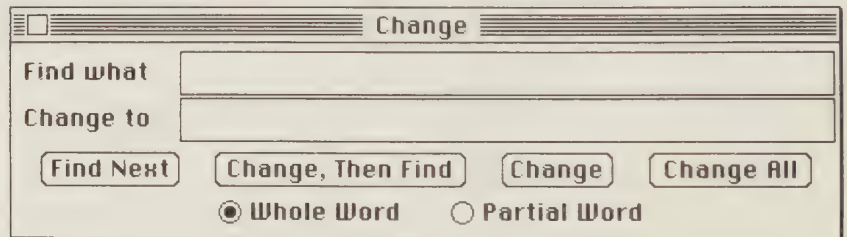
There can be any number of windows on the screen, and they can overlap in any order. Some windows belong to your program, and are called *application windows*; others are put there by the Macintosh system itself, and are known as *system windows*. (Examples of system windows are those that display desk accessories like the Calculator, the Control Panel, and the Alarm Clock.)



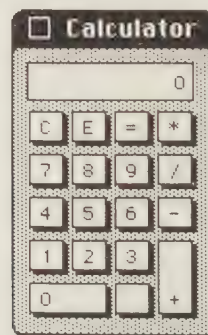
a. Document window



b. Alert box



c. Dialog box



d. Accessory window

Figure 3-1 Standard windows

A window's front-to-back position on the screen is called its *plane*. Each window has its own plane on the screen. When two windows overlap, the one in front gets drawn, covering the other behind it. A window that's completely obscured from view by other windows is said to be *covered*; if any part of the window is not obscured from view, the window is *exposed*. You can also make a window logically *visible* or *invisible*: to actually appear on the screen, it must be both visible and exposed. Your program controls whether a window is visible or invisible; whether it's covered or exposed depends on where the user places it in relation to other windows on the screen. Making a window invisible is called *hiding* the window, making it visible is called *showing* it.

The frontmost window at any given time is called the *active window*. All the user's menu choices and keyboard actions are directed to the active window, as are all mouse clicks inside the window. A click in any other window causes that window to come to the front and become the active window. It's your program's responsibility to respond to user actions directed to its own application windows, and to refer those directed to system windows to the appropriate Toolbox routines to be acted upon.

Certain types of window are built into the Macintosh system, and are automatically available for your program to use:

- *Document windows* (Figure 3-1a) are the standard type of window that you normally see on your screen. Their appearance and behavior are discussed briefly in the following section, and are described fully in the Macintosh Owner's Guide and the User Interface Guidelines.
- *Alert boxes* (Figure 3-1b) and *dialog boxes* (Figure 3-1c) report errors, issue warnings, and request specific information from the user. We'll be discussing them at length in Chapter 7.
- *Accessory windows* (Figure 3-1d) display desk accessories and are recognizable by their rounded corners.

For the vast majority of applications, these standard window types are all you'll need. If you're adventurous, you might want to define an octagonal window for the viewport of your starship. Volume Three contains complete information on how to "roll your own" window types; we'll confine ourselves to the standard types only.

Anatomy of a Window

Figure 3-2 shows the structure of a standard document window. At the top of the window is the *title bar*, which displays the window's

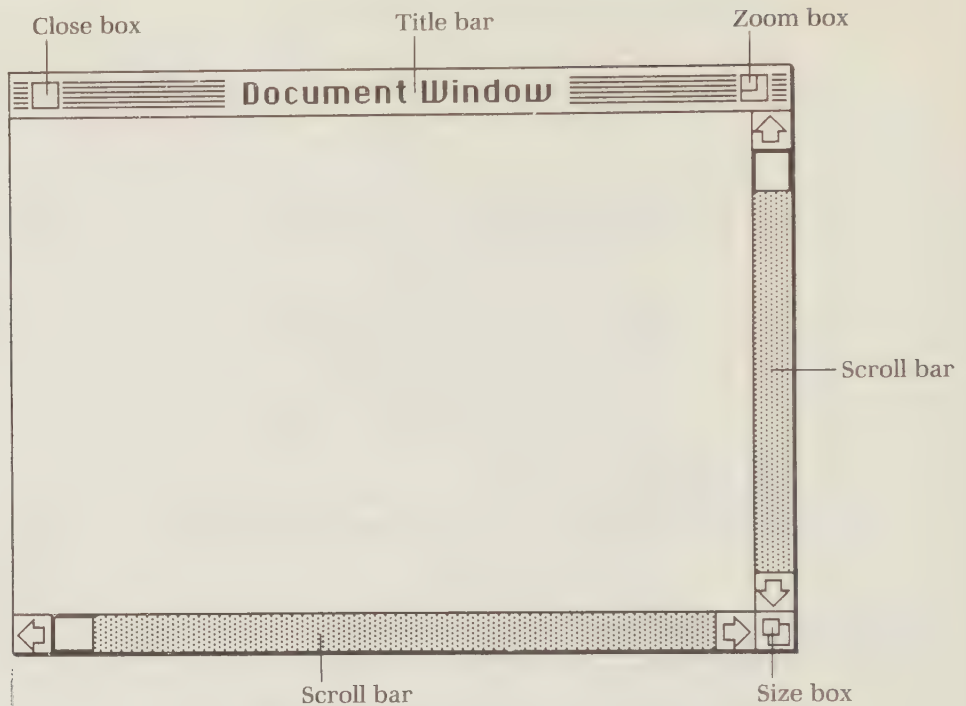
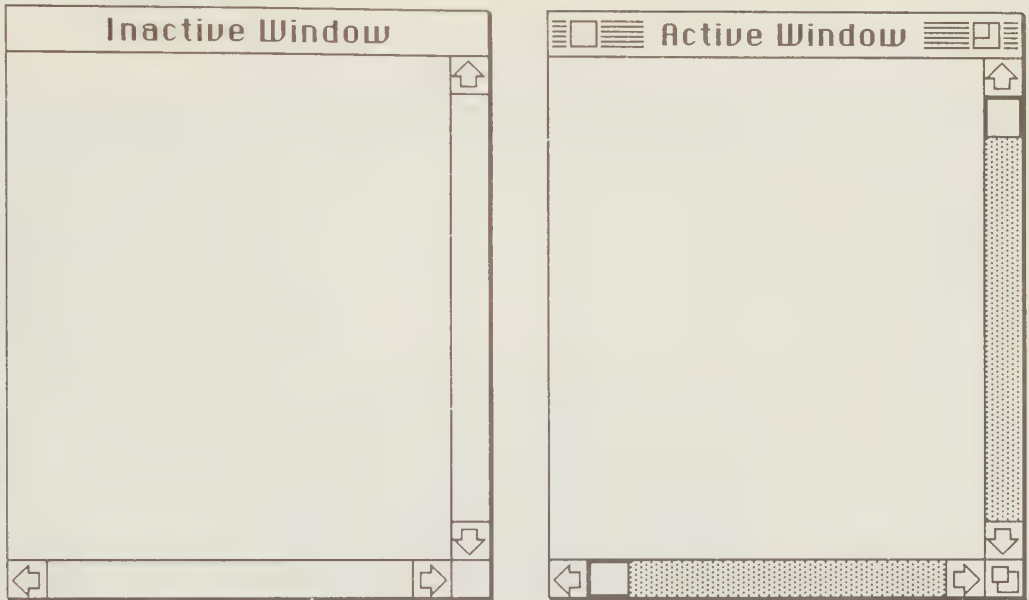


Figure 3-2 Parts of a document window

title. When the window is active, the title bar is *highlighted*, as shown in Figure 3-3; when it's inactive, the highlighting is removed. Clicking anywhere within an inactive window activates it, making it come to the front of the screen and highlight its title bar.

Pressing and dragging inside a window's title bar causes an outline of the window to appear and follow the mouse's movements (Figure 3-4). When the button is released, the window moves to its new location on the screen. Inside the title bar, at the left, is the window's *close box*. Clicking inside the close box closes the window and erases it from the screen (Figure 3-5). A window that can't be closed by the user has no close box.

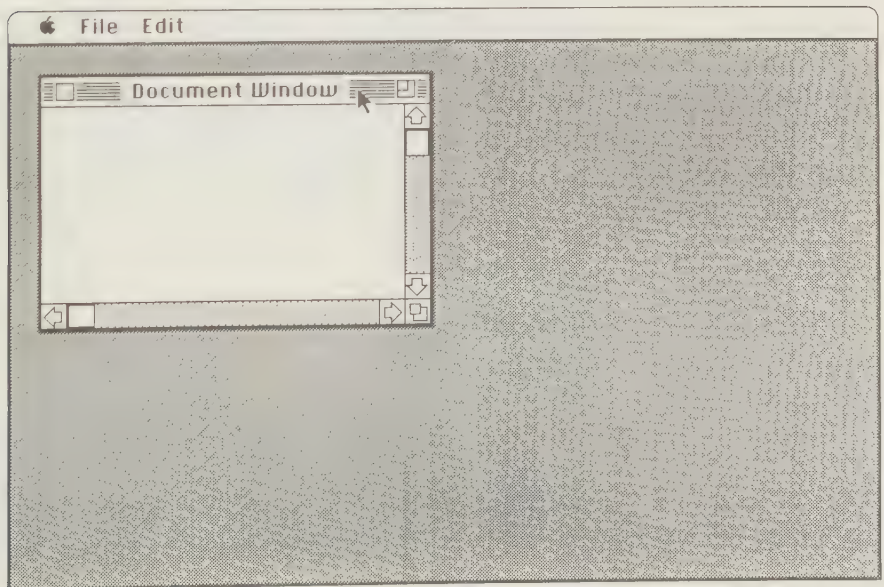
At the right end of the title bar is the *zoom box*. When the mouse is clicked here, the window "zooms out" to cover most of the screen; clicking the zoom box again makes it "zoom in" to its previous size and location (Figure 3-6). If the window can't be zoomed, it doesn't display a zoom box.



The active window highlights its title bar and scroll bars and displays its close box, size box, and zoom box.

Figure 3-3 Highlighting of a document window

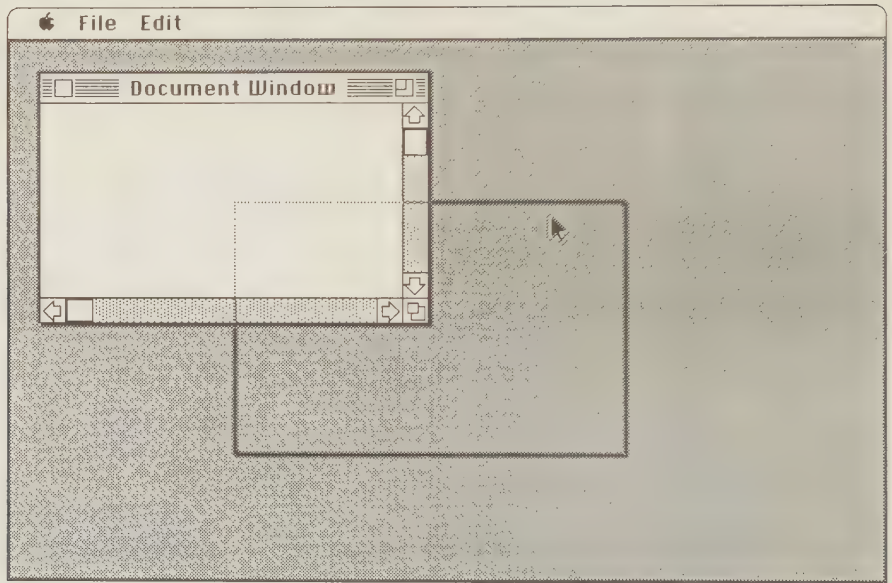
a.



Before: Mouse button about to be pressed in window's title bar.

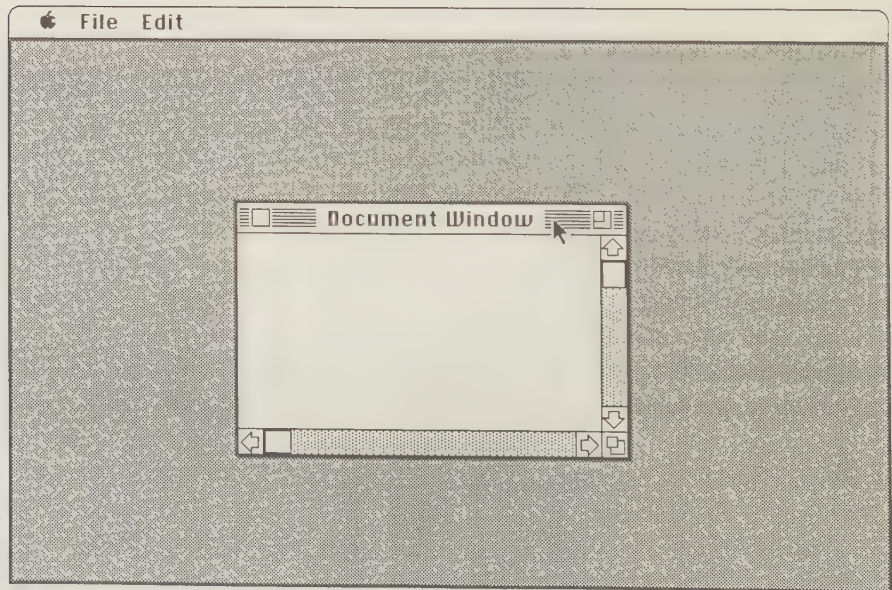
Figure 3-4 Moving a document window

b.



During: Dotted outline of window follows mouse.

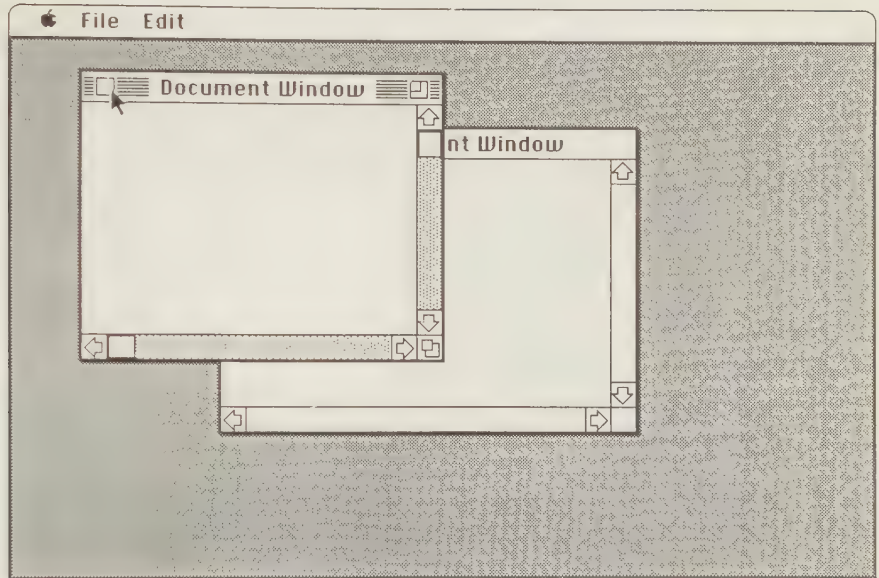
c.



After: When mouse button is released, window moves to new location.

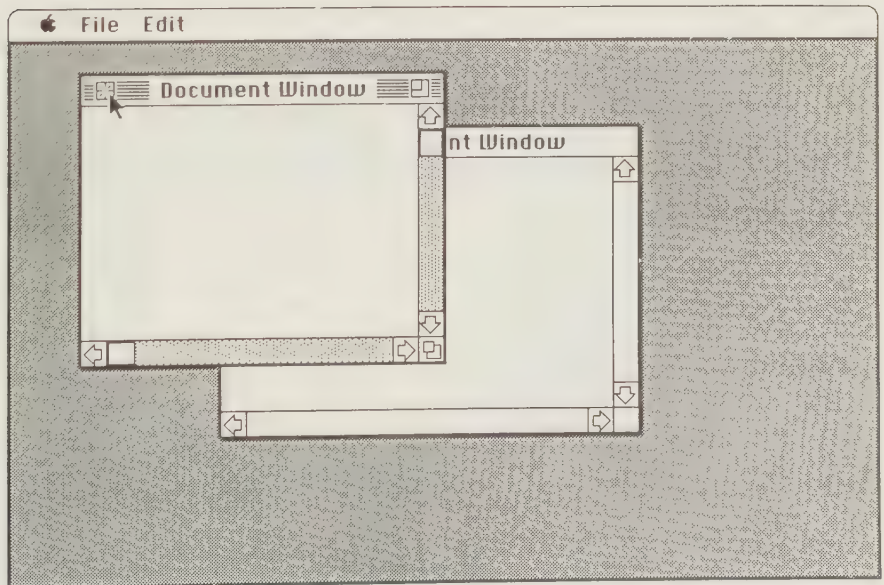
Figure 3-4 (continued)

a.



Before: Mouse button about to be pressed in window's close box.

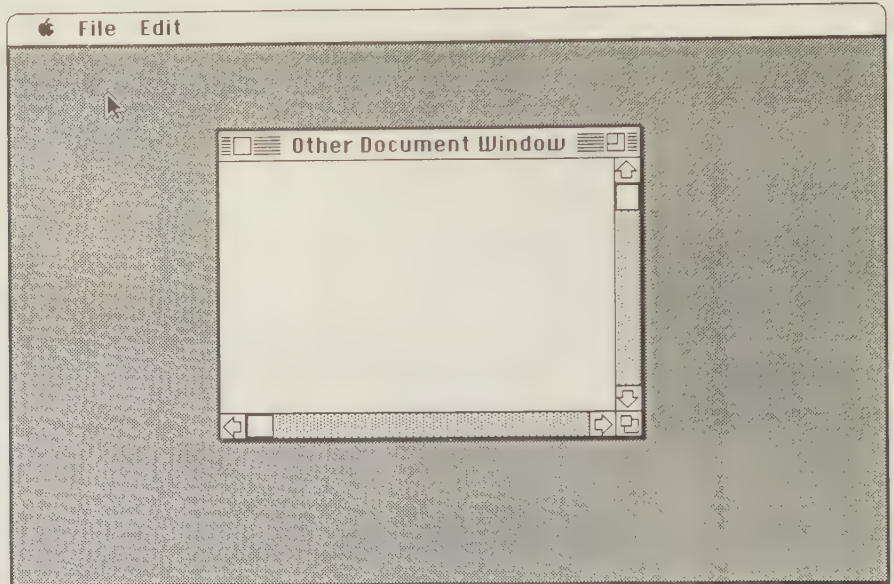
b.



During: Close box indicates that window is about to vanish.

Figure 3-5 Closing a document window

C.



After: When mouse button is released, window goes away; next-frontmost window becomes active.

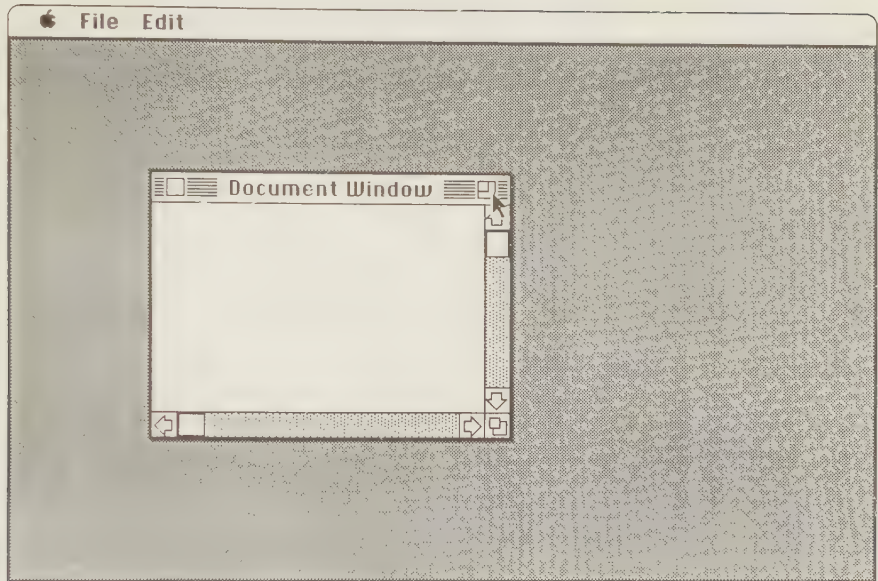
Figure 3-5 (continued)

The zoom box is a new feature included only in the Macintosh Plus Toolbox.

At the bottom-right corner of the window is the *size box*, used to adjust the window's size. When the user presses and drags the mouse inside the size box, an outline of the window appears with its top-left corner "anchored" and its bottom-right corner following the mouse (Figure 3-7). The window is redrawn to its new size when the button is released. A window that can't be resized has no size box.

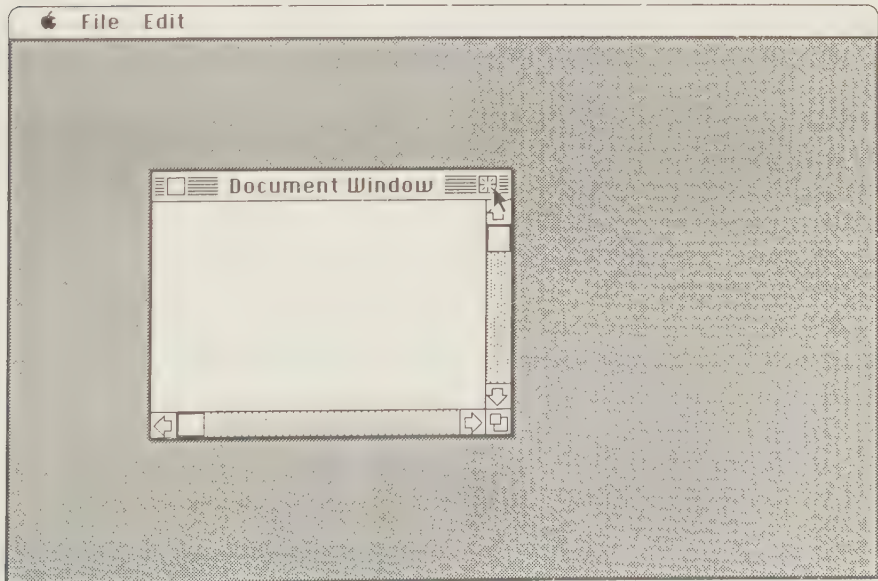
A window may also contain *controls* of various types, such as the "pushbuttons" and "checkboxes" commonly used in dialog boxes. The most familiar examples of controls are the *scroll bars* along a window's right and bottom edges. (Not all windows have scroll bars. Normally a window will have a scroll bar in a given direction—vertical or horizontal—only if it can actually be scrolled in that direction.) Controls, including scroll bars, are discussed in Chapter 6.

a.



Before: Mouse button about to be pressed in window's zoom box.

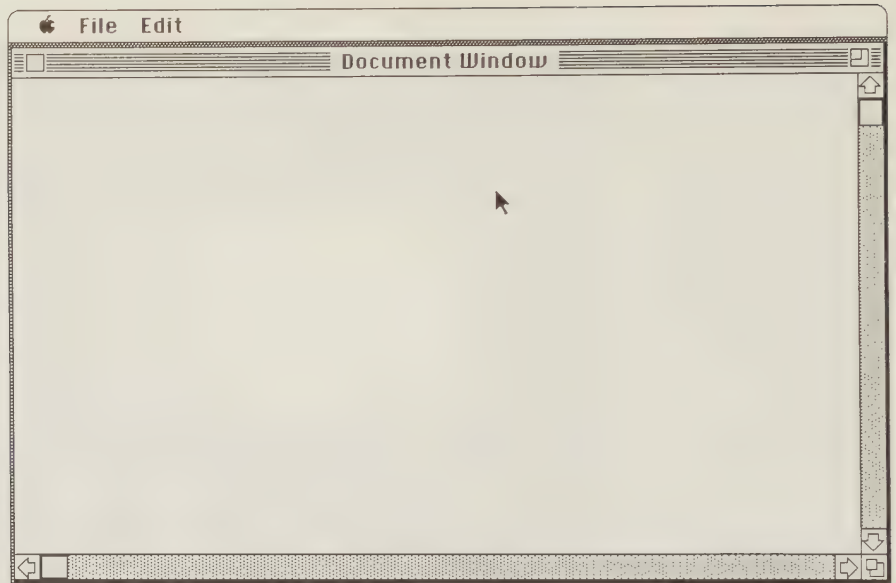
b.



During: Zoom box indicates that window is about to zoom.

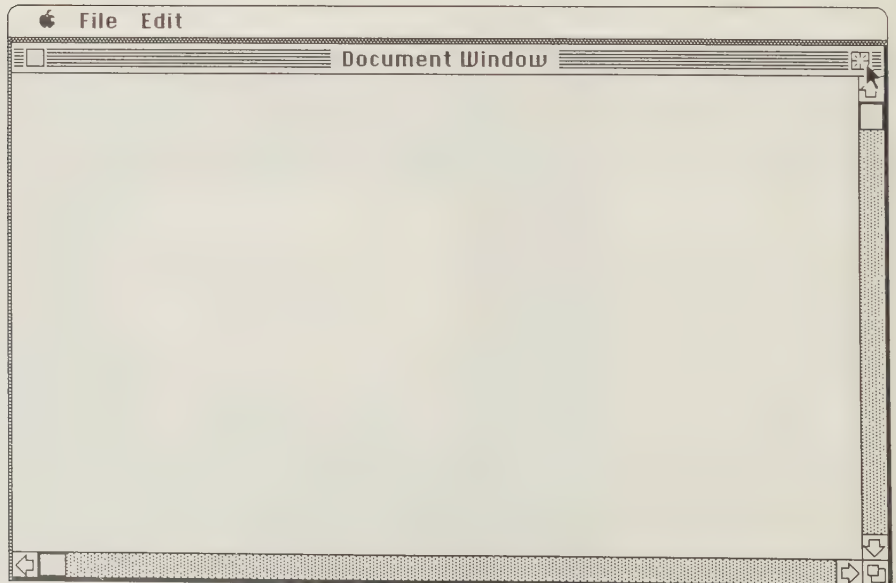
Figure 3-6 Zooming a document window

c.



After: When mouse button is released, window zooms out to fill full screen.

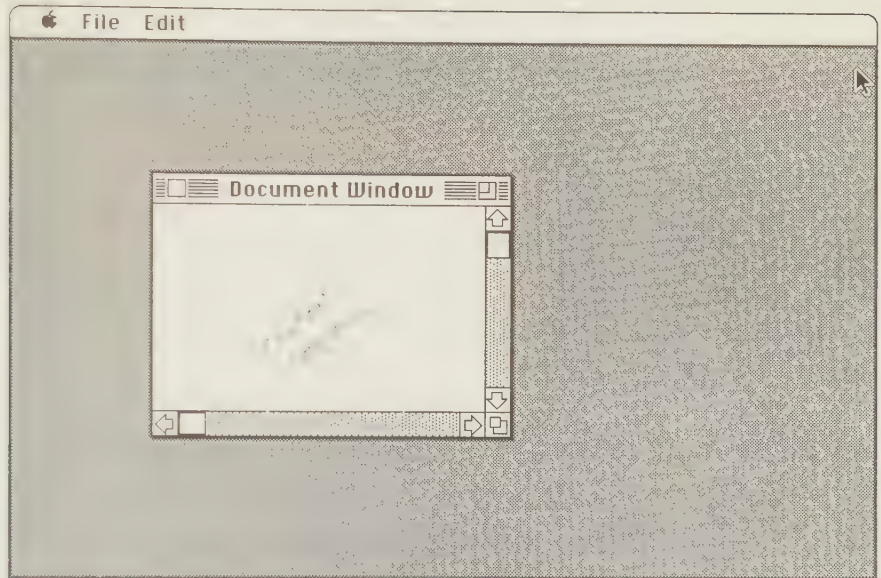
d.



During: Zoom box indicates that window is about to zoom again.

Figure 3-6 (continued)

e.



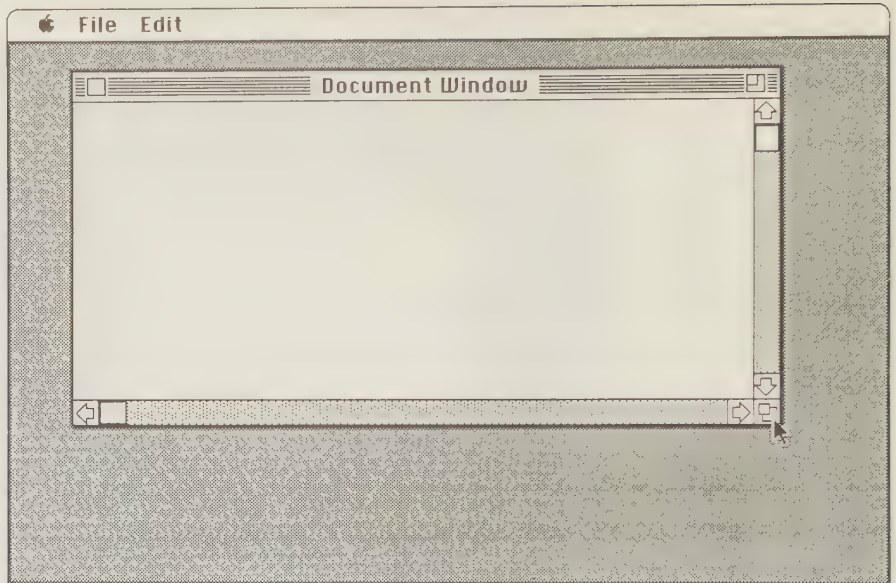
After: When mouse button is released, window zooms back in to original location and size.

Figure 3-6 (continued)

A window's outline on the screen (including the title bar, if any) is called its *frame*. The Toolbox draws the frame for you; what's inside the frame (the window's *content*) is your responsibility. The area inside the window that you can draw into is called the *content region*. Together, the content region and the frame make up the window's *structure region*, the total area occupied by the window (see Figure 3-8). Notice that these are QuickDraw regions, and can be of any shape—for a standard document window, they just happen to be rectangular.

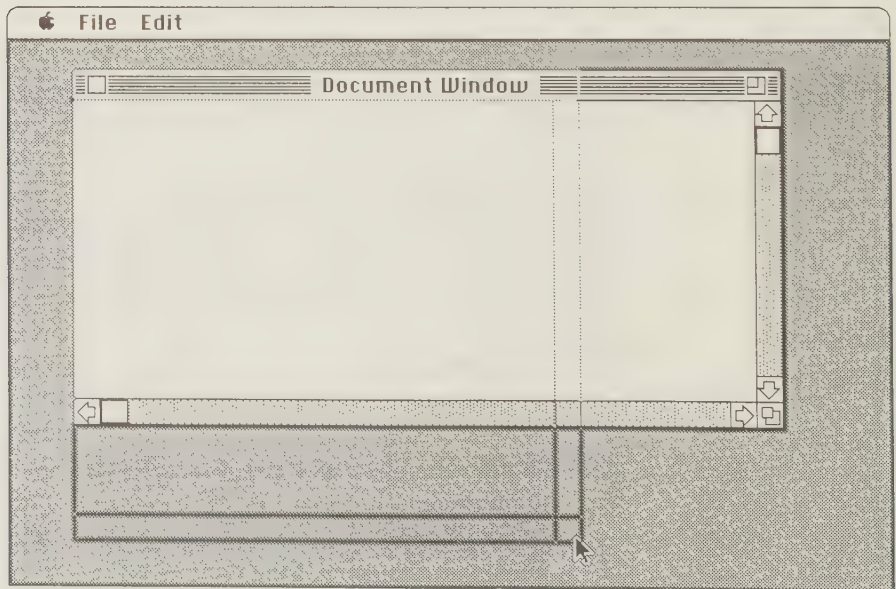
A window can also have a *drag region* for moving the window, a *close region* (also called the “go-away region”) for closing it, a *zoom region* for zooming it, and a *size region* (also called the “grow region”) for changing its size. (For a document window, the drag region is the title bar minus the close box, the close region is the close box, the zoom region is the zoom box, and the size region is the size box.) The drag, close, and zoom regions are always part of the window's frame, meaning that the Toolbox draws them for you automatically. The size region, on the other hand, may belong to either the frame or the

a.



Before: Mouse button about to be pressed in window's size box.

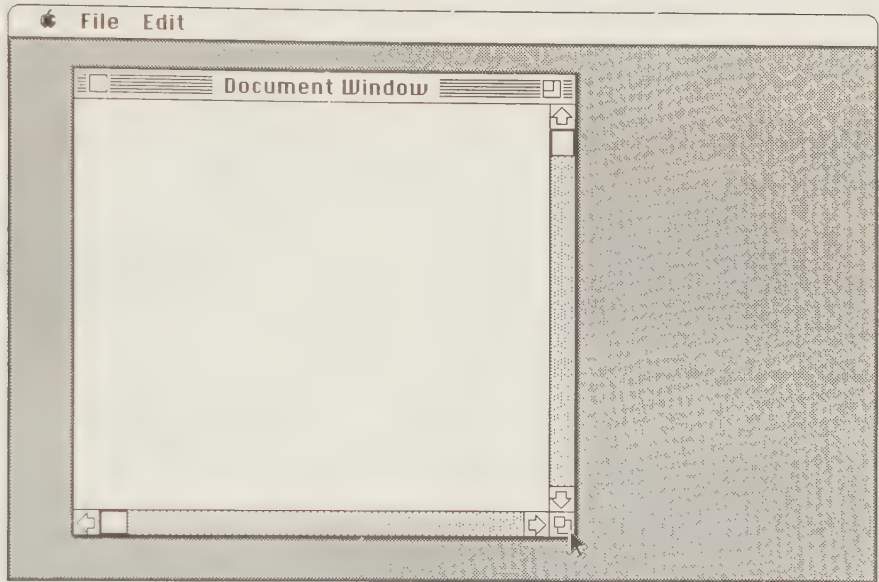
b.



During: Bottom-right corner of window outline follows mouse; top-left corner remains fixed.

Figure 3-7 Sizing a document window

C.



After: When mouse button is released, window changes to new size.

Figure 3-7 (continued)

content region. In a standard document window, in fact, it lies within the content region, which means you have to draw it for yourself whenever necessary. The same goes for a window's controls (including scroll bars), which are *always* part of the content region.

Two other important regions associated with a window are its visible region, discussed in the next section, and its update region, which is used in connection with update events and is discussed later under "Window Events."

Window Records

Internally, each window is represented by a *window record* [3.1.1] summarizing all the needed information pertaining to the window. The first item in the window record is a graphics port for drawing into the window. This is actually a complete record of type `GrafPort` [1:4.2.2] embedded in the window record—not just a pointer to one.

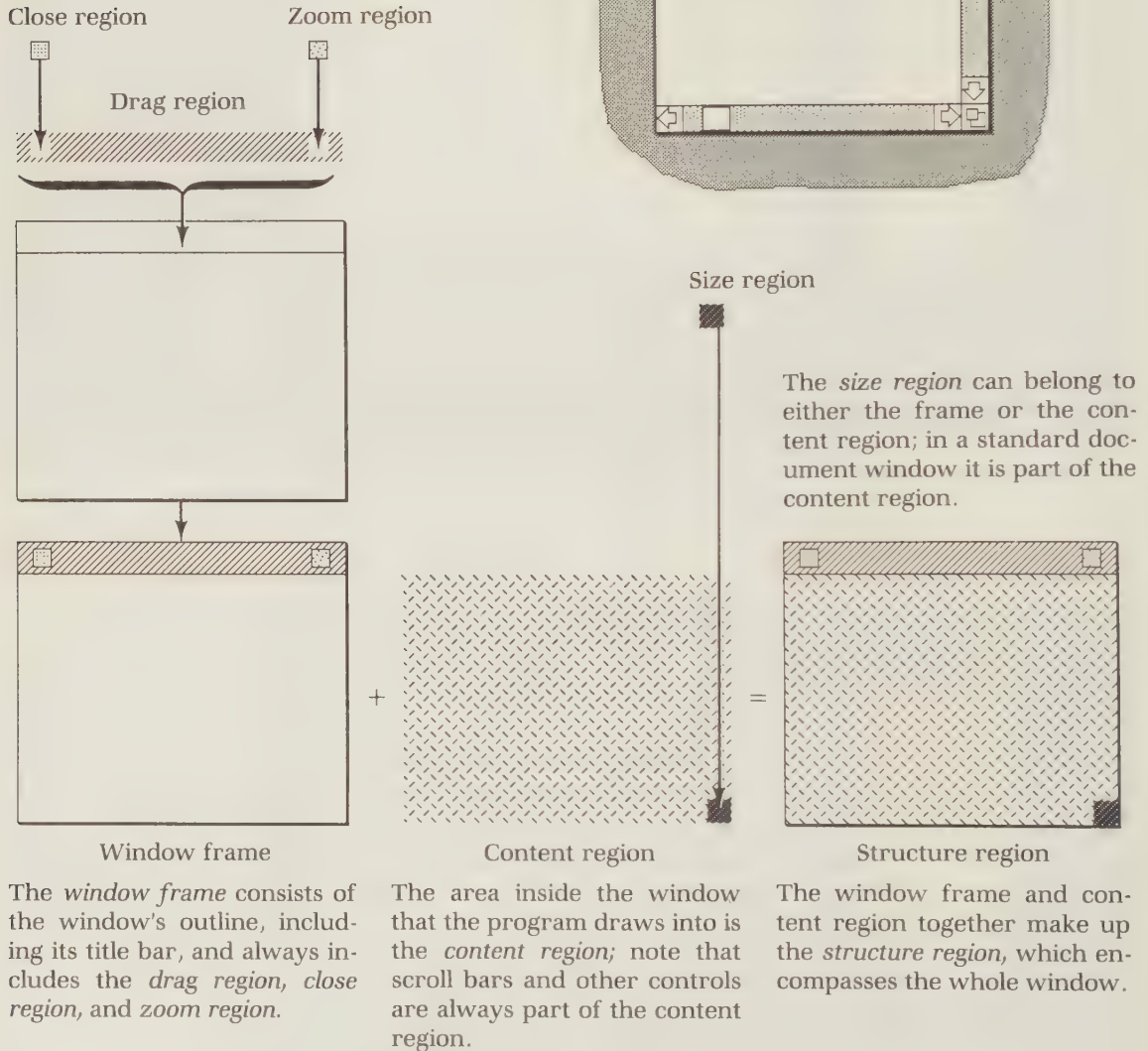


Figure 3-8 Regions of a window

One way to think of a window record is as an extended graphics port with some extra fields added at the end to describe its window-specific properties. To draw a window's contents on the screen, you

just use the window as a graphics port and draw into it with Quick-Draw.

As the user moves windows around on the screen, the Toolbox keeps track of each window's *visible region*, the portion of the window that's exposed to view at any given time. A handle to the visible region is kept in the `visRgn` field of the window's port, and anything you draw in the window is automatically clipped to this region. This means that if your application calls for it, you can draw into a window even when it isn't frontmost on the screen, and only the part that's exposed to view will actually be drawn. Notice that the Toolbox itself takes full responsibility for maintaining a window's visible region: you should never attempt to manipulate this field of the window record yourself.

Like the graphics port it's based on, a window record is a nonrelocatable object and is referred to by a pointer rather than a handle. Actually, there are two different types of window pointer [3.1.1], one for treating the window as a window and one for treating it as a port. To use a window as a port, you refer to it with a pointer of type `WindowPtr`. This is equivalent to a `GrafPtr` [1:4.2.2]: that is, a pointer to a graphics port. So you can give this type of pointer to any QuickDraw routine that expects a `GrafPtr` as an argument. Since the window record and the graphics port in its first field both start at the same address, QuickDraw will find all the port's fields at the correct locations and everything will work as it should. The other type of window pointer is called a `WindowPeek`. This is defined as a pointer to a window record (not to a graphics port), so you can use it to "peek" at the window-specific fields beyond the end of the port record.

When you create a new window, what you get back from the Toolbox is a `WindowPtr`. It's up to you to convert it to a `WindowPeek` if that's what you need. You can convert one type of pointer to the other with the Pascal "typecasting" feature:

```
wPeek := WindowPeek(wPtr)
```

or

```
wPtr := WindowPtr(wPeek)
```

All windows in existence at any time (whether visible or not) are chained together into a single *window list*, ordered from front to back according to their plane on the screen. The beginning of the list is kept in the system global `WindowList`, which always points to the

frontmost window on the screen. Each window's `nextWindow` field points to the next window behind it; the last window in the list has a `nextWindow` of `NIL`. Each window also has its own *control list*, beginning in the `controlList` field of the window record; we'll have more to say about this in Chapter 6.

Even though a `WindowPtr` and a `WindowPeek` point to the same place in memory, Pascal considers them different types and won't let you use one where the other is expected. To illustrate the difference, suppose you have two variables, declared as

```
var
  wPtr  : WindowPtr;
  wPeek : WindowPeek;
```

that both point to the same window record. You can refer to the window's port rectangle as either

```
wPtr^.portRect
```

or

```
wPeek^.port.portRect
```

You can refer to its content region as

```
wPeek^.contRgn
```

but there's no way to refer to the content region by means of `wPtr`. You can make the window the current port with

```
SetPort(wPtr)
```

and draw into it with `QuickDraw`, but you can't do the same with `wPeek`.

Each window record includes a 4-byte (long integer) field reserved for use by your program. This field is called `refCon`, for "reference constant," even though it's really not a constant but a variable. You can use it optionally to hold any special information you want to associate with a window. (If you need more than 4 bytes, you can allocate the needed space from the heap and store a handle to it as

the window's reference constant. You'll have to typecast the handle to a long integer in order to store it into the `refCon` field, and back to a handle when you want to use it. This is the technique we'll be using in our example program.)

Creating and Destroying Windows

Before you can create any windows, you have to initialize QuickDraw with `InitGraf` [I:4.3.1], font handling with `InitFonts` [I:8.2.4], and windows themselves with `InitWindows` [3.2.1]. (We've already done all this in our earlier initialize routine, Program 2-6.) You can then create any windows you need with `NewWindow` or `GetNewWindow`, and destroy them when you're finished with them by calling `DisposeWindow` or `CloseWindow`.

`NewWindow` [3.2.2] creates a new window and returns a `WindowPtr` to it. You supply the window's title, its position and plane on the screen, its window type, and its reference constant, and specify whether it's initially visible or invisible and whether it has a close region. The window's position is expressed as a rectangle in global (screen) coordinates, which becomes its port rectangle. You specify the window's plane by giving a pointer to the window immediately in front of it; the new window will be inserted right after this one in the window list. (A value of `NIL` for this `behindWindow` parameter places the new window behind all others on the screen; a value of `WindowPtr(-1)` places it in front of all others, making it the active window.) The new window's type is identified with an integer called a *window definition ID*, which we'll discuss later.

You can also provide a pointer, `wStorage`, to the storage to be used for the new window record. You can pass a value of `NIL` for `wStorage`, asking the Toolbox to allocate the storage for you from the heap, but you may instead want to declare a variable of type `WindowRecord` on the stack and use the `@` operator (Volume One, Chapter 2) to pass a pointer to it. This avoids fragmenting the heap with nonrelocatable objects (remember, window records are based on graphics ports and are referred to with pointers instead of handles). Bear in mind, though, that any variable residing on the stack will be deallocated on exit from the routine in which it's declared: to avoid dangling pointers, be sure to destroy the window with `CloseWindow` before returning from the routine.


```

{ Global variable }

var
  TheWindow : WindowPtr;           {Pointer to currently active window [3.1.1]}

procedure DoNew;

{ Handle New command. }

const
  windowTop    = 70;               {Top edge of window in screen coordinates}
  windowLeft   = 50;               {Left edge of window in screen coordinates}
  windowBottom = 270;              {Bottom edge of window in screen coordinates}
  windowRight  = 350;              {Right edge of window in screen coordinates}

var
  windowRect : Rect;               {New window's port rectangle [I:4.1.2]}
  theData    : WDHandle;           {Handle to window's data record [Prog. 5-1]}
  dataHandle : Handle;             {Untyped handle for creating data record [I:3.1.1]}

begin {DoNew}

  SetRect (windowRect, windowLeft, windowTop,      {Set up port rectangle [I:4.1.2]}
          windowRight, windowBottom);
  dataHandle := NewHandle (SIZEOF(WindowData));    {Allocate window data record [I:3.2.1, Prog. 5-1]}

  TheWindow := NewWindow (NIL, windowRect, 'untitled', {Make new window from scratch [3.2.2]}
                          TRUE, ZoomDocProc, WindowPtr(-1),
                          TRUE, LONGINT(dataHandle));

  SetPort (TheWindow);               {Get into the window's port [I:4.3.3]}
  TextFont (Geneva);                 {Set text font [I:8.3.2, I:8.2.1]}

  HLock (dataHandle);                 {Lock data record [I:3.2.4]}

  theData := WDHandle(dataHandle);    {Convert to typed handle [Prog. 5-1]}
  with theData^^ do
    {Initialize fields of data record};

  {Set global handles to scroll bar and edit record};

  HUnlock (dataHandle)                {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}

end; {DoNew}

```

Program 3-1 Make new window from scratch

Program 3-1 (DoNew) shows one way our example program MiniEdit might create a new window on the screen. (We'll see in the next chapter how this routine gets called when the user chooses the New menu command.) Our program will be using the window's reference constant to hold a handle to a "window data record" containing various pieces of information it needs about the window. Later we'll define a record type, `WindowData`, to represent this record, and a handle type, `WDHandle`, to point to it. We're not ready yet to look at the complete definition, but we can say that the window data record will contain the following information:

- A handle to the window's *edit record*, used for editing text in the window (Chapter 5)
- A handle to the window's scroll bar (Chapter 6)
- The reference number of the file associated with the window, if any (Chapter 8)
- A flag telling whether the window's text has been changed since it was last read from or written to the disk

Our `DoNew` routine allocates space for the window data record from the heap, typecasts the resulting handle to a long integer, and supplies it to `NewWindow` as the window's reference constant. Then it goes on to initialize the fields of the data record; in Chapter 5 we'll look at a more detailed version of `DoNew` that shows exactly how this is done.

Don't confuse what we're calling the window data record with the window record itself. The window record is a Toolbox data structure, and always contains the same items of information for every window; the window data record is strictly a creature of our example program, and holds additional information that this particular program needs to maintain about each window it creates. A different program might define the contents of the window data record differently, or might use the window's reference constant for a different purpose entirely, or might not use the reference constant at all (in which case you would just set it to 0 and forget about it).

Notice that `DoNew` stores the pointer to the newly created window into a global variable of the MiniEdit program named `TheWindow`. Whenever one of our own application windows is frontmost on the screen, `TheWindow` will hold a pointer to it; when a system window is

frontmost, `TheWindow` will be set to `NIL`. As we'll see, many of `MiniEdit`'s routines rely on this variable to be set up properly. Since we're placing the new window in front of all others on the screen, it will become the active window—so we have to see to it that `TheWindow` is set to point to it. (The program also maintains global handles to the active window's scroll bar and edit record; our later version of `DoNew` will show how these are set up as well.)

Finally, some of the program's routines assume that the active window is also the current graphics port, so our `DoNew` routine must call `SetPort` [I:4.3.3] to “get into” the window's port. We'll also use this opportunity to set the typeface for displaying text in the window with `TextFont` [I:8.3.2].

Instead of creating a new window “from scratch” with `NewWindow`, you can use `GetNewWindow` [3.2.2] to create one from a predefined *window template*. The template is a resource of type 'WIND' [3.7.1], typically stored in the program's application resource file. It contains most of the same information you would have supplied to `NewWindow` as parameters; with `GetNewWindow`, you just give the resource ID of the template instead. The only information you still have to provide explicitly is the `behindWindow` parameter defining the window's plane (since the identity of the other windows on the screen can't be known ahead of time) and the optional storage pointer; all the rest comes from the template. Window templates are handy because they save code and allow you to change the properties of your windows without changing your program itself; like all other resources, their use is encouraged. Our `MiniEdit` program actually creates its windows from a template in its resource file rather than from scratch, using the version of the `DoNew` routine shown in Program 3-2.

Of course, before you can create windows from a template, you first have to create the template itself and place it in a resource file for your program to use. As discussed in Volume One, Chapter 6, one way to do this is with resource compilers like `RMaker` or `Rez`, which are included with many of the software development systems available for the Macintosh. Another approach—the one that was actually used for our `MiniEdit` program—is to create the resources directly on the Macintosh screen, using a resource editor such as `ResEdit` or `REdit`. All of these resource-handling programs are widely available through Macintosh user groups and “bulletin boards,” and no serious Macintosh programmer should be without them.

```

{ Global variable }

var
  TheWindow : WindowPtr;           {Pointer to currently active window [3.1.1]}

procedure DoNew;

{ Handle New command. }

const
  windowID = 1000;                 {Resource ID for window template [3.7.1]}

var
  theData    : WDHandle;           {Handle to window's data record [Prog. 5-1]}
  dataHandle : Handle;             {Untyped handle for creating data record [I:3.1.1]}

begin {DoNew}

  TheWindow := GetNewWindow (windowID, NIL, WindowPtr(-1)); {Make new window from template [3.2.2]}

  SetPort (TheWindow);             {Get into the window's port [I:4.3.3]}
  TextFont (Geneva);              {Set text font [I:8.3.2, I:8.2.1]}

  dataHandle := NewHandle (SIZEOF(WindowData)); {Allocate window data record [I:3.2.1, Prog. 5-1]}
  SetWRefCon (TheWindow, LONGINT(dataHandle)); {Store as reference constant [3.2.4]}

  HLock (dataHandle);              {Lock data record [I:3.2.4]}

  theData := WDHandle(dataHandle); {Convert to typed handle [Prog. 5-1]}
  with theData^^ do
    {Initialize fields of data record};

  {Set global handles to scroll bar and edit record};

  HUnlock (dataHandle)             {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}

end; {DoNew}

```

Program 3-2 Make new window from template

When you're finished with a window, use `CloseWindow` or `DisposeWindow` [3.2.3] to destroy it. `DisposeWindow` frees all storage associated with the window, including that occupied by the window record itself. Use it if you had the Toolbox allocate the window record for

you (that is, if you set the `wStorage` parameter to `NIL` when you created the window). If you supplied your own storage for the window record, use `CloseWindow` to destroy the window instead. This frees the storage occupied by the window's auxiliary data structures (such as its structure, content, and update regions), but not by the window record itself. If you've been using the window's `refCon` field to hold a handle to some data on the heap (such as the window data record we're using in our example program), it's up to you to explicitly dispose of whatever the handle points to before you destroy the window.

As we'll see later, whenever the user clicks in a window's close box or chooses the Close menu command, our `MiniEdit` program calls one of its routines named `DoClose`, shown in Program 3-3. `DoClose`, in turn, calls either `CloseAppWindow` (shown here) or `CloseSysWindow` (shown in Chapter 4), depending on whether an application or system window is frontmost on the screen.

```
{ Global variable }
```

```
var
    TheWindow : WindowPtr;                                (Pointer to currently active window [3.1.1])
```

```
procedure DoClose;
```

```
    { Handle Close command. }
```

```
begin {DoClose}
```

```
    if FrontWindow = TheWindow then                        (Is the active window one of ours? [3.3.3])
        CloseAppWindow                                    (Close application window [Prog. 3-4, 7-2])
    else
        CloseSysWindow                                    (Close system window [Prog. 4-7])
```

```
end; {DoClose}
```

Program 3-3 Handle Close command

`CloseAppWindow` (Program 3-4) begins by calling the Toolbox routine `GetWRefCon` [3.2.4] to get the active window's reference constant. It typecasts the reference constant from a long integer to a handle, then uses the handle to gain access to the fields of the window data record. After disposing of the data record's contents, it proceeds to dispose of the data record itself and then of the whole window. (Notice that it isn't necessary to explicitly dispose of the window's scroll bar, since `DisposeWindow` automatically disposes of all of a window's controls.)


```

{ Global variable }

var
    TheWindow : WindowPtr;           {Pointer to currently active window [3.1.1]}

procedure CloseAppWindow;

{ Skeleton procedure to close application window. }

var
    theData    : WDHandle;           {Handle to window's data record [Prog.5-1]}
    dataHandle : Handle;             {Untyped handle for destroying data record [1:3.1.1]}
    thisWindow : WindowPtr;          {Pointer to window being closed [3.1.1]}

begin {CloseAppWindow}

    dataHandle := Handle(GetWRefCon(TheWindow)); {Get window data [3.2.4]}

    HLock (dataHandle);               {Lock data record [1:3.2.4]}
    theData := WDHandle(dataHandle);  {Convert to typed handle [Prog. 5-1]}
    with theData^^ do
        begin
            {Allow user to save window's text if necessary};

            {Close window's file, if any};

            {Dispose of window's edit record}

            end; {with}
        HUnlock (dataHandle);          {Unlock data record [1:3.2.4]}

    thisWindow := TheWindow;          {Save window pointer {DoActivate will change TheWindow}}
    HideWindow (TheWindow);           {Force deactivate event [3.3.1]}

    if GetNextEvent (ActivateEvt, TheEvent) then {Get deactivate event [2.2.1, 2.1.2]}
        DoActivate;                   { and handle it [Prog. 3-5, 5-14] }
    if GetNextEvent (ActivateEvt, TheEvent) then {Get activate event [2.2.1, 2.1.2] }
        DoActivate;                   { and handle it [Prog. 3-5, 5-14]}

    DisposHandle (dataHandle);         {Dispose of window data record [1:3.2.2]}
    DisposeWindow (thisWindow)         {Dispose of window [3.2.3]}

end; {CloseAppWindow}

```

Program 3-4 Close application window

There's a hitch, however. As we'll see in a minute, changing the window that's active (frontmost) on the screen ordinarily generates a pair of events to handle any special "housekeeping" associated with the transition: a deactivate event for the window becoming inactive and an activate event for the one becoming active. But when a window is destroyed with `CloseWindow` or `DisposeWindow`, the usual deactivate event never occurs (since the window it would refer to no longer exists). To make sure all the needed housekeeping is taken care of, we have to resort to a bit of chicanery.

First we hide the window we're about to destroy, bringing the next window behind it to the front of the screen and forcing a pair of deactivate/activate events to be generated. Then, using `GetNextEvent` [2.2.1] with an event mask [2.1.2] specifying activate/deactivate events only, we retrieve the two events and process them immediately instead of waiting to handle them later in the normal way, via our `DoEvent` routine. Once the window we're closing has been duly deactivated, we can safely dispose of it. (Notice, however, that in responding to the two events we will have changed the global variable `TheWindow` to point to the other window becoming active—so we have to save the original window pointer in a local variable, `thisWindow`, where it will still be available when the time comes to destroy the window.) Does all this strike you as an awful lot of work for so common a task as closing a window? Me too!

Window Types and Definition Functions

Each type of window has its own structure and appearance, which are determined by a *window definition function*. The Toolbox calls the definition function whenever it needs to perform any type-dependent operation on a window, such as drawing it on the screen or testing which of its regions the mouse was pressed in.

Window definition functions are normally kept in a resource file. When you create a new window, you specify its type by giving a *window definition ID*, either as the `windowType` parameter to `NewWindow` or as part of a window template to `GetNewWindow`. The definition ID is a coded integer that includes the resource ID of the definition function, along with some additional information. The Toolbox loads the definition function into memory from the resource file and stores a handle to it into the `windowDefProc` field of the window record.

Definition functions for the standard window types are kept in the system resource file (or in ROM on a Macintosh Plus), where they're available for any program to use. Unless you're defining your



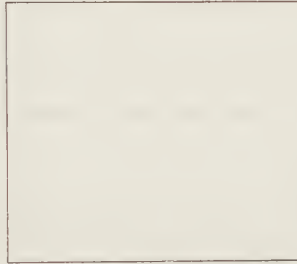
DocumentProc



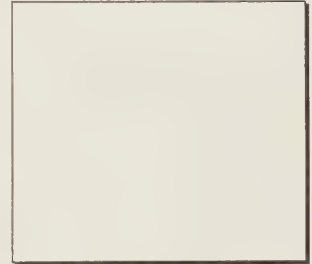
RDocProc



DBoxProc



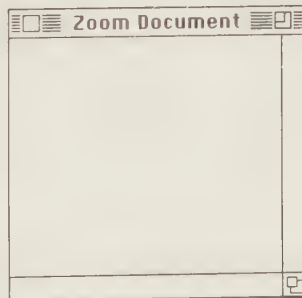
PlainDBoxProc



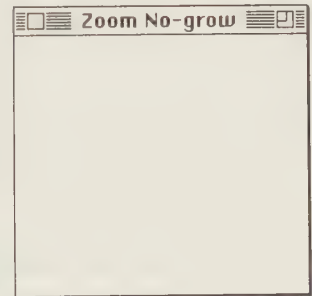
AltDBoxProc



NoGrowDocProc



ZoomDocProc



ZoomNoGrow

Figure 3-9 Standard window types

own window types, all you need to know are the definition IDs for the standard types. These are available as predefined constants [3.2.2], producing the standard window types shown in Figure 3-9:

- DocumentProc for a standard document window with no zoom box
- NoGrowDocProc for a document window with no zoom or size box
- DBoxProc for an alert or dialog box with a double border
- PlainDBoxProc for an alert or dialog box with a plain border
- AltDBoxProc for an alert or dialog box with a two-pixel “shadow”
- ZoomDocProc for a document window with a zoom box
- ZoomNoGrow for a document window with a zoom box but no size box
- RDocProc for an accessory window (a “rounded document window”)

If you use these built-in constants, the proper definition functions will be loaded and used automatically. If you want to write your own window definition functions, see Volume Three for further information.

Window Events

As the user manipulates windows on the screen, the Toolbox tracks the changes and reports them to your program via special *window events*. For instance, when the user clicks in an inactive window to bring it to the front, you get a *deactivate event* for the window that was previously active, followed by an *activate event* for the window becoming active. When part of a window that was previously covered becomes exposed on the screen, you get an *update event* telling you to redraw the newly exposed part of the window’s content region. Window events are detected in special ways and are never placed in the event queue like ordinary user events. However, they’re reported through the normal event mechanism, and you receive them the same way as any other event, by calling `GetNextEvent` [2.2.1].

Activate and Deactivate Events

Activate and deactivate events normally occur in pairs—one window gets deactivated and another activated at the same time. Pointers to the two windows are kept in a pair of system globals named `CurActivate` and `CurDeactivate`. When you ask the Toolbox for an event, it looks in these special locations and returns an activate or deactivate event if it finds either of them nonempty.

The Toolbox checks for activate and deactivate events *before* looking in the event queue, so these events take priority over all others. Since there's only one memory location for each of the two types of event, there can never be more than one activate and one deactivate pending at the same time. If there's one of each, the deactivate is reported first, so one window will become inactive before the other becomes active.

Actually, activate and deactivate events both have the same event type (activateEvt) in the what field of the event record [2.1.1]. You can tell them apart by looking at the low-order bit (bit 0) of the event's modifiers field, corresponding to the Toolbox mask constant ActiveFlag [2.1.5]. This bit will be 0 for a deactivate event or 1 for an activate event. The event's message field [2.1.4] contains a pointer to the window affected.

Program 3-5 (DoActivate) shows how our example program handles activate and deactivate events. For both types of event, it gets the window pointer from the event record and makes sure that window is the current port. Then it calls the Toolbox procedure DrawGrowIcon [3.3.4] to redraw the window's size region. (Recall that in a standard document window the size box is part of the content region, so redrawing it is your responsibility.)

```
{ Global variables }
```

```
var
  TheEvent : EventRecord;           {Current event [2.1.1]}
  TheWindow : WindowPtr;           {Pointer to currently active window [3.1.1]}
```

```
procedure DoActivate;

  { Skeleton procedure to handle activate or deactivate event. }
```

```
const
  changeFlag = $0002;              {Mask for extracting "change bit" from event modifiers}
```

```
var
  whichWindow : WindowPtr;          {Pointer to the window [3.1.1]}
```

Program 3-5 Handle activate or deactivate event


```

begin {DoActivate}

  with TheEvent do
    begin
      whichWindow := WindowPtr(message);           {Convert long integer to pointer [3.1.1]}
      SetPort (whichWindow);                       {Make window the current port [1:4.3.3]}

      DrawGrowIcon (whichWindow);                  {Highlight or unhighlight size box [3.3.4]}

      if BitAnd(modifiers, ActiveFlag) <> 0 then {Test activate/deactivate bit [1:2.2.2, 2.1.5]}
        begin
          TheWindow := whichWindow;                {Set global pointer}

          {Set global handles to scroll bar and edit record};

          {Activate window's scroll bar, text selection, etc.};

          if BitAnd(modifiers, changeFlag) <> 0 then {Coming from a system window? [1:2.2.2, 2.1.5]}
            {Take special action on return from a system window}
          end {then}
        end {then}
      else
        begin
          TheWindow := NIL;                        {Clear global pointer}

          {Clear global handles to scroll bar and edit record};

          {Deactivate window's scroll bar, text selection, etc.};

          if BitAnd(modifiers, changeFlag) <> 0 then {Exiting to a system window? [1:2.2.2, 2.1.5]}
            {Take special action on exit to a system window}
          end {else}
        end {with}
      end {with}
    end; {DoActivate}
  end;

```

Program 3-5 *(continued)*

The size region is drawn differently depending on whether the window is active or inactive (actually, on whether it's highlighted or not). An active document window displays the standard "grow icon" in its size box, while an inactive one just shows the outline of an empty box (see Figure 3-3). By calling DrawGrowIcon whenever a window is activated or deactivated, you allow the size region to change its appearance in step with the state of the window. Notice that you call DrawGrowIcon the same way for both activate and deactivate events: it always draws the size region according to the current state of the hilited flag in the window record.

Next, `DoActivate` examines the `ActiveFlag` bit of the event's modifiers field [2.1.5] to see whether the event is an activate or a deactivate. At this point you can take any further steps your application may call for. In the case of our example application, we set our global variables to point to the newly activated window (and its scroll bar and edit record), activate the scroll bar, and highlight the text selection. (A later version of `DoActivate` will show all these steps in detail.) On deactivating a window, of course, we do the reverse.

You might also want to take some special actions, such as enabling or disabling menu items, when control passes from one of your own windows to a system window or vice versa. Bit 1 (the next-to-last bit) of the modifiers field tells you when this happens. When one window is deactivated and another activated at the same time, the Toolbox sets this bit to 1 if one of the windows is a system window and the other belongs to the application, or to 0 if they're both system or both application windows. Program 3-5 shows how to test this bit and do any special processing that may be required. (Of course you can leave this test out if there's nothing special to do on the transition between system and application windows.)

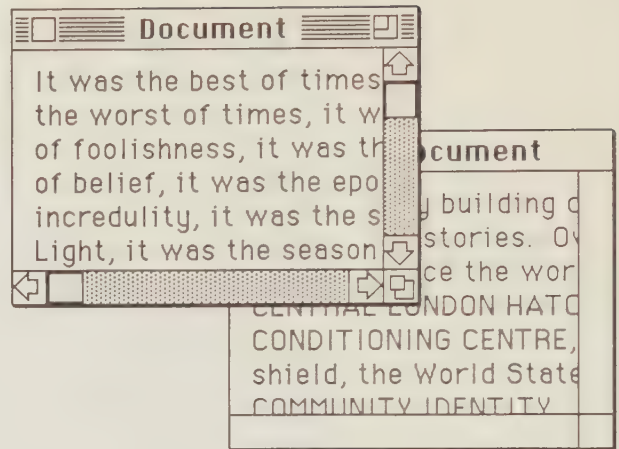
In recent versions of Apple's Toolbox interface files, the mask constant for testing the system/application transition bit, `ChangeFlag`, has been removed. The reason given is that the Toolbox was discovered not to be setting this bit reliably in all cases. Since no such problem has ever been detected with `MiniEdit`, we haven't removed the test on this bit from our `DoActivate` routine—although we now have to define the mask constant `changeFlag` for ourselves. Be advised, however, that programs that rely on this bit may occasionally run into trouble.

Update Events

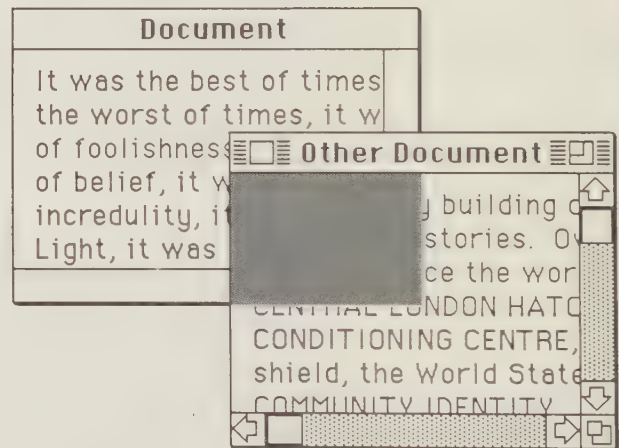
Whenever the user closes, moves, zooms, or sizes a window, the Toolbox checks to see which parts of this or other windows have been exposed to view and need to be updated (redrawn) on the screen. The Toolbox itself redraws the window's frame, but the content region is your responsibility. So the Toolbox generates an *update event* to notify your program when part of a window's content region needs redrawing.

To keep track of what needs updating, the Toolbox maintains an *update region* for each window. When part of a window is exposed to view, the Toolbox draws the exposed part of the frame and adds the

Before: Window in back is about to come to front; overlapping portion will have to be updated (redrawn).



During: Toolbox draws exposed part of frame; exposed part of content region (shaded box) is accumulated into update region, causing an update event.



After: Program finishes the job by drawing contents of update region.

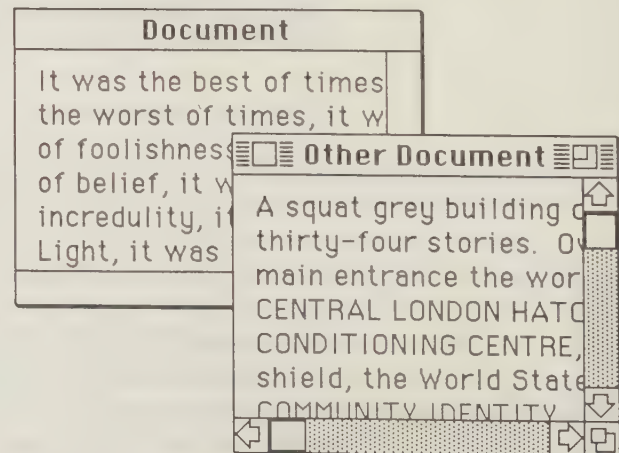


Figure 3-10 Update region

exposed part of the content region into the update region (see Figure 3-10). Then, when you ask for an event with `GetNextEvent` [2.2.1], it scans down the window list looking for a window whose update region is nonempty. If it finds one, it reports an update event for that window.

The Toolbox checks the event queue first and scans for updates only if the queue is empty, so all other events take priority over update events. Notice also that since the window list is scanned from the beginning, windows get updated in front-to-back order on the screen.

Update events have an event type of `updateEvt` in the `what` field of the event record [2.1.1] and a pointer to the window to be updated in the `message` field [2.1.4]. Program 3-6 (`DoUpdate`) shows the normal way of responding to such an event: make the window the current port, call `BeginUpdate`, redraw the window's contents, and finally call `EndUpdate` [3.4.1]. `BeginUpdate` saves a copy of the window's visible region, then temporarily restricts the visible region by intersecting it with the update region (see Figure 3-11). When you draw the window's contents, `QuickDraw` will automatically clip to this restricted region, so that only the part that really needs to be updated will actually be drawn on the screen. (You could just redraw the update region, but it's usually more convenient to draw the whole content region and let `QuickDraw` take care of the clipping.) For normal document windows, don't forget that the size box and scroll bars are part of the content region and must be included in your redrawing operation, as in the example.

After you're finished redrawing, `EndUpdate` restores the window's original visible region and empties the update region. This has the effect of "clearing" the update event, so that it won't be reported again the next time you call `GetNextEvent`. (Also notice in the example that `DoUpdate` is careful to save the previous current port on entry and restore it again before returning, since the window being updated isn't necessarily the active window.)

Be sure to balance every call to `BeginUpdate` with a corresponding call to `EndUpdate` when you're finished redrawing the window.


```

{ Global variable }

var
  TheEvent : EventRecord;           {Current event [2.1.1]}

procedure DoUpdate;

{ Skeleton procedure to handle an update event. }

var
  savePort    : GrafPtr;           {Pointer to previous current port [I:4.2.2]}
  whichWindow : WindowPtr;         {Pointer to window to be updated [3.1.1]}

begin {DoUpdate}

  GetPort (savePort);              {Save previous port [I:4.3.3]}

  whichWindow := WindowPtr(TheEvent.message); {Convert long integer to pointer [3.1.1]}
  SetPort (whichWindow);           {Make window the current port [I:4.3.3]}

  BeginUpdate (whichWindow);       {Restrict visible region to update region [3.4.1]}

  EraseRect (whichWindow^.portRect); {Clear update region [I:5.3.2]}

  DrawGrowIcon (whichWindow);      {Redraw size box [3.3.4]}
  {Draw window's controls};

  {Draw window's contents};

  EndUpdate (whichWindow);         {Restore original visible region [3.4.1]}

  SetPort (savePort)              {Restore original port [I:4.3.3]}

end; {DoUpdate}

```

Program 3-6 Handle update event

Sometimes you need to manipulate a window's update region yourself instead of letting the Toolbox do it for you. The routines `InvalRect` and `InvalRgn` [3.4.2] allow you to declare a rectangle or an arbitrary region of a window "invalid" (that is, not correctly displayed on the screen) by adding it to the update region to be redrawn. This is useful, for instance, for resizing a window: we'll see an example later in this chapter. Similarly, `ValidRect` and `ValidRgn` [3.4.2]

declare a rectangle or a region to be already “valid” and remove it from the update region. (Perhaps you’ve already redrawn the region for some reason and it doesn’t have to be drawn again.)

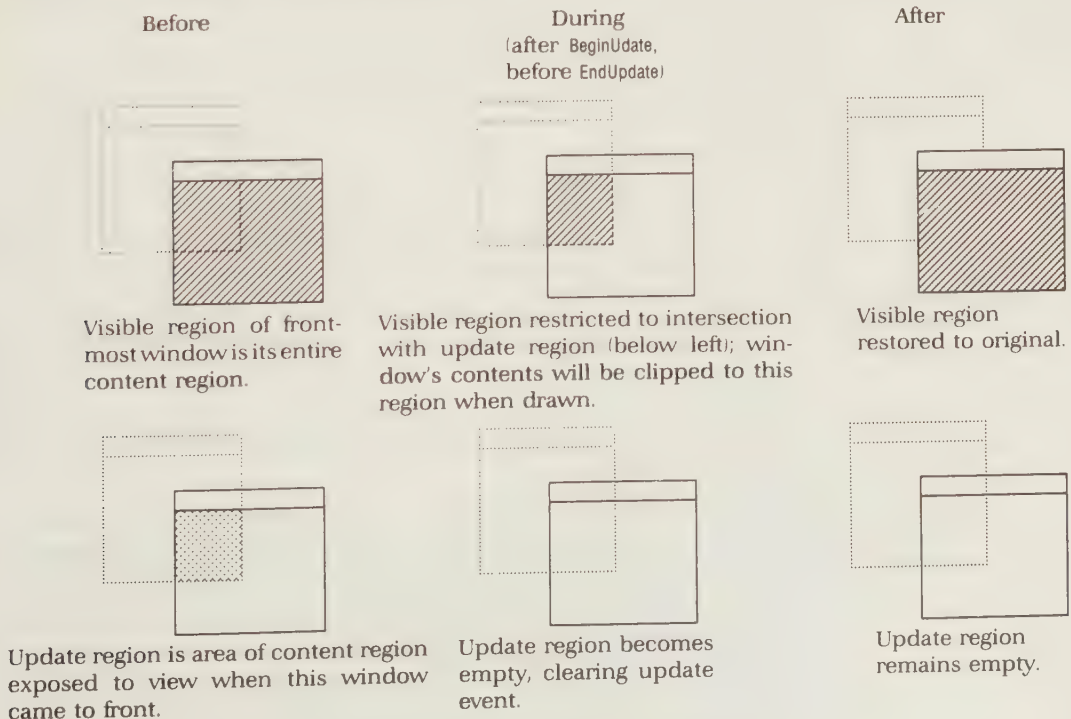
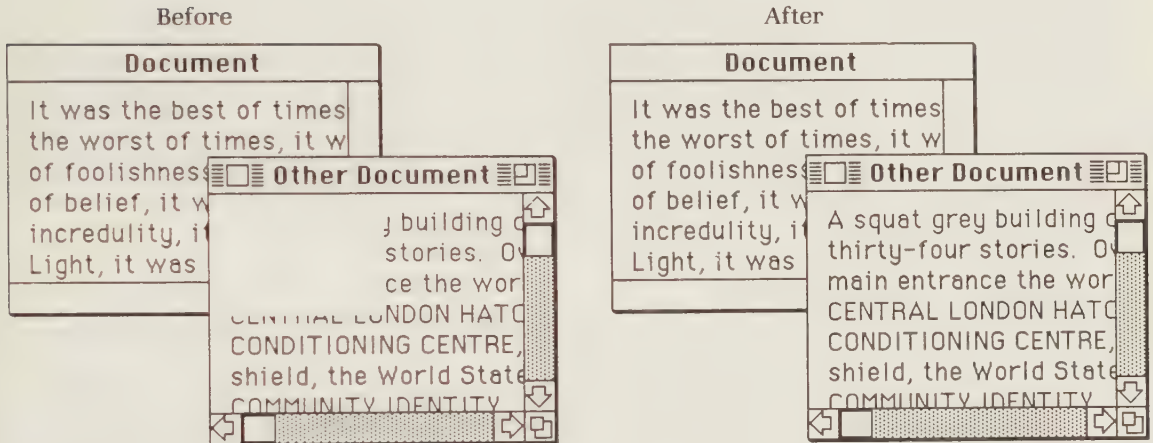


Figure 3-11 BeginUpdate and EndUpdate

Another option that's sometimes handy is that of supplying a *window picture* instead of redrawing the window with update events. Recall that a picture is a "transcript" of a series of calls to QuickDraw. A window picture consists of all the QuickDraw calls needed to draw the window's contents. If a window has a window picture, the Toolbox uses the picture to redraw the window when necessary, instead of generating an update event asking you to do it. This can save both space and time if the picture occupies less memory than the code and data needed to redraw the window yourself. A handle to the window picture, if any, is kept in the `windowPic` field of the window record; you can access it with `GetWindowPic` and change it with `SetWindowPic` [3.4.3].

Responding to the Mouse

Responding to the user's actions with the mouse is entirely your responsibility. The Toolbox provides all the routines you need to make your windows operate according to the standard Macintosh conventions, but it's up to you to call those routines at the right times to make the windows do what they're supposed to.

When the user presses the mouse button, you will receive a mouse-down event from `GetNextEvent` [2.2.1]. The first thing to do is call `FindWindow` [3.5.1] to find out where on the screen the button was pressed. You tell `FindWindow` the point where the mouse event occurred (in global coordinates, the same form in which you receive it in the `where` field of the event record). `FindWindow` gives back an integer called a *part code*, telling what part of the screen the given point lies in: the menu bar, a system window, one of your own windows, or just the gray background area of the screen (the desktop). If it's in one of your windows, the part code further tells whether it was in the window's content region, drag region, size region, zoom region, or close region, and the variable parameter `theWindow` returns a pointer to the window.

What to do next depends on what `FindWindow` tells you about where the mouse button was pressed. The Toolbox provides routines for all the standard cases except a click in the content region of one of your own windows, which is up to you to handle in whatever way your application calls for. Many of these Toolbox routines "track" the mouse, keeping control for as long as the user holds down the button and following the mouse's movements with some sort of visual feedback on the screen. When the button is released, the routine either

takes some standard action in response or passes back some information for you to act on.

All this is illustrated in Program 3-7 (DoMouseDown), the routine that handles mouse-down events for our example program MiniEdit. We use a **case** statement to decide what action to take, depending on the part code returned by FindWindow. If the part code is InDesk, there's nothing to do, so we just return without taking any action. Mouse presses in the menu bar (part code InMenuBar) are passed along to a MiniEdit routine named DoMenuClick, which we'll look at in Chapter 4. To handle a part code of InSysWindow, we call the Toolbox routine SystemClick [3.5.3]. This routine does whatever is needed to respond to a mouse press in a system window; typically it just passes the event on to the desk accessory displayed in the window to handle in its own way.

Any other part code means that the mouse was pressed somewhere in one of our own windows; how we respond depends on which window and which part of the window it was in. A part code of InContent means that the mouse press was in the window's content region: we'll postpone this case until our discussion of controls in Chapter 6, at which time we'll look at the MiniEdit procedure for such events, DoContent. For presses in the drag, size, zoom, and close regions, we call the MiniEdit procedures DoDrag, DoGrow, DoZoom, and DoGoAway, which are shown in the following programs.

```
{ Global variable }
```

```
var
    TheEvent : EventRecord;           {Current event [2.1.1]}
```

```
procedure DoMouseDown;
```

```
{ Handle mouse-down event. }
```

```
var
    whichWindow : WindowPtr;          {Window that mouse was pressed in [3.1.1]}
    thePart      : INTEGER;           {Part of screen where mouse was pressed [3.5.1]}
```

Program 3-7 Handle mouse-down event

```

begin {DoMouseDown}

    thePart := FindWindow (TheEvent.where, whichWindow); {Where on the screen was mouse pressed? [3.5.1]}

    case thePart of

        InDesk:
            {Do nothing};

        InMenuBar:
            DoMenuClick;                                {Handle click in menu bar [Prog. 4-3]}

        InSysWindow:
            SystemClick (TheEvent, whichWindow);        {Handle click in system window [3.5.3]}

        InContent:
            DoContent (whichWindow);                    {Handle click in content region [Prog. 6-1]}

        InDrag:
            DoDrag (whichWindow);                       {Handle click in drag region [Prog. 3-8]}

        InGrow:
            DoGrow (whichWindow);                       {Handle click in size region [Prog. 3-9]}

        InGoAway:
            DoGoAway (whichWindow);                    {Handle click in close region [Prog. 3-10]}

        InZoomIn:
            DoZoom (whichWindow, InZoomIn);            {Handle click in zoom region [Prog. 3-11]}

        InZoomOut:
            DoZoom (whichWindow, InZoomOut)            {Handle click in zoom region [Prog. 3-11]}

    end {case}

end; {DoMouseDown}

```

Program 3-7 *(continued)*

Program 3-8 (DoDrag) shows the response to a mouse press in a window's drag region (part code InDrag). Basically this routine just calls the Toolbox routine DragWindow [3.5.4], after a little preliminary work to set up one of its parameters. DragWindow keeps control for as long as the button is held down, displaying an outline of the window that the user can drag with the mouse, as shown earlier in Figure 3-4. When the button is released, DragWindow moves the window to its new location on the screen, generating all the needed update events for

```

{ Global declarations }

const
    MenuBarHeight = 20;           {Height of menu bar in pixels}
    ScreenMargin  = 4;           {Width of "safety margin" around edge of screen}

var
    TheEvent      : EventRecord;   {Current event [2.1.1]}
    ScreenWidth   : INTEGER;       {Width of screen in pixels}
    ScreenHeight  : INTEGER;       {Height of screen in pixels}

procedure DoDrag (whichWindow : WindowPtr);

    { Handle mouse-down event in drag region. }

var
    limitRect : Rect;              {Limit rectangle for dragging [1:4.1.2]}

begin {DoDrag}

    SetRect (limitRect, 0, MenuBarHeight, ScreenWidth, ScreenHeight);
                                         {Set limit rectangle [1:4.1.2]}
    InsetRect (limitRect, ScreenMargin, ScreenMargin); {Inset by screen margin [1:4.4.4]}

    DragWindow (whichWindow, TheEvent.where, limitRect) {Let user drag the window [3.5.4]}

end; {DoDrag}

```

Program 3-8 Mouse-down event in drag region

this and other windows. Since the window is moved automatically, there's no need to call `MoveWindow` [3.3.2] explicitly on return from `DragWindow`.

If the window being dragged is inactive, `DragWindow` will automatically activate it by calling `SelectWindow` [3.5.2]. This unhighlights the previously active window, brings the one being activated to the front of the screen, highlights it, and generates all the needed deactivate, activate, and update events. However, in keeping with the Macintosh User Interface Guidelines, `DragWindow` first checks the state of the Command key and doesn't activate the window if the key is down.


```

{ Global declarations }

const
  MinWidth      = 80;           {Minimum width of window in pixels}
  MinHeight     = 80;           {Minimum height of window in pixels}
  MenuBarHeight = 20;           {Height of menu bar in pixels}

var
  TheEvent      : EventRecord;   {Current event [2.1.1]}
  ScreenWidth   : INTEGER;       {Width of screen in pixels}
  ScreenHeight  : INTEGER;       {Height of screen in pixels}

procedure DoGrow (whichWindow : WindowPtr);

{ Handle mouse-down event in size region. }

var
  sizeRect : Rect;               {Minimum and maximum dimensions of window [I:4.1.2]}
  newSize  : LONGINT;            {Coded representation of new dimensions}
  newWidth  : INTEGER;           {New width of window}
  newHeight : INTEGER;           {New height of window}

begin {DoGrow}

  SetRect (sizeRect, MinWidth, MinHeight, ScreenWidth, (ScreenHeight - MenuBarHeight));
                                         {Set size rectangle [I:4.1.2]}
  newSize := GrowWindow (whichWindow, TheEvent.where, sizeRect);
                                         {Let user drag size region [3.5.4]}

  if newSize <> 0 then                   {Was size changed?}
    begin
      EraseRect (whichWindow^.portRect); {Clear window to white [I:5.3.2]}

      newWidth := LoWord(newSize);        {Extract width from low word [I:2.2.3]}
      newHeight := HiWord(newSize);       {Extract height from high word [I:2.2.3]}
      SizeWindow (whichWindow, newWidth, newHeight, TRUE);
                                         {Adjust size of window [3.3.2]}

      InvalRect (whichWindow^.portRect); {Force update of window's contents [3.4.2]}

      FixScrollBar;                      {Resize scroll bar [Prog. 6-10]}
      FixText                             {Resize text rectangle [Prog. 6-11]}

    end {if}

end; {DoGrow}

```

Program 3-9 Mouse-down event in size region

The `limitRect` parameter to `DragWindow` limits the window's movement on the screen. If the user moves the mouse outside this rectangle, the window's outline disappears from the screen; releasing the button at such a time cancels the drag operation and leaves the window where it was. If the mouse returns inside the limit rectangle while the button is still down, the window outline reappears and `DragWindow` continues to track. In Program 3-8, the limit rectangle is set up to include the entire desktop (excluding the menu bar), minus a 4-pixel margin around the edges. This prevents the user from dragging a window completely off the desktop, and guarantees that at least that many pixels of the window remain visible at all times, both horizontally and vertically. (The width of the screen margin can easily be adjusted by changing a single constant definition in the program.)

The response to a mouse press in a window's size region (part code `InGrow`) is shown in Program 3-9 (`DoGrow`). First we call the Toolbox function `GrowWindow` [3.5.4] to track the mouse as the user drags it. Like `DragWindow`, `GrowWindow` keeps control until the mouse button is released, displaying an outline of the window that follows the mouse's movements. In this case, however, the outline's top-left corner remains "anchored" while its size region (for a document window, the size box at the bottom-right) follows the mouse, as shown earlier in Figure 3-7.

The `sizeRect` parameter tells `GrowWindow` the limits on the window's dimensions. This rectangle's left and right fields give the window's minimum and maximum width, respectively, and top and bottom give the minimum and maximum height. `GrowWindow` will "pin" the window outline at these limits as the user drags it with the mouse. The minimum and maximum dimensions chosen in the example are arbitrary, of course; you can use whatever values make sense for your application.

When the button is released, `GrowWindow` returns a coded long integer representing the window's new size, with the height in the high-order word and the width in the low. (This is actually a point record masquerading as a long integer because of Pascal's silly restrictions on function result types.) `GrowWindow` doesn't actually adjust the window's size for you, just tells you the new size the user has requested (or 0 for no change). It's up to you to do the actual resizing by calling `SizeWindow` [3.3.2] explicitly, as shown in the example. After resizing the window, we have to call a couple of `MiniEdit` utility routines,

FixScrollBar and FixText, to adjust the window's scroll bar and contents to match the new size. These routines will be discussed in Chapter 6.

Resizing a window sometimes produces annoying visual effects on the screen, caused by various parts of the window's contents being redrawn at different times or in an inconvenient order. Program 3-9 shows one way to avoid these problems and ensure a visually "clean" transition. First we use `EraseRect` [1:5.3.2] to clear the entire port rectangle to the window's background pattern (normally white). Then, after resizing the window, we force its contents to be redrawn by adding the port rectangle into the window's update region with `InvalRect` [3.4.2]. Notice that the order of the calls is critical: the `EraseRect` must come *before* the call to `SizeWindow`, so that the *old* port rectangle will be cleared, while the `InvalRect` must come *after* `SizeWindow`, so that the *new* port rectangle will be redrawn.

```
{ Global variable }

var
    TheEvent : EventRecord;           {Current event [2.1.1]}

procedure DoGoAway (whichWindow : WindowPtr);

    { Handle mouse-down event in close region. }

begin {DoGoAway}

    if TrackGoAway (whichWindow, TheEvent.where) then {Track mouse in close region [3.5.4] }
        DoClose                                     { and close window if necessary [Prog. 3-3]}

end; {DoGoAway}
```

Program 3-10 Mouse-down event in close region

A mouse press in a window's close region (part code `InGoAway`) is handled by MiniEdit's `DoGoAway` routine, which passes control to the Toolbox routine `TrackGoAway` [3.5.4]. This tracks the mouse for as long as the user holds down the button, highlighting and unhighlighting the close region as the mouse moves into and out of it. (Exactly what it means to "highlight" the close region depends on the type of window, and is determined by the window definition function. For the standard

document window, the close box appears to “pop” like a bubble when the mouse is pressed inside it, as shown earlier in Figure 3-5.)

When the button is released, `TrackGoAway` returns `TRUE` or `FALSE`, depending on whether it was released inside or outside the close region. If the result is `TRUE`, we call our `DoClose` routine (Program 3-3) to close the active window, just as if the user had chosen `Close` from the menu. Since an application window is active, this will in turn call the `CloseAppWindow` routine that we looked at earlier (Program 3-4).

Finally, if the mouse is pressed in a window’s zoom region, our `DoMouseDown` routine (Program 3-7) will get back a part code from `FindWindow` of `InZoomIn` if the window is currently in the “zoomed-out” state, or `InZoomOut` if it’s currently “zoomed in.” `DoMouseDown` responds by passing the part code and window pointer to the `MiniEdit` routine `DoZoom`, shown in Program 3-11. Here we begin by calling the `Toolbox` routine `TrackBox` [3.5.4], which tracks the mouse in the window’s zoom

```
{ Global variable }

var
    TheEvent      : EventRecord;                {Current event [2.1.1]}

procedure DoZoom (whichWindow : WindowPtr; inOrOut : INTEGER);

{ Handle mouse-down event in zoom region. }

begin {DoZoom}

    with TheEvent do
        if TrackBox (whichWindow, where, inOrOut) then {Track mouse in zoom region [3.5.4]}
            begin
                EraseRect (whichWindow^.portRect);    {Clear window to white [1:5.3.2]}

                ZoomWindow (whichWindow, inOrOut, FALSE); {Zoom window in or out [3.3.2]}

                InvalRect (whichWindow^.portRect);    {Force update of window's contents [3.4.2]}

                FixScrollBar;                          {Resize scroll bar [Prog. 6-10]}
                FixText                                {Resize text rectangle [Prog. 6-11]}

            end {if}
        end; {DoZoom}
```

Program 3-11 Mouse-down event in zoom region

region just the way `TrackGoAway` does in the close region. If `TrackBox` returns `TRUE`, then the mouse was released inside the zoom region and we have to zoom the window. Since this will change the window's size, we use the same sequence of steps as in our earlier `DoGrow` routine (Program 3-9) to avoid annoying glitches on the screen: erase the old port rectangle, zoom the window, invalidate the new port rectangle to force redrawing, and finally adjust the scroll bar and text rectangle to the new size.

The Toolbox routine `ZoomWindow` [3.3.2] does the zooming for us. Along with a pointer to the window, `ZoomWindow` accepts a part code of `lnZoomIn` or `lnZoomOut` to tell it which way to zoom the window. It also takes a Boolean parameter telling whether to activate the window after zooming it. In our case the window will always be frontmost already and doesn't have to be activated again, so we'll just pass `FALSE` for this parameter.

Zoom boxes are drawn only by the new Macintosh Plus version of the standard window definition function, found in the Macintosh Plus ROM and in versions 3.0 or later of the System file. The earlier version of the definition function knows nothing about zoom boxes, and will treat the new window types `ZoomDocProc` and `ZoomNoGrow` as equivalent to the old `DocumentProc` and `NoGrowDocProc` [3.2.2]. You can achieve the same effect even with the newer version by setting the `spareFlag` field of the window record [3.1.1] to `FALSE`. This flag, "reserved for future use" by the original Toolbox, is used on the Macintosh Plus to enable or disable zooming. When `spareFlag` is `FALSE`, the new definition function will draw the window without a zoom box even if its window type calls for one. The region the zoom box would have occupied is now just part of the window's title bar; `FindWindow` [3.5.1] will report mouse clicks there with the part code `lnDrag` instead of `lnZoomIn` or `lnZoomOut`.

Our `MiniEdit` program uses this feature to disable zooming on older-model machines that don't support it. In the final version of `MiniEdit` (see Appendix H), our `Initialize` routine calls the Toolbox routine `Environs` [3.1.3] to find out what model of Macintosh we're running on, and saves the result in a global flag named `MacPlus`. Then, whenever we create a new window, our `DoNew` routine uses this information to set the window's `spareFlag` field accordingly. This ensures that our windows will never have zoom boxes on an older model machine, even if we're using a recent version of the System file containing the new definition function. Since `FindWindow` will never return a part code of `lnZoomIn` or `lnZoomOut`, we'll never call `DoZoom` (Program 3-11) and try to use the Toolbox routines `TrackBox` or `ZoomWindow` on a machine that doesn't have them.

Nuts and Bolts

One shortcoming of the DoNew routine we looked at earlier (Programs 3-1 and 3-2) is that every new window it creates will come up in exactly the same place on the screen. To keep them all from “stacking up” in that one spot, it’s better to offset each new window a small distance horizontally and vertically from the one before, so that they don’t overlap completely (see Figure 3-12). The method for doing this is simple in principle but a little trickier than you might imagine in practice.

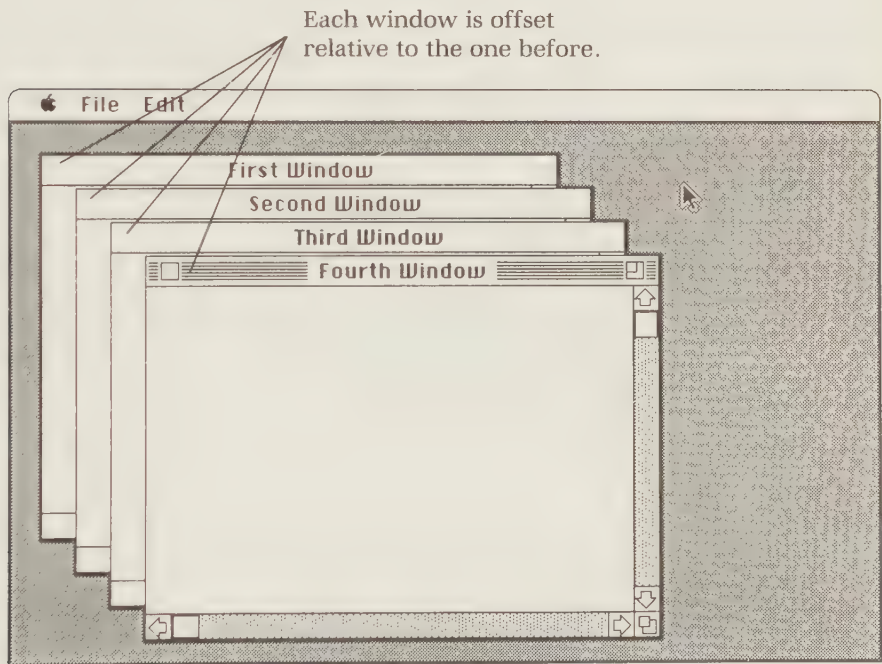


Figure 3-12 Offsetting windows

Program 3-12 (OffsetWindow) is the MiniEdit routine that offsets the location of each new window relative to the one before. (We’ll add a line to our DoNew routine to call OffsetWindow immediately after creating the window with NewWindow or GetNewWindow.) OffsetWindow gets the window’s dimensions from its port rectangle and performs a few straightforward calculations to find the maximum number of windows of that size that it can offset horizontally and vertically before running off the edge of the screen. Next it increments its running count of new windows created since the program was started up,

which it keeps in a global program variable (`WindowCount`) so that the count will be preserved from one execution of `OffsetWindow` to the next. Each new window's location on the screen is calculated modulo the horizontal and vertical maximum found earlier, so that on reaching the edge of the screen the windows will "wrap around" to the opposite edge and continue to offset. Finally the new window is moved to its offset location with `MoveWindow` [3.3.2].

The tricky part is that we don't want each new window to come up first at the original location and then jump visibly to its new, offset location. So we have to make the window initially invisible by setting the visible parameter to `NewWindow` (or the corresponding field of the window template supplied to `GetNewWindow`) to `FALSE`. Then, after calling the `OffsetWindow` routine to move the window to its offset location, we can make it visible with `ShowWindow` [3.3.1], causing it to appear for the first time at the proper location on the screen:

```
TheWindow := GetNewWindow (. . .);  
OffsetWindow (TheWindow);  
ShowWindow (TheWindow)
```

This is the actual series of calls we use in our final version of the `DoNew` routine (Program 5-2).

```

( Global declarations )

const
  ScreenWidth   = 512;           {Width of screen in pixels}
  ScreenHeight  = 342;           {Height of screen in pixels}
  MenuBarHeight = 20;            {Height of menu bar in pixels}
  TitleBarHeight = 18;           {Height of window title bar in pixels}

var
  WindowCount : INTEGER;         {Number of windows opened so far}

procedure OffsetWindow (whichWindow : WindowPtr);

  ( Offset location of new window. )

const
  offset = 20;                   {Screen offset from previous window, in pixels}

var
  windowWidth  : INTEGER;        {Width of window in pixels}
  windowHeight : INTEGER;        {Height of window in pixels}
  hExtra       : INTEGER;        {Excess screen width in pixels}
  vExtra       : INTEGER;        {Excess screen height in pixels}
  hMax         : INTEGER;        {Maximum number of windows horizontally}
  vMax         : INTEGER;        {Maximum number of windows vertically}
  windowLeft   : INTEGER;        {Left edge of window in global coordinates}
  windowTop    : INTEGER;        {Top edge of window in global coordinates}

begin {OffsetWindow}

  with whichWindow^.portRect do
    begin
      windowWidth := right - left;           {Get window dimensions from }
      windowHeight := bottom - top;           { port rectangle [1:4.2.2]}
      windowHeight := windowHeight + TitleBarHeight {Adjust for title bar}
    end;

  hExtra := ScreenWidth - windowWidth;       {Find excess screen width}
  vExtra := ScreenHeight - (windowHeight + MenuBarHeight); { and height }
  hMax := (hExtra div offset) + 1;           {Find maximum number of windows horizontally}
  vMax := (vExtra div offset) + 1;           { and vertically }
  WindowCount := WindowCount + 1;           {Increment window count}
  windowLeft := (WindowCount mod hMax) * offset; {Calculate offsets}
  windowTop := (WindowCount mod vMax) * offset;
  windowTop := windowTop + TitleBarHeight + MenuBarHeight; {Adjust for title bar and menu bar}

  MoveWindow (whichWindow, windowLeft, windowTop, FALSE) {Move window to new location [3.3.2]}

end; {OffsetWindow}

```

Program 3-12 Offset new window

REFERENCE

3.1 Internal Representation of Windows

3.1.1 Window Records



Definitions

type

```
WindowPtr    = GrafPtr;           {For drawing into window}
WindowPeek   = ^WindowRecord;     {For accessing window-specific fields}

WindowRecord = record
    port      : GrafPort;          {Graphics port for this window}
    windowKind : INTEGER;          {Window class (see notes 3-6)}
    visible    : BOOLEAN;          {Is window visible?}
    hilited    : BOOLEAN;          {Is window highlighted?}
    goAwayFlag : BOOLEAN;          {Does window have close region?}
    spareFlag  : BOOLEAN;          {Is zooming enabled?}
    strucRgn   : RgnHandle;         {Handle to structure region}
    contRgn    : RgnHandle;         {Handle to content region}
    updateRgn  : RgnHandle;         {Handle to update region}
    windowDefProc : Handle;         {Handle to window definition function}
    dataHandle  : Handle;           {Handle to definition function's data}
    titleHandle : StringHandle;     {Handle to window's title}
    titleWidth  : INTEGER;          {Private}
    controlList : ControlHandle;    {Handle to start of control list}
    nextWindow  : WindowPeek;      {Pointer to next window in window list}
    windowPic   : PicHandle;        {Handle to QuickDraw picture representing}
    {    window's contents (see note 16)    }
    refCon      : LONGINT;          {Reference constant (see note 10)}
end;
```

const

```
DialogKind = 2;      {Window class for dialog and alert boxes}
UserKind   = 8;      {Window class for application-created windows}
```



Notes

1. Use a WindowPtr to refer to the window as a graphics port (to draw into it with QuickDraw), a WindowPeek to refer to it as a window (to access the remaining fields of the window record).
2. port is a complete graphics port record [I:4.2.2] embedded within the window record (not just a pointer).
3. The window class (windowKind) is set by the Toolbox when the window is created. Negative values denote system windows, positive values those belonging to your program.
4. Positive window classes from 1 to 7 are reserved for windows created for you by the Toolbox. In particular, your own dialog or alert boxes have a window class of 2 (DialogKind).
5. Any positive window class above 7 denotes a window you've created for yourself with NewWindow or GetNewWindow [3.2.2]. Such windows initially have windowKind = 8 (UserKind), but you can change this for your own purposes to any value greater than 8.
6. For system windows containing desk accessories, windowKind is the accessory's driver reference number [I:7.5.5], which is always negative.
7. The visible flag tells whether the window is *logically* visible, even though it may be covered by other windows.
8. In the original Toolbox, spareFlag was an extra flag set aside for future use. On the Macintosh Plus, it's used to control the new zooming feature: TRUE to enable zooming, FALSE to disable. When zooming is disabled, all windows are drawn without zoom boxes, regardless of window type [3.2.2].
9. The handle to the window definition function (windowDefProc) is obtained when the definition function is read into memory from a resource file. (On the Macintosh Plus, the definition function for standard document, alert, and dialog windows resides in ROM.)
10. dataHandle is reserved for use by the window definition function in any way it chooses. (The Macintosh Plus version of the standard definition function uses it to hold the window's "zoomed-in" and "zoomed-out" positions; see [3.3.2, notes 10-12].) refCon is for your program's own use.
11. All windows are kept in a window list, linked together through their nextWindow fields in front-to-back order as they appear on the screen.

- 12.** The last (rearmost) window in the window list has `nextWindow = NIL`.
- 13.** In assembly language, the beginning of the window list is accessible in the global variable `WindowList`.
- 14.** Each window has a control list beginning in its `controlList` field and linked through the `nextControl` fields of the control records [6.1.1].
- 15.** A window with no controls has `controlList = NIL`.
- 16.** If `windowPic ≠ NIL`, the Toolbox will use this picture to redraw the window's contents when its image on the screen needs updating, instead of generating an update event.



Assembly Language Information

Field offsets in a window record:

(Pascal) Field name	(Assembly) Offset name	Offset in bytes
port	windowPort	0
windowKind	windowKind	108
visible	wVisible	110
hilited	wHilited	111
goAwayFlag	wGoAway	112
strucRgn	structRgn	114
contRgn	contRgn	118
updateRgn	updateRgn	122
windowDefProc	windowDef	126
dataHandle	wDataHandle	130
titleHandle	wTitleHandle	134
titleWidth	wTitleWidth	138
controlList	wControlList	140
nextWindow	nextWindow	144
windowPic	windowPic	148
refCon	wRefCon	152

Assembly-language constants:

Name	Value	Meaning
WindowSize	156	Size of window record in bytes
DialogKind	2	Window class for application's dialog and alert boxes
UserKind	8	Window class for windows created by application

Assembly-language global variable:

Name	Address	Meaning
WindowList	\$9D6	Pointer to first window in window list

3.2 Creating and Destroying Windows

3.2.1 Initializing the Toolbox for Windows



Definitions

```
procedure InitWindows;
```



Notes

1. InitWindows must be called before any other operation involving windows.
2. This routine initializes the Toolbox's window-related data structures, creates the Window Manager port [3.6.1], draws an empty desktop and menu bar, and starts an empty window list.
3. Before calling InitWindows, you must first call InitGraf [I:4.3.1] and InitFonts [I:8.2.4].



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal)

(Assembly)

Routine name

Trap macro

Trap word

InitWindows

_InitWindows

\$A912

3.2.2 Creating Windows



Definitions

function NewWindow

wStorage	: Ptr;	{Storage for window record}
windowRect	: Rect;	{Window's port rectangle in screen coordinates}
title	: Str255;	{Window's title}
visible	: BOOLEAN;	{Is window initially visible?}
windowType	: INTEGER;	{Window definition ID}
behindWindow	: WindowPtr;	{Window in front of this one}
hasClose	: BOOLEAN;	{Does window have a close region?}
refCon	: LONGINT)	{Window's reference constant}
	: WindowPtr;	{Pointer to new window}

function GetNewWindow

(templateID	: INTEGER;	{Resource ID of window template}
wStorage	: Ptr;	{Storage for window record}
behindWindow	: WindowPtr)	{Window in front of this one}
	: WindowPtr;	{Pointer to new window}

const

		{Standard window definition IDs: }
DocumentProc	= 0;	{Standard document window}
DBoxProc	= 1;	{Standard dialog or alert box}
PlainDBoxProc	= 2;	{Dialog or alert box with plain border}
AltDBoxProc	= 3;	{Dialog or alert box with "shadow"}
NoGrowDocProc	= 4;	{Document window with no size box}
ZoomDocProc	= 8;	{Document window with zoom box}
ZoomNoGrow	= 12;	{Document window with zoom box but no size box}
RDocProc	= 16;	{Accessory window}



Notes

1. NewWindow and GetNewWindow both create a new window, enter it in the window list, and return a pointer to it.
2. NewWindow takes its initialization information as parameters, GetNewWindow gets it from a window template in a resource file.
3. Both routines return a WindowPtr; to access the fields of the new window record, you can convert this pointer to a WindowPeek [3.1.1] by type-casting (Volume One, Chapter 2).

4. `templateID` is the resource ID of a window template, resource type 'WIND' [3.7.1].
5. `wStorage` is a pointer to the storage for the new window record; use `CloseWindow` [3.2.3] to destroy the window when no longer needed. If `wStorage` = NIL, storage will be allocated from the heap; use `DisposeWindow` [3.2.3] to destroy.
6. `behindWindow` determines the new window's plane on the screen. It will be inserted in the window list immediately following the designated window.
7. If `behindWindow` = NIL, the window goes behind all other windows; if `behindWindow` = `WindowPtr(-1)`, it goes in front of all others and becomes the active window.
8. `windowRect` is expressed in global (screen) coordinates, and will become the port rectangle of the new window's graphics port. The port's coordinate system is adjusted to place the top-left corner of this rectangle at local coordinates (0, 0).
9. `title` is the new window's title, and will appear in its title bar.
10. All other fields of the window's graphics port are given the standard initial values [I:4.3.2], except that its text font is the application font instead of the system font.
11. `visible` tells whether the new window is *logically* visible, even though it may be obscured by other windows. The window will be drawn on the screen if visible and exposed.
12. `windowType` is a coded integer (a *window definition ID*) that includes the resource ID of the window definition function. On the Macintosh Plus, the definition function for all the standard window types except accessory windows resides in ROM; on earlier systems (or for nonstandard window types), the definition function is automatically read into memory from its resource file. In any case, a handle to the definition function is placed in the `windowDefProc` field of the window record [3.1.1].
13. Use the built-in constants `DocumentProc`, `DBoxProc`, `PlainDBoxProc`, `AltDBoxProc`, `NoGrowDocProc`, `ZoomDocProc`, `ZoomNoGrow`, and `RDocProc` for the standard window types.
14. Accessory windows (window type `RDocProc`) have rounded corners, normally with a radius of 8 pixels. (That is, they're rounded rectangles [I:5.3.3] with a corner width and corner height, sometimes called "diameters of curvature," of 16.) The radius of the corners can be varied by adding an integer constant to the definition ID when creating the window:

Definition ID	Corner radius
RDocProc	8
RDocProc + 1	2
RDocProc + 2	3
RDocProc + 3	4
RDocProc + 4	5
RDocProc + 5	6
RDocProc + 6	10
RDocProc + 7	12

15. The new window's class (field `windowKind` of the window record [3.1.1]) will be set to `UserKind`, meaning that it was created directly by the application. You can then change this to a different value if appropriate.
16. `hasClose` specifies whether the new window has a close box (or other close region).
17. `refCon` is the initial value of the window's reference constant.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
NewWindow	<code>_NewWindow</code>	<code>\$A913</code>
GetNewWindow	<code>_GetNewWindow</code>	<code>\$A9BD</code>

Standard window definition IDs:

Name	Value	Meaning
DocumentProc	0	Standard document window
DBoxProc	1	Standard dialog or alert box
PlainDBoxProc	2	Dialog or alert box with plain border
AltDBoxProc	3	Dialog or alert box with "shadow"
NoGrowDocProc	4	Document window with no size box
ZoomDocProc	8	Document window with zoom box (Macintosh Plus only)
ZoomNoGrow	12	Document window with zoom box but no size box (Macintosh Plus only)
RDocProc	16	Accessory window

3.2.3 Destroying Windows



Definitions

```
procedure CloseWindow  
    (theWindow : WindowPtr);      {Window to destroy}  
procedure DisposeWindow  
    (theWindow : WindowPtr);      {Window to destroy}
```



Notes

1. Both routines destroy a window and remove it from the screen and the window list. All existing pointers to the window become invalid and must not be used again.
2. DisposeWindow frees all storage associated with the window; CloseWindow frees all except the window record itself.
3. Use DisposeWindow if you let the Toolbox allocate the window record (wStorage = NIL) when creating the window [3.2.2, note 5]. If you allocated your own storage for the window record, use CloseWindow and then dispose of the window record yourself if appropriate.
4. If you're using the window's reference constant (refCon) to hold a handle to auxiliary information about the window [3.2.4, note 4], be sure to dispose of the auxiliary information before destroying the window itself.
5. Both routines automatically destroy all controls associated with the window.
6. If this window covered any others on the screen, they will be updated. If it was the active (frontmost) window, the next-frontmost window will be activated. All needed update and activate events are generated automatically.
7. No deactivate event is generated for the window being destroyed, since the window no longer exists.
8. The trap macro for DisposeWindow is spelled `_DisposeWindow`.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
CloseWindow	__CloseWindow	\$A92D
DisposeWindow	__DisposWindow	\$A914

3.2.4 Setting Window Properties



Definitions

```

procedure SetWTitle
    (theWindow : WindowPtr;    {Pointer to the window}
     newTitle   : Str255);     {New title}

procedure GetWTitle
    (theWindow : WindowPtr;    {Pointer to the window}
     var theTitle : Str255);    {Returns current title}

procedure SetWRefCon
    (theWindow : WindowPtr;    {Pointer to the window}
     newRefCon : LONGINT);     {New reference constant}

function  GetWRefCon
    (theWindow : WindowPtr)    {Pointer to the window}
    : LONGINT;                 {Returns current reference constant}
  
```



Notes

1. SetWTitle sets a window's title; GetWTitle returns its current title via parameter theTitle. Always use these routines instead of manipulating the window's titleHandle field directly.
2. SetWRefCon sets a window's reference constant; GetWRefCon returns its current reference constant.
3. The reference "constant" (really a variable) is for your program's optional private use. You can give it any 4-byte value that makes sense to your program.

4. If you need more than 4 bytes of private data per window, allocate space for the data from the heap and store a handle to it as the reference constant. (Don't forget to deallocate this space before destroying the window!)



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
SetWTitle	_SetWTitle	\$A91A
GetWTitle	_GetWTitle	\$A919
SetWRefCon	_SetWRefCon	\$A918
GetWRefCon	_GetWRefCon	\$A917

3.3 Window Display

3.3.1 Showing and Hiding Windows



Definitions

```

procedure HideWindow
    (theWindow : WindowPtr);    {Window to hide}

procedure ShowWindow
    (theWindow : WindowPtr);    {Window to show}

procedure ShowHide
    (theWindow : WindowPtr;     {Window to show or hide}
     showFlag  : BOOLEAN);      {Show or hide?}
```



Notes

1. HideWindow makes a window invisible; ShowWindow makes it visible; ShowHide makes it visible if showFlag = TRUE, invisible if FALSE.

2. Always use these routines to make a window visible or invisible, instead of storing directly into the visible field of the window record.
3. Appropriate update events are generated for newly exposed parts of any windows.
4. Hiding an already invisible window or showing an already visible one has no effect.
5. The window's position and plane are unaffected. (*Exception:* Hiding the active (frontmost) window with `HideWindow` deactivates it and activates the next-frontmost window, if any. The activated window is highlighted automatically and the appropriate activate and deactivate events are generated. The activated window is brought to the front of the window list; if the hidden window is later shown again without being activated, it will no longer be frontmost.)
6. `ShowHide` never generates activate or deactivate events or changes the plane or highlighting of any window. Unless you're doing something unusual, you should normally use `HideWindow` and `ShowWindow` instead.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
<code>HideWindow</code>	<code>__HideWindow</code>	\$A916
<code>ShowWindow</code>	<code>__ShowWindow</code>	\$A915
<code>ShowHide</code>	<code>__ShowHide</code>	\$A908

3.3.2 Moving and Sizing Windows



Definitions

```

procedure MoveWindow
    (theWindow : WindowPtr; {Pointer to the window}
     hGlobal   : INTEGER;   {New horizontal position in screen coordinates}
     vGlobal   : INTEGER;   {New vertical position in screen coordinates}
     activate  : BOOLEAN);  {Activate the window?}

procedure SizeWindow
    (theWindow : WindowPtr; {Pointer to the window}
     newWidth  : INTEGER;   {New width}
     newHeight : INTEGER;   {New height}
     update    : BOOLEAN);  {Update the window?}

procedure ZoomWindow
    (theWindow : WindowPtr; {Pointer to the window}
     partCode  : INTEGER;   {Zoom in or out?}
     activate  : BOOLEAN);  {Activate the window?}

type
    WStateData = record
        userState : Rect;   {User ("zoomed-in") state}
        stdState  : Rect;   {Standard ("zoomed-out") state}
    end;
  
```



Notes

1. MoveWindow moves a window to a new location on the screen; SizeWindow changes its size; ZoomWindow "zooms" it out to cover the full screen or back to its original size and location.
2. All coordinates apply to the window's port rectangle.
3. For MoveWindow, hGlobal and vGlobal give the new location of the window's top-left corner, in *global (screen) coordinates*. The window's size remains the same.
4. For SizeWindow, newWidth and newHeight give the window's new dimensions in pixels. The location of the top-left corner remains the same.
5. For ZoomWindow, partCode should be the part code received from FindWindow [3.5.1], either InZoomIn or InZoomOut, telling in which direction to zoom the window.

6. The window being zoomed must be the current port.
7. If `activate = TRUE`, `MoveWindow` and `ZoomWindow` activate the window (bring it to the front); if `FALSE`, the window's plane is unchanged. `SizeWindow` never changes the window's plane.
8. If `update = TRUE` (the usual case), `SizeWindow` generates all needed update events by adding the newly exposed parts of any window's content region (including this one) to the window's update region. If `update = FALSE`, you have to handle the updating yourself, for instance by calling `InvalRect` or `InvalRgn` [3.4.2].
9. `SizeWindow` and `ZoomWindow` make all needed adjustments in the window's structure, content, and visible regions.
10. `ZoomWindow` alternates the window between a standard "zoomed-out" state and a user-controlled "zoomed-in" state. The rectangles defining the two states are kept in a record of type `WStateData`, located via a handle in the window record's `dataHandle` field [3.1.1].
11. By default, a window in the standard state fills almost the whole screen below the menu bar, with a small margin around the edge. If you wish, you can change this setting by storing directly into the `stdState` field of the `WStateData` record.
12. When a window in the standard state is moved or sized, the new size and location are automatically saved in the `WStateData` record as a new *user* state. Zooming the window will then return it to the original standard state. The user state should normally remain entirely under the user's control; don't store into the `userState` field yourself.
13. `ZoomWindow` is available only on the Macintosh Plus.
14. Don't startle the user with sudden jumps in a window's location or size. Ordinarily you should move, size, or zoom windows only in response to the user's mouse actions, using `DragWindow`, `GrowWindow`, or `TrackBox` [3.5.4].



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
<code>MoveWindow</code>	<code>_MoveWindow</code>	<code>\$A91B</code>
<code>SizeWindow</code>	<code>_SizeWindow</code>	<code>\$A91D</code>
<code>ZoomWindow</code>	<code>_ZoomWindow</code>	<code>\$A83A</code>

3.3.3 Front-to-Back Ordering



Definitions

```
function FrontWindow
    : WindowPtr;                {The currently active window}

procedure BringToFront
    (theWindow : WindowPtr);    {Window to bring to front}

procedure SendBehind
    (theWindow    : WindowPtr;  {Window to demote}
     behindWindow : WindowPtr); {Window to send it behind}
```



Notes

1. FrontWindow returns a pointer to the active window, the frontmost visible window on the screen.
2. BringToFront brings a window to the front of the window list and redraws it on the screen in front of all other windows; SendBehind “demotes” a window (sends it behind another) and redraws all portions of other windows that are exposed as a result.
3. If behindWindow = NIL, theWindow is sent behind all other windows on the screen.
4. Both BringToFront and SendBehind generate update events asking you to redraw the needed portions of all affected windows' content regions.
5. If you demote the active window, SendBehind generates the appropriate events to deactivate it and activate the next-frontmost window, and adjusts the highlighting of both windows accordingly. BringToFront, however, never generates any activate or deactivate events and doesn't affect the highlighting of any window.
6. You don't normally need to manipulate the plane (front-to-back ordering) of windows explicitly. Usually you activate a window by calling SelectWindow [3.5.2], which automatically brings the designated window to the front, sends the previously active window behind it, and generates all the needed window events.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
FrontWindow	_FrontWindow	\$A924
BringToFront	_BringToFront	\$A920
SendBehind	_SendBehind	\$A921

3.3.4 Window Highlighting



Definitions

```

procedure HiliteWindow
    (theWindow : WindowPtr;    {Window to highlight}
     onOrOff   : BOOLEAN);    {Highlight or unhighlight?}

procedure DrawGrowIcon
    (theWindow : WindowPtr);  {Window to draw size region for}
  
```



Notes

1. HiliteWindow highlights a window if onOrOff = TRUE, unhighlights it if FALSE.
2. DrawGrowIcon draws a window's size region ("grow icon"), which may vary in appearance depending on whether the window is highlighted or unhighlighted.
3. Call DrawGrowIcon when responding to an activate or deactivate event, to redraw the window's size region in order to reflect the change.
4. When responding to an update event, call DrawGrowIcon if the window's size region is part of the content region (as it is for standard document windows). If the size region is part of the window's frame, it's redrawn for you automatically.
5. Both routines call the window definition function to do the actual drawing. The definition function determines the window's appearance and the shape, location, and appearance of its size region, depending on the value of its hilited flag [3.1.1].

6. You don't normally need to highlight and unhighlight windows explicitly. Activating a window with `SelectWindow` [3.5.2] automatically highlights the window and unhighlights the one that was previously active.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
HiliteWindow	__HiliteWindow	\$A91C
DrawGrowIcon	__DrawGrowIcon	\$A904

3.4 Updating Windows

3.4.1 Update Processing



Definitions

procedure BeginUpdate
(theWindow : WindowPtr); {Window being updated}

procedure EndUpdate
(theWindow : WindowPtr); {Window being updated}



Notes

1. BeginUpdate and EndUpdate bracket a series of QuickDraw calls for redrawing a window's update region in response to an update event.
2. BeginUpdate saves the window's visible region, then restricts the visible region by intersecting it with the update region. Subsequent drawing with QuickDraw will be clipped to this restricted region.
3. EndUpdate restores the window's original visible region and sets the update region to empty, clearing the update event.
4. It's sufficient just to redraw the window's update region, but it's usually

more convenient to redraw the entire content region and let QuickDraw take care of the clipping.

5. Make sure every call to `BeginUpdate` is balanced by a corresponding call to `EndUpdate`.

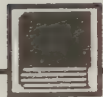


Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
<code>BeginUpdate</code>	<code>_BeginUpdate</code>	<code>\$A922</code>
<code>EndUpdate</code>	<code>_EndUpdate</code>	<code>\$A923</code>

3.4.2 Manipulating the Update Region



Definitions

- procedure** `InvalRect`
 (`badRect` : `Rect`); {Rectangle to add to update region}
- procedure** `InvalRgn`
 (`badRegion` : `RgnHandle`); {Region to add to update region}
- procedure** `ValidRect`
 (`goodRect` : `Rect`); {Rectangle to remove from update region}
- procedure** `ValidRgn`
 (`goodRegion` : `RgnHandle`); {Region to remove from update region}



Notes

1. These routines manipulate a window's update region by adding or removing a specified rectangle or region.
2. All operations apply to the window that's the current graphics port. Make sure the current port is a window!
3. The rectangle or region is expressed in local (window) coordinates.

4. `InvalRect` and `InvalRgn` declare a rectangle or region to be invalid—that is, its appearance on the screen doesn't reflect the true state of the desktop. The designated area is added to the window's update region so that it will be redrawn when the window is updated.
5. `ValidRect` and `ValidRgn` declare a rectangle or region to be valid—its appearance on the screen correctly reflects the true state of the desktop. The designated area is removed from the window's update region, since it doesn't need to be redrawn.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
<code>InvalRect</code>	<code>_InvalRect</code>	<code>\$A928</code>
<code>InvalRgn</code>	<code>_InvalRgn</code>	<code>\$A927</code>
<code>ValidRect</code>	<code>_ValidRect</code>	<code>\$A92A</code>
<code>ValidRgn</code>	<code>_ValidRgn</code>	<code>\$A929</code>

3.4.3 Window Pictures



Definitions

procedure `SetWindowPic`

<code>(theWindow : WindowPtr;</code>	<code>{Pointer to the window}</code>
<code>thePicture : PicHandle);</code>	<code>{Handle to its new window picture}</code>

function `GetWindowPic`

<code>(theWindow : WindowPtr)</code>	<code>{Pointer to the window}</code>
<code>: PicHandle;</code>	<code>{Handle to its current window picture}</code>



Notes

1. `SetWindowPic` sets a window's window picture; `GetWindowPic` returns its current picture.

2. The window picture is an alternative to update events for updating a window on the screen. If a window has a picture (`windowPic` \neq NIL in the window record [3.1.1]), the Toolbox uses the picture to redraw the window when necessary, instead of generating an update event.
3. A window picture is more efficient than using update events if the picture occupies less memory space than the code and data needed to redraw the window yourself.
4. Always use these routines instead of manipulating the `windowPic` field yourself.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
SetWindowPic	<code>_SetWindowPic</code>	\$A92E
GetWindowPic	<code>_GetWindowPic</code>	\$A92F

Assembly-language global variables:

Name	Address	Meaning
CurActivate	\$A64	Pointer to window awaiting activate event
CurDeactivate	\$A68	Pointer to window awaiting deactivate event

3.5 Responding to the Mouse

3.5.1 Locating Mouse Clicks



Definitions

function FindWindow

(mousePoint	: Point;	{Point where mouse was pressed, in screen coordinates}
var theWindow	: WindowPtr)	{Returns window the mouse was pressed in}
	: INTEGER;	{Part of the window where mouse was pressed}

const

InDesk	= 0;	{In desktop (screen background)}
InMenuBar	= 1;	{In menu bar}
InSysWindow	= 2;	{In a system window}
InContent	= 3;	{In content region of an application window}
InDrag	= 4;	{In drag region of an application window}
InGrow	= 5;	{In size region of an application window}
InGoAway	= 6;	{In close region of an application window}
InZoomIn	= 7;	{In zoom region of a "zoomed-out" application window}
InZoomOut	= 8;	{In zoom region of a "zoomed-in" application window}



Notes

1. FindWindow finds which window (or what other part of the screen) contains a given point, normally the point where the mouse button was pressed.
2. mousePoint should give the location of a mouse-down event, in *global (screen) coordinates*. This is the form in which the point is reported in the where field of the event record [2.1.1].
3. The variable parameter theWindow returns a pointer to the window the given point is in, if any.
4. If the point is in the menu bar or the desktop, theWindow is set to NIL.
5. The function result is a *part code* telling what part of the screen, or of a particular window, contains the given point.
6. FindWindow will never return a part code of InGrow for a window with no size region, InGoAway for one with no close region, or InZoomIn or InZoomOut for one with no zoom region.

7. In an inactive window, FindWindow considers a click in the close or zoom region to be in the title bar, and returns the part code `InDrag`; for a click in the size region, it returns `InContent`.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
FindWindow	<code>_FindWindow</code>	<code>\$A92C</code>

Part codes:

Name	Value	Meaning
<code>InDesk</code>	0	In desktop (screen background)
<code>InMenuBar</code>	1	In menu bar
<code>InSysWindow</code>	2	In a system window
<code>InContent</code>	3	In content region of an application window
<code>InDrag</code>	4	In drag region of an application window
<code>InGrow</code>	5	In size region of an application window
<code>InGoAway</code>	6	In close region of an application window
<code>InZoomIn</code>	7	In zoom region of a “zoomed-out” application window (Macintosh Plus only)
<code>InZoomOut</code>	8	In zoom region of a “zoomed-in” application window (Macintosh Plus only)

3.5.2 Window Selection



Definitions

```

procedure SelectWindow
    (theWindow : WindowPtr);      {Window to activate}
  
```




Notes

1. SelectWindow activates the designated window, after deactivating the one that was previously active.
2. The selected window is redrawn in front of all others on the screen, the highlighting of both windows is adjusted, and the appropriate deactivate and activate events are generated.
3. Call this routine when FindWindow reports that the mouse button was pressed inside an inactive window.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
SelectWindow	__SelectWindow	\$A91F

3.5.3 Click in a System Window



Definitions

```

procedure SystemClick
    (theEvent : EventRecord;    {Event to be processed}
     theWindow : WindowPtr;    {System window affected})
  
```



Notes

1. SystemClick processes a mouse-down event in a system window. Call it when FindWindow [3.5.1] returns a part code of InSysWindow.
2. SystemClick does all necessary processing to respond to the event, such as activating the window if it's inactive or tracking the mouse in its drag or close region.
3. If the window belongs to a desk accessory, mouse clicks in the content region are passed to the accessory for processing.

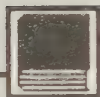


Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal)	(Assembly)	
Routine name	Trap macro	Trap word
SystemClick	_SystemClick	\$A9B3

3.5.4 Tracking the Mouse



Definitions

procedure DragWindow

(theWindow : WindowPtr;	{Pointer to the window}
startPoint : Point;	{Point where mouse was pressed, in screen coordinates}
limitRect : Rect);	{Rectangle limiting movement of window}

function GrowWindow

(theWindow : WindowPtr;	{Pointer to the window}
startPoint : Point;	{Point where mouse was pressed, in screen coordinates}
sizeRect : Rect)	{Rectangle limiting dimensions of window}
: LONGINT;	{New dimensions of window}

function TrackGoAway

(theWindow : WindowPtr;	{Pointer to the window}
startPoint : Point)	{Point where mouse was pressed, in screen coordinates}
: BOOLEAN;	{Close the window?}

function TrackBox

(theWindow : WindowPtr;	{Pointer to the window}
startPoint : Point;	{Point where mouse was pressed, in screen coordinates}
partCode : INTEGER)	{Zooming in or out?}
: BOOLEAN;	{Zoom the window?}



Notes

1. All of these routines keep control for as long as the user holds down the mouse button, tracking the movements of the mouse and providing

visual feedback on the screen; then they perform some action when the button is released.

2. Call `DragWindow` when `FindWindow` [3.5.1] reports that the mouse button was pressed in a window's drag region (part code `InDrag`); `GrowWindow` if it was pressed in the size region (`InGrow`); `TrackGoAway` if it was pressed in the close region (`InGoAway`); `TrackBox` if it was pressed in the zoom region (`InZoomIn` or `InZoomOut`).
3. `startPoint` should give the location of a mouse-down event, in *global (screen) coordinates*. This is the form in which the point is reported in the `where` field of the event record [2.1.1].
4. `DragWindow` follows the mouse with an outline of the window. When the button is released, the window is automatically moved to the new location: you needn't call `MoveWindow` [3.3.2] yourself.
5. If the window being moved isn't the active window, `DragWindow` activates it and brings it to the front unless the user is holding down the Command key.
6. `limitRect` is a rectangle in global coordinates. If the mouse leaves this rectangle, the window outline disappears from the screen; it will reappear if the mouse reenters the rectangle while the button is still down. If the button is released outside the rectangle, the window's position and plane are left unchanged.
7. `GrowWindow` displays an outline of the window with its size region following the mouse's movements. When the button is released, `GrowWindow` returns a long integer giving the new dimensions of the window.
8. The high-order word of the function result gives the new height of the window in pixels; the low-order word gives its width.
9. A result of 0 means the window's size is to be left unchanged.
10. `GrowWindow` doesn't actually adjust the window's size for you; you have to do it yourself by calling `SizeWindow` [3.3.2].
11. `sizeRect` sets limits on the window's dimensions. The left and right fields of this rectangle give the window's minimum and maximum width in pixels; top and bottom give its minimum and maximum height. As the user moves the mouse, the window's outline will "pin" at these size limits.
12. `TrackGoAway` and `TrackBox` highlight and unhighlight the window's close or zoom region, respectively, as the user moves the mouse into and out of the region (while holding down the button). The exact appearance of the close or zoom region when highlighted and unhighlighted is determined by the window definition function.
13. When the button is released, `TrackGoAway` returns `TRUE` if the mouse is inside the close region, `FALSE` if it isn't. If `TRUE`, you can then make the window invisible with `HideWindow` [3.3.1] or destroy it with `CloseWindow` or

DisposeWindow [3.2.3], depending on the needs of your application; TrackGoAway doesn't do any of this for you.

14. Similarly, TrackBox returns TRUE or FALSE, depending on whether the mouse was released inside or outside the zoom region. If the result is TRUE, you should then call ZoomWindow [3.3.2] to zoom the window.
15. The partCode parameter to TrackBox should be the part code received from FindWindow [3.5.1]: either InZoomIn or InZoomOut, telling in which direction to zoom the window.
16. TrackBox is available only on the Macintosh Plus.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
DragWindow	__DragWindow	\$A925
GrowWindow	__GrowWindow	\$A92B
TrackGoAway	__TrackGoAway	\$A91E
TrackBox	__TrackBox	\$A83B

3.6 Nuts and Bolts

3.6.1 Nuts and Bolts



Definitions

```
procedure GetWMgrPort
    (var wMgrPort : GrafPtr);    {Returns pointer to Window Manager port}
```



Notes

1. GetWMgrPort returns a pointer to the Window Manager port, the graphics port in which the Toolbox draws all window frames. The port rectangle of this port is the entire screen.
2. In assembly language, a pointer to the Window Manager port is available in the global variable WMgrPort. Global variable GrayRgn holds a handle to the rounded-corner region defining the gray desktop within this port.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

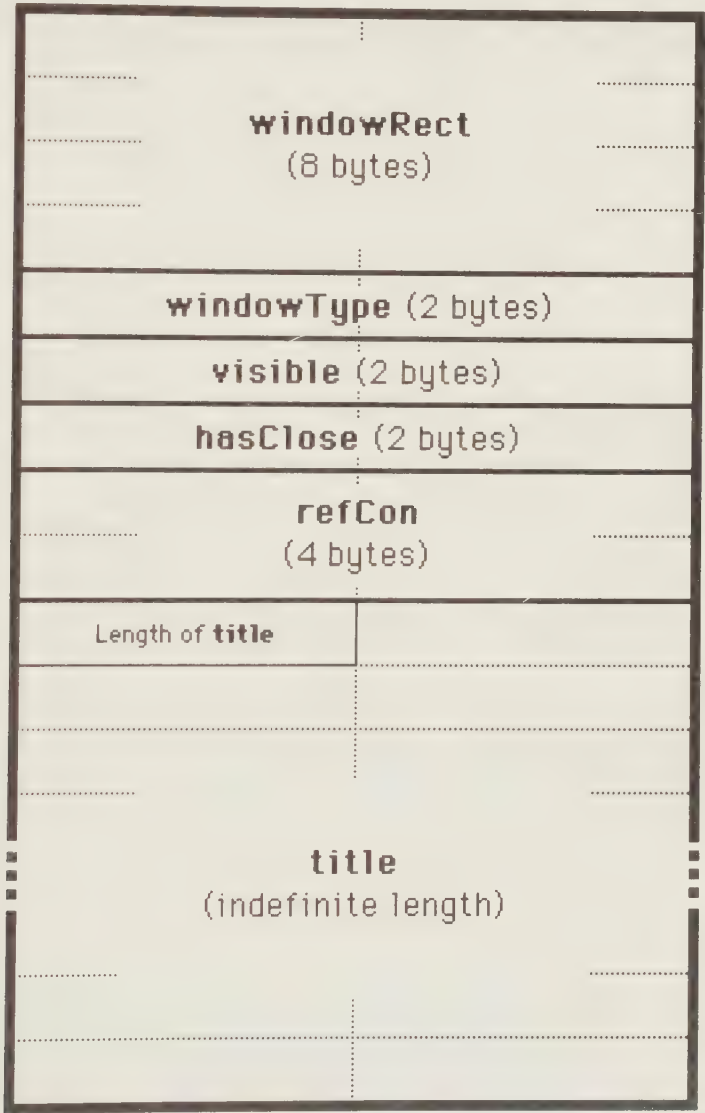
(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
GetWMgrPort	_GetWMgrPort	\$A910

Assembly-language global variables:

Name	Address	Meaning
WMgrPort	\$9DE	Pointer to Window Manager port
GrayRgn	\$9EE	Handle to region defining gray desktop

3.7 Window-Related Resources

3.7.1 Resource Type 'WIND'

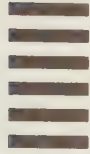




Notes

1. A resource of type 'WIND' contains a window template.
2. All fields of the window template are in the same form as the corresponding parameters to `NewWindow` [3.2.2].
3. The window title is in Pascal string form, with a 1-byte length count followed by the characters of the title. The overall size of the window template depends on the length of the title string.
4. To create a window from a window template, call `GetNewWindow` [3.2.2] with the template's resource ID.

CHAPTER



4



What's on the Menu?

Macintosh's "pulldown" menus are in keeping with the overall Macintosh philosophy of keeping the user in control. Macintosh menus don't take over the screen and demand attention; they wait patiently, hidden under the menu bar, ready to spring to life at a click of the mouse. They free the user from having to remember cryptic command sequences to be typed from the keyboard. They're easy to back out of if you change your mind. And they serve as an on-screen reminder of what operations are available from moment to moment.


Naturally, the User Interface Toolbox includes a full set of facilities for working with menus. In this chapter, you'll learn how to define your own menus, display them on the screen, and put them at the user's disposal to control the operation of your program.

Anatomy of a Menu

Most of the time, all that's visible to the user in the way of menus is the *menu bar* at the top of the screen, listing the titles of the available menus. By pressing and holding down the mouse button over one of these titles, the user can "pull down" the menu itself, which offers a list of *items* to choose from. Dragging the mouse down the menu with the button still down causes one item after another to become highlighted on the screen. When the button is released, the currently

highlighted item will take effect; this is called *choosing* an item. (Notice that choosing is not the same as selecting in Macintosh terminology: you select something to work on, then choose an operation to apply to it.) If no item is highlighted when the button is released—for instance, if the mouse has moved outside the frame of the menu—then the menu just vanishes harmlessly from the screen.

A new feature on the Macintosh Plus allows menus to contain more items than can be displayed on the screen at once (currently 19 items). If a menu is longer than this, dragging the mouse out the top or bottom while holding down the button causes the menu to scroll automatically like a window, bringing more items into view. Since this behavior is actually part of the menu definition procedure (see next paragraph) rather than the Toolbox, it's also available on older-model machines using version 3.0 or later of the System file.



Like windows, menus can come in various types. The appearance and behavior of any given type of menu are defined by a *menu definition procedure*, which the Toolbox calls whenever it needs to draw the menu on the screen or make it respond to the mouse. Menu definition procedures are kept in resource files under resource type 'MDEF'. Unless you're doing something very unusual, you'll just want to use the standard type of *text menu*, whose definition procedure is found in the system resource file (or in ROM on a Macintosh Plus). The Toolbox will always assume you want a text menu unless you explicitly tell it otherwise. All descriptions in this chapter apply specifically to standard text menus; if you want to define other menu types for special needs, see Volume Three.

Figure 4-1 shows a typical text menu. Each item consists of a separate line of text, displayed in the standard system font. Items that aren't applicable at any given moment are “dimmed” (displayed in gray instead of black) to show that they can't be chosen. Such items are said to be *disabled*, and don't highlight when pointed at with the mouse; those that can be chosen are *enabled*. For example, the menu shown in the figure has the Cut and Copy items disabled, presumably because there is nothing currently selected to cut or copy.

A program can define an optional *keyboard alias* for any menu item, for the convenience of users who are fast with their fingers. This is a combination of the Command key together with some other

key, with which the user can invoke the item from the keyboard instead of choosing it with the mouse. The alias, if there is one, is displayed to the right of the item on the menu, preceded by the “cloverleaf” command symbol. For instance, in Figure 4-1 the Undo command has the keyboard alias Command-Z, while Show Clipboard has no alias.

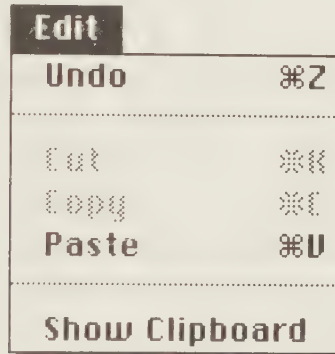


Figure 4-1 Standard menu

Keyboard aliases are purely an added convenience for the user, and are strictly optional. They're especially useful in keyboard-intensive applications such as word processing, to reduce the amount of hand motion between keyboard and mouse. The Command key should never be the only way to perform an operation; the user should always have the option of choosing the command from a menu in the usual way.

Although the text of a menu item is always shown in the standard system font, you can vary its appearance with character style attributes such as bold, italic, or outline (see Figure 4-2). You can also mark any item with a *check mark*, as in the figure. This is useful for items that control a two-way, on-or-off setting of some kind; the presence or absence of a check mark displays the current setting visually on the screen. (Actually you can mark an item with any character you like, but the check mark is by far the most common.)

One last capability that's available, though seldom used, is to associate a 32-by-32-bit icon with any menu item. If an item has an icon, it appears to the left of the item's text on the menu; the check mark, if any, goes to the left of the icon.

Style	
Plain Text	⌘P
✓ Bold	⌘B
<i>Italic</i>	⌘I
<u>Underline</u>	⌘U
✓ Outline	⌘O
Shadow	⌘S

Figure 4-2 Character style and check marks

Menu Records

To define a new menu, you can either build one up “from scratch,” starting with an empty menu and adding items one by one, or you can read in a predefined menu from a resource file. In either case, the Toolbox allocates heap space for a *menu record* [4.1.1] and gives you back a handle to it. The fields of this record hold all the information about one particular menu. In general, you should use Toolbox routines to read or change the information in a menu record, rather than manipulate the record's fields directly. (The one exception is the *menuProc* field, as described below.)

Every menu has an identifying number called a *menu ID*, kept in the *menuID* field of the menu record. You supply the menu ID when you create a new menu. Once assigned, the ID for a given menu should never change: don't ever attempt to store a new value into the *menuID* field. If you follow the recommended practice of predefining your menus and reading them in as resources, the menu ID is simply the resource ID of the menu (under resource type 'MENU' [4.8.1]) in the resource file. For menus that your program builds for itself, you can choose any positive number you like for the menu ID. (Negative IDs are reserved for menus belonging to desk accessories; a menu ID

of 0 isn't allowed.) Needless to say, no two menus should ever have the same menu ID.

The Toolbox maintains a private data structure representing the menu bar, containing handles to all menus currently available to the user. (Technically this is called the *menu list*, but it's usually just referred to as "the menu bar.") Not all menus have to be in the menu bar at all times. A menu in the menu bar is said to be *active*; if it isn't in the menu bar, it's *inactive*. Toolbox routines that apply specifically to active menus generally accept a menu ID as an argument and scan the menu bar for a menu that matches it. Those that can apply to any menu, whether active or inactive, expect a handle to the menu in memory rather than an ID number.

The `menuWidth` and `menuHeight` fields of the menu record give the menu's screen dimensions in pixels. These dimensions depend on the number of items in the menu, their length, whether they have keyboard aliases, icons, check marks, and so on. The Toolbox itself recalculates the dimensions whenever you change the contents of the menu, so you can normally just ignore these fields. If for some reason you ever want to recalculate a menu's dimensions explicitly, you can use the Toolbox routine `CalcMenuSize` [4.7.1].

`menuProc` is a handle to the menu definition procedure, which will almost always be the one for the standard type of text menu. When you read in a menu from a resource file, the Toolbox also reads in the definition procedure (if it isn't already in memory) and stores a handle to it into this field. When you create an empty menu to build from scratch, `menuProc` is automatically set to the standard definition procedure; in those rare cases where you want to use some other definition procedure instead, you have to store its handle into this field yourself after creating the menu.

`enableFlags` is a 32-bit field that controls whether the items on the menu are enabled or disabled. Each bit except the last, reading from right to left, corresponds to a single item: 1 if the item is enabled, 0 if it's disabled. (This means that you can't enable or disable individual items in menus with more than 31 items.) The last (low-order) bit applies to the menu as a whole rather than any single item. When this bit is 0, it overrides all the others: every item on the menu is disabled, regardless of its own individual enable flag.

Always use the Toolbox routines `EnableItem` and `DisableItem` [4.6.2] instead of manipulating the enable flags yourself.

The most important field of a menu record is `menuData`, which defines the text and other properties of all the items in the menu [4.1.1]. From the Pascal point of view, the `menuData` field just looks like a string giving the title of the menu, with a 1-byte character count followed by the characters of the title itself. The information defining the individual menu items is “hidden” beyond the end of the title string, where only the Toolbox can get at it. The only way to access or change this information is to call the appropriate Toolbox routines and let the Toolbox do it for you.

Never store a menu title directly into the `menuData` field; this will destroy the “hidden” information about the items the menu contains.

Building Menus

The first step in using menus is to define your menus and install them in the menu bar. As we've already mentioned, there are two ways of doing this. In this section, we'll learn how to build up menus “from scratch”; later we'll see how to read them in as predefined resources.

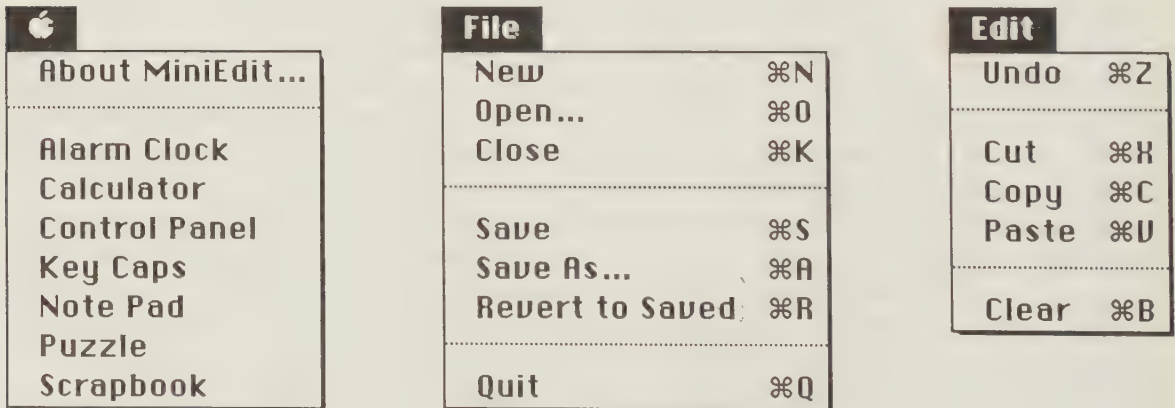


Figure 4-3 MiniEdit menus

Figure 4-3 shows the menus used by our example program MiniEdit. These three menus are considered standard; by convention,

it's recommended that every Macintosh application start with these same three menus (or something like them) at the beginning of the menu bar. The first is the "Apple menu," containing the names of all available desk accessories. Then come the File menu, with commands for opening and closing windows and reading and writing documents, and the Edit menu, which includes the standard editing commands Cut, Copy, Paste, Clear, and Undo. Any application that supports desk accessories must include these editing commands even if it doesn't use them itself, since some of the accessories expect them to be available. (We'll see later how such menu commands get passed to the desk accessory whenever one is active.) After the Apple, File, and Edit menus, you can add any others you may need for your own purposes.

Starting the menu bar with the three standard menus is only a general recommendation, not an ironclad rule. If they don't make sense for a particular application, you can of course leave them out: a program that doesn't support desk accessories or use any of the standard filing operations might omit them all.

In our MiniEdit program, the job of defining the menus is handled by a procedure named `SetUpMenus`. The menus only have to be defined once, at the beginning of the program, so `SetUpMenus` is called from our one-time `Initialize` routine (Program 2-6). Before attempting any operation involving menus, you first have to call the initialization procedure `InitMenus` [4.2.1], which in turn must be preceded by calls to `InitGraf` [I:4.3.1], `InitFonts` [I:8.2.4], and `InitWindows` [3.2.1]. Our `Initialize` procedure will already have taken care of these preliminary calls by the time it calls `SetUpMenus`.

Program 4-1 shows a version of `SetUpMenus` that builds the menus from scratch. The Apple menu is atypical and requires special treatment, so we'll discuss the File and Edit menus first and come back to the Apple menu later. After defining these three standard menus, `SetUpMenus` could of course go on to build any further menus a particular application might need.

To build a menu from scratch, we begin by creating a brand-new, empty menu with `NewMenu` [4.2.2], then add the items to it one by one. `NewMenu` accepts an integer menu ID and a string defining the menu's title; it allocates heap space for a new menu record and returns a handle to it. As mentioned earlier, menus that a program builds for itself can have any positive ID number. By convention, the

Apple menu has an ID of 1, so we might as well use IDs 2 and 3 for the File and Edit menus, respectively.

Once you've created a new menu, you can use `AppendMenu` or `InsMenuitem` [4.3.1] to add items to it. `AppendMenu` always adds new items at the end; `InsMenuitem` can add them anywhere in the menu. (There's also a Toolbox routine named `DelMenuitem` [4.3.1] for deleting existing items from a menu.)

Along with a handle to the menu, `AppendMenu` and `InsMenuitem` accept a *defining string* describing the item to be added. In its simplest form, the defining string is just the text of the item as you want it to appear on the menu. For example, in Program 4-1, the statement

```
AppendMenu (FileMenu, 'New')
```

adds an item to the File menu consisting of the word New, initially enabled, with no icon, check mark, keyboard alias, or fancy character style.

The text of a menu item must always include at least one character; the null string is not allowed. If you want to leave a blank line in a menu, you have to use an item consisting of one or more space characters:

```
AppendMenu (anyMenu, ' ')
```

```
{ Global constants and variables }
```

```
const
```

```
    AppleID = 1;                {Menu ID for Apple menu}
    FileID  = 2;                {Menu ID for File menu}
    EditID  = 3;                {Menu ID for Edit menu}
```

```
var
```

```
    AppleMenu : MenuHandle;     {Handle to Apple menu [4.1.1]}
    FileMenu  : MenuHandle;     {Handle to File menu [4.1.1]}
    EditMenu  : MenuHandle;     {Handle to Edit menu [4.1.1]}
```

Program 4-1 Set up menus by direct definition


```
procedure SetUpMenus;
```

```
{ Procedure to set up menus by direct definition. }
```

```
var
```

```
appleTitle : Str255; {Title for Apple menu [I:2.1.1]}
```

```
begin (SetUpMenus)
```

```
appleTitle := '0'; {Set up title for Apple menu }
appleTitle[1] := CHR(AppleMark); { with special Apple symbol [I:8.1.1]}
```

```
AppleMenu := NewMenu (AppleID, appleTitle); {Make Apple menu [4.2.2]}
AppendMenu (AppleMenu, 'About MiniEdit...'); {Add items [4.3.1]}
AppendMenu (AppleMenu, '(------)');
AddResMenu (AppleMenu, 'DRVVR'); {Add names of available desk accessories [4.3.3]}
InsertMenu (AppleMenu, 0); {Install at end of menu bar [4.4.1]}
```

```
FileMenu := NewMenu (FileID, 'File'); {Make File menu [4.2.2]}
AppendMenu (FileMenu, 'New'); {Add items [4.3.1]}
AppendMenu (FileMenu, 'Open...');
AppendMenu (FileMenu, 'Close');
AppendMenu (FileMenu, '(------)');
AppendMenu (FileMenu, 'Save');
AppendMenu (FileMenu, 'Save As...');
AppendMenu (FileMenu, 'Revert to Saved');
AppendMenu (FileMenu, '(------)');
AppendMenu (FileMenu, 'Quit/Q');
InsertMenu (FileMenu, 0); {Install at end of menu bar [4.4.1]}
```

```
EditMenu := NewMenu (EditID, 'Edit'); {Make Edit menu [4.2.2]}
AppendMenu (EditMenu, 'Undo/Z'); {Add items [4.3.1]}
AppendMenu (EditMenu, '(------)');
AppendMenu (EditMenu, 'Cut/X');
AppendMenu (EditMenu, 'Copy/C');
AppendMenu (EditMenu, 'Paste/V');
AppendMenu (EditMenu, '(------)');
AppendMenu (EditMenu, 'Clear/B');
InsertMenu (EditMenu, 0); {Install at end of menu bar [4.4.1]}
```

```
{Insert code here to define any other needed menus};
```

```
DrawMenuBar {Show new menu bar on screen [4.4.3]}
```

```
end; (SetUpMenus)
```

To exercise more control over an item's properties, you can include *modifier characters* [4.3.2] in the defining string you give to `AppendMenu` or `InsMenuItem`. For instance, a left parenthesis as the first character of the defining string tells the Toolbox that the item you're defining should be disabled rather than enabled. In Program 4-1, the statement

```
AppendMenu (FileMenu, '(------')
```

defines an item just consisting of a row of dashes, to serve as a separator between different sections of the menu. Since this is not intended to be a meaningful menu item in itself, we use a left parenthesis as a modifier character to disable it; this makes the item appear “dimmed” on the menu and prevents the user from choosing it with the mouse.

Similarly, the modifier character / (slash) introduces a keyboard alias for the item being defined. The statement

```
AppendMenu (EditMenu, 'Cut/X')
```

defines a menu item whose text is the word `Cut`, with `Command-X` as a keyboard alias. The alias will be displayed to the right of the item on the menu, preceded by the command symbol, as we saw earlier in Figure 4-1.

As shown in Program 4-1, the first four keys in the bottom row of the keyboard (ZXCv in the standard American layout) are reserved by convention as keyboard aliases for the standard editing commands `Undo`, `Cut`, `Copy`, and `Paste`, respectively. To conform to the Macintosh User Interface Guidelines, any program that includes these commands should also provide these standard aliases. (The next key in the same row, `B`, is sometimes used for the `Clear` command, but this is not part of the official convention and some programs use it for other purposes instead.) Another standard alias that every program is expected to provide is `Command-Q` for `Quit`.

You can define two or more menu items in one call to `AppendMenu` by separating them with semicolons (;) in the defining string. For instance, Program 4-1 could have combined the `Cut`, `Copy`, and `Paste` commands into a single definition

```
AppendMenu (EditMenu, 'Cut/X;Copy/C;Paste/V')
```

instead of using three separate statements. There are other modifier characters that you can use as well; they're summarized in [4.3.2], and we'll be discussing some of them further in the section titled "Controlling Menu Items," later in this chapter.

Sometimes a menu command needs further information from the user in order to operate: for instance, the `Open` command needs to know what document to open. The normal way to get such extra information from the user is with a dialog box; we'll learn how in Chapter 7. The only point to notice here is that menu items that open a dialog box are conventionally supposed to end with three dots, like `Open...` and `Save As...` in Program 4-1.

After you've added all the items you want to a menu, you have to place it in the menu bar with `InsertMenu` [4.4.1]. You can insert a menu anywhere you like in the menu bar, by giving the ID of the menu it precedes (or 0 to put it at the end); you can also delete a menu from the menu bar with `DeleteMenu` [4.4.1]. However, accepted user interface style is to avoid changing the contents of the menu bar "on the fly." Appearing and disappearing menus can be disconcerting to the user; it's better to leave all your menus in the menu bar all the time and just disable those that aren't applicable at any given moment.

One thing to watch out for is that changes you make in the menu bar don't take place automatically on the screen. After inserting or deleting a menu, you have to redraw the menu bar explicitly with `DrawMenuBar` [4.4.3] to make the change visible to the user.

Listing Resources on a Menu

Now that we've seen how to set up the File and Edit menus, let's go back and look at the Apple menu. This menu is atypical in several ways. First of all, the Apple symbol that's used for its title is one of those special Macintosh characters (along with the check mark and the command symbol) that can be displayed on the screen but can't

be typed from the keyboard [I:8.1.1]. Since Pascal won't let us store a "raw" character directly into a string variable, we have to create a one-character dummy string for the menu's title and store the Apple symbol into it "by hand":

```
appleTitle    := '@';  
appleTitle[1] := CHR(AppleMark);  
  
AppleMenu := NewMenu (AppleID, appleTitle)
```

(The @ character used here is just a placeholder; it doesn't matter what character you use.)

The Apple menu conventionally starts with an About item which brings up a dialog or alert box (Chapter 7) containing identifying information about the program—such as the author's name, a copyright notice, the version number and date, and so forth. If you're so inclined, you can liven up your "about" box with fancy layout and graphics, or show additional information such as the amount of free disk space available. Some applications even use it to offer the user on-screen documentation or help facilities. Since the About item opens a dialog box, it should end with the usual three dots:

```
AppendMenu (AppleMenu, 'About MiniEdit...')
```

The rest of the Apple menu lists the available desk accessories that the user can open while running our program. We can't define these items with AppendMenu in the program itself, because we don't know what desk accessories will be available on the disk when the program is run. Recall that desk accessories are actually a special kind of input/output driver, and reside in the system resource file under resource type 'DRVr' [I:7.5.5]. To list them on a menu, we need to use AddResMenu [4.3.3]. This routine accepts a menu handle and a resource type; it searches all open resource files for resources of the given type and adds their resource names to the menu.

Not all 'DRVr' resources are desk accessories, however: some of them are bona fide I/O drivers, and shouldn't appear on the Apple menu. To keep such resources off the menu, they're conventionally given names beginning with a period, such as .Sound and .Print. AddResMenu ignores all names of this form and doesn't add them to the menu.

You can use `AddResMenu` to create menus of any type of resource that can be identified by name as well as ID number—in fact, this is precisely the reason resources are allowed to have names in the first place. Another common use of `AddResMenu` is to set up a menu of available fonts (resource type 'FONT' [1:8.4.5]). There's also a routine called `InsertResMenu` [4.3.3], which works exactly the same as `AddResMenu` except that it allows you to insert the list of resources before any designated item in the menu, not just at the end.

On the Macintosh Plus, both `AddResMenu` and `InsertResMenu` alphabetize the list of resource names before adding them to the menu. On earlier Macintosh models, these routines just list the resources in whatever order they happen to occur in the resource file. For some reason, however, the two routines add the items to the menu in opposite orders: one from first to last, the other from last to first. For this reason, it's recommended that you use `AddResMenu` whenever possible, so that all applications will list their desk accessories (or fonts, or whatever) in the same order.

Menus as Resources

The alternative (and recommended) way to set up your program's menus is by reading them in as resources. A resource of type 'MENU' [4.8.1] consists of a complete menu record, including the “hidden” data in the `menuData` field describing the individual items. In the resource file, the record's `menuWidth` and `menuHeight` are set to 0; these fields will be filled in with their correct values when the menu is read into memory. In the `menuProc` field, in place of the handle to the menu definition procedure, is a resource ID for finding the definition procedure in a resource file (or in ROM on a Macintosh Plus) under resource type 'MDEF'. (The resource ID is in the first 2 bytes of the 4-byte field, with 0 in the last 2 bytes; the standard menu definition procedure has resource ID 0, so for most menu resources the `menuProc` field is just a 4-byte 0.)

Program 4-2 shows an alternative version of our `SetUpMenus` procedure that reads the program's menus from a resource file instead of building them from scratch. Instead of creating the menus with `NewMenu`, this time we use `GetMenu` [4.2.2] to read them in under the appropriate resource IDs, which also become their menu IDs. `GetMenu`

calculates each menu's screen dimensions and stores them into its menuWidth and menuHeight fields. It also uses the resource ID given in the menuProc field of the menu resource to locate the menu definition procedure, loads the procedure into memory if necessary, and stores its handle into the menuProc field of the menu record in memory.

```
{ Global constants and variables }
```

```
const
    AppleID = 1;           (Menu ID for Apple menu)
    FileID = 2;            (Menu ID for File menu)
    EditID = 3;            (Menu ID for Edit menu)
```

```
var
    AppleMenu : MenuHandle; (Handle to Apple menu [4.1.1])
    FileMenu : MenuHandle;  (Handle to File menu [4.1.1])
    EditMenu : MenuHandle;  (Handle to Edit menu [4.1.1])
```

```
procedure SetUpMenus;

{ Procedure to set up menus using resources. }
```

```
begin {SetUpMenus}

    AppleMenu := GetMenu (AppleID);           (Get Apple menu from resource file [4.2.2])
    AddResMenu (AppleMenu, 'DRVr');           (Add names of available desk accessories [4.3.3])
    InsertMenu (AppleMenu, 0);                (Install at end of menu bar [4.4.1])

    FileMenu := GetMenu (FileID);             (Get File menu from resource file [4.2.2])
    InsertMenu (FileMenu, 0);                 (Install at end of menu bar [4.4.1])

    EditMenu := GetMenu (EditID);             (Get Edit menu from resource file [4.2.2])
    InsertMenu (EditMenu, 0);                 (Install at end of menu bar [4.4.1])

    {Insert code here to read in any other needed menus};

    DrawMenuBar                             (Show new menu bar on screen [4.4.3])

end; {SetUpMenus}
```

Program 4-2 Set up menus using resources

The File and Edit menus are ready to insert in the menu bar just the way we find them in the resource file. For the Apple menu, however, the menu resource defines only the first two items, the About MiniEdit... item and the disabled separator line following it. Before

inserting the menu in the menu bar, we have to add the names of all the available desk accessories with `AddResMenu`, as before.

If you need to dispose of a menu in mid-program, use `DisposeMenu` [4.2.3] if you originally created the menu from scratch with `NewMenu`, or `ReleaseResource` [I:6.3.2] if you read it from a resource file with `GetMenu`.

It's also possible to read in a whole menu bar at once from a resource file, with resource type 'MBAR' [4.8.2]. A resource of this type is just a list of the resource IDs of the menus in the menu bar. You use `GetNewMBar` [4.4.2] to read it in and convert it to a menu bar in memory. This automatically locates all the needed menus in the resource file, loads them into memory, and inserts them in the new menu bar. The new menu bar doesn't automatically replace the current one, however; you have to remember to call `SetMenuBar` [4.4.4] if you want to make it current, followed by `DrawMenuBar` [4.4.3] to show it on the screen.

Choosing from a Menu

The user can invoke a menu item in either of two ways: by choosing it with the mouse or by typing its keyboard alias using the Command key. You find out about the first by receiving a mouse-down event in the menu bar, the second by receiving a key-down event with the `CmdKey` bit on in the modifiers field [2.1.5]. Both user actions are considered equivalent, and your program should respond to both in exactly the same way.

In our `MiniEdit` program, recall that all events are processed by the procedure `DoEvent` (Program 2-5), which is called repeatedly from the program's main loop. That procedure asks the Toolbox for the next event and then calls the appropriate routine to handle the event, depending on its type. In the case of mouse-down events, it calls `DoMouseDown` (Program 3-7), which in turn calls the Toolbox routine `FindWindow` [3.5.1] to find out what part of the screen the mouse button was pressed in. If it was in the menu bar, `DoMouseDown` will call a routine named `DoMenuClick`, which is shown here as Program 4-3.

`DoMenuClick` is only two statements long: all it does is call the

```

{ Global variable }

var
  TheEvent : EventRecord;           {Current event [2.1.1]}

procedure DoMenuClick;

{ Handle mouse-down event in menu bar. }

var
  menuChoice : LONGINT;             {Menu ID and item number}

begin {DoMenuClick}

  menuChoice := MenuSelect (TheEvent.where); {Track mouse [4.5.1]}
  DoMenuChoice (menuChoice)           {Handle user's menu choice [Prog. 4-5]}

end; {DoMenuClick}

```

Program 4-3 Mouse-down event in the menu bar

Toolbox routine MenuSelect [4.5.1] to handle the menu interaction with the user, then pass along the resulting information about the user's menu choice for another MiniEdit routine named DoMenuChoice to respond to. We'll be looking at DoMenuChoice in a minute; it's separated out as an independent procedure so that it can be called in response to Command keystrokes as well as menu choices with the mouse.

MenuSelect needs to know where on the screen, in global coordinates, the mouse button was originally pressed. It then tracks the mouse for as long as the button is held down, showing and hiding menus and highlighting and unhighlighting individual items as the user rolls the mouse over them. (It also implements the new "auto-scroll" feature if appropriate.) When the button is released, it flashes the chosen item a few times and then hides the menu, but leaves its title highlighted in the menu bar as a signal that the item is still being processed. Finally, it returns a long integer identifying the chosen item, consisting of the menu ID in the high-order word and an *item number* in the low-order word. The item number is just the sequential position of the chosen item within the menu, counting the first item as number 1. If the user released the button over a disabled item, or outside of any menu, the menu ID returned by MenuSelect will be 0.

In addition to your program's menus, an active desk accessory can insert a whole menu of its own in the menu bar. The Toolbox recognizes menus belonging to desk accessories by their negative menu IDs. When the user chooses an item from such a menu, `MenuSelect` automatically relays the choice to the desk accessory for action, then returns a menu ID of 0 to your program, telling you to ignore the event. Desk accessories and their private menus are discussed at length in Volume Three.

When our `DoEvent` routine (Program 2-5) receives a key-down or auto-key event, it calls `DoKeystroke` (Program 4-4) to process the event. Here we begin by extracting from the event's message field the character code identifying which character was typed on the keyboard. Then we examine the Command bit in the event's modifiers field to see whether the user held down the Command key while typing the character. If not, we pass the character to the routine `DoTyping` (defined in the next chapter) to handle as an ordinary keystroke.

If the Command key was down, we next check the type of the event (field `what` of the event record) to see whether it was a key-down or an auto-key event. (We don't want any of our Command-key combinations to repeat when held down, so we simply ignore auto-key events in this case.) For true key-down events only, we call the Toolbox routine `MenuKey` [4.5.1] to convert the Command combination into an equivalent menu item. `MenuKey` returns a long integer consisting of a menu ID and item number, just the same as `MenuSelect`, with a menu ID of 0 if the given Command combination hasn't been defined as a keyboard alias for any menu item. We can then pass this result to our `DoMenuChoice` routine just as if it had come from `MenuSelect` instead of `MenuKey`. (Notice that this mechanism guarantees that every meaningful Command keystroke is just an alias for a menu item that could have been chosen with the mouse instead.)

As we've just seen, both the user's menu choices with the mouse and the equivalent Command keystrokes get passed to our `MiniEdit` program's `DoMenuChoice` routine (Program 4-5) for processing. Here we begin by extracting the menu ID and item number from the long integer result we received from `MenuSelect` or `MenuKey`. Then we use a **case** statement to call the appropriate `MiniEdit` routine for the indicated menu, passing the item number as a parameter. (If the menu ID is 0, there's nothing to do: the user has moved out of the menu before releasing the button, or chosen a disabled menu item, or typed an invalid keyboard alias.)

```

{ Global variable }

var
    TheEvent : EventRecord;           {Current event [2.1.1]}

procedure DoKeystroke;

    { Handle keystroke. }

var
    chCode    : INTEGER;              {Character code from event message [1:8.1.1]}
    ch        : CHAR;                 {Character that was typed}
    menuChoice : LONGINT;              {Menu ID and item number for keyboard alias}

begin {DoKeystroke}

    with TheEvent do
        begin

            chCode := BitAnd (message, CharCodeMask); {Get character code from event message [1:2.2.2, 2.1.4]}
            ch := CHR(chCode);                       {Convert to a character}

            if BitAnd (modifiers, CmdKey) <> 0 then {Command key down? [1:2.2.2, 2.1.5]}
            begin
                if what <> AutoKey then              {Ignore repeats with Command key down [2.1.1, 2.1.2]}
                begin
                    menuChoice := MenuKey (ch);      {Get menu equivalent [4.5.1]}
                    DoMenuChoice (menuChoice)        {Handle as menu choice [Prog. 4-5]}
                end
            end
            else
                DoTyping (ch)                        {Handle as normal character [Prog. 5-6]}
            end {with}

        end; {DoKeystroke}
    end;

```

Program 4-4 Process keystroke

We'll be defining routines below for the Apple, File, and Edit menus; you can, of course, add more routines to handle any other menus your program may need. After we're finished responding to the menu choice, we call the Toolbox routine `HiliteMenu` [4.5.4] to unhighlight the menu's title, which will have been left highlighted in the menu bar by `MenuSelect` or `MenuKey`. This signals that the process-


```

( Global constants )

const
    AppleID = 1;           {Menu ID for Apple menu}
    FileID  = 2;           {Menu ID for File menu}
    EditID  = 3;           {Menu ID for Edit menu}

procedure DoMenuChoice (menuChoice : LONGINT);

    ( Handle user's menu choice. )

const
    noMenu = 0;            {No menu selected}

var
    theMenu : INTEGER;     {Menu ID of selected menu}
    theItem  : INTEGER;     {Item number of selected item}

begin {DoMenuChoice}

    theMenu := HiWord(menuChoice); {Get menu ID [1:2,2,3]}
    theItem := LoWord(menuChoice); {Get item number [1:2,2,3]}

    case theMenu of

        noMenu:
            {Do nothing};           {No menu selected, nothing to do}

        AppleID:
            DoAppleChoice (theItem); {Handle choice from Apple menu [Prog. 4-6]}

        FileID:
            DoFileChoice  (theItem); {Handle choice from File menu [Prog. 4-8]}

        EditID:
            DoEditChoice  (theItem); {Handle choice from Edit menu [Prog. 4-9]}

        {Insert code here to handle any other menus}

    end; {case}

    HiliteMenu(0)              {Unhighlight menu title [4.5.4]}

end; {DoMenuChoice}

```

Program 4-5 Handle user's menu choice

ing of the menu choice is complete, and the user can continue with the next action.

Program 4-6 (DoAppleChoice) shows how we handle a choice from the Apple menu. If the item chosen was About MiniEdit..., we call the routine DoAbout (defined later, in Chapter 7) to open an alert box displaying identifying information about the program. Otherwise, the user has chosen an item representing a desk accessory; we use GetItem [4.6.1] to get the name of the accessory (which is simply the text of the chosen menu item), then OpenDeskAcc [4.5.2] to activate the accessory on the screen. This opens a system window for the accessory if

```
{ Global constant and variable }
```

```
const
    AboutItem = 1;                                {Item number for About MiniEdit... command}
```

```
var
    AppleMenu : MenuHandle;                       {Handle to Apple menu [4.1.1]}
```

```
procedure DoAppleChoice (theItem : INTEGER);

    { Handle choice from Apple menu. }
```

```
var
    accName : Str255;                             {Name of desk accessory [I:2.1.1]}
    accNumber : INTEGER;                          {Reference number of desk accessory}
```

```
begin {DoAppleChoice}

    case theItem of

        AboutItem:
            DoAbout                                {Handle About MiniEdit... command [Prog. 7-1]}

        otherwise
            begin
                GetItem (AppleMenu, theItem, accName); {Get accessory name [4.6.1]}
                accNumber := OpenDeskAcc (accName)      {Open desk accessory [4.5.2]}
            end

    end {case}

end; {DoAppleChoice}
```

Program 4-6 Handle choice from Apple menu

there isn't one already, or brings its existing window to the front. The accessory's driver reference number (which is always negative) will automatically be stored in the `windowKind` field of the window record [3.1.1] for reference.

When the user clicks the mouse in the close box of an active system window, our `DoMouseDown` routine (Program 3-7) will receive a part code of `InSysWindow` from `FindWindow` [3.5.1], and will call the Toolbox routine `SystemClick` [3.5.3] to handle the event. `SystemClick` will detect that the click was in the close box, and will automatically close the system window for us. However, if the user chooses `Close` from the `File` menu when a system window is active, it's our responsibility to close the system window ourselves.

The `DoClose` routine that we looked at in the last chapter (Program 3-3) checks to see whether an application or a system window is active. If it's an application window, `DoClose` closes it by calling the routine `CloseAppWindow`, which we've already looked at (Program 3-4); if a system window is active, it calls the `CloseSysWindow` routine shown here as Program 4-7. This routine simply gets the reference number of the window's desk accessory from the `windowKind` field [3.1.1] and calls the Toolbox routine `CloseDeskAcc` [4.5.2] to close the accessory, removing its window from the screen.

```

procedure CloseSysWindow;

( Close system window. )

var
  whichWindow : WindowPeek;           {Pointer for access to window's fields [3.1.1]}
  accNumber   : INTEGER;              {Reference number of desk accessory [1:7.5.5]}

begin {CloseSysWindow}

  whichWindow := WindowPeek(FrontWindow); {Convert to a WindowPeek [3.1.1, 3.3.3]}

  accNumber := whichWindow^.windowKind;   {Get reference number of desk accessory [3.1.1]}
  CloseDeskAcc (accNumber)                {Close desk accessory [4.5.2]}

end; {CloseSysWindow}

```

Program 4-7 Close system window

Program 4-8 (`DoFileChoice`) shows how `MiniEdit` handles a choice from the `File` menu. Here we just use a `case` statement to dispatch to the appropriate routine for responding to the chosen item. (We've seen a couple of these routines already; we'll define the rest when we

```
{ Global constants }
```

```
const
```

NewItem	= 1;	{Item number for New command}
OpenItem	= 2;	{Item number for Open... command}
CloseItem	= 3;	{Item number for Close command}
SaveItem	= 5;	{Item number for Save command}
SaveAsItem	= 6;	{Item number for Save As... command}
RevertItem	= 7;	{Item number for Revert to Saved command}
QuitItem	= 9;	{Item number for Quit command}

```
procedure DoFileChoice (theItem : INTEGER);
```

```
{ Handle choice from File menu. }
```

```
begin {DoFileChoice}
```

```
  case theItem of
```

NewItem:	DoNew;	{Handle New command [Prog. 3-2, 5-2]}
OpenItem:	DoOpen;	{Handle Open... command [Prog. 8-5]}
CloseItem:	DoClose;	{Handle Close command [Prog. 3-3]}
SaveItem:	DoSave;	{Handle Save command [Prog. 8-2]}
SaveAsItem:	DoSaveAs;	{Handle Save As... command [Prog. 8-8]}
RevertItem:	DoRevert;	{Handle Revert to Saved command [Prog. 8-4]}
QuitItem:	DoQuit;	{Handle Quit command [Prog. 2-4]}

```
{Insert code here to handle any other File menu commands}
```

```
end {case}
```

```
end; {DoFileChoice}
```

learn about filing in Chapter 8.) Any further routines that you add to your program to handle additional menus will typically have this same form.

As shown in Program 4-9 (DoEditChoice), the Edit menu requires a bit of special treatment. We mentioned earlier that some of the desk accessories use the standard editing commands Cut, Copy, Paste, Clear, and Undo, and expect these commands to be available whenever the accessory is active. When the user chooses one of these commands, you have to call the Toolbox routine `SystemEdit` [4.5.3] to relay the command to the active desk accessory if there is one.

The argument to `SystemEdit` tells it which of the standard commands was chosen, and must be one of the Toolbox constants `CutCmd`, `CopyCmd`, `PasteCmd`, `UndoCmd`, or `ClearCmd` [4.5.3]. (Notice that these are not necessarily the same as the item numbers of the corresponding commands in your Edit menu. Be sure to use the built-in constants when calling `SystemEdit`, not your own item numbers!) If the active window is a system window containing a desk accessory, `SystemEdit` will pass the given command along to the accessory to handle, and will return a Boolean result of `TRUE`. This tells you that the command has been successfully relayed to a desk accessory, so you can just ignore it; a result of `FALSE` means that no accessory is currently active (or that the active accessory isn't prepared to accept the command), so you have to respond to the command yourself. You can add other commands to your Edit menu if your application requires them, but only the five standard editing commands should ever be passed to a desk accessory via `SystemEdit`.

For reasons known only to the gods, the constants `UndoCmd`, `CutCmd`, `CopyCmd`, `PasteCmd`, and `ClearCmd` have been dropped from Apple's officially supported Toolbox interface. You must now either define these constants for yourself (as in the final version of our `MiniEdit` program, shown in Appendix H) or arrange your Edit menu in such a way that the proper argument values to `SystemEdit` can be derived from the item numbers of the standard editing commands.

Notice, though, that the `SystemEdit` argument values start from 0 (for the Undo command), whereas the item numbers within a menu always start from 1. The best you can do is give each standard editing command an item number *one greater than* the corresponding argument value, then remember to subtract 1 back from the item number before passing it on to `SystemEdit`. The ways of the gods are mysterious and inscrutable.


```
{ Global constants }
```

```
const
```

```
  UndoItem = 1;           {Item number for Undo command}
  CutItem  = 3;           {Item number for Cut command}
  CopyItem = 4;           {Item number for Copy command}
  PasteItem = 5;          {Item number for Paste command}
  ClearItem = 7;          {Item number for Clear command}
```

```
procedure DoEditChoice (theItem : INTEGER);
```

```
  { Handle choice from Edit menu. }
```

```
begin {DoEditChoice}
```

```
  case theItem of
```

```
    UndoItem:
```

```
      if not SystemEdit (UndoCmd) then
        SysBeep(1);           {Undo command not implemented [2.8.1]}

```

```
    CutItem:
```

```
      if not SystemEdit (CutCmd) then
        DoCut;                {Handle Cut command [Prog. 5-8]}

```

```
    CopyItem:
```

```
      if not SystemEdit (CopyCmd) then
        DoCopy;               {Handle Copy command [Prog. 5-9]}

```

```
    PasteItem:
```

```
      if not SystemEdit (PasteCmd) then
        DoPaste;              {Handle Paste command [Prog. 5-10]}

```

```
    ClearItem:
```

```
      if not SystemEdit (ClearCmd) then
        DoClear;              {Handle Clear command [Prog. 5-11]}

```

```
    {Insert code here to handle any other Edit menu commands}
```

```
  end {case}
```

```
end; {DoEditChoice}
```

Controlling Menu Items

There are two ways to control the properties of a menu item (such as its icon or character style, or whether it's enabled or disabled). One way is to set the properties at the time you define the item, by including modifier characters in the defining string that you give to `AppendMenu` [4.3.1]. We've already seen how to use the modifier character `(` (left parenthesis) to disable an item and `/` (slash) to give it a keyboard alias. In this section we'll talk about the remaining modifier characters and how to use them.

The second way to control an item's properties is by calling Toolbox routines to read or change them "on the fly," after the item has already been defined. In general, these routines expect you to identify the item by giving a handle to the menu it resides in, along with an item number representing its sequential position within the menu. The first item in a menu always has item number 1; in some cases, an item number of 0 refers to the menu as a whole, rather than any individual item.

Text of an Item

To read or change the text of an item, use `GetItem` and `SetItem` [4.6.1]. `SetItem` is useful for "toggling" or alternating menu items. For instance, the Show Clipboard command in our earlier Figure 4-1 might change to Hide Clipboard when the Clipboard is visible on the screen, then revert to Show Clipboard when it's hidden again. Another example of changing the text of an item is the way MacWrite changes its Undo command to, for instance, Undo Cut or Undo Typing or Can't Undo, depending on the last operation the user performed.

One more use for `SetItem` is to include any of `AppendMenu`'s modifier characters as part of an item's text. A statement like

```
AppendMenu (anyMenu, 'Wow!')
```

won't work properly, because `AppendMenu` will interpret the exclamation point as a modifier character for marking the item on the menu. (We'll talk about marking items in a minute.) Instead, you have to do something like this:

```
AppendMenu (anyMenu, 'Dummy');  
SetItem (anyMenu, itemNumber, 'Wow!')
```

where `itemNumber` is the appropriate item number for this item. Unlike

AppendMenu, SetItem attaches no special significance to the exclamation point or any of the other modifier characters: it just treats them as text characters like any other.

Character Style

Items in a standard text menu are always displayed in the system font and the standard size; there's no way to ask for a different typeface or size. However, you can specify character styles such as bold, italic, or outline. When you define a menu item with AppendMenu, you can give it any one single style attribute by including the modifier character < in the defining string, followed by a letter standing for the desired attribute: B for bold, I for italic, U for underline, O for outline, S for shadow. For instance, the statement

```
AppendMenu (anyMenu, 'Italic<I')
```

defines an item that will be displayed on the menu in italic.

To specify a combination of two or more style attributes, such as bold italic, or to change character styles on the fly, use SetItemStyle [4.6.3]. This routine accepts any desired character style in the form of a QuickDraw Style set [I:8.3.1]:

```
SetItemStyle (anyMenu, itemNumber, [Bold, Italic])
```

You can find out the current character style of a menu item with GetItemStyle [4.6.3].

Enabling and Disabling Items

As we've already seen, you can disable a menu item at the time you define it, by using a left parenthesis as the first character of the defining string. This is useful mainly for items that are permanently disabled, such as a blank line or a row of dashes that you're using to separate sections of a menu. The Toolbox routines DisableItem and EnableItem [4.6.2] allow you to disable and enable items dynamically to reflect changing conditions as your program runs. In general, you should disable an item whenever it's inapplicable in a particular situation: for instance, if your program uses the standard editing commands, you might disable Cut and Copy whenever there's no current selection (nothing to cut or copy), and Paste when the Clipboard is empty (nothing to paste).

You can also disable or enable an entire menu by supplying an item number of 0. Disabling a menu disables all of its items, overrid-

ing their individual enable flags in the menu record. The menu's title appears dimmed in the menu bar. (As usual when you make any change in the menu bar, you have to remember to call `DrawMenuBar` to make the change visible on the screen.) The user can still pull down a disabled menu and look at its contents, but all of its items will be dimmed and none can be chosen. When you enable the menu again, the items will be restored to their previous state according to their individual enable flags.

Marking Items

For menu items that control a two-way, on-or-off setting of some kind, you can use a *mark character* (usually a check mark) to display the item's current setting on the menu. (For instance, both MacWrite and MacPaint use check marks in their Style menus to show which character style options are in effect.) The usual way of checking or unchecking an item is with `CheckItem` [4.6.4]. The Boolean parameter `checked` tells whether to mark the item with a check mark (TRUE) or unmark it (FALSE).

The check mark is another of the special, screen-only Macintosh characters, and its character code is defined as a Toolbox constant named `CheckMark` [I:8.1.1]. Actually, you can mark an item with any character you like, although the check mark is by far the most common. To mark an item with some other character, use `SetItemMark`; you can find out an item's current mark character with `GetItemMark` [4.6.4]. The null character (character code 0, defined as the Toolbox constant `NoMark` [4.6.4]) denotes an unmarked item. `GetItemMark` returns a null character if the designated item is unmarked; `SetItemMark` accepts a null mark character

```
SetItemMark (anyMenu, itemNumber, CHR(NoMark))
```

and unmarks the item.

You can also use `CheckItem` to unmark an item, even if it's marked with something other than a check mark. The statement

```
CheckItem (anyMenu, itemNumber, FALSE)
```

removes any mark character the item may have, whether it's a check mark or something else.

You can mark a character at the time you define it by using the modifier character ! (exclamation point) in the defining string, followed by the desired mark character:

```
AppendMenu (CalcMenu, 'Calculate Percentage!%')
```

Notice, though, that this won't work for a check mark (the usual case), since there's no way to type it into your program from the keyboard. You could store the check mark into the defining string by hand,

```
defString    := 'Normal!*';  
defString[8] := CHR(CheckMark);  
AppendMenu (OptionsMenu, defString)
```

but it's usually simpler just to create the item unmarked and then check it separately with `CheckItem`:

```
AppendMenu (OptionsMenu, 'Normal');  
CheckItem  (OptionsMenu, itemNumber)
```

where `itemNumber` is the sequential position of the Normal item on the Options menu.

Item Icons

Any menu item can be given an icon, which will appear to the left of the item on the menu. Like all icons, this is a 32-by-32-bit image that's read in from a resource file, where it's stored under resource type 'ICON' [I:5.5.3]. By convention, icons used in menus have resource IDs from 257 to 511. However, instead of using the resource ID directly, Toolbox routines that deal with menu icons refer to them with an *icon number* that's 256 less than the resource ID. In other words, icon number 1 is understood to refer to the icon with resource ID 257, icon number 2 corresponds to resource ID 258, and so on.

This use of an icon number 256 less than the resource ID applies only to Toolbox routines related to menus. In the rest of the Toolbox, icons are identified directly by their actual resource IDs.

You can associate an icon with a menu item by calling `SetItemIcon` [4.6.5]. As usual, you identify the item with a menu handle and an item number within the menu, and the icon with an icon number. The Toolbox will add 256 to the given icon number to arrive at the icon's resource ID, then load the icon from a resource file. An icon number of 0 removes any previous icon the item may have had. `GetItemIcon` [4.6.5] returns an item's current icon number, or 0 if it has none.

You can also specify an icon in an item's defining string, using the modifier character `^` followed by a one-digit icon number. For instance, the statement

```
AppendMenu (ChessMenu, 'White Bishop^4')
```

defines an item named White Bishop with icon number 4 (resource ID 260). One-digit icon numbers are sufficient as long as you don't need more than ten menu icons altogether. In the unlikely event that you need more than ten, you can use icon numbers higher than 9 (resource IDs higher than 265) by creating an item without an icon and then using `SetItemIcon` to give it one.

If you want to get tricky, you can actually define icon numbers greater than 9 in the defining string. `AppendMenu` takes the single character following the modifier `^` and converts it to a resource ID by adding 208 to its character code. For example, the digit 1, with character code \$31 (decimal 49) denotes icon number 1, or resource ID 257. Thus characters that lie beyond the digit 9 in the Macintosh character set [I:8.1.1] stand for resource IDs greater than 265. The statement

```
AppendMenu (ChessMenu, 'Black Bishop^:')
```

defines an item with icon number 10 (resource ID 266), since the character `:` (colon) immediately follows the digit 9 in the character set, with character code \$3A (decimal 58). This method is tricky, though, and error-prone—it's usually better to use `SetItemIcon` instead.

REFERENCE

4.1 Internal Representation of Menus

4.1.1 Menu Records



Definitions

type

MenuHandle = ^MenuPtr;

MenuPtr = ^MenuInfo;

MenuInfo = **record**

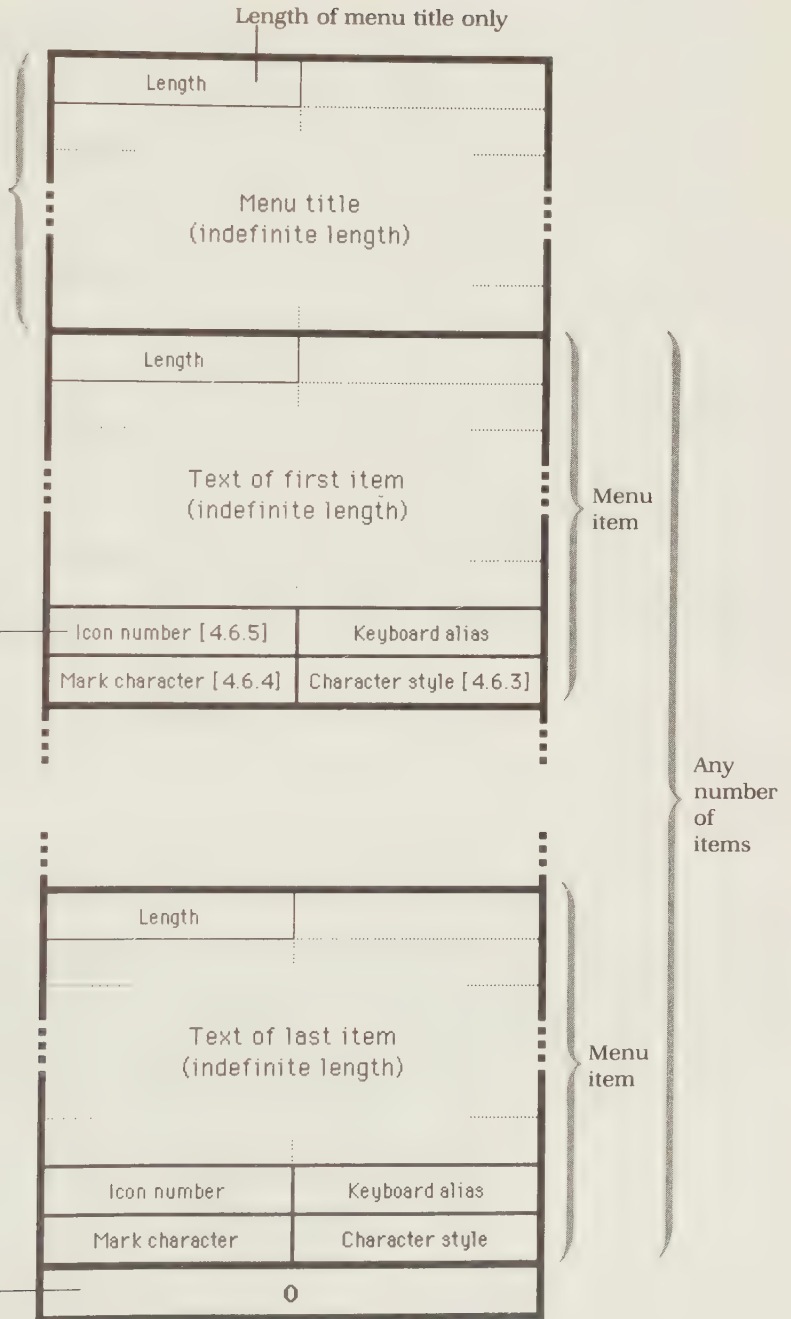
menuID	: INTEGER;	{ Menu ID number }
menuWidth	: INTEGER;	{ Width of menu in pixels }
menuHeight	: INTEGER;	{ Height of menu in pixels }
menuProc	: Handle;	{ Handle to menu definition procedure }
enableFlags	: LONGINT;	{ Which items are enabled? }
menuData	: Str255	{ Menu title and contents (see }
		{ figure and notes 11-14) }

end;

Pascal only sees this part; rest of menuData field is visible only from machine or assembly language.

This number (0-255) plus 256 gives resource ID number for icon.

0 marks end of item list.



Format of menuData field



Notes

1. `menuID` is an identifying number that should be different for every menu in a program.
2. Menus belonging to the application have positive menu IDs; those belonging to desk accessories have negative menu IDs. A menu ID of 0 is not allowed.
3. For menus loaded from a resource file (resource type 'MENU' [4.8.1]), the menu ID is the same as the resource ID; for menus built "from scratch," it can be any positive integer.
4. Never store directly into the `menuID` field of a menu record.
5. `menuWidth` and `menuHeight` are calculated automatically by the Toolbox whenever the contents of the menu change.
6. `menuProc` is a handle to the menu definition procedure defining the type of menu.
7. `enableFlags` is a 32-bit field that controls whether the menu's items are enabled or disabled.
8. The last (low-order) bit of `enableFlags` enables or disables the entire menu. When this bit is 0, the menu and all its items are disabled, overriding all of the remaining flag bits.
9. If the low-order bit is 1, the remaining bits control the individual items in the menu: 1 if enabled, 0 if disabled.
10. Bits from right to left within `enableFlags` correspond to items from top to bottom on the menu.
11. `menuData` is a variable-length string containing the menu title along with information about the items the menu contains.
12. The string's length count (`menuData[0]`) gives the length of the menu title only. The information defining the menu's items is "hidden" beyond the end of the title, and is accessible only in assembly language.
13. The format shown is for the standard text menu. Nonstandard definition procedures can redefine the "hidden data" at the end of the menu record in any way they like.
14. Never store directly into the `menuData` field, as this will destroy the hidden data beyond the end of the title string.



Assembly Language Information

Field offsets in a menu record:

(Pascal) Field name	(Assembly) Offset name	Offset in bytes
menuID	menuID	0
menuWidth	menuWidth	2
menuHeight	menuHeight	4
menuProc	menuDefHandle	6
enableFlags	menuEnable	10
menuData	menuData	14

Assembly-language constant:

Name	Value	Meaning
MenuBlkSize	14	Size of menu record in bytes, excluding menuData

4.2 Creating and Destroying Menus

4.2.1 Initializing the Toolbox for Menus



Definitions

procedure InitMenus;



Notes

1. InitMenus must be called before any other operation involving menus.
2. It initializes the Toolbox's menu-related data structures, starts an empty menu bar, and draws the menu bar on the screen.
3. Before calling InitMenus, you must first call InitGraf [I:4.3.1], InitFonts [I:8.2.4], and InitWindows [3.2.1].



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal)	(Assembly)	
Routine name	Trap macro	Trap word
InitMenus	_InitMenus	\$A930

4.2.2 Creating Menus



Definitions

function NewMenu

(menuID : INTEGER;	{ Menu ID }
menuTitle : Str255)	{ Menu title }
: MenuHandle;	{ Handle to new menu }

function GetMenu

(menuID : INTEGER)	{ Resource ID of desired menu }
: MenuHandle;	{ Handle to menu in memory }



Notes

1. NewMenu and GetMenu both allocate heap space for a new menu record and return a handle to it.
2. NewMenu creates a brand-new menu, initially empty; it can then be filled with AppendMenu, InsMenuItem [4.3.1], AddResMenu, and InsertResMenu [4.3.3].
3. GetMenu loads a predefined menu from a resource file.
4. The menu ID supplied to GetMenu gives the resource ID for the desired menu; its resource type is 'MENU' [4.8.1]. If the menu is already in memory, GetMenu just returns a handle to it.
5. For NewMenu, the menu ID can be any positive integer, provided that no two menus have the same ID. The menu ID should never be 0 or negative.
6. The new menu is not inserted in the menu bar; this must be done explicitly with InsertMenu [4.4.1].
7. GetMenu also loads the menu's definition procedure from a resource file,

if necessary, and stores a handle to it in the menu record; `NewMenu` always stores a handle to the definition procedure for standard text menus. (On the Macintosh Plus, this standard menu definition procedure resides in ROM rather than in a resource file.) For nonstandard menu types, you can replace this with a handle to a different definition procedure.

8. Use `DisposeMenu` [4.2.3] to deallocate menus created with `NewMenu`; use `ReleaseResource` [I:6.3.2] to deallocate those read in with `GetMenu`.
9. The trap macro for `GetMenu` is spelled `_GetRMenu`.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
<code>NewMenu</code>	<code>_NewMenu</code>	<code>\$A931</code>
<code>GetMenu</code>	<code>_GetRMenu</code>	<code>\$A9BF</code>

4.2.3 Destroying Menus



Definitions

procedure `DisposeMenu`
 (`theMenu : MenuHandle`); { Menu to destroy }



Notes

1. `DisposeMenu` deallocates the space occupied by a menu record. All existing handles to the menu are left “dangling” and can no longer be used.
2. The menu is not removed from the menu bar; remember to remove it explicitly with `DeleteMenu` [4.4.1] before disposing of it.
3. If the menu was originally read in from a resource file with `GetMenu` [4.2.2], dispose of it with `ReleaseResource` [I:6.3.2] instead of `DisposeMenu`.
4. The trap macro for `DisposeMenu` is spelled `_DisposMenu`.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
DisposeMenu	__DisposMenu	\$A932

4.3 Building Menus

4.3.1 Adding Menu Items



Definitions

```

procedure AppendMenu
    (theMenu : MenuHandle;    {Handle to the menu}
     defString : Str255;      {String defining item(s) to append}

procedure InsMenuItem
    (theMenu : MenuHandle;    {Handle to the menu}
     defString : Str255;      {String defining item(s) to insert}
     afterItem : INTEGER);    {Number of item to insert after}
  
```



Notes

1. AppendMenu adds one or more items to the end of an existing menu; InsMenuItem inserts them anywhere within the menu.
2. defString consists of the text of the item, along with optional modifiers [4.3.2] to define the item's properties.
3. If afterItem is 0, the new item(s) are inserted at the beginning of the menu; if it's greater than the number of items in the menu, they're inserted at the end.
4. A menu needn't be in the menu bar to add items to it.
5. The null string is not allowed as the text of a menu item. To leave a blank line in a menu, use an item consisting of one or more space characters. By convention, such blank items should always be disabled.

6. Menu items that invoke a dialog conventionally end with three periods:
AppendMenu (FileMenu, 'Open...')
7. Modifier characters [4.3.2] in the defining string are not considered part of the item itself. To incorporate any of these characters in the text of an item, use SetItem [4.6.1] to redefine the text after appending the item to the menu.
8. If the defining string passed to InsMenuItem specifies more than one item, they will appear on the menu in reverse order.
9. Inserting an item at the beginning or in the middle of a menu changes the item numbers of all other items following it. Be careful!
10. InsMenuItem is available only on the Macintosh Plus.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
AppendMenu	__AppendMenu	\$A933
InsMenuItem	__InsMenuItem	\$A826

4.3.2 Modifier Characters

Modifier character	Meaning
;	Item separator
(	Disable item [4.6.2]
/	Keyboard alias
<	Character style [4.6.3]
!	Mark item [4.6.4]
^	Icon [4.6.5]



Notes

1. These modifier characters can be included in the defining string supplied to AppendMenu [4.3.1] to define an item's properties.
2. Modifier characters in the defining string are not considered part of the item itself. To incorporate any of these characters in the text of an

item, use `SetItem` [4.6.1] to redefine the text after appending the item to the menu.

3. The modifier (precedes the text of an item; all other modifiers follow the text, in any order.
4. To define two or more items at once, separate their definitions with semicolons in the defining string:

```
AppendMenu (FileMenu, 'Open...;Close')
```

5. All properties of an item except its keyboard alias can be changed "on the fly" with the routines described in [4.6]. The keyboard alias, if any, must be defined with a modifier character when the item is first appended to the menu.
6. To give an item a keyboard alias, use the modifier / followed by the alias character:

```
AppendMenu (EditMenu, 'Copy/C')
```

The user can then invoke this menu item by typing the alias character with the Command key down.

7. The alias character will appear to the right of the item on the menu, preceded by the "cloverleaf" command symbol.
8. If the alias is a letter of the alphabet, an uppercase (capital) letter is used to define it. The user can then type the alias in either upper- or lowercase; both will be recognized as equivalent aliases.

4.3.3 Adding Resource Names to a Menu



Definitions

```
procedure AddResMenu
    (theMenu : MenuHandle; {Handle to the menu}
     rsrcType : ResType);  {Resource type to be added}
```

```
procedure InsertResMenu
    (theMenu : MenuHandle; {Handle to the menu}
     rsrcType : ResType;    {Resource type to be added}
     afterItem : INTEGER); {Number of item to insert after}
```




Notes

1. These routines search all open resource files for resources of a given type, and add their names to an existing menu.
2. `rsrctype` can be any resource type [I:6.1.1] whose members have names as well as ID numbers. The most common are 'DRVr' (input/output drivers, including desk accessories [I:7.5.5]) and 'FONT' [I:8.4.5].
3. `AddResMenu` adds the resources at the end of the menu; `InsertResMenu` adds them after a specified item.
4. If `afterItem` is 0, the resources are inserted at the beginning of the menu; if it's greater than the number of items in the menu, they're inserted at the end.
5. Resource names beginning with a period (.) are suppressed and are not added to the menu.
6. All items added to the menu are enabled and unmarked, in the normal character style, with no icon or keyboard alias. These properties can then be changed if necessary with the routines described in [4.6].
7. On the Macintosh Plus, `AddResMenu` and `InsertResMenu` both alphabetize the list of resource names before adding them to the menu. On older models, the resources are given in the order they occur in the resource file, but one routine lists them from first to last and the other from last to first. For consistency, it's recommended that you use `AddResMenu` whenever possible.
8. To get the names of items added by these routines, use `GetItem` [4.6.1].
9. The menu of desk accessories conventionally has menu ID 1 and a one-character title consisting of the Apple symbol (character code \$14). To give it this title, define a one-character "placeholder" string (any character will do) and store the Apple symbol into it, using the Toolbox constant `AppleMark` [I:8.1.1]:

```
appleTitle    := '@';  
appleTitle[1] := CHR(AppleMark);  
appleMenu     := NewMenu (1, appleTitle)
```



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
AddResMenu	__AddResMenu	\$A94D
InsertResMenu	__InsertResMenu	\$A951

4.3.4 Deleting Menu Items



Definitions

procedure DelMenuItem

(theMenu : MenuHandle; {Handle to the menu}
theItem : INTEGER); {Number of item to delete}



Notes

1. DelMenuItem deletes an item from a menu.
2. A menu needn't be in the menu bar to delete items from it.
3. Deleting an item changes the item numbers of all other items following it on the menu. Be careful!
4. DelMenuItem is available only on the Macintosh Plus.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
DelMenuItem	__DelMenuItem	\$A952

4.3.5 Counting Menu Items



Definitions

```
function CountMItems
    (theMenu : MenuHandle)    {Handle to the menu}
    : INTEGER;                {Number of items in the menu}
```



Notes

1. CountMItems returns the number of items in a menu.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
CountMItems	_CountMItems	\$A950

4.4 Building the Menu Bar

4.4.1 Adding and Removing Menus



Definitions

```
procedure ClearMenuBar;  
  
procedure InsertMenu  
    (theMenu : MenuHandle;    { Menu to insert}  
     beforeID : INTEGER);     { ID of menu to insert it before}  
  
procedure DeleteMenu  
    (menuID : INTEGER);       { Menu to delete}
```



Notes

1. ClearMenuBar makes the menu bar empty, deleting any menus it may previously have contained.
2. ClearMenuBar is called automatically at the beginning of a program by InitMenus [4.2.1].
3. InsertMenu adds a menu to the menu bar; DeleteMenu removes one.
4. To add a menu at the end of the menu bar, set beforeID to 0. The new menu is also added at the end if there's no menu in the menu bar with the specified ID, beforeID.
5. Menus deleted by DeleteMenu and ClearMenuBar aren't deallocated, just removed from the menu bar. All handles to a deleted menu remain valid.
6. Changes in the menu bar are *not* reflected automatically on the screen. Call DrawMenuBar [4.4.3] to redisplay the menu bar explicitly after the change.
7. If the designated menu is already in the menu bar, InsertMenu does nothing. If there's no menu with the given ID, DeleteMenu does nothing.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
ClearMenuBar	__ClearMenuBar	\$A934
InsertMenu	__InsertMenu	\$A935
DeleteMenu	__DeleteMenu	\$A936

4.4.2 Reading Menu Bars as Resources



Definitions

function GetNewMBar
 (menuBarID : INTEGER) {Resource ID of desired menu bar}
 : Handle; {Handle to menu bar in memory}



Notes

1. GetNewMBar loads a menu bar into memory from a resource file and returns a handle to it.
2. The resource type for a menu bar is 'MBAR' [4.8.2].
3. All needed menus are loaded from the resource file and inserted in the new menu bar.
4. The new menu bar is *not* automatically made current. You can do this explicitly with SetMenuBar [4.4.4]. Don't forget to follow this with a call to DrawMenuBar [4.4.3] to display the new menu bar on the screen.
5. To deallocate the menu bar when you're through with it, use ReleaseResource [I:6.3.2].



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
GetNewMBar	__GetNewMBar	\$A9C0

4.4.3 Drawing the Menu Bar



Definitions

procedure DrawMenuBar;



Notes

1. DrawMenuBar redisplayes the menu bar on the screen according to its current composition.
2. If any menu title is highlighted, it will remain highlighted when redrawn.
3. Call this routine after any change in the contents of the menu bar, to reflect the change on the screen.
4. The menu bar is normally 20 pixels high. On the Macintosh Plus, its actual height is given in the assembly-language global variable MBarHeight (see Assembly Language Information).



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
DrawMenuBar	_DrawMenuBar	\$A937

Assembly-language global variable (Macintosh Plus only):

Name	Address	Meaning
MBarHeight	\$BAA	Height of menu bar in pixels

4.4.4 Changing Menu Bars



Definitions

function GetMenuBar
 : Handle; {Handle to copy of menu bar}

procedure SetMenuBar
 (menuBar : Handle); {Handle to menu bar to be made current}



Notes

1. GetMenuBar makes a copy of the current menu bar and returns a handle to it; SetMenuBar makes a designated menu bar current.
2. GetMenuBar copies only the menu bar itself, not the menus it contains. Both the original and the copy contain handles to the same underlying menus. Be careful not to deallocate any of the menus as long as either copy still points to it.
3. Use DisposHandle [I:3.2.2] to destroy a menu bar created with GetMenuBar.
4. SetMenuBar doesn't display the new current menu bar on the screen; do it explicitly with DrawMenuBar [4.4.3].
5. To make temporary changes in the menu bar, use GetMenuBar to save a copy, then make the changes in the original. You can later undo the changes by making the copy current with SetMenuBar.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
GetMenuBar	__GetMenuBar	\$A93B
SetMenuBar	__SetMenuBar	\$A93C

Assembly-language global variable:

Name	Address	Meaning
MenuList	\$A1C	Handle to current menu bar

4.4.5 Getting Menus from the Menu Bar



Definitions

```
function  GetMHandle
           (menuID : INTEGER)    { Menu ID }
           : MenuHandle;         { Handle to the menu }
```



Notes

1. GetMHandle accepts the menu ID of a menu in the menu bar and returns a handle to the menu in memory.
2. If there's no menu in the menu bar with the given ID, the handle returned is NIL.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
GetMHandle	_GetMHandle	\$A949

4.5 Responding to the Mouse and Keyboard

4.5.1 Choosing Menu Items



Definitions

function MenuSelect
 (startPoint : Point) {Point where mouse was pressed, in screen coordinates}
 : LONGINT; {Menu item chosen}

function MenuKey
 (ch : CHAR) {Character typed with Command key}
 : LONGINT; {Menu item chosen}



Result of MenuSelect and MenuKey



Notes

1. These functions allow the user to choose a menu item: MenuSelect with the mouse, MenuKey with the Command key.
2. Both functions return a long integer identifying the item that was chosen. The high-order word gives the menu ID, the low-order word the item number within the menu.
3. If no menu item is chosen, both functions return 0 for the menu ID; the value returned for the item number is undefined.

4. When an item is chosen from a menu belonging to a desk accessory (negative menu ID), both functions automatically intercept the choice, pass it to the desk accessory for action, and return a menu ID of 0.
5. Call `MenuSelect` after a mouse-down event, when `FindWindow` [3.5.1] reports that the mouse was pressed in the menu bar (part code `InMenuBar`).
6. `startPoint` should give the location of the mouse-down event, in *global (screen) coordinates*. This is the form in which the point is reported in the `where` field of the event record [2.1.1].
7. `MenuSelect` keeps control for as long as the user holds down the mouse button, tracking the movements of the mouse and providing visual feedback on the screen. This includes highlighting menu titles, “pulling down” menus, scrolling when the mouse is dragged outside a menu’s frame, and highlighting individual menu items.
8. When the button is released, the chosen item (if any) flashes several times, the menu vanishes from the screen, and `MenuSelect` returns, identifying the item that was chosen.
9. If the button is released over a disabled item, or outside of any menu, `MenuSelect` returns a menu ID of 0.
10. Call `MenuKey` after a key-down event if the event’s `modifiers` field [2.1.5] shows that the Command key was down at the time of the event.
11. `ch` is the character that was typed with the Command key down, taken from the low-order byte of the event record’s `message` field [2.1.4]. If this character isn’t an alias for any existing menu item, or if the item is disabled, `MenuKey` returns a menu ID of 0.
12. Except in unusual cases, it is generally advisable to ignore auto-key events with the Command key down, so that Command keystrokes will not repeat automatically.
13. Both `MenuSelect` and `MenuKey` leave the title of the chosen menu highlighted. After responding to the chosen item, you must unhighlight the menu title yourself by calling `HiliteMenu(0)` [4.5.4].



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
<code>MenuSelect</code>	<code>__MenuSelect</code>	<code>\$A93D</code>
<code>MenuKey</code>	<code>__MenuKey</code>	<code>\$A93E</code>

4.5.2 Opening and Closing Desk Accessories



Definitions

function **OpenDeskAcc**
 (accName : Str255) {Name of desk accessory to open}
 : INTEGER; {Reference number of desk accessory}

procedure **CloseDeskAcc**
 (refNum : INTEGER) {Reference number of desk accessory to close}



Notes

1. **OpenDeskAcc** opens a desk accessory and displays it on the screen. Call it when **MenuSelect** [4.5.1] reports that the user has chosen a desk accessory from the Apple menu.
2. Use **GetItem** [4.6.1] to get the name of the desk accessory to open.
3. If the accessory isn't already on the screen, a new system window is opened to display it in.
4. The reference number of the desk accessory (always negative) is stored into the **windowKind** field of the new window record [3.1.1].
5. The accessory's window comes to the front and becomes the active window.
6. **OpenDeskAcc** returns the desk accessory's reference number; if the accessory can't be opened, it returns 0.
7. **CloseDeskAcc** closes a desk accessory and removes its window from the screen.
8. Desk accessories are usually closed for you by **SystemClick** [3.5.3] when the user clicks in the close box of a system window, or automatically when your program terminates. You'll rarely need to call **CloseDeskAcc** explicitly.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
OpenDeskAcc	__OpenDeskAcc	\$A9B6
CloseDeskAcc	__CloseDeskAcc	\$A9B7

4.5.3 Editing in Desk Accessories



Definitions

```

function SystemEdit
    (editCmd : INTEGER)    {Command to relay}
    : BOOLEAN;             {Handled by desk accessory?}

const
    UndoCmd   = 0;          {Edit code for Undo command}
    CutCmd    = 2;          {Edit code for Cut command}
    CopyCmd   = 3;          {Edit code for Copy command}
    PasteCmd  = 4;          {Edit code for Paste command}
    ClearCmd  = 5;          {Edit code for Clear command}
  
```



Notes

1. SystemEdit relays an editing command chosen from a menu to the active desk accessory, if any, for action. Call it whenever the user chooses any of the standard editing commands.
2. The parameter editCmd must be one of the constants shown.
3. These constants have inexplicably been removed from Apple's Toolbox interface. To use them, you must now either define them for yourself as program constants or arrange your Edit menu so that the standard commands have item numbers one greater than the corresponding constant values (shown above). In the latter case, don't forget to subtract 1 back from a chosen item number before passing it on to SystemEdit.

4. The Boolean result of `SystemEdit` is `TRUE` if the command was successfully relayed to a desk accessory and can be ignored by the application.
5. If the result is `FALSE`, the command is your responsibility to handle. This will happen if the active window doesn't contain a desk accessory, or if the active accessory isn't prepared to handle the given command.
6. Make sure the five standard editing commands are available and enabled whenever a desk accessory is active.
7. The trap macro for `SystemEdit` is spelled `_SysEdit`.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal)

(Assembly)

Routine name

Trap macro

Trap word

`SystemEdit`

`_SysEdit`

`$A9C2`

4.5.4 Highlighting Menu Titles



Definitions

procedure `HiliteMenu`

(`menuID` : `INTEGER`); {ID number of menu to highlight}



Notes

1. `HiliteMenu` highlights a menu title in the menu bar.
2. Any previously highlighted menu title becomes unhighlighted.
3. If `menuID` is 0 or doesn't correspond to any menu in the menu bar, the previous title is unhighlighted but no new title is highlighted in its place.
4. Call `HiliteMenu(0)` after you finish responding to any menu item, to unhighlight the menu title, which will have been left highlighted by `MenuSelect` or `MenuKey`.

5. The assembly-language global variable `TheMenu` always contains the menu ID of the currently highlighted menu, or 0 if none.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
<code>HiliteMenu</code>	<code>_HiliteMenu</code>	<code>\$A938</code>

Assembly-language global variable:

Name	Address	Meaning
<code>TheMenu</code>	<code>\$A26</code>	Menu ID of currently highlighted menu

4.6 Controlling Menu Items

4.6.1 Text of an Item



Definitions

procedure `SetItem`

<code>(theMenu : MenuHandle;</code>	<code>{Handle to the menu}</code>
<code>theItem : INTEGER;</code>	<code>{Item number within the menu}</code>
<code>itemText : Str255);</code>	<code>{New text of item}</code>

procedure `GetItem`

<code>(theMenu : MenuHandle;</code>	<code>{Handle to the menu}</code>
<code>theItem : INTEGER;</code>	<code>{Item number within the menu}</code>
<code>var itemText : Str255);</code>	<code>{Returns current text of item}</code>



Notes

1. SetItem changes the text of an existing menu item; GetItem returns the current text of an item.
2. The modifier characters used with AppendMenu [4.3.1] have no special significance to SetItem; they're considered part of the item's text, just like any other character. The string returned by GetItem doesn't include modifiers describing the item's properties.
3. The null string is not allowed as the text of a menu item. To make an item appear blank, use a string consisting of one or more space characters. Such blank items should always be disabled.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
SetItem	__SetItem	\$A947
GetItem	__GetItem	\$A946

4.6.2 Enabling and Disabling Items



Definitions

```

procedure DisableItem
    (theMenu : MenuHandle;    {Handle to the menu}
     theItem  : INTEGER);     {Item number within the menu}

```

```

procedure EnableItem
    (theMenu : MenuHandle;    {Handle to the menu}
     theItem  : INTEGER);     {Item number within the menu}

```

Modifier character	Meaning
(	Disable item



Notes

1. These routines are used to disable or enable an existing menu item.
2. Disabled items appear “dimmed” on the menu and can’t be chosen with the mouse.
3. An item number of 0 disables or enables the entire menu. The menu title isn’t automatically dimmed or undimmed on the screen; call DrawMenuBar [4.4.3] explicitly to make the change visible to the user.
4. An item should be disabled whenever it’s inapplicable in a particular situation (for instance, Paste when the Clipboard is empty). Items not intended to be chosen, such as separator lines, should always be disabled.
5. To disable an item when defining it with AppendMenu [4.3.1], precede the text of the item in the defining string with the modifier character ((left parenthesis):

AppendMenu (anyMenu, '(-----')



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
DisableItem	_DisableItem	\$A93A
EnableItem	_EnableItem	\$A939

4.6.3 Character Style of Menu Items



Definitions

```

procedure SetItemStyle
    (theMenu : MenuHandle;           {Handle to the menu}
     theItem  : INTEGER;             {Item number within the menu}
     theStyle : Style);              {New character style}

procedure GetItemStyle
    (theMenu : MenuHandle;           {Handle to the menu}
     theItem  : INTEGER;             {Item number within the menu}
     var theStyle : Style);          {Returns current character style}
  
```

Modifier character	Argument character	Meaning
<	B	Bold
<	I	Italic
<	U	Underline
<	O	Outline
<	S	Shadow



Notes

1. SetItemStyle sets the character style for an existing menu item; GetItemStyle returns an item's current style.
2. The character style is represented as a QuickDraw Style set [I:8.3.1].
3. Items in standard text menus are always displayed in the system font and the standard size; only the character style can be changed.
4. To set the character style when defining a new item with AppendMenu [4.3.1], use the modifier character < in the defining string, followed by a single letter specifying the style (see table): for example,

AppendMenu (styleMenu, 'Shadow<S')

To specify two or more separate style attributes for the same item, you must use SetItemStyle.

5. The trap macros for SetItemStyle and GetItemStyle are spelled __SetItmStyle and __GetItmStyle.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
SetItemStyle	__SetItmStyle	\$A942
GetItemStyle	__GetItmStyle	\$A941

4.6.4 Marking Items



Definitions

procedure CheckItem

(theMenu : MenuHandle;	{Handle to the menu}
theltem : INTEGER;	{Item number within the menu}
checked : BOOLEAN);	{Check or uncheck?}

procedure SetItemMark

(theMenu : MenuHandle;	{Handle to the menu}
theltem : INTEGER;	{Item number within the menu}
markChar : CHAR);	{Character to mark item with}

procedure GetItemMark

(theMenu : MenuHandle;	{Handle to the menu}
theltem : INTEGER;	{Item number within the menu}
var markChar : CHAR);	{Returns character item is currently marked with}

const

NoMark = 0;	{Item is unmarked}
-------------	--------------------

Modifier character	Argument character	Meaning
!	Mark character	Mark item



Notes

1. CheckItem checks or unchecks a menu item.
2. If checked is TRUE, the item is marked with the standard check mark symbol; if FALSE, any character marking the item is removed. The character removed can be any mark character, not necessarily a check mark.
3. SetItemMark marks an item with any desired character; GetItemMark returns the item's current mark character.
4. SetItemMark accepts a null mark character, CHR(NoMark), and removes the item's mark character, if any, leaving the item unmarked. GetItemMark returns a null mark character for an unmarked item.
5. An item's mark character appears on the menu to the left of the item and its icon, if any.
6. To mark an item when defining it with AppendMenu [4.3.1], use the modifier character ! in the defining string, followed by the mark character.
7. For the standard check mark, use the Toolbox constant CheckMark [I:8.1.1] to store it into the defining string "by hand"

```
defString      := 'Normal!*';
defString[8]   := CHR(CheckMark);
AppendMenu (OptionsMenu, defString)
```

or create the item unmarked and then check it separately with CheckItem.

8. The trap macros for SetItemMark and GetItemMark are spelled __SetItmMark and __GetItmMark.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
CheckItem	__CheckItem	\$A945
SetItemMark	__SetItemMark	\$A944
GetItemMark	__GetItemMark	\$A943

Assembly-language constant:

Name	Value	Meaning
NoMark	0	Item is unmarked

4.6.5 Item Icons



Definitions

procedure SetItemIcon

```

    (theMenu : MenuHandle;      {Handle to the menu}
     theItem  : INTEGER;        {Item number within the menu}
     iconNum  : Byte);          {New icon number}

```

procedure GetItemIcon

```

    (theMenu : MenuHandle;      {Handle to the menu}
     theItem  : INTEGER;        {Item number within the menu}
     var iconNum : Byte);       {Returns current icon number}

```

Modifier character	Argument character	Meaning
^	One-digit icon number	Define icon



Notes

1. SetItemIcon sets the icon associated with a menu item; GetItemIcon returns an item's current icon.
2. The icon is a 32-by-32-bit image, stored in a resource file under resource type 'ICON' [I:5.5.3]. It appears on the menu to the left of the item, but to the right of the mark character, if any.
3. By convention, icons used in menus have resource IDs from 257 to 511. The icon number used by SetItemIcon and GetItemIcon is the resource ID minus 256.
4. SetItemIcon accepts an icon number of 0 and removes the item's icon, if any. GetItemIcon returns an icon number of 0 for an item with no icon.
5. To give an item an icon when defining it with AppendMenu [4.3.1], use the modifier character ^ in the defining string, followed by a one-digit icon number:

```
AppendMenu (ChessMenu, 'White Bishop^4')
```

6. Since the icon's resource ID is 256 more than the icon number, it is 208 more than the character code of the corresponding digit in AppendMenu's defining string. (For example, the digit 1, with character code \$31—decimal 49—denotes icon number 1, or resource ID 257.) For icon numbers greater than 9 (resource IDs greater than 265), you can use a character in the defining string that lies beyond the digit 9 in the ASCII character set [I:8.1.1]:

```
AppendMenu (ChessMenu, 'Black Bishop^:')
```

7. The trap macros for SetItemIcon and GetItemIcon are spelled __SetItemIcon and __GetItemIcon.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
SetItemIcon	__SetItemIcon	\$A940
GetItemIcon	__GetItemIcon	\$A93F

4.7 Nuts and Bolts

4.7.1 Menu Dimensions



Definitions

```
procedure CalcMenuSize
    (theMenu : MenuHandle);    {Handle to the menu}
```



Notes

1. CalcMenuSize recalculates a menu's screen dimensions in pixels, based on its current contents.
2. The dimensions are stored into the menuWidth and menuHeight fields of the menu record [4.1.1].
3. CalcMenuSize is called automatically whenever the contents of the menu are changed. It should never be necessary to call it explicitly.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
CalcMenuSize	_ CalcMenuSize	\$A948

4.7.2 Flashing Menu Items



Definitions

procedure SetMenuFlash
(flashCount : INTEGER); {Number of flashes when menu item chosen}

procedure FlashMenuBar
(menuID : INTEGER); {Handle to the menu}



Notes

1. SetMenuFlash sets the number of times a menu item flashes when chosen with the mouse.
2. A flash count of 0 specifies no flash at all; the standard flash count is 2.
3. The user can set a preferred flash count with the Control Panel desk accessory. You should normally honor this setting and not call SetMenuFlash yourself.
4. FlashMenuBar inverts a menu's title in the menu bar.
5. If the designated menu ID is 0 or doesn't correspond to any menu in the menu bar, the entire menu bar is inverted.
6. The trap macro for SetMenuFlash is spelled _SetMFlash.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

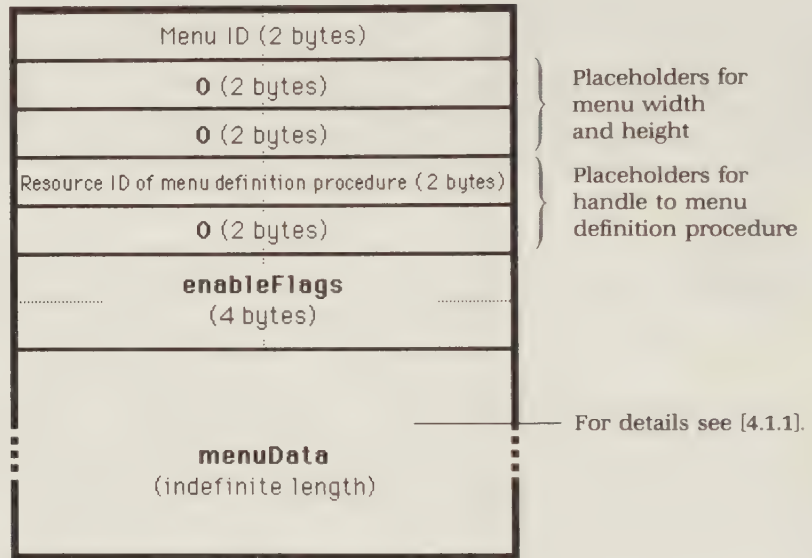
(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
SetMenuFlash	_SetMFlash	\$A94A
FlashMenuBar	_FlashMenuBar	\$A94C

Assembly-language global variable:

Name	Address	Meaning
MenuFlash	\$A24	Current flash count for menu items

4.8 Menu-Related Resources

4.8.1 Resource Type 'MENU'



Definitions

```
const
    TextMenuProc = 0;    {Resource ID of standard menu definition procedure}
```



Notes

1. A resource of type 'MENU' contains a complete menu record [4.1.1], including the "hidden" data at the end defining the menu's items.
2. The handle to the menu definition procedure (field menuProc) is replaced by the definition procedure's resource ID in the high-order word of the field, with 0 in the low-order word.
3. The resource type of the menu definition procedure is 'MDEF'. The standard definition procedure has resource ID 0. (On the Macintosh

Plus, this standard definition procedure resides in ROM rather than in a resource file.)

4. All 'MENU' resources must have the ResPurgeable attribute [1:6.4.2] turned off. Attempting to use a menu that has been purged from the heap will crash the system.
5. Use GetMenu [4.2.2] to read in a resource of this type.

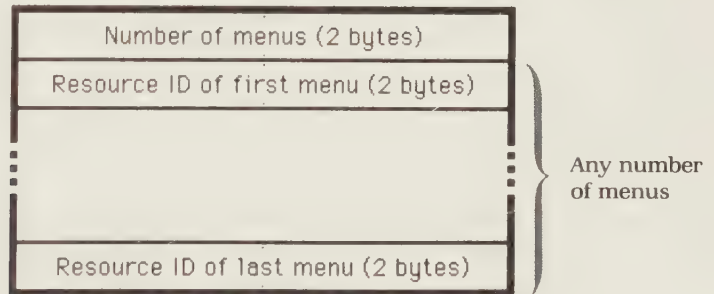


Assembly Language Information

Assembly-language constant:

Name	Value	Meaning
TextMenuProc	0	Resource ID of standard menu definition procedure

4.8.2 Resource Type 'MBAR'



Notes

1. A resource of type 'MBAR' defines the contents of a menu bar.
2. Use GetNewMBar [4.4.2] to read in a resource of this type.

CHAPTER



5



Scissors and Paste

Just about any Macintosh application program, whether it's directly concerned with text or not, will have occasion to do simple text editing at one time or another. The Macintosh User Interface Guidelines prescribe certain standard conventions for text selection and editing, based on a "cut-and-paste" metaphor. In this chapter we'll learn how to use the Toolbox to do on-screen text editing in accordance with the Guidelines. For purposes of illustration, we've chosen text editing as the application for our example program, MiniEdit.

The Toolbox's text-editing facilities are known collectively by the name TextEdit—just as the graphics facilities are called QuickDraw. TextEdit just offers basic text editing, without any frills or fancy refinements. It works with text in the form of a straight sequence of characters, with no internal structure or formatting information of any kind. This means it can only display text in a single typeface, size, and style: it won't let you change fonts in the middle or set just a word or phrase in bold or italic. A real, professional word processing program would naturally want to offer more advanced capabilities, such as multiple fonts and type styles, paragraph structure, and "rulers" or other apparatus for setting margins and tabs. TextEdit is just designed to let you do the bare essentials in a simple, straightforward way.

Edit Records

Just as a graphics port is a self-contained drawing environment for QuickDraw, TextEdit's operating environment is an *edit record* of

type TEREc. (TE for TextEdit, of course.) Edit records are relocatable objects residing in the heap, and are referred to by handles of type TEHandle. The definition of the edit record [5.1.1] may look imposing, but many of its fields are for TextEdit's private use, so you needn't worry about them. For the most part, those that you do need to understand present no great conceptual difficulties.

Each edit record has its own text to edit, kept in the heap and located by way of a *text handle*, hText, in the edit record. The text itself is just a packed array of characters of any length, like the resource data of a 'TEXT' resource [I:8.4.1]. It is *not* a Pascal string, and doesn't begin with a length byte; its length is given by the teLength field of the edit record. teLength is an *unsigned* 16-bit integer, so the text can be up to 65,535 characters long.

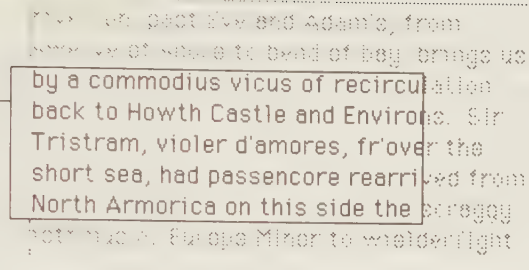
Every edit record is associated with a particular graphics port, normally a window in which text editing is to be done. When you create a new edit record, whatever port is current at the time of creation becomes the port for that record. TextEdit places a pointer to the port in the new record's inPort field, and also copies the port's text characteristics (txFont, txFace, txMode, and txSize [I:8.3.1]) into the corresponding fields of the edit record. Then, every time you perform any editing operation involving that edit record, TextEdit will copy the text characteristics back *from* the record *to* the current port. You can change any of the text characteristics by just storing a new value directly into the appropriate field of the edit record; changing the text characteristics of the port itself, with TextFont, TextSize, TextFace, or TextMode [I:8.3.2], won't do the trick.

TextEdit does *not* automatically set the current port to match the edit record you're working with. It's up to you to make sure the proper port is current before invoking any text editing operation.

Destination and View Rectangles

Two very important fields of the edit record are its *destination rectangle* and *view rectangle*. Both rectangles are expressed in the local coordinate system of the edit record's port—in other words, in window-relative coordinates. The destination rectangle marks the boundaries within which the text will be set; the view rectangle defines the portion of the window (or other port) in which the text will actually be displayed (see Figure 5-1). The two rectangles need

View (clipping) rectangle—area in which text is actually displayed in graphics port



Destination (wrapping) rectangle—area to which text is formatted

Both rectangles are expressed in local (window) coordinates.

Figure 5-1 Destination and view rectangles

not coincide, and in general they won't. As we'll see later, the way TextEdit performs scrolling in an edit record is by shifting the destination rectangle while holding the view rectangle fixed.

In normal operation, TextEdit will never allow text to run outside the boundaries of the destination rectangle. When the text reaches the right edge of the rectangle, it automatically “wraps” to the next line. (Because of this, the destination and view rectangles are sometimes referred to as the “wrapping” and “clipping” rectangles.) Instead of breaking a line in the middle of a word, TextEdit carries the entire word forward to the next line; a word is never broken in the middle unless it's too long to fit on a single line by itself. This particular method of wrapping text is known as *word wrap*.

TextEdit defines a word as any sequence of nonspace characters, surrounded by spaces (or ASCII control characters such as tabs or carriage returns). This means, for example, that punctuation marks are considered part of the adjoining word, and that a hyphenated word will never be broken at the hyphen. The Macintosh character set also includes a “sticky space” character (character code \$CA) that looks just like a blank space but isn't considered a word break.

If you don't like TextEdit's definition, you can redefine what constitutes a word by installing your own *word-break routine* [5.6.2] in a field of the edit record. We'll have more to say about word-break routines in the “Nuts and Bolts” section at the end of this chapter.

Actually, the destination rectangle is “bottomless”: only its top and sides are significant. If the text is too long to fit within the

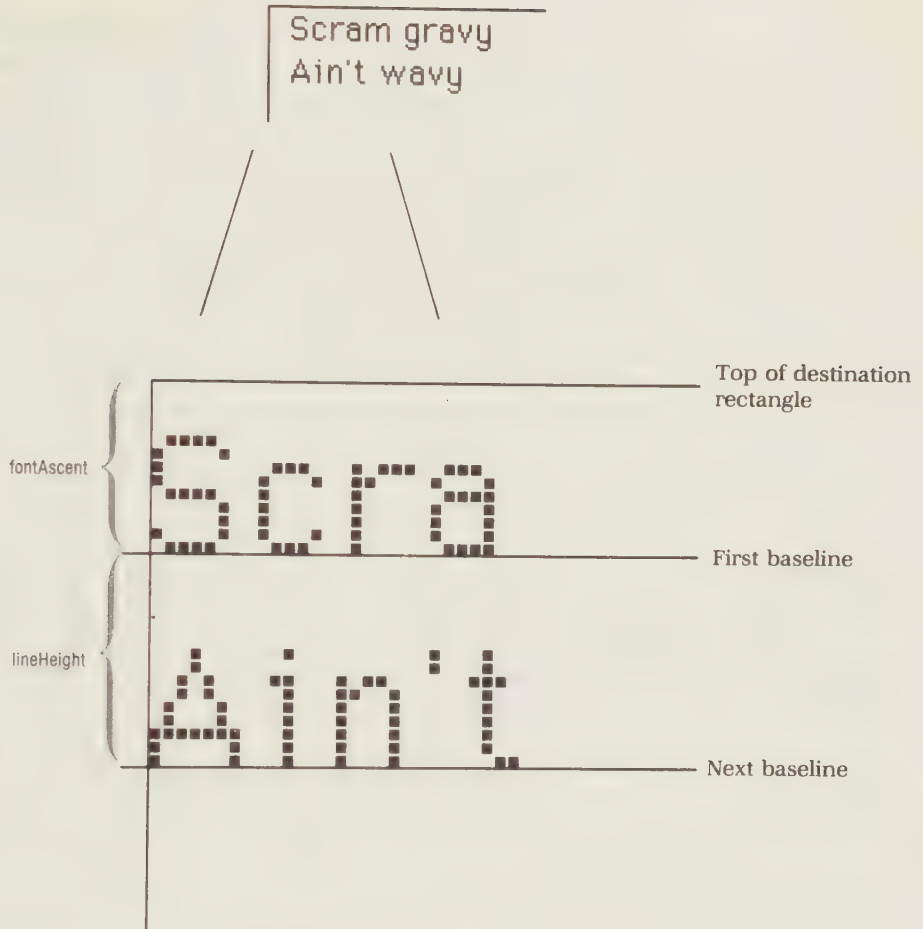
specified rectangle, it just continues out the bottom and keeps going. You can tell `TextEdit` to ignore the right edge of the rectangle as well, by setting the `crOnly` field of the edit record to `-1`. In this case, a line of text won't be broken even if it extends beyond the right edge of the rectangle; only an explicit carriage return character (character code `$0D`) can cause a line break. If `crOnly = 0`, text will be wrapped to the right edge of the rectangle in the normal way.

`0` and `-1` are the only meaningful values for the `crOnly` field. Only the Shadow knows why it's defined as an integer and not a Boolean.

The vertical spacing of text within the destination rectangle is controlled by the edit record's `fontAscent` and `lineHeight` fields. As shown in Figure 5-2, `fontAscent` determines the vertical placement of the first baseline, measured from the top of the destination rectangle; `lineHeight` is the vertical distance from each baseline to the next one below it. A brand-new edit record is set up for single spacing in the font designated by its `txFont` and `txSize` fields: its first baseline is initialized to the font's ascent, and its line height to the font's character height (ascent plus descent) plus leading [I:8.2.2]. You can then adjust the vertical spacing any way you like by storing new values directly into the `fontAscent` and `lineHeight` fields. To produce double spacing, for instance, you would add the original value of `lineHeight` to both fields.

`TextEdit` uses the values of `fontAscent` and `lineHeight` to calculate the height of the rectangle to invert for a text selection or of the blinking vertical bar marking an insertion point. Changing one of these fields and not the other will produce strange-looking selections and insertion points, so be careful always to adjust both fields simultaneously by the same amount.

`fontAscent` and `lineHeight` aren't updated automatically when you change an edit record's typeface (`txFont`) or point size (`txSize`). You have to remember to update them yourself: use `GetFontInfo` [I:8.2.6] to get the characteristics of the new font.



`fontAscent` is the distance from the top of the destination rectangle to the first baseline; `lineHeight` is the distance from one baseline to the next.

Figure 5-2 Line height and font ascent

Line Starts

Given the destination rectangle, the text to be displayed, and the typeface, type size, and character style, `TextEdit` can calculate how many lines the text will take up and where all the line breaks will fall. It keeps this information in the `lineStarts` array, which is the last field of the edit record. Since Pascal doesn't allow variable-length arrays, `lineStarts` is nominally indexed from 0 to 16000. In reality it contains just as many entries as are actually needed, running from 0 up to the actual number of text lines as specified by the edit record's `nLines`

Preparation for Editing

Like many other parts of the Toolbox, `TextEdit` has a one-time initialization routine, `TEInit` [5.2.1], to set up its internal data structures. You call this routine only once, at the beginning of your program, after calling `InitGraf` [1:4.3.1] and `InitFonts` [1:8.2.4] and before attempting any other `TextEdit` operation. In our example program, we've already included a call to `TEInit` in our `Initialize` routine (Program 2-6).

To prepare a window for text editing, you need an edit record for that window. Make sure the window is the current port, then call `TENew` [5.2.2] to create an edit record. You supply the destination and view rectangles, in window coordinates, and get back a handle to the new edit record. As already noted, the record's text characteristics will be copied from those of the window (the current port) at the time it's created.

The text of a new edit record is initially empty: its text handle, `hText`, is set to point to a zero-length block in the heap, and its `teLength` field is set to 0. In some cases you can just leave the text empty until the user types some in from the keyboard; at other times you'll want to set up the edit record to work on some pre-existing text (for instance, to read a file into a window for editing). There are two ways of doing this. One is to call `TESetText` [5.2.3], giving it a pointer to the text you want to edit. `TESetText` will make a copy of the text in the heap and store a handle to the copy into the edit record. From then on, any editing performed with that edit record will affect the *copy*, not the original text. If you later want to reflect the changes back to the original (for instance, to save a file back to the disk after editing), you can get a handle to the edited copy with `TEGetText` [5.2.3].

Notice that `TESetText` expects to receive a simple pointer to the text to be edited, *not* a handle! If your original copy of the text is relocatable, you have to dereference its handle and pass the underlying master pointer to `TESetText`. As always, remember to lock the handle before dereferencing it and unlock it again when you're finished:

```
HLock (textHandle);  
TESetText (textHandle^, teLength, editRec);  
HUnlock (textHandle)
```

The second way of setting an edit record's text is to store your own text handle into its `hText` field. This avoids the overhead (in both time and space) of making a copy; the edit record will just operate directly on the original text. However, you must remember to call `TECalfText` [5.3.1] after storing the new text handle, to wrap the text to the destination rectangle. (When you use the first method, `TESetText` wraps the text for you automatically.) Also, don't forget to set the `teLength` field to the length of the new text!

When you're finished with an edit record, you can destroy it with `TEDispose` [5.2.2]. Beware, however: `TEDispose` disposes of the edit record's text as well as the record itself. If you're still holding a handle to the text (such as one you've received from `TEGetText`), the handle will become invalid. If you still need to refer to the text after destroying the edit record, you must either make a copy of the text and continue to work with the copy, or else hold onto the original text handle and clear the `hText` field to `NIL` before destroying the edit record, so that the text won't be destroyed at the same time.

If your program supports more than one text editing window at a time, you'll want each window to have its own edit record. You can keep a handle to the edit record in the window's reference constant field or, as in our `MiniEdit` program, make it part of a larger window data record and keep a handle to *that* as the reference constant. We've already seen (Program 3-2) how `MiniEdit`'s `DoNew` procedure allocates a window data record when creating a new window, but we glossed over the details of the record's internal structure. Now it's time to go back and fill in the gaps.

Program 5-1 shows the type definition for `MiniEdit`'s window data record. (Don't forget that this definition is just a part of our own program, *not* a Toolbox data structure!) The `editRec` field holds a handle to the window's edit record; the dirty flag is also connected with text editing, and we'll have more to say about it in a minute. The remaining fields have to do with topics we aren't yet ready to discuss, so we'll come back to them later: `scrollBar` holds a handle to the window's scroll bar (Chapter 6), and `volNumber` and `fileNumber` are the volume and file reference numbers (Chapter 8) for the window's disk file. Notice that we also need a byte of padding following the 1-byte dirty field, to keep the fields that follow it aligned on even word boundaries.

The purpose of the dirty flag is to protect the user from inadvertently losing valuable work. A window is considered "dirty" if it contains editing changes that haven't yet been saved to the disk. `MiniEdit` will check a window's dirty flag before doing anything that

type

```

WDHandle  = ^WDPtr;
WDPtr     = ^WindowData;

WindowData = record
    editRec   : THandle;           {Handle to edit record}
    scrollBar  : ControlHandle;     {Handle to scroll bar}
    dirty      : BOOLEAN;           {Document changed since last saved?}
    padding    : Byte;              {Extra byte for padding}
    volNumber  : INTEGER;           {Volume reference number}
    fileNumber : INTEGER;           {File reference number}
end;

```

Program 5-1 Window data record

would permanently destroy the window's contents (such as closing the window, reverting to an earlier version of a file, or quitting the program). If the window is dirty, MiniEdit will warn the user with an alert box. The user can then choose whether to proceed with the operation anyway, save the window's contents to the disk first, or cancel the operation altogether. The dirty flag is set to FALSE when the window is created; it becomes TRUE whenever the window's contents are changed by an editing operation (including typing in text from the keyboard), and FALSE again after any operation that leaves it in agreement with the disk, such as Save, Save As..., or Revert to Saved. (Again, notice carefully that all this is a function of our MiniEdit program itself, not a service provided automatically by the Toolbox.)

Program 5-2 shows the complete version of our DoNew procedure, which we looked at in skeleton form in Chapter 3. This version includes the code needed to initialize the components of the window's data record, including its edit record. The edit record's view (clipping) rectangle is based on the window's port rectangle, but is shortened at the right and bottom to allow room for the window's scroll bar and size box. The width of the scroll bar (global constant SBarWidth) is 16 pixels, but the view rectangle is actually shortened by 1 pixel less than that, since the scroll bar's right border will overlap with that of the window itself. The destination (wrapping) rectangle is inset a few extra pixels for legibility. (The size of the inset is defined as a program constant, TextMargin, so that it can easily be adjusted by changing just one declaration.)

After storing a handle to the new edit record into the editRec field, the procedure goes on to initialize the remaining fields of the


```

{ Global declarations }

const
  SBarWidth = 16;           {Width of scroll bars in pixels}
  TextMargin = 4;          {Inset from window to text rectangle}

var
  TheWindow : WindowPtr;    {Pointer to currently active window [3.1.1]}
  TheScrollBar : ControlHandle; {Handle to active window's scroll bar [6.1.1]}
  TheText : TEHandle;       {Handle to active window's edit record [5.1.1]}
  MacPlus : BOOLEAN;        {Are we running on a Macintosh Plus?}

procedure DoNew;

{ Handle New command. }

const
  windowID = 1000;          {Resource ID for window template [3.7.1]}
  scrollID = 1000;          {Resource ID for scroll bar template [6.5.1]}

var
  thisWindow : WindowPeek;  {Pointer for "peeking" into window's fields [3.1.1]}
  theData : WDHandle;       {Handle to window's data record [Prog. 5-1]}
  dataHandle : Handle;      {Untyped handle for creating data record [I:3.1.1]}
  destRect : Rect;         {Wrapping rectangle for window's text [I:4.1.2]}
  viewRect : Rect;         {Clipping rectangle for window's text [I:4.1.2]}

begin {DoNew}

  TheWindow := GetNewWindow (windowID, NIL, WindowPtr(-1)); {Make new window from template [3.2.2]}

  thisWindow := WindowPeek(TheWindow); {Convert to a "peek" pointer [3.1.1]}
  thisWindow^.spareFlag := MacPlus;    {Enable zooming on Mac Plus only [3.1.1]}

  OffsetWindow (TheWindow); {Offset from location of previous window [Prog. 3-12]}
  ShowWindow (TheWindow);   {Make window visible [3.3.1]}

  SetPort (TheWindow);      {Get into the window's port [I:4.3.3]}
  TextFont (Geneva);        {Set text font [I:8.3.2, I:8.2.1]}

  with TheWindow^.portRect do {Set up clipping rectangle [I:4.2.2]}
    SetRect (viewRect, 0, 0, right - (SBarWidth - 1), bottom - (SBarWidth - 1));
  destRect := viewRect;
  InsetRect (destRect, TextMargin, TextMargin); {Inset wrapping rectangle by text margin [I:4.4.4]}

  dataHandle := NewHandle (SIZEOF(WindowData)); {Allocate window data record [I:3.2.1, Prog.5-1]}
  SetWRefCon (TheWindow, LONGINT(dataHandle)); {Store as reference constant [3.2.4]}

```

```

HLock (dataHandle);                                {Lock data record [I:3.2.4]}
  theData := WDHandle(dataHandle);                  {Convert to typed handle [Prog. 5-1]}
  with theData^^ do
    begin
      editRec := TNew (destRect, viewRect);          {Make edit record [5.2.2]} ←
      scrollBar := GetNewControl (scrollID, TheWindow); {Make scroll bar [6.2.1]}
      dirty := FALSE;                                {Document is initially clean}
      fileNumber := 0;                                {Window has no associated file}
      volNumber := 0;                                { or volume }

      SetClickLoop (@AutoScroll, editRec);           {Install auto-scroll routine [5.6.1, Prog. 6-9]}

      TheScrollBar := scrollBar;                      {Set global handles}
      TheText := editRec

    end; {with}
HUnlock (dataHandle);                                {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}

EnableItem (FileMenu, CloseItem)                   {Enable Close command on menu [4.6.2]}

end; {DoNew}

```

Program 5-2 (continued)

window data record. The window's scroll bar is created from a template in a resource file using the Toolbox routine `GetNewControl`, which we'll learn about in the next chapter. The dirty flag is initialized to FALSE, since the user hasn't yet typed anything into the window that would require saving to the disk; the volume and file reference numbers are set to 0 to show that the window is not yet associated with any disk file.

Once the window data record is initialized, `DoNew` calls the `TextEdit` routine `SetClickLoop` to install a *click-loop routine* in the new window's edit record. (We'll talk about click-loop routines later in this chapter; as we'll see, this step is needed in order to provide "automatic scrolling" when the mouse is dragged outside the window during text selection, as called for in the *User Interface Guidelines*.) Next, since the new window will immediately become the active window, `DoNew` sets the global handles `TheText` and `TheScrollBar` to point to its edit record and scroll bar; other `MiniEdit` routines will expect to find these handles properly set up for the currently active window. Finally, since there's now an active window on the screen, `DoNew` makes sure the `Close` command on the `File` menu is enabled. (If the screen was previously empty, the `Close` command will have been disabled, since there was nothing to close.)

Text Display

The basic routine for displaying the text of an edit record is `TEUpdate` [5.3.2]. Along with a handle to the edit record, you supply an *update rectangle* as a parameter. `TEUpdate` draws the edit record's text, wrapped to the destination rectangle and clipped to the intersection of the given update rectangle, the view rectangle, and the window's visible region.

As the name implies, `TEUpdate` is intended to be used in responding to an update event for a window, to redraw the window's text as part of the overall job of redrawing the content region. Program 5-3 is the complete version of `MiniEdit's DoUpdate` routine, which handles update events for the program's windows. The only difference between this and our earlier skeleton version of the same routine (Program 3-6) is that we can now show the step that actually redraws the window's text:

```
with theData^^ do
    TEUpdate (editRec^^.viewRect, editRec)
```

This gets the edit record handle from the window's data record and uses it to update the edit record. To avoid unnecessary drawing, we could have set our update rectangle to the bounding box of the window's update region—

```
whichWindow^.updateRgn^^.rgnBBox
```

—but it's simpler (though perhaps a bit less efficient) to use the entire view rectangle instead.

The use of `TEUpdate` isn't confined to update events only. You can use it whenever you need to redraw the text of an edit record for any reason. However, all the standard editing and scrolling operations redraw the text for you automatically, so you needn't worry about it in those cases. Notice also that `TEUpdate` automatically rewraps the text to the destination rectangle before drawing it, so there's no need to explicitly call `TECalText` [5.3.1] first.

Another routine that's sometimes useful is `TextBox` [5.3.2]. This allows you to display noneditable text anywhere you want within a window, without constructing an edit record for displaying it. (Actually, `TextBox` constructs an edit record for you, uses it to display the text, and then immediately disposes of it.)

```

{ Global variable }

var
  TheEvent : EventRecord;           {Current event [2.1.1]}

procedure DoUpdate;

{ Handle update event. }

var
  savePort    : GrafPtr;           {Pointer to previous current port [I:4.2.2]}
  whichWindow : WindowPtr;         {Pointer to window to be updated [3.1.1]}
  theData     : WDHandle;          {Handle to window's data record [Prog. 5-1]}
  dataHandle  : Handle;            {Untyped handle for locking data record [I:3.1.1]}

begin {DoUpdate}

  GetPort (savePort);               {Save previous port [I:4.3.3]}

  whichWindow := WindowPtr(TheEvent.message); {Convert long integer to pointer [3.1.1]}
  SetPort (whichWindow);            {Make window the current port [I:4.3.3]}

  BeginUpdate (whichWindow);        {Restrict visible region to update region [3.4.1]}

  EraseRect (whichWindow^.portRect); {Clear update region [I:5.3.2]}

  DrawGrowIcon (whichWindow);       {Redraw size box [3.3.4]}
  DrawControls (whichWindow);       {Redraw scroll bar [6.3.1]}

  dataHandle := Handle(GetWRefCon(whichWindow)); {Get window data [3.2.4]}
  HLock (dataHandle);                {Lock data record [I:3.2.4]}
  theData := WDHandle(dataHandle);   {Convert to typed handle [Prog. 5-1]}
  with theData^ do
    TEUpdate (editRec^.viewRect, editRec); {Redraw the text [5.3.2]}
  HUnlock (dataHandle);              {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}

  EndUpdate (whichWindow);           {Restore original visible region [3.4.1]}

  SetPort (savePort)                {Restore original port [I:4.3.3]}

end; {DoUpdate}

```

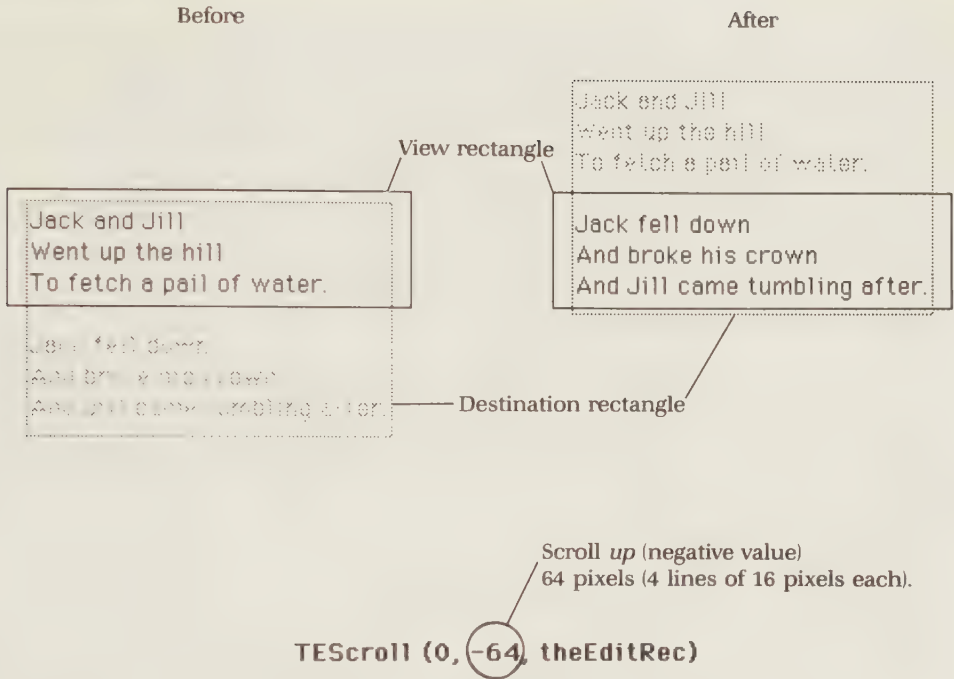
Program 5-3 Handle update event

The Toolbox can *justify* the text it displays in any of three ways: flush left (that is, aligned with the left edge of the destination rectangle), centered, or flush right. The `just` field of the edit record specifies which method of justification to use, and should always contain one of the three built-in constants `TEJustLeft`, `TEJustCenter`, or `TEJustRight` [5.1.1]. You can set the justification for an edit record with `TESetJust` [5.3.1]; this doesn't automatically redisplay the text with the new justification, however, so be sure to call `TEUpdate` afterward.

The Toolbox text editing routines don't support "full justification" to both the left and right margins simultaneously. This form of justification is more complicated than the others, since the widths of the spaces within a line must be adjusted to make the margins come out even. If you want full justification, you'll have to provide it for yourself by manipulating the `spExtra` field of the graphics port [I:8.3.1].

To scroll text within the view rectangle, use `TEScroll` [5.3.3]. The `horiz` and `vert` parameters tell how far to scroll in each direction, in pixels. As mentioned earlier, scrolling is done by offsetting the destination rectangle by the specified amounts horizontally and vertically, while leaving the view rectangle fixed. The effect is to shift the text relative to the window (see Figure 5-4). Positive parameter values shift the text in the direction of increasing QuickDraw coordinates: down and to the right. Negative values scroll up and to the left. We'll see how `MiniEdit` uses `TEScroll` when we talk about scroll bars in the next chapter.

The Macintosh Plus Toolbox includes a new scrolling routine named `TEPinScroll` [5.3.3], which works just the same as `TEScroll` except that it "pins" when the last line of text scrolls into view at the bottom of the view rectangle. This guarantees that there's always a whole windowful of text visible; with `TEScroll`, it's possible to scroll the text completely out of view, leaving nothing but an empty window displayed on the screen.



Scrolling is done by changing the coordinates of the destination rectangle while leaving the view rectangle fixed.

Figure 5-4 Scrolling in an edit record

Text Selection

Every edit record has a *selection range* marking where in the text the next editing operation will take effect. The selection range is defined by two fields of the edit record, `selStart` and `selEnd` [5.1.1]. These denote character positions—that is, points between characters, not the characters themselves. The text between the two character positions is the *selection*, and appears highlighted when displayed on the screen. A zero-length selection (`selStart = selEnd`) is called an *insertion point*, and appears as a blinking vertical bar between characters. (This blinking bar is sometimes called the “caret,” even though it doesn’t really look like the traditional proofreader’s caret mark.)

When TENew creates a new edit record, it initializes both `selStart` and `selEnd` to 0. (That’s the only valid character position, since the record’s text is initially empty.) When you assign text to the record

with `TESetText`, both ends of the selection are automatically set to the length of the text, denoting an insertion point immediately following the last character. However, if you bypass `TESetText` and store a text handle directly into the edit record's `hText` field, it's up to you to set the selection range yourself.

The routine you use for this is named `TESetSelect` [5.4.2]. If you specify the ends of the selection range out of order (`selStart > selEnd`), `TESetSelect` will automatically exchange them for you; if you try to set either or both beyond the end of the text, it will force them to the actual text length. (However, remember that `selStart` and `selEnd`, like all character positions, are unsigned integers. If you give a negative value for either, it will be interpreted as a large positive value and forced to the end of the text, not to the beginning as you might expect.)

Tracking the Mouse

Most of the time, though, instead of setting the selection range yourself, you'll let the user do it by clicking or dragging with the mouse. When a mouse-down event occurs in the text rectangle of one of your windows (that is, in the view rectangle of the window's edit record), you should respond by calling `TEClick` [5.4.1], giving it the point where the mouse was pressed *in window coordinates*. Like other mouse-tracking routines that we've already encountered (such as `DragWindow` [3.5.4], `GrowWindow` [3.5.4], and `MenuSelect` [4.5.1]), `TEClick` keeps control until the mouse button is released, following the mouse's movements and giving visual feedback on the screen. (In this case the feedback is to highlight the selected text as the mouse is dragged through it.) When the user finalizes the selection by releasing the button, `TEClick` sets the edit record's `selStart` and `selEnd` fields accordingly, then returns control to your program.

`TEClick` remembers the time and location of the last mouse click and compares them with those of the current click. If both clicks occurred at the same character position and within a certain time interval, they're considered a *double click*. In this case, `TEClick` will select text by word rather than by character, in accordance with the User Interface Guidelines. The Guidelines also call for extending or shortening an existing selection, rather than starting a new one, when the mouse button is pressed with the Shift key down. `TEClick` supports this feature by accepting a Boolean parameter (`extend`) to tell it whether to extend or start a new selection.

The length of the double-click interval is a matter of individual preference that the user can set with the Control Panel desk accessory; the standard setting is 32 ticks, or about half a second. You can find out the current setting by calling `GetDbtTime` [5.4.1], but there's no straightforward way to change it in Pascal. (In assembly language, you can just store the desired value directly into the system global `DoubleTime`. You shouldn't normally do this, though; just honor the value the user has set via the Control Panel.)

Program 5-4 (`DoSelect`) shows how `MiniEdit` tracks the user's text selections with the mouse. When our `DoMouseDown` procedure (Program 3-7) learns from `FindWindow` [3.5.1] that the mouse was pressed in the content region of an application window, it calls the `MiniEdit` routine `DoContent` to handle the event. Since, among other things, `DoContent` has to handle mouse clicks in the window's scroll bar (or other controls, if any), we'll postpone discussing it until we talk about controls in Chapter 6. But if the click turns out *not* to be in a control, `DoContent` next checks whether it was in the window's text rectangle and, if so, calls the `DoSelect` routine shown here.

```
{ Global variables }
```

```
var
  TheEvent : EventRecord;           {Current event [2.1.1]}
  TheText  : TEHandle;             {Handle to active window's edit record [5.1.1]}
```

```
procedure DoSelect (thePoint : Point);
```

```
  { Handle mouse-down event in text rectangle. }
```

```
var
  extend : BOOLEAN;                {Extend existing selection (Shift-click)?}
```

```
begin {DoSelect}
```

```
  with TheEvent do
    extend := (BitAnd(modifiers, ShiftKey) <> 0); {Shift key down? [1:2.2.2, 2.1.5]}
```

```
    TEClick (thePoint, extend, TheText);           {Do text selection [5.4.1]}
```

```
    FixEditMenu                                   {Enable/disable menu items [Prog. 5-5]}
```

```
end; {DoSelect}
```

Program 5-4 Mouse-down event in text rectangle

DoSelect first checks the appropriate bit in the event's modifiers field [2.1.5] to see if the Shift key was down at the time of the click, and sets the extend flag accordingly. Then it calls TEClick to track the mouse and set the selection. Finally, it has to examine the result and enable or disable the Cut, Copy, and Clear commands on the Edit menu, depending on whether the new selection is nonempty. (We want the commands to be disabled if the selection is just an insertion point, since there's nothing to cut, copy, or clear.) This last task is performed by the MiniEdit utility procedure FixEditMenu, shown in Program 5-5.

```
{ Global variable }

var
  TheText : THandle;                                (Handle to active window's edit record [5.1.1])

procedure FixEditMenu;

  { Enable/disable editing commands. }

begin {FixEditMenu}

  DisableItem (EditMenu, UndoItem);                 (Disable Undo command [4.6.2])

  HLock (Handle(TheText));                           (Lock edit record [1:3.2.4])
  with TheText^^ do
    if selStart = selEnd then                        (Is selection empty? [5.1.1])
      begin
        DisableItem (EditMenu, CutItem);            (Disable menu items that operate
        DisableItem (EditMenu, CopyItem);           { on a nonempty selection [4.6.2])
        DisableItem (EditMenu, ClearItem)
      end {then}
    else
      begin
        EnableItem (EditMenu, CutItem);              (Enable menu items that operate
        EnableItem (EditMenu, CopyItem);             { on a nonempty selection [4.6.2])
        EnableItem (EditMenu, ClearItem)
      end; {else}
  HUnlock (Handle(TheText));                         (Unlock edit record [1:3.2.4])

  if TEGetScrapLen = 0 then                          (Is scrap empty? [5.5.4])
    DisableItem (EditMenu, PasteItem)                (Disable Paste command [4.6.2])
  else
    EnableItem (EditMenu, PasteItem)                 (Enable Paste command [4.6.2])

end; {FixEditMenu}
```

Program 5-5 Enable/disable editing commands

Selection Display

According to the User Interface Guidelines, a window is supposed to highlight its text selection or display its insertion point only when active, and hide them again when it becomes inactive. The TextEdit routines `TEActivate` and `TEDeactivate` [5.4.3] handle this job for you. They're intended to be called as part of the response to an activate or deactivate event; we'll see an example later in this chapter, when we look at the final version of MiniEdit's `DoActivate` routine.

A new routine in the Macintosh Plus Toolbox, `TESelView` [5.3.3], scrolls the current selection or insertion point into view if it isn't already visible. The operation of this routine is controlled by an *auto-view flag* in the edit record: if the flag is `FALSE` (its initial setting), `TESelView` has no effect. Yet another new routine, `TEAutoView` [5.3.3], is provided for setting the flag.

To make the insertion caret blink on the screen, the Toolbox has to check the system clock periodically and show or hide the caret if the required interval has elapsed since the last change. This task is handled by a TextEdit routine named `TEIdle` [5.4.3]. Just as you must call `SystemTask` [2.7.2] at least once per tick to allow the desk accessories to perform their periodic tasks, you have to call `TEIdle` that often to keep the caret blinking at a steady rate. Again, the natural place to do it is in the program's main event loop; so we'll just add a call to `TEIdle` to our earlier `MainLoop` procedure (Program 2-2), producing the final version shown in Appendix H.

Like the double-click interval discussed earlier, the caret's blink interval can be controlled by the user with the Control Panel desk accessory. The initial setting is 32 ticks, or about two blinks per second. You can read the current setting in Pascal by calling `GetCaretTime` [5.4.3], and read or change it in assembly language via the system global `CaretTime`. (Again, you should ordinarily just leave this setting under the user's control via the Control Panel.)

Keyboard Input

The routine that handles the user's keyboard input is `TEKey` [5.5.1]. It accepts one character typed from the keyboard and inserts it into the text of an edit record at the current insertion point. If there's a nonempty selection instead of an insertion point, the typed character replaces the entire selection; the text it replaces is permanently lost and cannot be recovered. In either case, `TEKey` leaves the selection as an insertion point following the inserted character, marking the point where the next character typed will go. Then it rewraps the text to the destination rectangle and redisplay it within the view rectangle, causing the text to "bubble forward" on the screen as the user types.

`TEKey` also does the right thing when the user types a backspace or a carriage return. If you give it a carriage return character (character code `$0D`), it will wrap the text to a new line at that point, even if it isn't at the right edge of the destination rectangle. If you give it a backspace character (`$08`), it will "back up" the insertion point one position, deleting the immediately preceding character. (If the selection is nonempty, the backspace character simply deletes the selected text permanently from the document.) However, `TEKey` doesn't do any special formatting in response to a tab character (`$09`), since `TextEdit` has no notion of tab stops and doesn't provide a way to set them.

Program 5-6 (`DoTyping`) is the routine of our example program that handles the user's typing from the keyboard. This routine gets called from `DoKeystroke` (Program 4-4) when the `modifiers` field of the event record shows that the Command key was not being held down at the time of the keystroke. The heart of the `DoTyping` routine is the call to `TEKey`; all the rest is merely housekeeping. First of all, we have to bring the current selection or insertion point into view, in case the user has scrolled it out of the window. This is done by a utility routine of our program named `ScrollToSelection`, which we'll be looking at in the next chapter. Then, after calling `TEKey` to insert the typed character, we call two more utility routines, `AdjustScrollBar` and `AdjustText`, to adjust the setting of the window's scroll bar as the length of the text changes and rescroll the window's text to match the new scroll bar setting. (These routines, too, are discussed in detail in the next chapter.) The second call to `ScrollToSelection` makes sure the insertion point stays visible as the user types; if the typing goes past the end of the window, `ScrollToSelection` will scroll the text up one line to bring it back into view.

```

procedure DoTyping (ch : CHAR);

  { Handle character typed from keyboard. }

begin (DoTyping)

  ScrollToSelection;                                {Make sure insertion point is visible [Prog. 6-13]}

  TEKey (ch, TheText);                              {Process character [5.5.1]}

  AdjustScrollBar;                                  {Adjust scroll bar to length of text [Prog. 6-5]}
  AdjustText;                                       {Adjust text to match scroll bar [Prog. 6-7]}
  ScrollToSelection;                                {Keep insertion point visible [Prog. 6-13]}

  DisableItem (EditMenu, CutItem);                  {Disable menu items that operate }
  DisableItem (EditMenu, CopyItem);                 { on a nonempty selection [4.6.2]}
  DisableItem (EditMenu, ClearItem);

  WindowDirty (TRUE)                               {Mark window as dirty [Prog. 5-7]}

end; (DoTyping)

```

Program 5-6 Handle character typed from keyboard

Since TEKey always leaves an insertion point—that is, an empty selection—we next have to disable those editing commands that operate on a nonempty selection. Finally, since we've just changed the window's text, we have to mark the window as dirty, so that we can alert the user to save its contents before closing it or quitting the program. This is done by the utility routine WindowDirty (Program 5-7).

In addition to setting the dirty flag in the window data record, our WindowDirty routine also enables a couple of File menu commands that apply to dirty windows only. We always want to enable the Save command when the active window is dirty, allowing the user to save the changes to a disk file. Revert to Saved, on the other hand, is applicable only if the window is associated with a file, so we enable it only if the window's file reference number is nonzero. When a dirty window becomes clean after a file operation, we'll again call WindowDirty, but this time with a FALSE value for the isDirty parameter, to mark the window as clean rather than dirty. In this case the routine disables both the Save and Revert commands, since the window's contents are now in agreement with the version on the disk.

```

procedure WindowDirty (isDirty : BOOLEAN);

  { Mark window dirty or clean. }

  var
    theData    : WDHandle;           {Handle to window's data record [Prog. 5-1]}
    dataHandle : Handle;             {Untyped handle for locking data record [I:3.1.1]}

  begin {WindowDirty}

    dataHandle := Handle(GetWRefCon(TheWindow)); {Get window data [3.2.4]}
    HLock (dataHandle);                        {Lock data record [I:3.2.4]}

    theData := WDHandle(dataHandle);           {Convert to typed handle [Prog. 5-1]}
    with theData^^ do
      begin

        dirty := isDirty;                    {Set flag in data record [Prog. 5-1]}

        if isDirty then                      {Is window becoming dirty or clean?}
          begin
            EnableItem (FileMenu, SaveItem); {Enable Save command [4.6.2]}
            if fileNumber <> 0 then           {Is window associated with a file? [Prog. 5-1]}
              EnableItem (FileMenu, RevertItem) {Enable Revert command [4.6.2]}
            end {then}
          end
        else
          begin
            DisableItem (FileMenu, SaveItem); {Disable menu items [4.6.2]}
            DisableItem (FileMenu, RevertItem)
          end {else}
        end {with}

    HUnlock (dataHandle);                    {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}

  end; {WindowDirty}

```

Program 5-7 Mark window dirty or clean

Cutting and Pasting

TextEdit has built-in routines for performing all the standard cut-and-paste editing operations: TECut, TECopy, and TEPaste [5.5.2]. They all operate on an edit record's current selection and transfer text by way of a private *text scrap* that TextEdit maintains in the heap. TECut

deletes the selected characters from the edit record's text to the scrap; TECopy copies the selection to the scrap without deleting it; TEPaste copies the scrap into the text, replacing the current selection if it's nonempty. There's just one scrap, which is shared in common among all edit records; this allows the user to cut or copy text from one window and paste it down in another.

The Macintosh user manuals talk about cutting and pasting via the "Clipboard," but *scrap*, the term programmers usually use, seems more descriptive. Back in the typewriter era, when people actually composed written documents on something called "paper," the thing that you would cut out of one place and paste in somewhere else was undeniably a scrap. Why would you want to stick the scrap on a clipboard before pasting it back into the document?

Programs 5-8 to 5-10 are the MiniEdit routines for handling the standard editing commands. As you can see, they all do the same general kind of housekeeping as the DoTyping routine we looked at in the last section (Program 5-6), but with minor variations from one operation to another. All three routines scroll the current selection into view before performing the operation; but since TECopy doesn't change the existing text or selection in any way, DoCopy needn't scroll to the selection again afterward, nor does it have to recalibrate the scroll bar or mark the window as dirty. Menu commands that operate on a nonempty selection must be disabled after TECut or TEPaste, since they both leave the selection empty, but again this isn't necessary after TECopy. On the other hand, we have to enable the Paste command after either TECut or TECopy, since they both leave the scrap nonempty, but not after TEPaste, which has no effect on the previous state of the scrap. The purpose of the global flag ScrapDirty will become clear in the next section.

There are also a pair of "scrapless" editing routines, TDelete and TInsert [5.5.3]. TInsert inserts text that you specify directly, instead of taking it from the scrap; you supply a pointer to the text and a length count. TDelete deletes the current selection without copying it to the scrap, meaning that it can't be recovered. The contents of the scrap aren't affected in any way. Program 5-11 shows how our example program uses TDelete to implement the standard Clear command.

```

procedure DoCut;

  { Handle Cut command. }

  begin {DoCut}

    ScrollToSelection;                                {Make sure selection is visible [Prog. 6-13]}

    TECut (TheText);                                  {Cut the selection [5.5.2]}

    AdjustScrollBar;                                  {Adjust scroll bar to length of text [Prog. 6-5]}
    AdjustText;                                       {Adjust text to match scroll bar [Prog. 6-7]}
    ScrollToSelection;                                {Keep insertion point visible [Prog. 6-13]}

    DisableItem (EditMenu, CutItem);                 {Disable menu items that operate }
    DisableItem (EditMenu, CopyItem);                { on a nonempty selection [4.6.2]}
    DisableItem (EditMenu, ClearItem);

    EnableItem (EditMenu, PasteItem);                 {Enable Paste command [4.6.2]}

    ScrapDirty := TRUE;                               {Mark scrap as dirty}
    WindowDirty (TRUE)                               {Mark window as dirty [Prog. 5-7]}

  end; {DoCut}

```

Program 5-8 Handle Cut command

```

procedure DoCopy;

  { Handle Copy command. }

  begin {DoCopy}

    ScrollToSelection;                                {Make sure selection is visible [Prog. 6-13]}

    TECopy (TheText);                                 {Copy the selection [5.5.2]}

    EnableItem (EditMenu, PasteItem);                 {Enable Paste command [4.6.2]}

    ScrapDirty := TRUE                               {Mark scrap as dirty}

  end; {DoCopy}

```

Program 5-9 Handle Copy command


```

procedure DoPaste;

  { Handle Paste command. }

begin {DoPaste}

  ScrollToSelection;                {Make sure selection is visible [Prog. 6-13]}

  TEPaste (TheText);               {Paste the scrap [5.5.2]}

  AdjustScrollBar;                {Adjust scroll bar to length of text [Prog. 6-5]}
  AdjustText;                     {Adjust text to match scroll bar [Prog. 6-7]}
  ScrollToSelection;              {Keep selection visible [Prog. 6-13]}

  DisableItem (EditMenu, CutItem); {Disable menu items that operate   }
  DisableItem (EditMenu, CopyItem); {   on a nonempty selection [4.6.2]}
  DisableItem (EditMenu, ClearItem);

  WindowDirty (TRUE)              {Mark window as dirty [Prog. 5-7]}

end; {DoPaste}

```

Program 5-10 Handle Paste command

Notice, however, that TextEdit doesn't include a built-in Undo command: there is no routine named TEUndo. Once again, if you want your program to provide this feature you have to "roll your own." We haven't included it in our MiniEdit program, because it would have introduced an extra level of complexity without adding anything useful to our understanding of the Toolbox. The MiniEdit routine DoUndo (Appendix H) just beeps the speaker and does nothing; it can never actually be called anyway, since the Undo command on the menu is permanently disabled. If you're so inclined, you can try adding a true Undo command as an exercise.

Access to the Scrap

It's important to distinguish between the Toolbox text scrap and the *desk scrap* that we learned about in Volume One, Chapter 7. The Toolbox scrap is used internally by TextEdit for your program's text editing operations; the desk scrap is used for passing information

```

procedure DoClear;

  { Handle Clear command. }

begin {DoClear}

  ScrollToSelection;                                {Make sure selection is visible [Prog. 6-13]}

  TDelete (TheText);                                {Delete the selection [5.5.3]}

  AdjustScrollBar;                                  {Adjust scroll bar to length of text [Prog. 6-5]}
  AdjustText;                                       {Adjust text to match scroll bar [Prog. 6-7]}
  ScrollToSelection;                                {Keep insertion point visible [Prog. 6-13]}

  DisableItem (EditMenu, CutItem);                  {Disable menu items that operate }
  DisableItem (EditMenu, CopyItem);                  {   on a nonempty selection [4.6.2]}
  DisableItem (EditMenu, ClearItem);

  WindowDirty (TRUE)                                {Mark window as dirty [Prog. 5-7]}

end; {DoClear}

```

Program 5-11 Handle Clear command

between one application program and another, or between an application and a desk accessory. If you want your program to be able to pass or receive information by cutting and pasting, you have to make special arrangements to transfer text between the desk scrap and the internal TextEdit scrap.

TextEdit keeps a handle to the current Toolbox scrap, along with a long integer giving the length of the scrap, in a pair of special locations in the Toolbox globals area of memory. In assembly language, you can simply access these locations directly under the names TEScrpHandle and TEScrpLength. In Pascal, you can use the routines TEScrpHandle, TEGetScrpLen, and TETSetScrpLen [5.5.4] to access their contents; as for the desk scrap, we've already seen in Volume One how to read and write it with the Toolbox routines GetScrap and PutScrap [I:7.4.3]. But the easiest way to transfer text between the two scraps is with the special-purpose transfer routines TEFrmScrap and TETToScrap [5.5.5].

Our MiniEdit program uses these facilities in a pair of utility routines for keeping the Toolbox and desk scraps coordinated: ReadDeskScrap to copy the desk scrap into the Toolbox scrap, and WriteDeskScrap to do the reverse. At the very beginning of the program, the Initialize

routine calls `ReadDeskScrap`, as you can see in the final version of the routine in Appendix H. If the previous application has left an item of resource type 'TEXT' [I:8.4.1] in the desk scrap, this will copy the text into the Toolbox scrap to make it available to our user for editing.

As the program runs, whenever control passes from one of its application windows to a system window containing a desk accessory, we call `WriteDeskScrap` to transfer the Toolbox scrap to the desk scrap, making the text available to the accessory. When control returns *from* a desk accessory *to* an application window, we call `ReadDeskScrap` again to copy the desk scrap back to the Toolbox scrap, allowing the user to cut text from the accessory and paste it into an editing window. Finally, at the very end of the program we have to call `WriteDeskScrap` one last time, to allow text to be passed via the scrap to the next application the user starts up.

The `ReadDeskScrap` and `WriteDeskScrap` routines are shown in Programs 5-12 and 5-13. Recall from Volume One, Chapter 7, that the Toolbox maintains a *scrap count*, accesible via the `InfoScrap` function [I:7.4.2], that's used to detect when the contents of the desk scrap have changed. Every time our `WriteDeskScrap` routine writes anything to the desk scrap, it first calls `ZeroScrap` [I:7.4.3] to change the value of the scrap count, and saves the new count in a global program variable named `ScrapCompare`. Then, when control returns from the desk accessory, `ReadDeskScrap` compares `ScrapCompare` with the current scrap count; if they're the same, then the accessory hasn't changed the desk scrap, so we know the two scraps are still in agreement and there's no need to copy one to the other.

If the scrap count *has* changed, `ReadDeskScrap` reads the desk scrap into the Toolbox scrap and saves the new count in `ScrapCompare`, to show that the desk scrap has already been read. Before calling `ReadDeskScrap` the first time, we have to initialize `ScrapCompare` to a value known to be different from the scrap count:

```
ScrapCompare := InfoScrap^.scrapCount + 1
```

(See the final version of `Initialize` in Appendix H.) This guarantees that `ReadDeskScrap` will copy in the desk scrap the first time it's called.

Similarly, there's no need for `WriteDeskScrap` to copy the scrap in the other direction unless we've changed the Toolbox scrap since the last time it was known to agree with the desk scrap. This is the purpose of the global program flag `ScrapDirty`. We initialize this flag to `FALSE` at the beginning of the program and again whenever we copy

```
{ Global variable }
```

```
var
```

```
ScrapCompare : INTEGER;
```

```
{Previous scrap count for comparison}
```

```
procedure ReadDeskScrap;
```

```
{ Read desk scrap into Toolbox scrap. }
```

```
var
```

```
scrapLength : LONGINT;
```

```
{Length of desk text scrap in bytes}
```

```
ignore : LONGINT;
```

```
{Dummy variable for scrap offset}
```

```
result : OSErr;
```

```
{Result code from scrap transfer [I:3.1.2]}
```

```
begin {ReadDeskScrap}
```

```
if ScrapCompare <> InfoScrap^.scrapCount then
```

```
{Has scrap count changed? [I:7.4.2]}
```

```
begin
```

```
scrapLength := GetScrap (NIL, 'TEXT', ignore); {Check desk scrap for a text item [I:7.4.3]}
```

```
if scrapLength >= 0 then
```

```
{Is there a text item?}
```

```
begin
```

```
result := TEFFromScrap;
```

```
{Transfer desk scrap to Toolbox scrap [5.5.5]}
```

```
if result <> NoErr then
```

```
{Was there an error? [I:3.1.2]}
```

```
scrapLength := result
```

```
{Make sure scrap length is negative}
```

```
end; {if}
```

```
if scrapLength > 0 then
```

```
{Was scrap nonempty?}
```

```
EnableItem (EditMenu, PasteItem)
```

```
{Enable Paste command [4.6.2]}
```

```
else
```

```
begin
```

```
TESetScrapLen (0);
```

```
{Mark Toolbox scrap as empty [5.5.4]}
```

```
DisableItem (EditMenu, PasteItem)
```

```
{Disable Paste command [4.6.2]}
```

```
end; {else}
```

```
ScrapCompare := InfoScrap^.scrapCount
```

```
{Save scrap count for later comparison [I:7.4.2]}
```

```
end {if}
```

```
end; {ReadDeskScrap}
```

Program 5-12 Read desk scrap into Toolbox scrap

```

( Global variables )

var
  ScrapCompare : INTEGER;           {Previous scrap count for comparison}
  ScrapDirty   : BOOLEAN;          {Has scrap been changed?}

procedure WriteDeskScrap;

  { Write Toolbox scrap to desk scrap. }

var
  result : OSErr;                   {Result code from scrap transfer [I:3.1.2]}

begin {WriteDeskScrap}

  if ScrapDirty then                {Has scrap changed since last read?}
  begin
    ScrapCompare := ZeroScrap;      {Change scrap count, save for comparison [I:7.4.3]}

    result := TEToScrap;            {Transfer Toolbox scrap to desk scrap [5.5.5]}

    ScrapDirty := FALSE            {Toolbox and desk scraps now agree}

  end {if}

end; {WriteDeskScrap}

```

Program 5-13 Write Toolbox scrap to desk scrap

the Toolbox scrap to the desk scrap; then we set it to TRUE after any editing operation that affects the Toolbox scrap (as we've already seen in Programs 5-8 and 5-9). If the WriteDeskScrap routine finds ScrapDirty set to FALSE, it knows that the two scraps already agree, so no copying is necessary.

Now that we've defined ReadDeskScrap and WriteDeskScrap, we're finally ready to look at the complete version of our DoActivate routine (Program 5-14). Whenever we activate or deactivate one of our windows, we test the ChangeFlag bit of the event record's modifiers field [2.1.5] to see if control is coming from or exiting to a system window. If so, we call ReadDeskScrap or WriteDeskScrap to copy text in the appropriate direction from one scrap to the other.

One last bit of housekeeping that DoActivate has to take care of is to enable and disable all the proper menu commands for the window becoming active. When an application window is activated, we call

(Global variables)

var

TheEvent	: EventRecord;	{Current event [2.1.1]}
TheWindow	: WindowPtr;	{Pointer to currently active window [3.1.1]}
TheScrollBar	: ControlHandle;	{Handle to active window's scroll bar [6.1.1]}
TheText	: TEHandle;	{Handle to active window's edit record [5.1.1]}

procedure DoActivate;

{ Handle activate (or deactivate) event. }

const

active	= 0;	{Highlighting code for active scroll bar [6.3.3]}
inactive	= 255;	{Highlighting code for inactive scroll bar [6.3.3]}
changeFlag	= \$0002;	{Mask for extracting "change bit" from event modifiers}

var

whichWindow	: WindowPtr;	{Pointer to the window [3.1.1]}
theData	: MDHandle;	{Handle to window's data record [Prog. 5-1]}
dataHandle	: Handle;	{Untyped handle for locking data record [1:3.1.1]}

begin (DoActivate)

with TheEvent do
begin

whichWindow := WindowPtr(message);	{Convert long integer to pointer [3.1.1]}
SetPort (whichWindow);	{Make window the current port [1:4.3.3]}
DrawGrowIcon (whichWindow);	{Highlight or unhighlight size box [3.3.4]}
dataHandle := Handle(GetWRefCon(whichWindow));	{Get window data [3.2.4]}
HLock (dataHandle);	{Lock data record [1:3.2.4]}
theData := MDHandle(dataHandle);	{Convert to typed handle [Prog. 5-1]}
<u>with</u> theData ^{^^} <u>do</u>	
if BitAnd(modifiers, ActiveFlag) <> 0 <u>then</u>	{Test activate/deactivate bit [1:2.2.2, 2.1.5]}
<u>begin</u>	
TheWindow := whichWindow;	{Set global pointers/handles}
TheScrollBar := scrollBar;	
TheText := editRec;	
HiliteControl (scrollBar, active);	{Activate scroll bar [6.3.3]}
TEActivate (editRec);	{Highlight selection [5.4.3]}

```

if BitAnd(modifiers, changeFlag) <> 0 then (Coming from a system window? [I:2.2.2, 2.1.5])
    ReadDeskScrap;                                (Copy desk scrap to Toolbox scrap [Prog. 5-12])

    FixEditMenu;                                (Enable/disable editing commands [Prog. 5-5])

    EnableItem (FileMenu, SaveAsItem); (Enable Save As... command [4.6.2])
    if dirty then (Is document dirty? [Prog.5-1])
        EnableItem (FileMenu, SaveItem); (Enable Save command [4.6.2])
    if dirty and (fileNumber <> 0) then (Is there a file to revert to? [Prog. 5-1])
        EnableItem (FileMenu, RevertItem) (Enable Revert command [4.6.2])

end (then)

else

begin

    TheWindow := NIL; (Clear global pointers/handles)
    TheScrollBar := NIL;
    TheText := NIL;

    TEDeactivate (editRec); (Unhighlight selection [5.4.3])
    HiliteControl (scrollBar, inactive); (Deactivate scroll bar [6.3.3])

    if BitAnd(modifiers, changeFlag) <> 0 then (Exiting to a system window? [I:2.2.2, 2.1.5])
        begin
            WriteDeskScrap; (Copy Toolbox scrap to desk scrap [Prog. 5-13])

            EnableItem (EditMenu, UndoItem); (Enable standard editing commands)
            EnableItem (EditMenu, CutItem); ( for desk accessory [4.6.2] )
            EnableItem (EditMenu, CopyItem);
            EnableItem (EditMenu, PasteItem);
            EnableItem (EditMenu, ClearItem)
        end; (if)

        DisableItem (FileMenu, SaveItem); (Disable filing commands for desk )
        DisableItem (FileMenu, SaveAsItem); ( accessory or empty desk [4.6.2] )
        DisableItem (FileMenu, RevertItem)

    end; (else)

    HUnlock (dataHandle) (Unlock data record [I:3.2.4])

end (with)

end; (DoActivate)

```

Program 5-14 (continued)

our earlier `FixEditMenu` routine (Program 5-5) to fix up the Edit menu as needed, depending on the window's current selection and the contents of the scrap; there are also a few File commands—Save, Save As..., and Revert to Saved—that we need to enable if the conditions are appropriate.

On exiting to a system window, we enable all the standard editing commands. (Remember that some desk accessories use these commands; we have to make sure they're available whenever an accessory gets control.) Also, *whenever* we deactivate an application window, we disable the three File commands, just in case we happen to be closing the last window on the screen, leaving nothing but an empty desktop. (If the screen *isn't* becoming empty, then another window will immediately be activated and these commands will be enabled again if appropriate.)

Nuts and Bolts

Search and Replace

In any program that does text editing, a useful feature to include is a search-and-replace capability. The Toolbox supports search and replace with a very versatile utility routine that goes by the inelegant name of `Munger` [5.5.6] (rhymes with “plunger,” not “hunger”). This routine accepts three different pieces of text to operate on: the *destination text* to be searched, the *target text* to search for, and the *replacement text* to replace it with. All three are specified as straight sequences of characters, without the usual Pascal length count in the first byte.

In the most straightforward case, `Munger` searches the destination text, beginning at a designated starting character position, for the first occurrence of the given target text, and replaces it with the replacement text. However, by varying the way you specify the target and replacement text, you can produce a variety of other effects instead. For instance, if you supply a `NIL` pointer for the replacement text, `Munger` will just find the first occurrence of the target text and return its character position within the destination text, without performing any replacement. If you give a non-`NIL` replacement pointer but specify a length of 0 for the replacement text, it will just delete the target from the destination text, in effect replacing it with nothing at all.

Similarly, if you give a target length of 0, the specified replacement text will simply be inserted in the destination text at the desig-

nated starting position without replacing anything. If you give a NIL target pointer with a positive target length, the replacement text will replace the specified number of characters beginning at the starting position, regardless of what they contain. Finally, if you give a NIL target pointer and a negative target length, the replacement text will replace everything from the given starting position to the end of the destination text. In all cases, Munger returns as its function result the character position in the destination text marking the end of the text it found or inserted. If it can't find an instance of the target text within the destination (beginning at the given starting position), it will return a negative value as its result.

Automatic Scrolling

One of the standard features of the Macintosh user interface is *automatic scrolling*. When the user, while selecting, drags the mouse out of the window without releasing the button, the window's contents are supposed to scroll continuously in the opposite direction, extending the selection as they go. TextEdit provides for this feature by means of a *click-loop routine* [5.6.1] installed in the `clickLoop` field of the edit record [5.1.1].

If there is a click-loop routine, `TEClick` [5.4.1] will call it repeatedly while tracking the mouse, for as long as the button remains down. The click-loop routine accepts no parameters and returns a Boolean result telling `TEClick` whether to continue tracking normally (TRUE) or stop tracking and return immediately to the caller (FALSE). Under ordinary circumstances, the routine should just do whatever it has to do and then unconditionally return TRUE: it's hard to think of a convincing example in which you would want to stop tracking the mouse prematurely while the user is still holding down the button.

The standard click-loop routine, which will be used if you don't provide one of your own, performs automatic scrolling by checking the position of the mouse and, if it's outside the view rectangle, scrolling the edit record's text one line in the appropriate direction. When called repeatedly while tracking the mouse, it causes the text to scroll continuously, a line at a time, for as long as the button is held down outside the view rectangle. If the edit record's `auto-view` flag [5.3.3] is FALSE, automatic scrolling is disabled and the standard click-loop routine does nothing.

This standard click-loop routine is available only in the Macintosh Plus Toolbox; on earlier models, the responsibility for providing automatic scrolling is left entirely to the application program. We'll see how to do it when we discuss scrolling in the next chapter.

When `TEClick` calls a click-loop routine, it expects to get back the Boolean result in a register, `D0`. This is no problem if the routine is written in assembly language, but if you write it in Pascal it will return its result on the stack instead of in a register. To install a Pascal click-loop routine, you have to use `SetClickLoop` [5.6.1], as we did in Program 5-2.

What `SetClickLoop` actually stores into the edit record is a pointer to a special "glue routine." The glue routine, in turn, calls your Pascal click-loop routine and then transfers the result from the stack to register `D0` for `TEClick` to find. A click-loop routine written in Pascal won't work (and in fact will quickly crash your program) if you bypass `SetClickLoop` and store the routine pointer directly into the edit record's `clickLoop` field. Conversely, an assembly-language click-loop routine *must* be installed directly, and will just as surely blow up your program if you *do* use `SetClickLoop`.

Word-Break Routines

As we mentioned earlier, you can change `TextEdit`'s definition of what constitutes a word by installing your own *word-break routine* in the `wordBreak` field of the edit record [5.1.1]. The word-break routine is called by `TEClick` [5.4.1] to find the beginning and end of a word when the user double-clicks the mouse, and by `TECalText` [5.3.1] to decide where to break a line when wrapping text to the destination rectangle. The routine accepts a pointer (*not* a handle!) to the text, along with an integer character position, and returns a Boolean result telling whether a word break falls at that position. If you don't supply a word-break routine of your own, the standard one will break at any space, tab, carriage return, or any other ASCII control character with a character code [I:8.1.1] of \$20 or less.

Like the click-loop routine, the word-break routine is assumed to be register-based. If you write it in Pascal, you have to use `SetWordBreak` [5.6.2] to install it in the edit record; this sets up a “glue routine” to convert the register-based call to Pascal stack-based conventions. If your word-break routine is written in assembly language, bypass `SetWordBreak` and just store the routine pointer directly into the edit record’s `wordBreak` field.

Customized Text Selection

`TextEdit` routines such as `TEClick` [5.4.1], `TEActivate`, `TEDeactivate`, and `TEIdle` [5.4.3] ordinarily display a nonempty text selection by black-to-white inversion and an empty one (an insertion point) with a blinking vertical bar. If you wish, you can change the appearance of the selection or insertion point by installing pointers to your own drawing routines in the `highHook` and `caretHook` fields of the edit record [5.1.1]. You might use this feature, for instance, to underline the selection instead of inverting it, or to display a true caret mark at the insertion point instead of a vertical bar. The drawing routines are register-based and can only be written in assembly language; see Volume Three for details.

REFERENCE

5.1 The Editing Environment

5.1.1 Edit Records



Definitions

type

TEHandle = ^TEPtr;

TEPtr = ^TERec;

TERec = **record**

destRect	: Rect;	{Destination (wrapping) rectangle}
viewRect	: Rect;	{View (clipping) rectangle}
selRect	: Rect;	{Private}
lineHeight	: INTEGER;	{Line height in pixels}
fontAscent	: INTEGER;	{First baseline}
selPoint	: Point;	{Private}
selStart	: INTEGER;	{Start of selection (character position)}
selEnd	: INTEGER;	{End of selection (character position)}
active	: INTEGER;	{Private}
wordBreak	: ProcPtr;	{Pointer to word-break routine [5.6.2]}
clickLoop	: ProcPtr;	{Pointer to click-loop routine [5.6.1]}

```

clickTime : LONGINT;      {Private}
clickLoc   : INTEGER;     {Private}
caretTime  : LONGINT;     {Private}
caretState : INTEGER;     {Private}
just       : INTEGER;     {Justification}
teLength   : INTEGER;     {Length of text in characters}
hText      : Handle;      {Handle to text}
recalBack  : INTEGER;     {Private}
recalLines : INTEGER;     {Private}
clikStuff  : INTEGER;     {Private}
crOnly     : INTEGER;     {Break line at carriage returns only?}
txFont     : INTEGER;     {Font number of typeface [1:8.3.1]}
txFace     : Style;       {Character style [1:8.3.1]}
txMode     : INTEGER;     {Transfer mode for text [1:8.3.1]}
txSize     : INTEGER;     {Type size in points [1:8.3.1]}
inPort     : GrafPtr;     {Pointer to graphics port [1:4.2.2]}
highHook   : ProcPtr;     {Pointer to "custom" highlighting routine}
caretHook  : ProcPtr;     {Pointer to "custom" insertion point routine}
nLines     : INTEGER;     {Number of lines of text}
lineStarts : array [0..16000] of INTEGER
                                     {Character positions of line starts}

```

```
end;
```

```
const
```

```

TEJustLeft  = 0;           {Left justification}
TEJustCenter = 1;          {Center justification}
TEJustRight = -1;          {Right justification}

```



Notes

1. Fields marked "private" are for TextEdit's internal use, and are of no concern to the application.
2. inPort is a pointer to the graphics port in which text is to be edited, normally a window. This field is set to the port that was current at the time the edit record was created.
3. hText is a handle to the text being edited. The text is just a sequence of from 0 to 32,000 characters; its length is given by teLength.
4. The destination rectangle (destRect) marks the boundaries within which text will be set; the view rectangle (viewRect) defines the boundaries within which the text will be displayed in the port.
5. Both rectangles are expressed in local (window) coordinates.
6. The bottom edge of the destination rectangle is ignored; text may extend downward indefinitely.

7. Text will automatically “wrap” to the next line on reaching the right edge of the destination rectangle, provided that the `crOnly` field is set to 0. If `crOnly = -1`, a new line is begun only on encountering an explicit carriage-return character (character code \$0D) in the text. These are the only values `crOnly` should ever have.
8. `lineStarts` is an array of indefinite length giving the beginning character position for each line of text. Its true length is given by `nLines`.
9. `lineStarts[0]` gives the beginning of the first line of text, which is presumably character position 0; the last element of the array, `lineStarts[nLines]`, gives the character position just beyond the end of the last line (presumably `teLength`).
10. Never store directly into the `lineStarts` array; always use the `TextEdit` routine `TECalcText` [5.3.1] to calculate the line starts for you.
11. `selStart` and `selEnd` define the *selection range*, the character positions at the beginning and end of the current text selection.
12. If `selStart = selEnd`, the selection range is just an insertion point at the designated character position.
13. All character positions (`teLength`, `selStart`, `selEnd`, `lineStarts`) are expressed as *unsigned* integers: negative values from -32768 to -1 actually denote positive character positions from 32768 to 65535 .
14. `txFont`, `txFace`, `txMode`, and `txSize` are the `QuickDraw` text characteristics [I:8.3.1] for displaying text, copied from the graphics port when the edit record is created.
15. `fontAscent` is the vertical distance, in pixels, from the top of the destination rectangle to the baseline for the first line of text. `lineHeight` is the vertical distance from one baseline to the next.
16. `just` denotes the style of text justification to be used, and should be one of the constants `TEJustLeft`, `TEJustCenter`, or `TEJustRight`. Full justification (both left and right) is not supported.
17. `wordBreak` and `clikLoop` are pointers to the edit record's optional word-break and click-loop routines [5.6.2, 5.6.1], or `NIL` for the standard routines built into the Toolbox.
18. `highHook` and `caretHook` are pointers to optional drawing routines for “customizing” the appearance of the text selection and insertion point. See [5.4.3, note 7] and Volume Three for more information.



Assembly Language Information

Field offsets in an edit record:

(Pascal) Field name	(Assembly) Offset name	Offset in bytes
destRect	teDestRect	0
viewRect	teViewRect	8
lineHeight	teLineHite	24
fontAscent	teAscent	26
selStart	teSelStart	32
selEnd	teSelEnd	34
wordBreak	teWordBreak	38
clikLoop	teClikProc	42
just	teJust	58
teLength	teLength	60
hText	teTextH	62
crOnly	teCROnly	72
txFont	teFont	74
txFace	teFace	76
txMode	teMode	78
txSize	teSize	80
inPort	teGrafPort	82
highHook	teHiHook	86
caretHook	teCarHook	90
nLines	teNLines	94
lineStarts	teLines	96

Assembly-language constants:

Name	Value	Meaning
TERecSize	104	Size of edit record in bytes, excluding line starts
TEJustLeft	0	Left justification
TEJustCenter	1	Center justification
TEJustRight	- 1	Right justification

5.1.2 Text Representation



Definitions

type

CharsHandle = ^CharsPtr;

CharsPtr = ^Chars;

Chars = packed array [0..32000] of CHAR;



Notes

1. A CharsHandle is the form in which the text of an edit record is returned by TEGetText [5.2.3].
2. The underlying Chars array can be of any length; the upper bound of 32000 used in the definition is only a dummy value. To get the actual length of the array, use GetHandleSize [I:3.2.3].

5.2 Preparation for Text Editing

5.2.1 Initializing the Toolbox for Text Editing



Definitions

procedure TEInit;



Notes

1. TEInit must be called before any other text editing operation, to initialize the Toolbox's internal text scrap.
2. Before calling TEInit, you must first call InitGraf [I:4.3.1] and InitFonts [I:8.2.4].
3. Don't call TEInit more than once in the same program.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
TEInit	_TEInit	\$A9CC

5.2.2 Creating and Destroying Edit Records



Definitions

```

function   TENew
              (destRect : Rect;           {Destination (wrapping) rectangle}
               viewRect : Rect)          {View (clipping) rectangle}
               : TEHandle;               {Handle to new edit record}

procedure TEDispose
              (editRec : TEHandle);      {Handle to edit record}
  
```



Notes

1. TENew creates a new edit record; TEDispose destroys an existing one.
2. The text of a new edit record is initially empty. You can give it text to edit with TEText [5.2.3] or by storing directly into its hText and tLength fields [5.1.1].
3. The destination and view rectangles are expressed in the local coordinates of the current port, normally a window in which text is to be edited. This port becomes the new edit record's graphics port.
4. The edit record's text characteristics are set to those of the current port [I:8.3.1].
5. The fontAscent field is initialized to the ascent of the font designated by the port's txFont and txSize fields; the lineHeight field is initialized to the font's character height (ascent plus descent) plus leading [I:8.2.2]. This produces the effect of "single spacing." If you want, you can then change the spacing by adjusting the values of fontAscent and lineHeight.
6. The just field is initially set for left justification. You can change this setting with TETextJust [5.3.1].

7. selStart and selEnd are both initialized to 0, representing an insertion point at the beginning of the text.
8. Disposing of an edit record with TEDispose also automatically disposes of its text.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
TENew	_TENew	\$A9D2
TEDispose	_TEDispose	\$A9CD

5.2.3 Text to Be Edited



Definitions

```

procedure TETSetText
    (textPtr : Ptr;           {Pointer to text}
     textLength : LONGINT;    {Length of text in characters}
     editRec : TEHandle);    {Handle to edit record}

function TEGetText
    (editRec : TEHandle)      {Handle to edit record}
    : CharsHandle;           {Handle to text}
  
```



Notes

1. TETSetText sets the text to be edited by an edit record; TEGetText returns a handle to the record's text.
2. textPtr is a pointer to the text to be edited and textLength is its length in characters.
3. TETSetText makes a copy of the designated text in the heap and stores a handle to the *copy* in the edit record's hText field [5.1.1]; the teLength field is set to textLength. Editing done with the edit record will affect the copy only, not the original text.

4. Instead of using `TESetText`, you can store your own text handle directly into the `hText` field. (Don't forget to set `teLength` properly as well.) In this case, editing with the edit record *will* affect the original text.
5. `TESetText` automatically wraps the new text to the destination rectangle, calculating its `lineStarts` and `nLines` [5.1.1], and sets the selection range to an insertion point at the end of the text. If you set the `hText` field directly, you must also set the selection range yourself and call `TECalText` [5.3.1] to wrap the text.
6. The new text is not automatically displayed on the screen; call `TEUpdate` [5.3.2] to display it.
7. `TEGetText` returns a `CharsHandle` [5.1.2] to the edit record's actual text, *not* a copy.
8. If you later dispose of the edit record with `TEDispose` [5.2.2], the handle you received from `TEGetText` will become invalid, since the text it points to will be deallocated from the heap. If you still need to refer to the text, be sure to make a copy of it before disposing of the edit record.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
<code>TESetText</code>	<code>__TESetText</code>	<code>\$A9CF</code>
<code>TEGetText</code>	<code>__TEGetText</code>	<code>\$A9CB</code>

5.3 Text Display

5.3.1 Wrapping and Justification



Definitions

```

procedure TEdCalText
    (editRec : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}

procedure TEdSetJust
    (just      : INTEGER; {Justification (see [5.1.1, note 16])}
     editRec   : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}
  
```



Notes

1. TECalText wraps an edit record's text to its destination rectangle, calculating its lineStarts and nLines [5.1.1].
2. Call TECalText after changing any of an edit record's properties that affect the location of the line breaks, such as its text, typeface, type size, character style, crOnly setting, or the width of its destination rectangle.
3. Each new line begins at a word boundary, normally defined as a space, tab, carriage return, or any other ASCII control character with a character code [I:8.1.1] of \$20 or less. You can change this definition if you wish by installing your own word-break routine [5.6.2] in the edit record.
4. TEsSetJust sets an edit record's justification.
5. The just parameter should be one of the built-in constants TEJustLeft, TEJustCenter, or TEJustRight [5.1.1].
6. Neither TECalText nor TEsSetJust redisplay the record's text on the screen. Call TEUpdate [5.3.2] to redisplay the text with the new line breaks or justification.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
TECalText	__TECalText	\$A9D0
TEsSetJust	__TEsSetJust	\$A9DF

5.3.2 Displaying Text on the Screen



Definitions

procedure TEUpdate

(updRect : Rect;	{Update rectangle in window coordinates}
editRec : TEHandle);	{Handle to edit record}

procedure TextBox

(textPtr : Ptr;	{Pointer to text}
length : LONGINT;	{Length of text in characters}
textRect : Rect;	{Display rectangle in local coordinates}
just : INTEGER);	{Justification (see [5.1.1, note 16])}



Notes

1. TEUpdate draws an edit record's text in its graphics port. Use it in responding to an update event for the record's window, or after any operation that changes the appearance of the text on the screen.
2. updRect is a rectangle in the local coordinates of the record's port (usually a window). The text to be drawn will be clipped to the intersection of this rectangle with the record's view rectangle.
3. The record's text is automatically rewrapped to its destination rectangle before drawing; there's no need to call TECalText [5.3.1] first.
4. TEUpdate is called automatically after any editing [5.5] or scrolling [5.3.3] operation.
5. TextBox displays text on the screen within a specified rectangle, without returning an edit record for editing the text.
6. textRect is a rectangle in the local coordinates of the current graphics port. If you want to use screen-relative coordinates, make the Window Manager port [3.6.1] current before calling TextBox.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
TEUpdate	__TEUpdate	\$A9D3
TextBox	__TextBox	\$A9CE

5.3.3 Scrolling



Definitions

```

procedure TEScroll
    (horiz : INTEGER;    {Horizontal scroll distance in pixels}
      vert  : INTEGER;    {Vertical scroll distance in pixels}
      editRec : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}

procedure TEPinScroll
    (horiz : INTEGER;    {Horizontal scroll distance in pixels}
      vert  : INTEGER;    {Vertical scroll distance in pixels}
      editRec : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}

procedure TEselView
    (editRec : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}

procedure TEAutoView
    (autoView : BOOLEAN; {New setting of auto-view flag}
      editRec : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}
  
```



Notes

1. TEScroll scrolls text within an edit record's view rectangle.
2. The destination rectangle is offset by the number of pixels specified by horiz and vert; the view rectangle is unchanged.
3. Positive values for vert scroll the text down, negative values scroll up; positive values for horiz scroll to the right, negative values to the left.
4. The text is automatically updated on the screen to reflect the new scroll position.

5. TEPinScroll works exactly the same as TEScroll, except that it “pins” when the last line of text becomes visible in the view rectangle.
6. TEselView scrolls the edit record’s current selection into view if it isn’t already visible.
7. TEAutoView sets the edit record’s *auto-view flag*. Setting this flag to FALSE disables TEselView, so that it has no effect.
8. The auto-view flag also controls automatic scrolling by the standard click-loop routine [5.6.1].
9. TEPinScroll, TEselView, and TEAutoView are available only on the Macintosh Plus.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
TEScroll	__TEScroll	\$A9DD
TEPinScroll	__TEPinScroll	\$A812
TEselView	__TEselView	\$A811
TEAutoView	__TEAutoView	\$A813

5.4 Text Selection

5.4.1 Selection with the Mouse



Definitions

procedure TClick

(startPoint : Point;	{Point where mouse was pressed, in window coordinates}
extend : BOOLEAN;	{Extend existing selection?}
editRec : TEHandle);	{Handle to edit record}

function GetDbtTime

: LONGINT;	{Current double-click interval in ticks}
------------	--



Notes

1. Call `TEClick` after a mouse-down event in an edit record's view rectangle. This allows the user to set an insertion point or select text by clicking or dragging with the mouse.
2. `TEClick` keeps control for as long as the user holds down the mouse button. It unhighlights the previous selection on the screen and then tracks the movements of the mouse, highlighting the new selection and adjusting the edit record's selection range (`selStart` and `selEnd`) accordingly.
3. If the new selection is an insertion point (`selStart = selEnd`), it is displayed on the screen as a blinking vertical bar.
4. `startPoint` should give the location of the mouse-down event, in *local (window) coordinates*. In the `where` field of the event record [2.1.1], the point is reported in *global* coordinates. Use `GlobalToLocal` [I:4.4.2] to convert the point before passing it to `TEClick`.
5. `TEClick` automatically detects double clicks and selects text by word rather than by character, in accordance with the Macintosh User Interface Guidelines.
6. A word is normally defined to be bounded at either end by a space, tab, carriage return, or any other ASCII control character with a character code [I:8.1.1] of \$20 or less. You can change this definition by installing your own word-break routine [5.6.2] in the edit record.
7. The maximum time interval defining a double click is set by the user with the Control Panel desk accessory. `GetDbtTime` returns the current setting in ticks (sixtieths of a second). The standard setting is 32 ticks.
8. `GetDbtTime` doesn't reside in ROM and cannot be called via the trap mechanism. To find the current double-click interval in assembly language, look in the system global `DoubleTime`.
9. Set the `extend` parameter to `TRUE` if the user held down the Shift key while pressing the mouse button. This tells `TEClick` to extend the existing selection instead of starting a new one.
10. If the edit record has a click-loop routine [5.6.1], `TEClick` will call it repeatedly while tracking the mouse. The standard click-loop routine on the Macintosh Plus provides "automatic scrolling" when the user drags the mouse outside the view rectangle, as prescribed in the User Interface Guidelines. On earlier models of Macintosh, automatic scrolling is *not* built into the Toolbox.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal)	(Assembly)	Trap word
Routine name	Trap macro	
TEClick	__TEClick	\$A9D4

Assembly-language global variable:

Name	Address	Meaning
DoubleTime	\$2F0	Current double-click interval in ticks

5.4.2 Selection Control



Definitions

procedure TETSetSelect

(selStart : LONGINT;	{Start of selection (character position)}
selEnd : LONGINT;	{End of selection (character position)}
editRec : TEHandle);	{Handle to edit record}



Notes

1. TETSetSelect sets an edit record's selection range directly, rather than in response to the mouse.
2. selStart and selEnd are interpreted as *unsigned* integers: negative values from -32768 to -1 actually denote positive character positions from 32768 to 65535.
3. If the endpoints are specified out of order (selStart > selEnd), their values are automatically reversed.
4. If either endpoint is specified beyond the end of the edit record's text, it is set to the actual end of text.
5. The previous selection is unhighlighted on the screen and the new one is highlighted.

6. If `selStart = selEnd`, the new selection is an insertion point and is represented on the screen by a blinking vertical bar.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
TESetSelect	__TESetSelect	\$A9D1

5.4.3 Selection Display



Definitions

```

procedure TEActivate
    (editRec : TEHandle);    {Handle to edit record}

procedure TEDeactivate
    (editRec : TEHandle);    {Handle to edit record}

procedure TEIdle
    (editRec : TEHandle);    {Handle to edit record}

function   GetCaretTime
    : LONGINT;                {Current blink interval in ticks}
  
```



Notes

1. TEActivate and TEDeactivate should be called as part of the response to an activate or deactivate event for a text editing window.
2. TEActivate highlights the edit record's selection or displays a blinking bar at the insertion point; TEDeactivate does the reverse.
3. TEIdle reads the system clock [2.7.1] and periodically blinks the edit record's insertion point on and off.
4. When a text editing window is active, you should call TEIdle at least once per tick (sixtieth of a second) to keep the insertion point blinking at a

constant rate. This is normally done by calling it once on every pass of the program's main event loop. It may have to be called more often during time-consuming operations.

5. The time interval between blinks is set by the user with the Control Panel desk accessory. `GetCaretTime` returns the current setting in ticks. The standard setting is 32 ticks.
6. `GetCaretTime` doesn't reside in ROM and can't be called via the trap mechanism. To find the current blink interval in assembly language, look in the system global `CaretTime`.
7. It's possible to "customize" the appearance of the selection and insertion point by installing pointers to your own drawing routines in the `highHook` and `caretHook` fields of the edit record [5.1.1]. The drawing routines can only be written in assembly language; see *Inside Macintosh* for details.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
TEActivate	<code>__TEActivate</code>	\$A9D8
TEDeactivate	<code>__TEDeactivate</code>	\$A9D9
TEIdle	<code>__TEIdle</code>	\$A9DA

Assembly-language global variable:

Name	Address	Meaning
CaretTime	\$2F4	Current blink interval in ticks

5.5 Editing Operations

5.5.1 Keyboard Input



Definitions

```
procedure TEKey
    (ch      : CHAR;          {Character typed}
     editRec : TEHandle);    {Handle to edit record}
```



Notes

1. TEKey accepts a character typed from the keyboard and inserts it into the text of an edit record.
2. If there is a nonempty text selection, the character replaces it; if the selection is empty (an insertion point), the character is inserted at that point.
3. If the character is a backspace (character code \$08) and the selection is nonempty, the selected text is deleted from the document; if the selection is an insertion point, the character preceding it is deleted.
4. A deleted or replaced selection or a backspaced character is *not* copied to the scrap and cannot be recovered.
5. If the character is a carriage return (character code \$0D), it forces a new line beginning with the next character in the document.
6. After the insertion the text is automatically rewrapped to the destination rectangle and redisplayed within the view rectangle.
7. An insertion point is left following the inserted character.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
TEKey	__TEKey	\$A9DC

5.5.2 Cutting and Pasting



Definitions

```

procedure TECut
    (editRec : TEHandle);    {Handle to edit record}

procedure TECopy
    (editRec : TEHandle);    {Handle to edit record}

procedure TEPaste
    (editRec : TEHandle);    {Handle to edit record}
  
```



Notes

1. These routines perform standard cut-and-paste editing on the text of an edit record via the Toolbox's private text scrap.
2. TECut deletes the current selection from the text and places it in the scrap; TECopy copies the current selection to the scrap without deleting it from the text.
3. In both cases, the previous contents of the scrap are lost and cannot be recovered.
4. If the current selection is empty (an insertion point), the scrap is emptied.
5. TECut leaves an insertion point at the point of the cut; TECopy leaves the selection range unchanged.
6. TEPaste copies the current contents of the scrap into the edit record's text.

7. If the current selection is nonempty, it's replaced by the pasted text; if it's an insertion point, the scrap is pasted at that point.
8. If the scrap is currently empty, the selection is simply deleted.
9. An insertion point is left at the end of the pasted text.
10. The contents of the scrap are unaffected.
11. TECut and TEPaste automatically rewrap the text to the destination rectangle and redisplay it within the view rectangle.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
TECut	_TECut	\$A9D6
TECopy	_TECopy	\$A9D5
TEPaste	_TEPaste	\$A9DB

5.5.3 Scrapless Editing



Definitions

```

procedure TDelete
    (editRec : TEHandle);      {Handle to edit record}

procedure TInsert
    (textPtr    : Ptr;          {Pointer to insertion text}
     textLength : LONGINT;      {Length of insertion text in characters}
     editRec    : TEHandle);    {Handle to edit record}
  
```



Notes

1. These routines operate on the text of an edit record without affecting the Toolbox's private text scrap.
2. TDelete deletes the current selection; the deleted text is not copied to the scrap and cannot be recovered.

3. An insertion point is left at the point of the deletion.
4. If the selection is empty (an insertion point), nothing happens.
5. TEInsert inserts text at the beginning of the current selection, but without replacing the selection. If the selection is an insertion point, the text is inserted at that point.
6. The selection range is adjusted by the length of the insertion, so that the same characters remain selected after the operation as before.
7. textPtr is a pointer to the text to be inserted; textLength is its length in characters.
8. textLength is interpreted as an *unsigned* integer: negative values from -32768 to -1 actually denote positive text lengths from 32768 to 65535.
9. Both TDelete and TEInsert automatically rewrap the text to the destination rectangle and redisplay it within the view rectangle.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
TDelete	_TDelete	\$A9D7
TEInsert	_TEInsert	\$A9DE

5.5.4 Scrap Access



Definitions

- function** TESScrapHandle
: Handle; {Handle to Toolbox scrap}
- function** TEGetScrapLen
: LONGINT; {Current length of Toolbox scrap in characters}
- procedure** TESSetScrapLen
(newLength : LONGINT); {New length of Toolbox scrap in characters}



Notes

1. TEScrapHandle returns a handle to the current Toolbox text scrap; TEGetScrapLen returns its current length in characters; TESSetScrapLen sets its length to a new value.
2. These routines do not reside in ROM and cannot be called via the trap mechanism. In assembly language, you can access the Toolbox scrap handle and length directly in the global variables TEScrapHandle and TEScrapLength.



Assembly Language Information

Assembly-language global variable:

Name	Address	Meaning
TEScrapHandle	\$AB4	Handle to Toolbox scrap
TEScrapLength	\$AB0	Length of Toolbox scrap in characters

5.5.5 Scrap Transfer



Definitions

```

function TEFFromScrap
    : OSErr;           {Result code}

function TEToScrap
    : OSErr;           {Result code}
  
```



Notes

1. These routines transfer text between the desk scrap [I:7.4] and the Toolbox's internal scrap.
2. TEFFromScrap transfers a text item, if there is one, from the desk scrap to the Toolbox scrap.
3. If there is no desk scrap, or if it doesn't contain an item of type 'TEXT'

[I:8.4.1], TEFFromScrap returns an error code of NoScrapErr or NoTypeErr [I:7.4.3] and leaves the Toolbox scrap unaffected.

4. TEToScrap transfers the contents of the Toolbox scrap to the desk scrap as an item of type 'TEXT'.
5. If the Toolbox scrap is empty, an empty text item will be written to the desk scrap.
6. Always clear the previous contents of the desk scrap by calling ZeroScrap [I:7.4.3] before transferring text to it with TEToScrap. TEToScrap does *not* take care of this for you automatically.
7. TEFFromScrap and TEToScrap do not reside in ROM and cannot be called via the trap mechanism; in assembly language you have to carry out the transfer for yourself. Use the Toolbox routines GetScrap and PutScrap [I:7.4.3] to access the desk scrap and the system globals TEScrpLength and TEScrpHandle [5.5.4] to access the Toolbox scrap.

5.5.6 Search and Replace



Definitions

function	Munger	
	(textHandle	: Handle; {Handle to destination text}
	startAt	: LONGINT; {Character position at which to start search}
	targetText	: Ptr; {Pointer to target text}
	targetLength	: LONGINT; {Length of target text}
	replaceText	: Ptr; {Pointer to replacement text}
	replaceLength	: LONGINT) {Length of replacement text}
	: LONGINT;	{Character position at end of operation}



Notes

1. This routine searches character text for a given target string and optionally replaces it with a given replacement string.
2. textHandle is a handle to the *destination text*, the text to be operated on; startAt is the character position at which the search is to begin.
3. startAt must not be greater than the actual length of the destination text designated by textHandle.
4. targetText is a pointer to the *target text*, the text to be searched for;

targetLength is its length. The target text is the first targetLength characters beginning at the location pointed to by targetText.

5. replaceText is a pointer to the *replacement text*, the text that is to replace the target text; replaceLength is its length. The replacement text is the first replaceLength characters beginning at the location pointed to by replaceText.
6. The destination, target, and replacement text all consist of straight ASCII text, *not* a Pascal-style string. None of the three carries a leading length-count byte.
7. In the normal case, when targetText, targetLength, replaceText, and replaceLength are all positive, the first occurrence of the target text found in the destination text, starting from character position startAt, is replaced by the replacement text. The function result is the character position following the replacement.
8. If a partial match for the target text is found, running from character position startAt to the end of the destination text, it is replaced by the replacement text.
9. If no occurrence of the target text is found, the function result is negative.
10. If no target text is specified (targetText = NIL) and targetLength > 0, the text replaced is the first targetLength characters in the destination text, beginning at character position startAt. The function result is the character position following the replacement.
11. If no target text is specified (targetText = NIL) and targetLength < 0, the text replaced is all characters from character position startAt to the end of the destination text. The function result is the character position following the replacement.
12. If targetLength = 0, the replacement text is simply inserted in the destination text at character position startAt. The function result is the character position following the insertion.
13. If no replacement text is specified (replaceText = NIL), the target string is found but not replaced. The function result is the character position following the first occurrence of the target text within the destination text, starting from character position startAt.
14. If replaceText ≠ NIL and replaceLength = 0, the first occurrence of the target text, starting from character position startAt, is deleted from the destination text. The function result is the character position at which the deletion took place.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
Munger	_Munger	\$A9E0

5.6 Nuts and Bolts

5.6.1 Click-Loop Routine



Definitions

```

procedure SetClikLoop
    (clikLoop : ProcPtr;      {Pointer to click-loop routine}
     editRec  : TEHandle);    {Handle to edit record}

function   YourClikLoop
    : BOOLEAN;                {Continue tracking?}
  
```



Notes

1. SetClikLoop installs a *click-loop routine* in an edit record. The click-loop routine will be called repeatedly by TClick [5.4.1] while tracking the mouse.
2. The most common use of the click-loop routine is to provide “automatic scrolling” when the mouse is dragged outside the view rectangle during text selection, as prescribed in the Macintosh User Interface Guidelines.
3. The function heading shown above is a model for your click-loop routine. You can give your routine any name you like; there is no Toolbox routine named YourClikLoop.
4. The Boolean result returned by the click-loop routine tells TClick whether to continue tracking the mouse (TRUE) or stop tracking and return immediately (FALSE). Normally your click-loop routine should unconditionally return TRUE.

5. All calls issued by TClick to the click-loop routine are register-based (see "Register usage," below). SetClickLoop sets up a special "glue routine" to intercept these calls and convert them to Pascal stack-based calling conventions. Always use SetClickLoop to install your click-loop routine if it's written in Pascal.
6. For click-loop routines written in assembly language, *don't* use SetClickLoop: just store a pointer to the routine directly into the edit record's clickLoop field [5.1.1].
7. Because of a bug in TClick, assembly-language click-loop routines must preserve the contents of register D2.
8. The Macintosh Plus Toolbox has a built-in click-loop routine that performs automatic scrolling in accordance with the User Interface Guidelines.
9. The built-in click-loop routine is controlled by the edit record's auto-view flag [5.3.3]. When this flag is FALSE, no automatic scrolling is performed.
10. The built-in click-loop routine is really designed only for simple scrolling in dialog boxes and the like, not for full-scale window scrolling. If you do use it in a window with a standard scroll bar, it will not update the setting of the scroll bar as it scrolls; you have to do this yourself, using SetCtlValue [6.2.4], on return from the call TClick.
11. On earlier models of Macintosh, there is no built-in click-loop routine. If you don't install one of your own, TClick will just highlight the text selection while tracking the mouse, without taking any other special action.



Assembly Language Information

Register usage:

Routine	Register	Contents
YourClickLoop	D0.L (out)	function result 1: continue tracking 0: return immediately
	D2.L (out)	same as D2.L (in)

5.6.2 Word-Break Routine



Definitions

```
procedure SetWordBreak
    (wordBreak : ProcPtr;      {Pointer to word-break routine}
     editRec   : TEHandle);   {Handle to edit record}

function YourWordBreak
    (theText : Ptr;           {Pointer to text}
     charPos : INTEGER)       {Character position within text}
    : BOOLEAN;               {Is there a word break at that position?}
```



Notes

1. SetWordBreak installs a *word-break routine* in an edit record, defining where the word breaks fall in the edit record's text.
2. The word-break routine is called by TECalText [5.3.1] to decide where to start a new line when wrapping text, and by TEClick [5.4.1] to find the word boundaries when selecting text by word after a double click.
3. The function heading shown above is a model for your word-break routine. You can give your routine any name you like; there is no Toolbox routine named YourWordBreak.
4. The standard word-break routine, used if you don't install one of your own, breaks at a space, tab, carriage return, or any other ASCII control character with a character code [I:8.1.1] of \$20 or less.
5. All calls issued by TECalText or TEClick to the word-break routine are register-based (see "Register usage," below). SetWordBreak sets up a special "glue routine" to intercept these calls and convert them to Pascal stack-based calling conventions. Always use SetWordBreak to install your word-break routine if it's written in Pascal.
6. For word-break routines written in assembly language, *don't* use SetWordBreak: just store a pointer to the routine directly into the edit record's wordBreak field [5.1.1].
7. Assembly-language word-break routines return their result via the 68000 processor's Z (zero) condition flag. Notice that the setting of the flag is inverted: 0 for a word break at the designated character position, 1 for no break.

8. A pointer to the standard word-break routine is kept in the system global TEWdBreak.



Assembly Language Information

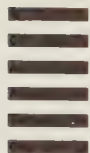
Register usage:

Routine	Register	Contents
YourWordBreak	A0.L (in)	theText
	D0.W (in)	charPos
	Z flag (out)	function result 0: break 1: no break

Assembly-language global variable:

Name	Address	Meaning
TEWdBreak	\$AF6	Pointer to built-in word-break routine

CHAPTER



6



At the Controls

In keeping with the Macintosh user interface philosophy, *controls* give the user a way to choose options or make things happen by direct manipulation with the mouse. The most familiar examples of controls are the “pushbuttons” and “checkboxes” that you see in dialog and alert boxes, and the scroll bars along the right and bottom edges of a document window. In this chapter we’ll see how such controls work and how you can use them in your own programs.

Standard Control Types

Like windows (Chapter 3), controls are implemented by a two-tiered software structure. The Toolbox, built into the Macintosh ROM, includes all of the general facilities needed to create and manipulate them, while the specific behavior of each particular type of control is defined by a *control definition function* that’s read from the disk as a resource. When you create a control, you identify its type with a coded integer called a *control definition ID*. The definition ID includes the resource ID of the definition function (its resource type is ‘CDEF’), along with some further information that the Toolbox uses internally. The Toolbox finds the definition function on the disk and loads it into memory; then it calls the definition function whenever it needs to perform a type-dependent operation such as displaying the control on the screen or detecting mouse clicks inside it.

Certain standard control types are predefined for you. Their definition functions are built into the standard System resource file that's included on all Macintosh software disks, and their definition IDs are defined as Toolbox constants [6.2.1]. You can use the standard control types by just supplying one of these standard IDs when you create a control. If the standard types don't meet your needs, you can "roll your own" control types by writing your own definition functions for them; Volume Three tells how to do this. Here we'll just concentrate on the standard control types.

Controls fall into two general categories, buttons and dials. Buttons have just two states—on and off—and can be "pressed" by clicking with the mouse. Figure 6-1 shows the three standard types of button:

- *Pushbuttons* make something happen immediately. The action may occur continuously for as long as the button is "held down" with the mouse, or just instantaneously when the button is released.
- *Checkboxes* retain an on-or-off setting that affects the way something will happen at a later time. Clicking with the mouse alternately turns the checkbox on and off, independently of any other control.
- *Radio buttons* are like interdependent checkboxes that are grouped together to offer a multiple choice. They work like the selector buttons on your car radio: pressing any button in the group makes all the others "pop out," so that only one button at a time can be in the "on" position.

From the point of view of the Toolbox, all three types of button are equivalent; they differ only in the way they appear on the screen, as determined by their definition functions. The differences in appearance are meant to suggest the different forms of behavior described above, but it's entirely up to you to make them behave as described. Later in this chapter we'll see how.

Dials (Figure 6-2) offer a whole range of settings instead of just a simple on-or-off. They typically have a moving *indicator* of some kind

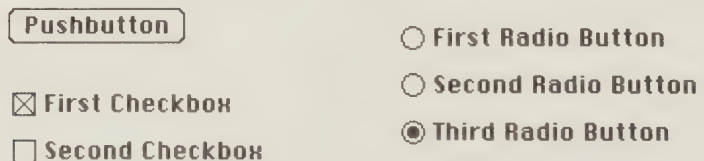


Figure 6-1 Standard buttons

A dial has a moving indicator and can take on a range of settings.

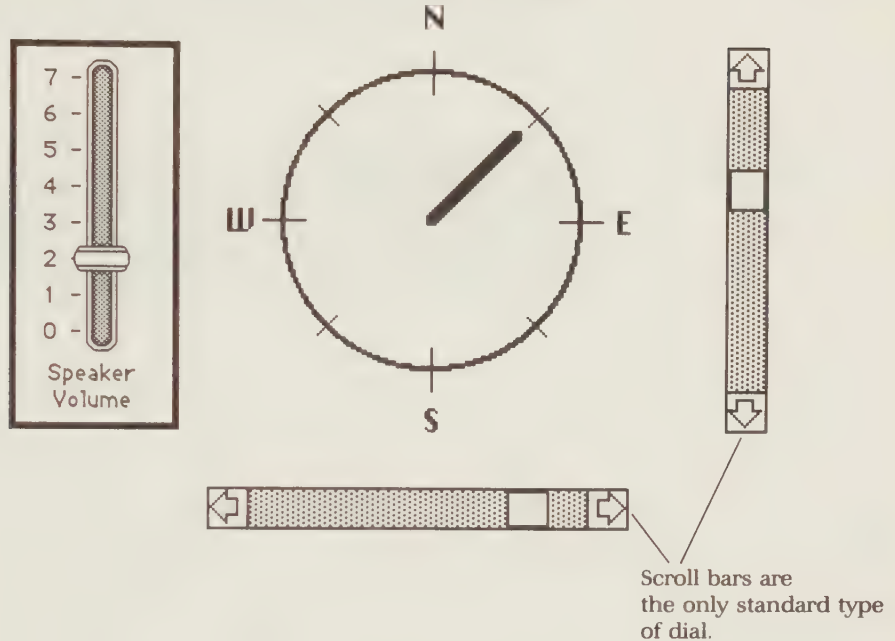


Figure 6-2 Dials

that displays the current setting and can be manipulated with the mouse. The only predefined type of dial is the standard scroll bar, whose indicator (the *scroll box*) shows the relative position of a window's visible contents with respect to the entire document it's displaying. We'll be discussing scroll bars at length later on.

Part Codes

One important point to notice about scroll bars is that they're made up of several parts that produce different effects when manipulated with the mouse (see Figure 6-3):

- The *up arrow* scrolls the window's contents upward a line at a time.
- The *down arrow* scrolls downward a line at a time.
- The *page-up region* scrolls upward one windowful ("page") at a time.
- The *page-down region* scrolls downward one "page" at a time.

- The *scroll box* can be dragged directly to any desired position within the document. This operation is sometimes called “thumbing” (like opening a book to the page you want by flipping the pages with your thumb), and the scroll box is sometimes referred to as the scroll bar’s “thumb.”

These same terms are used to refer to all scroll bars, horizontal as well as vertical. In a horizontal scroll bar, “up” really means to the left and “down” means to the right, as shown in the figure.

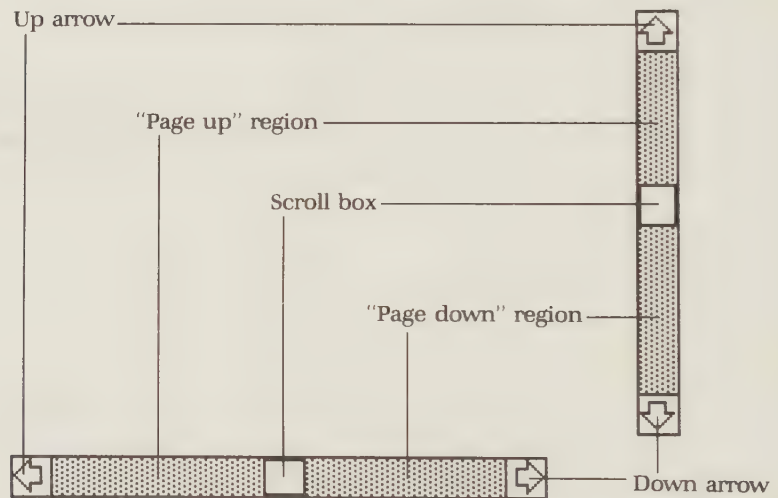


Figure 6-3 Parts of a scroll bar

In general, a control can have any number of parts it needs to do its job. The various parts are identified by integer *part codes* analogous to the ones that FindWindow [3.5.1] uses for the parts of a window. Unlike windows, however, in controls the number and nature of the parts can vary from one type of control to another. So each type of control must have its own set of part codes, assigned by the definition function for that particular control type.

Part codes are always 1-byte integers between 0 and 255. Certain specific values—0, 128, and 255—have special meanings, which we’ll be learning about later. All the rest are available for the definition

function to use as ordinary part codes; the only other restriction is that the moving indicator of a dial (such as the scroll box or “thumb” of the scroll bar) must have a part code of 129 or greater, while all other parts must have codes between 1 and 127.

The part codes for the standard control types are predefined as Toolbox constants [6.4.1]. Simple buttons have just one part each, denoted by the part code `InButton` for pushbuttons, `InCheckbox` for both checkboxes and radio buttons. For scroll bars, the part codes are named `InUpButton`, `InDownButton`, `InPageUp`, `InPageDown`, and `InThumb`.

Creating and Destroying Controls

The internal representation of a control is a relocatable *control record*, referred to by means of a *control handle* [6.1.1]. Like windows, controls can be created either by supplying the needed descriptive information directly or by reading it from a *control template* in a resource file. As usual, the recommended method is to use a predefined template, of resource type 'CNTL' [6.5.1]. You just pass the template's resource ID to the Toolbox routine `GetNewControl` [6.2.1]; all the information needed to create the control comes from the template (with one exception, which we'll get to in a minute). Alternatively, you can supply the same information explicitly as parameters to `NewControl` [6.2.1]. In either case, the Toolbox will allocate heap space for a new control record, fill it with the specified information, and return a control handle that you can use from then on to refer to the control.

Every control belongs to exactly one window, called its *owner* or *owning window*. The control will appear on the screen as part of the owning window's content region, and will operate specifically on that window or its contents. The owning window is the one piece of descriptive information that can't be included in a control template, since the window doesn't yet exist at the time the template is created. So that's the only piece of information you still have to supply explicitly as a parameter when you create a control with `GetNewControl`. We've already seen an example of this in Program 5-2 (`DoNew`), where we created the scroll bar for a new window (named `TheWindow`) with the statement

```
scrollBar := GetNewControl (scrollIID, TheWindow)
```

All of a given window's controls are kept in a *control list*, and new controls are added to the front of this list as they're created. The

controlList field of the window record [3.1.1] holds a handle to the first control in the list; each control then points to the next via a handle in the control record's nextControl field. A NIL handle marks the end of the list.

All coordinates pertaining to a control are expressed in the local coordinate system of its owning window. In particular, the control's size and location within its window are defined by an *enclosing rectangle* in window-relative coordinates. When the user moves the window to a new location on the screen, the control will be redrawn at this same relative position within the window. You specify the enclosing rectangle when you create a control, and can later change it if necessary with MoveControl and SizeControl [6.3.2].

The coordinates of a control's enclosing rectangle are always defined relative to the window's top-left corner, on the assumption that that point lies at local coordinates (0, 0). If you change the window's coordinate system with SetOrigin [I:4.3.4], the control's enclosing rectangle will *not* be adjusted to compensate, and the control won't be drawn properly on the screen. You'll be absolutely safe if you just never change the window's origin at all; but if you must change the origin, be sure to set it back to (0, 0)—at least temporarily—before drawing any of the window's controls or performing any other control-related operation.

Besides the owning window and enclosing rectangle, the information needed to create a new control includes the control's title and type. As already noted, the control type is specified by an integer called the *control definition ID*, which includes the resource ID of the control definition function, along with some further identifying information. The definition IDs for the standard control types are defined as Toolbox constants: PushbutProc, CheckboxProc, RadioButProc, and ScrollBarProc [6.2.1]. If all you need are the standard types, you can just use these constants without worrying about the exact structure of the coded information they contain.

How a control's title is displayed depends on the type of control. For pushbuttons, the title is centered within the button itself; for checkboxes and radio buttons, it's displayed next to the box or button (see Figure 6-1). Some controls, such as scroll bars, don't display any title at all; in this case you can just pass an empty string for the title. If the title will actually be displayed, make sure the control's enclosing rectangle is big enough to include it all; otherwise it will be

truncated at one or both ends, depending on the type of control. The Toolbox routines `GetCTitle` and `SetCTitle` [6.2.3] allow you to access or change a control's title at any time. You should always use these routines instead of manipulating the control's `ctrlTitle` field directly.

The title of a control is normally displayed in the standard system font, 12-point Chicago. If you like, you can instead use the typeface and size currently associated with the control's owning window [1:8.3.1]. To specify this option, add the constant `UseWFont` [6.2.1] to the control definition `ID` when you create the control.

In creating a new control, you also have to specify its initial setting and range and whether it's initially visible; we'll be discussing these properties in the next few sections. Finally, you give the initial value of the control's *reference constant*. Like that of a window, a control's reference constant really isn't a constant at all, but a variable—you can change its value any time you want with the Toolbox routine `SetCRefCon`, or find out its current value with `GetCRefCon` [6.2.3]. It's simply an extra 4-byte (long integer) field that's included in the control record for your program to use in any way you want. Just as with a window, you can use a control's reference constant to hold a handle to an auxiliary data record if the extra information you need to associate with the control is more than 4 bytes long.

When you're all through with a control, you use `DisposeControl` [6.2.2] to destroy it. (If you're using the control's reference constant to hold a handle to an auxiliary data record, it's your responsibility to dispose of the auxiliary record before destroying the control itself.) There's also a routine named `KillControls` [6.2.2] that destroys all controls belonging to a given window; however, the Toolbox routines `CloseWindow` and `DisposeWindow` [3.2.3] take care of this for you automatically, so you don't normally need to call `KillControls` for yourself before destroying a window.

Control Display

Like a window, a control can be logically *visible* or *invisible*. These properties are under your program's control, and are independent of whether the control happens to be covered or exposed on the screen. That is, a control may be logically “visible” and still not appear on the

screen, because it is partially or completely obscured by overlapping windows or other objects; the control is actually drawn on the screen only if it's both visible and exposed. When you create a new control, you specify whether it's initially visible—either with a Boolean parameter that you pass to `NewControl` or with a flag contained in the control template you supply to `GetNewControl`. Once the control is created, you can make it invisible with `HideControl` or visible with `ShowControl` [6.3.1].

The Toolbox routine `DrawControls` [6.3.1] draws all of a window's controls on the screen (more precisely, all those that are currently visible and exposed). The most common use for this routine is in responding to update events. Recall that on receiving an update event for a window, you have to redraw the window's entire content region, using `BeginUpdate` and `EndUpdate` [3.4.1] to clip your drawing to the region that actually needs updating. Since the window's controls are part of its content region, you should always include a call to `DrawControls` as part of the update process, as we've already seen in our earlier `DoUpdate` routine (Program 5-3).

The Macintosh Plus Toolbox includes a new routine named `UpdtControls` [6.3.1], which draws only those of a window's controls whose enclosing rectangles intersect with a specified region. Applied to the window's visible region, it produces exactly the same effect as `DrawControls`. The only difference is that `UpdtControls` is faster, since it draws only the relevant controls. (`DrawControls` attempts to draw them all, leaving it to `QuickDraw` to “clip out” those that fall outside the visible region.)

Notice a subtle but important difference in meaning between `ShowControl`, on the one hand, and `DrawControls` and `UpdtControls`, on the other. `ShowControl` makes a control *logically* visible; if the control happens to be completely or partially exposed to view, it will be redrawn on the screen as a side effect. `DrawControls` and `UpdtControls`, on the other hand, have no effect on a control's visibility; they simply redraw those controls that are *already* visible (and exposed).

Another aspect of a control's appearance is its *highlighting*. All or part of a control may be highlighted: the `ctrlHilite` field of the control

record holds a 1-byte integer part code that identifies which part of the control is highlighted (or 0 if none). To make sure all changes in a control's highlighting state are reflected visibly on the screen, always use the Toolbox routine `HiliteControl` [6.3.3] instead of storing directly into the `ctrlHilite` field.

The usual purpose of highlighting is to provide visual feedback when the user manipulates a control with the mouse. As we'll see later, the Toolbox automatically handles the highlighting for you in this case, so you don't usually have to set a control's highlighting for yourself. Normally the only time you need to call `HiliteControl` is to make a control active or inactive, as described below.

The actual appearance of a highlighted control is determined by its definition function. Inverting colors (white to black and vice versa) is one common convention, but the definition function can use any method that makes sense for a particular type of control. Figure 6-4 shows the forms of highlighting used for the standard control types. Pushbuttons use color inversion, while checkboxes and radio buttons are drawn with a heavier outline. For scroll bars, only the up and down arrows exhibit visible highlighting on the screen: the arrow becomes solid black instead of just an outline. Highlighting other parts of the scroll bar produces no visible effect.

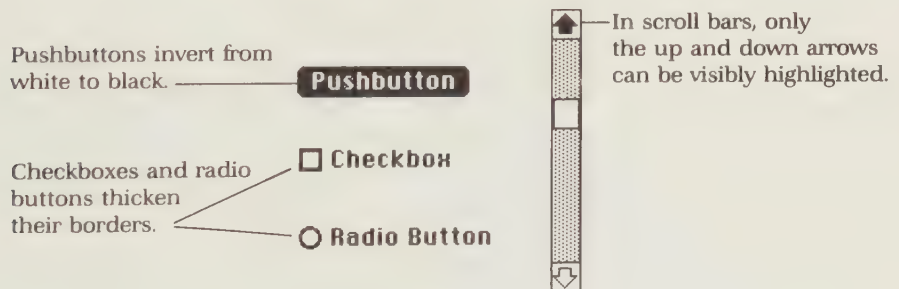


Figure 6-4 Highlighting of standard controls

One special use of highlighting that's particularly important is to make a control *inactive*. An inactive control remains visible on the

screen, but doesn't respond to the mouse. The control is normally displayed in some special way to show that it's inactive: for instance, standard buttons become "dimmed," and scroll bars hide their scroll box and turn its "shaft" white instead of gray (see Figure 6-5). You make a control inactive by setting its highlighting state to a special part code of 255. The control will then behave as though it were completely invisible; when the mouse is pressed in that control, the Toolbox will report that it was in no control at all.

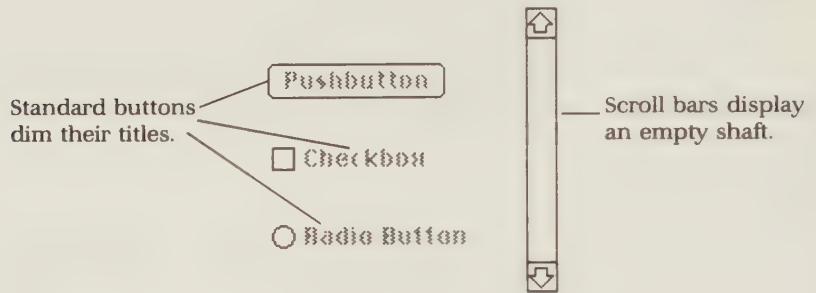


Figure 6-5 Inactive controls

Macintosh user interface conventions call for a window's scroll bar to appear inactive whenever the window itself is inactive. Accordingly, our DoActivate routine (Program 5-14) calls HiliteControl to activate or deactivate the scroll bar as part of the process of activating or deactivating the window itself. A control should always become inactive when it doesn't apply in a particular situation: for instance, the Find Next pushbutton in MacWrite's Find... dialog becomes inactive when there's nothing specified to find. A window's scroll bar should become inactive when the window's contents are small enough to be displayed all at once without scrolling; we'll see how this is done when we look at our example program's scrolling routines later in this chapter.

Setting and Range of a Control

Except for pushbuttons, which produce an immediate effect, the essence of a control is that it retains a *setting* that the user can set with the mouse. The setting is an integer held in the `ctrlValue` field of the control record; the range of values it can assume is defined by the `ctrlMin` and `ctrlMax` fields. Simple checkboxes and radio buttons just

range from a minimum of 0 (off) to a maximum of 1 (on). Scroll bars and other dials can cover a wider range of settings, and the range can vary with changing conditions. (The range of a scroll bar, for instance, depends on the length of the document displayed in its window.)

You can access or change a control's setting and range with the Toolbox routines `GetCtlValue` and `SetCtlValue`, `GetCtlMin` and `SetCtlMin`, and `GetCtlMax` and `SetCtlMax` [6.2.4]. If you always use these routines, instead of storing directly into the corresponding fields of the control record, the Toolbox will automatically enforce the specified range and won't let the control's setting stray outside it. For instance, if you try to give the control a setting greater than the maximum, the actual setting will be forced equal to the maximum to keep it in range. Similarly, if you reduce the maximum to a value less than the current setting, the setting will be adjusted downward to equal the new maximum. Analogous precautions are taken at the other end of the range, to prevent the setting from going below the specified minimum.

Any time you change a control's setting or range, it's automatically redrawn on the screen to reflect the change (provided, of course, that it's visible and exposed). This means you needn't bother with details like how to reposition a dial's indicator to represent its new setting. You just specify the setting with `SetCtlValue`, and the Toolbox (with help from the control definition function) takes care of the redrawing for you.

Responding to the Mouse

We've already seen in Chapter 3 how our `MiniEdit` program's `DoMouseDown` routine (Program 3-7) responds to mouse-down events by calling `FindWindow` [3.5.1] to find out where on the screen the mouse button was pressed. Since a window's controls are part of its content region, `FindWindow` will return the part code `InContent` for a mouse press in a control. `DoMouseDown` will then call the `DoContent` routine shown here (Program 6-1) to handle the event.

If the mouse was pressed in an inactive window, all that's needed is to activate the window with `SelectWindow` [3.5.2]. If the window is already active, `DoContent` has to find out what part of its content region the click was in. It does this by passing the point where the mouse was pressed, along with a pointer to the window itself, to the Toolbox routine `FindControl` [6.4.1].


```

{ Global variables }

var
  TheEvent      : EventRecord;           {Current event [2.1.1]}
  TheScrollBar  : ControlHandle;        {Handle to active window's scroll bar [6.1.1]}
  TheText       : THandle;              {Handle to active window's edit record [5.1.1]}

procedure DoContent (whichWindow : WindowPtr);

  { Handle mouse-down event in content region of active window. }

var
  thePoint      : Point;                 {Location of mouse click in window coordinates [1:4.1.1]}
  theControl     : ControlHandle;        {Handle to control [6.1.1]}
  thePart        : INTEGER;              {Part of control where mouse was pressed [6.4.1]}

begin {DoContent}

  if whichWindow <> FrontWindow then    {Is it an inactive window? [3.3.3]}
    SelectWindow (whichWindow)          {If so, just activate it [3.5.2]}

  else
    begin

      thePoint := TheEvent.where;        {Get point in screen coordinates [2.1.1]}
      GlobalToLocal (thePoint);          {Convert to window coordinates [1:4.4.2]}

      thePart := FindControl (thePoint, whichWindow, theControl);
                                          {Was mouse pressed in a control? [6.4.1]}

      if theControl = TheScrollBar then  {Was it in the scroll bar?}
        DoScroll (thePart, thePoint)    {Go scroll the window [Prog. 6-6]}

      {else if theControl = (some other control) then
        respond to that control}

      else if theControl = NIL then      {Not in a control?}

        if PtInRect (thePoint, TheText^.viewRect) then {Was it in the text rectangle? [1:4.4.3]}
          DoSelect (thePoint)           {Go handle text selection [Prog. 5-4]}
        {else do nothing}

      end {else}

    end; {DoContent}

```

Program 6-1 Mouse-down event in content region

First, however, the point has to be converted into the window's local coordinate system. Until now we didn't know which window the mouse point was in (if any), so we've been dealing with the point

in screen-relative (global) coordinates, just the way we found it in the where field of the event record [2.1.1]. Now that we've identified the window, all further operations on the point will be in window coordinates. So before passing the point to FindControl, we have to convert it from screen to window coordinates with GlobalToLocal [I:4.4.2]. (Notice that we're assuming implicitly that the window in question is already the current port. Since we know at this point that it's the active window, our DoActivate routine, Program 5-14, will have made it the current port at the time it was activated.)

FindControl tests whether the given point lies in one of the window's visible controls. If so and the control is active, FindControl returns a handle to the control via the variable parameter theControl; its function result is a part code identifying the part of the control that the point is in. If the control is inactive, or if the mouse point isn't in any visible control, FindControl will return NIL for the control handle and 0 for the part code. In that case our DoContent routine will next test whether the point lies in the window's text rectangle (TheText^.viewRect). If it does, then the user is making a text selection, so we call the MiniEdit routine DoSelect (Program 5-4) to handle the response.

When the mouse is pressed in a visible, active control, what happens next depends on the type of control. The only controls MiniEdit uses are scroll bars, which we'll be getting to in the next section; but first, let's talk about how to handle pushbuttons, checkboxes, and radio buttons.

Pushbuttons

Since a pushbutton is supposed to produce an immediate action, you might think the appropriate response would be just to perform the action as soon as you find out the mouse was pressed inside the pushbutton:

```
if theControl = aPushbutton then
    {Perform the action}
```

Actually, though, the action shouldn't be quite *that* immediate. One mark of a friendly user interface is that users can change their minds and "back out" of an action without any penalty. In the case of a pushbutton, this means you have to track the mouse for as long as the button remains down, and take the indicated action only when it's *released* inside the control; if it's released outside the control, you do nothing.

The Toolbox routine for tracking mouse actions in a control is TrackControl [6.4.2]. Program 6-2 (DoPushbutton) is a hypothetical, skeleton routine illustrating how you might use it to respond to a mouse click in a pushbutton:

```
if theControl = aPushbutton then
    DoPushbutton (aPushbutton, thePoint)
```

TrackControl accepts a handle to the control, along with the point where the mouse was pressed in *window coordinates*. It finds which part of the control contains the given point, then focuses its attention only on that part. (In the case of a simple button, of course, the entire control consists of just one “part.”) Like other tracking routines, TrackControl keeps control for as long as the mouse button is held down, following the mouse’s movements and providing visual feedback: in this case, highlighting and unhighlighting the selected part of the control as the mouse moves into and out of it. When the mouse is released, TrackControl returns either the part code of the selected part or 0, depending on whether the mouse was inside or outside the original part when the user released the button. You can then use this result to decide whether to perform the indicated action or do nothing, as shown in Program 6-2.

```
procedure DoPushbutton (theControl : ControlHandle; startPoint : Point);

{ Skeleton procedure to handle mouse-down event in a pushbutton. }

var
    thePart : INTEGER;                                {Part of control where mouse was released}

begin {DoPushbutton}

    thePart := TrackControl (theControl, startPoint, NIL);
                                                {Track mouse with no action procedure [6.4.2]}

    if thePart = InButton then                                {Was it released in the pushbutton? [6.4.1]}

        {Take appropriate action to respond to mouse click in pushbutton}

    else do nothing}

end; {DoPushbutton}
```

Program 6-2 Mouse-down event in a pushbutton

TrackControl also accepts a third parameter, a pointer to an *action procedure* that it will execute repeatedly while tracking the mouse. You can use this to perform some continuous action while a pushbutton is “held down,” or to provide additional visual feedback beyond the usual highlighting and unhighlighting of the selected control part. In Program 6-2, we just pass NIL for the action procedure parameter; when we get to scroll bars later in the chapter, we’ll actually be using an action procedure to do continuous scrolling.

Checkboxes and Radio Buttons

Program 6-3 (DoCheckbox) shows the response to a mouse click in a checkbox. Again we call TrackControl to track the mouse, and take action only if it’s released inside the same control it was originally pressed in. In the case of a checkbox, the action is to reverse the control’s setting, from 0 to 1 or vice versa. We do this by getting the

```

procedure DoCheckbox (theControl : ControlHandle; startPoint : Point);

    { Handle mouse-down event in a checkbox.  }

var
    thePart : INTEGER;                                {Part of control where mouse was released}
    oldValue : INTEGER;                               {Previous setting of checkbox}

begin {DoCheckbox}

    thePart := TrackControl (theControl, startPoint, NIL);
                                                {Track mouse with no action procedure [6.4.2]}

    if thePart = InCheckbox then                                {Was it released in the checkbox? [6.4.1]}

        begin
            oldValue := GetCtlValue (theControl);    {Get old setting [6.2.4]}
            SetCtlValue (theControl, 1 - oldValue)    {Toggle the setting [6.2.4]}
        end

        {else do nothing}

    end; {DoCheckbox}

```

Program 6-3 Mouse-down event in a checkbox

current setting with `GetCtlValue` [6.4.2], subtracting it from 1 to reverse it, then calling `SetCtlValue` to set the control to the result.

Radio buttons are a little more complicated than checkboxes, because user actions in one button can affect the settings of others as well. In Program 6-4 (`DoRadioButton`), we define a group of related radio

```
{ Global declarations }

const
  NButtons = {whatever};                                {Number of radio buttons in group}

var
  TheButtons : array [1..NButtons] of ControlHandle;    {Group of related radio buttons}

procedure DoRadioButton (theControl : ControlHandle; startPoint : Point);

{ Handle mouse-down event in a radio button. }

var
  thePart      : INTEGER;                                {Part of control where mouse was released}
  whichButton  : 1..NButtons;                            {Index into array of radio buttons}
  thisButton   : ControlHandle;                          {Handle to a radio button [6.1.1]}

begin {DoRadioButton}

  thePart := TrackControl (theControl, startPoint, NIL);
                                                    {Track mouse with no action procedure [6.4.2]}

  if thePart = InCheckbox then                    {Was it released in the same button? [6.4.1]}
    for whichButton := 1 to NButtons do          {Iterate through array of radio buttons}
      begin
        thisButton := TheButtons[whichButton];    {Get button from array}

        if thisButton = theControl then           {Is this the button that was clicked?}
          SetCtlValue (thisButton, 1)             {Turn button on [6.2.4]}
        else
          SetCtlValue (thisButton, 0)             {Turn button off [6.2.4]}
        end

      {else do nothing}
    end; {DoRadioButton}
```

Program 6-4 Mouse-down event in a radio button

buttons as an array of control handles named `TheButtons`. When the mouse is pressed and released in one of them, we have to run through the entire array, turning that button on and all the others off. (Of course, if we had more than one group of radio buttons to keep track of, we'd have to be sure to operate on the right array for a given button. We'd probably want to keep a pointer or handle to the relevant array as the button's reference constant.)

Notice that both checkboxes and radio buttons have the same part code, named `InCheckbox` [6.4.1].

Scrolling

At long last, we come to the subject of scrolling and scroll bars. As we've already noted, a scroll bar is a form of *dial*—that is, a control that can assume a whole range of settings, depending on the position of a moving *indicator*. In this case, the indicator is the scroll box or “thumb” that slides within the gray “shaft” of the scroll bar. The basic idea is to use the control's setting to denote the relative vertical or horizontal positioning of the associated window's contents.

For the sake of simplicity, our example program `MiniEdit` does vertical scrolling only; since it always wraps text to the actual width of the window, there's no need to scroll horizontally. After you've learned how vertical scrolling works, you might want to check your understanding by working out for yourself how to add horizontal scroll bars to the program.

In the case of `MiniEdit`, what's displayed in a window is a text document that we're operating on by means of an edit record. The natural way to indicate the document's vertical position is with a line number representing the first line of text that's visible in the window. The `nLines` field of the edit record [5.1.1] gives us the total number of lines in the document; the lines are numbered from 0 to `nLines`—1. So we can use these limits to define the minimum and maximum settings the scroll bar can take on.

When our `DoNew` procedure (Program 5-2) creates a brand-new, empty window, it calls `GetNewControl` [6.2.1] to create the window's

scroll bar from a control template in the application resource file. The scroll bar's initial setting and range come from the template. Since a new window's text is initially empty, the template just specifies values of 0 for the minimum, maximum, and current setting. From then on, whenever anything happens that might change the number of lines in the window's text, we have to readjust the range of the scroll bar to match the new text length.

```
{ Global variables }
```

```
var
  TheScrollBar : ControlHandle;           {Handle to active window's scroll bar [6.1.1]}
  TheText      : THandle;                {Handle to active window's edit record [5.1.1]}
```

```
procedure AdjustScrollBar;
```

```
{ Adjust scroll bar to length of document. }
```

```
const
  active  = 0;                           {Highlighting code for active scroll bar [6.3.3]}
  inactive = 255;                         {Highlighting code for inactive scroll bar [6.3.3]}
```

```
var
  windowHeight : INTEGER;                {Height of text rectangle in lines}
  maxTop       : INTEGER;                {Maximum value for top line in window}
```

```
begin {AdjustScrollBar}

  with TheText^^, viewRect do
    begin
      windowHeight := (bottom - top) div lineHeight; {Get window height [5.1.1]}
      maxTop       := nLines - windowHeight          {Avoid white space at bottom [5.1.1]}
    end; {with}

    if maxTop <= 0 then                          {Is text smaller than window?}
      begin
        maxTop := 0;                             {Show all of text}
        HiliteControl (TheScrollBar, inactive)   {Disable scroll bar [6.3.3]}
      end {then}
    else
      HiliteControl (TheScrollBar, active);       {Enable scroll bar [6.3.3]}

      SetCtlMax (TheScrollBar, maxTop)            {Adjust range of scroll bar [6.2.4]}

  end; {AdjustScrollBar}
```

Program 6-5 Adjust scroll bar to length of document

We accomplish this task with a utility routine named `AdjustScrollBar`, shown in Program 6-5. When we discuss files in Chapter 8, we'll see that this routine gets called when we read a file into a window from the disk, to calibrate the scroll bar to the length of the file's text. We also call it whenever the user types text into a window from the keyboard (`DoTyping`, Program 5-6) or issues a Cut, Paste, or Clear command (`DoCut`, Program 5-8; `DoPaste` 5-10; `DoClear`, 5-11), since all of these operations can change the length of the window's text. Finally, we have to call it when we adjust a window's text rectangle after resizing the window (`FixText`, Program 6-11), since the number of lines changes when the text is rewrapped to the new rectangle.

Actually, if we allow the scroll bar's setting to run from 0 up to `nLines-1`, we can end up with just the last line of text showing at the top of an otherwise empty window. What we really want is for the text to stop scrolling when the last line reaches the *bottom* of the window; this will allow the user to see the last complete windowful of text by dragging the scroll box all the way to the bottom. So our `AdjustScrollBar` routine has to set the scroll bar's maximum setting (that is, the highest line number that can be scrolled to the top of the window) to the total number of text lines (`nLines`) *minus* the number of lines that will fit in the window. First we find the height of the window's text rectangle in lines, by subtracting the rectangle's top and bottom coordinates and dividing by the line height in pixels:

```
windowHeight := (bottom - top) div lineHeight
```

Then we subtract the result from the total number of lines to arrive at the maximum setting for the scroll bar:

```
maxTop := nLines - windowHeight
```

If the total amount of text is one windowful or less, this calculation will produce a zero or negative value for `maxTop`. In that case we force `maxTop` to 0 (to scroll the first line of text to the top of the window) and deactivate the scroll bar by setting its highlighting state to 255 (since there's room to display all the text at once without scrolling). Conversely, if `maxTop` is positive, then the text can't all fit in the window at once; so we make sure the scroll bar is active by setting its highlighting state to 0. Finally, in either case, we set the scroll bar's maximum range to the value of `maxTop` we've just calculated.

Dragging the Scroll Box

Mouse presses in a scroll bar, like those for simple buttons that we discussed earlier, are handled by the Toolbox routine `TrackControl` [6.4.2]. In the case of scroll bars and other dials, however, `TrackControl` works a bit differently. We said before that `TrackControl` focuses its attention only on the particular part of a control that the mouse was originally pressed in. If that part turns out to be the moving indicator of a dial (identified by a part code greater than 128), `TrackControl` treats it in a special way. Instead of just highlighting and unhighlighting the part in response to the mouse's movements, as described earlier, it drags an outline of the indicator around to follow the mouse on the screen. Then, when the mouse button is finally released, it redraws the control with the indicator in its new position and *adjusts the control's setting* accordingly. This all happens automatically, without your having to supply an action procedure or intervene in any other way.

In the specific case of a scroll bar, this means that when the mouse is pressed in the scroll box, `TrackControl` will slide an outline of the scroll box up and down the shaft to follow the mouse's movements. When the mouse is released, the routine will redraw the actual scroll box, compare its new position with the overall height of the scroll bar in pixels, and adjust the scroll bar's setting proportionally between the current minimum and maximum. You needn't worry about doing this interpolation for yourself: `TrackControl` handles it automatically (with some help from the control definition function for scroll bars). Notice, though, that `TrackControl` *doesn't* actually scroll the contents of the window for you. It just translates the user's mouse actions into a new scroll bar setting; it's up to you to reposition the window's contents to match that new setting.

Program 6-6 (`DoScroll`) shows how `MiniEdit` makes use of this mechanism. This routine gets called from our earlier `DoContent` routine (Program 6-1) when `FindControl` reports that the mouse was pressed in a window's scroll bar. `DoScroll` in turn calls `TrackControl` to track the mouse, but in one of two different ways depending on whether the original press was in the indicator (the scroll box) or in some other part of the control. We'll see in the next section what happens when it's in another part; if it was in the scroll box (part code `InThumb` [6.4.1]), we just call `TrackControl` with no action procedure, to adjust the scroll bar's setting as described above. Then we call our own procedure `AdjustText` (Program 6-7) to reposition the text according to the new setting.

In the last chapter we saw how to position text within a window with the Toolbox routine `TEScroll` [5.3.3], which adjusts the relation-

```

{ Global variable }

var
  TheScrollBar : ControlHandle;           {Handle to active window's scroll bar [6.1.1]}

procedure DoScroll (thePart : INTEGER; thePoint : Point);

  { Handle mouse-down event in scroll bar. }

begin {DoScroll}

  if thePart = InThumb then              {Dragging the indicator? [6.4.1]}

    begin
      thePart := TrackControl (TheScrollBar, thePoint, NIL);
                                     {Track mouse with no action procedure [6.4.2]}
      AdjustText                    {Adjust text to new setting [Prog. 6-7]}
    end {then}

  else

    thePart := TrackControl (TheScrollBar, thePoint, @ScrollText)
                                     {Track mouse with continuous scroll [6.4.2, Prog. 6-8]}

  end; {DoScroll}

```

Program 6-6 Mouse-down event in scroll bar

ship between the destination and view rectangles of an edit record. To do this, however, we first have to figure out how many pixels to scroll the text up or down from its current position. First we find the window's current scroll position by comparing the top coordinates of the destination and view rectangles:

$$\text{oldScroll} := \text{viewRect.top} - \text{destRect.top}$$

Then we calculate the position we want to end up in by multiplying the current scroll bar setting by the line height in pixels:

$$\text{newScroll} := \text{GetCtlValue}(\text{TheScrollBar}) * \text{lineHeight}$$

The difference between these two numbers

$$\text{oldScroll} - \text{newScroll}$$

gives the relative scroll distance we need to pass to TEScroll.

It might seem that by using the new Macintosh Plus routine `TEPinScroll` [5.3.3] to do our scrolling, instead of the older routine `TEScroll`, we could avoid the annoying little adjustment to the scroll bar's range that we had to do in Program 6-5 to keep the end of the text from scrolling out of view. That is, we could just set the scroll bar's maximum to the total number of text lines, and let `TEPinScroll` "pin" the text when the last line reaches the bottom of the window.

Surprisingly, though, this turns out to sound better on paper than it looks on the screen. The trouble is that the text stops scrolling before the scroll bar's indicator reaches the bottom of the shaft (since the scroll bar hasn't yet reached its maximum setting). Continuing to tickle the scroll bar's down arrow with the mouse causes the indicator to go on sliding down the shaft, even though the text itself is no longer going anywhere. If we want the scroll bar to hit bottom at the same time as the text, we still have to adjust its range for the height of the window, as in Program 6-5.

Remember, too, that `TEPinScroll` is available only on the Macintosh Plus. For our program to work on older models as well, we'd have to check the ROM version number with `Environs` [1:3.1.3] and still do our scrolling the old way if the original ROM is installed. So we may as well forget about `TEPinScroll` and just do it the same way on all models.

Continuous Scrolling

When the mouse is pressed in any part of a scroll bar other than the scroll box, the window is supposed to scroll continuously for as long as the button is held down. The direction and speed of the scrolling depend on which part of the scroll bar is involved: the up and down arrows scroll one line at a time, the page-up and page-down regions a whole windowful at a time. To make the window scroll continuously, our `DoScroll` routine (Program 6-6) uses an action procedure in its call to `TrackControl`:

```
TrackControl (TheScrollBar, thePoint, @ScrollText)
```

The action procedure `ScrollText` is shown in Program 6-8. `TrackControl` will call this procedure repeatedly until the mouse button is released. Remember that `TrackControl` focuses only on the part of the control where the mouse was originally pressed. Each time it calls the action procedure, it checks whether the mouse is still inside that original part. If so, it passes the corresponding part code to the action


```

{ Global variables }

var
  TheScrollBar : ControlHandle;           {Handle to active window's scroll bar [6.1.1]}
  TheText      : THandle;                {Handle to active window's edit record [5.1.1]}

procedure AdjustText;

{ Adjust text within window to match scroll bar setting. }

var
  oldScroll : INTEGER;                   {Old text offset in pixels}
  newScroll : INTEGER;                   {New text offset in pixels}

begin {AdjustText}

  HLock (Handle(TheText));               {Lock edit record [1:3.2.4]}
  with TheText^^ do
    begin

      oldScroll := viewRect.top - destRect.top;      {Get current offset [5.1.1]}
      newScroll := GetCtlValue (TheScrollBar) * lineHeight; {Scroll bar gives new offset [6.2.4]}

      TScroll (0, (oldScroll - newScroll), TheText) {Scroll by difference [5.3.3]}

    end; {with}
  HUnlock (Handle(TheText))              {Unlock edit record [1:3.2.4]}

end; {AdjustText}

```

Program 6-7 Adjust text to scroll bar setting

procedure (along with a handle to the control itself); otherwise it passes a part code of 0. Our ScrollText routine uses this part code to decide how many lines to scroll and in which direction; then it gets the scroll bar's current setting, adjusts it by the desired amount, and calls AdjustText to reposition the window's text accordingly. Notice that for the page-up and page-down regions, we actually scroll by *one less than* the number of lines in the window, so that one line will remain visible both before and after the operation: either the top line will scroll to the bottom or the bottom line will scroll to the top. Notice also that if ScrollText receives a part code of 0 (meaning that the mouse has moved outside the original part), it will do nothing at all.

```

( Global variable )

var
  TheText : TEHandle;                                (Handle to active window's edit record [5.1.1])

procedure ScrollText (theControl: ControlHandle; thePart : INTEGER);

  ( Scroll text within window. )

var
  delta      : INTEGER;                                (Amount to scroll by, in lines)
  oldValue   : INTEGER;                                (Previous setting of scroll bar)

begin {ScrollText}

  case thePart of

    inUpButton:
      delta := -1;                                     (Scroll up one line at a time)

    inDownButton:
      delta := +1;                                     (Scroll down one line at a time)

    inPageUp:
      with TheText^^, viewRect do
        delta := (top - bottom) div lineHeight + 1; (Scroll up by height of text rectangle [5.1.1])

    inPageDown:
      with TheText^^, viewRect do
        delta := (bottom - top) div lineHeight - 1; (Scroll down by height of text rectangle [5.1.1])

    otherwise
      (Do nothing)

  end; {case}

  if thePart <> 0 then                                (Is mouse still in the original part?)
  begin
    oldValue := GetCtlValue (theControl);             (Get old setting [6.2.4])
    SetCtlValue (theControl, oldValue + delta);       (Adjust by scroll amount [6.2.4])

    AdjustText                                         (Scroll text to match new setting [Prog. 6-7])
  end

end; {ScrollText}

```

Program 6-8 Scroll text within window

Automatic Scrolling

One more form of scrolling that we have to take care of is the “automatic” kind that happens when the user drags the mouse outside a window while making a selection. We saw in the last chapter how to install a *click-loop routine* in an edit record for this purpose, to be called repeatedly by the TextEdit routine TEClick [5.4.1] while tracking the mouse during the selection. Program 6-9 shows the code of MiniEdit’s click-loop routine, AutoScroll.

We mentioned in the last chapter that the Macintosh Plus Toolbox has a built-in click-loop routine to do automatic scrolling, but once again (as with TEPinScroll), the new feature doesn’t quite meet our needs. The built-in click-loop routine is really designed for scrolling text boxes in a dialog window. It isn’t intended for full-scale windows, and doesn’t know anything about scroll bars. Although it scrolls the text automatically when the mouse is dragged out the top or bottom of the window, it doesn’t update the scroll bar setting to match. To keep the scroll bar synchronized with the text, we again have to bypass the built-in facilities and “roll our own,” as shown here.

In principle, all AutoScroll has to do is get the current mouse position and compare its vertical coordinate with the top and bottom edges of the window’s text rectangle. If the mouse is above the top of the rectangle, we call our ScrollText routine (Program 6-8) with the part code InUpButton. This will scroll the contents of the window up one line, just as if the mouse had been pressed in the up arrow of the scroll bar. If the mouse is below the bottom of the text rectangle, we naturally use a part code of InDownButton, to scroll down one line instead of up; if neither case applies, we just do nothing. When the AutoScroll routine is called repeatedly by TEClick, the result will be to scroll the window continuously for as long as the mouse remains outside the text rectangle with the button still down.

As you may have guessed, though, there’s a hitch. Every time we change the setting of the scroll bar, the Toolbox will automatically redraw it on the screen, updating the position of its scroll box. However, because AutoScroll is called from within a TextEdit routine (TEClick), it will find the active window’s clipping region restricted to the TextEdit clipping (view) rectangle—what we’ve been calling the

```

( Global declarations )

var
  TheScrollBar : ControlHandle;           {Handle to active window's scroll bar [6.1.1]}
  TheText      : THandle;                {Handle to active window's edit record [5.1.1]}

function AutoScroll : BOOLEAN;

( Handle automatic scrolling during text selection. )

var
  mousePoint : Point;                    {Mouse location in local (window) coordinates [I:4.1.1]}
  textRect   : Rect;                     {Active window's text rectangle [I:4.1.2]}
  saveClip   : RgnHandle;                 {Original clipping region on entry [I:4.1.5]}

begin {AutoScroll}

  saveClip := NewRgn;                     {Create temporary region [I:4.1.6]}
  GetClip (saveClip);                     {Set it to existing clipping region [I:4.3.6]}
  ClipRect (TheWindow^.portRect);         {Clip to entire port rectangle [I:4.3.6, I:4.2.2]}

  GetMouse (mousePoint);                   {Find mouse location [2.4.1]}
  textRect := TheText^.viewRect;           {Get text rectangle [5.1.1]}

  if mousePoint.v < textRect.top then      {Above top of rectangle? [I:4.1.1, I:4.1.2]}
    ScrollText (TheScrollBar, InUpButton) {Scroll up one line [Prog. 6-8, 6.4.1]}

  else if mousePoint.v > textRect.bottom then {Below bottom of rectangle? [I:4.1.1, I:4.1.2]}
    ScrollText (TheScrollBar, InDownButton) {Scroll down one line [Prog. 6-8, 6.4.1]}

  {else do nothing};

  SetClip (saveClip);                     {Restore original clipping region [I:4.3.6]}
  DisposeRgn (saveClip);                   {Dispose of temporary region [I:4.1.6]}

  AutoScroll := TRUE                       {Continue tracking mouse [5.6.1]}

end; {AutoScroll}

```

Program 6-9 Handle automatic scrolling

window's text rectangle. Since the scroll bar lies outside this rectangle, the Toolbox's attempts to redraw it will be "clipped out" and will have no visible effect on the screen. For the scroll bar to be updated properly, AutoScroll has to reset the clipping region to include the window's entire port rectangle. Naturally, it first has to save the original clipping region and then restore it later before returning.

When it's all through it returns a function result of TRUE, signaling TEClick to continue tracking the mouse.

Resizing a Window

When the user resizes a window on the screen, both its scroll bar and its text rectangle must be adjusted to match. MiniEdit handles these chores with the routines FixScrollBar and FixText, both of which are called from the DoGrow routine that we looked at in Chapter 3 (Program 3-9).

In principle, FixScrollBar (Program 6-10) is fairly straightforward: it hides the scroll bar, moves it to its proper position and size in the window, and shows it again. However, a word of explanation is in order about the calculations used to arrive at the scroll bar's new position and size. The standard vertical scroll bar is a strip 16 pixels wide running along the right edge of its window; MiniEdit defines a global constant, SBarWidth, to represent this standard width. Instead of running from the top of the window all the way to the bottom, the scroll bar stops 16 pixels short of the bottom edge to allow room for the size box in the window's bottom-right corner. (A horizontal scroll bar would naturally occupy an analogous position along the window's bottom edge.)

At first glance, all this would seem to suggest that the scroll bar's enclosing rectangle should have its top-left corner at window coordinates

$$\text{right} - \text{SBarWidth}$$

horizontally and 0 vertically, and should be SBarWidth pixels wide by

$$(\text{bottom} - \text{top}) - \text{SBarWidth}$$

high (where right, bottom, and top are the edges of the window's port rectangle). For the sake of appearance, however, we want the edges of the scroll bar to overlap those of the window itself by 1 pixel, so it will fit snugly into the window's frame. So we have to offset the top, right, and bottom edges of the enclosing rectangle by 1 pixel to account for the overlap (see Figure 6-6). This yields an origin of

$$\text{right} - (\text{SBarWidth} - 1)$$


```

{ Global declarations }

const
    SBarWidth = 16;                                {Width of scroll bar in pixels}

var
    TheScrollBar : ControlHandle;                    {Handle to active window's scroll bar [6.1.1]}

procedure FixScrollBar;

{ Resize window's scroll bar. }

begin {FixScrollBar}

    HideControl (TheScrollBar);                      {Hide scroll bar [6.3.1]}

    with TheWindow^.portRect do
        begin
            MoveControl (TheScrollBar,                {Move top-left corner [6.3.2]}
                right - (SBarWidth - 1),              {Allow for 1-pixel overlap at right}
                -1);                                   {Overlap window top by 1 pixel}

            SizeControl (TheScrollBar,                {Adjust bottom-right corner [6.3.2]}
                SBarWidth,
                (bottom + 1) - (top - 1) - (SBarWidth - 1) )
                {Allow room for size box}

        end; {with}

    ShowControl (TheScrollBar);                       {Redisplay scroll bar [6.3.1]}

    ValidRect (TheScrollBar^.ctrlRect)                {Avoid updating again [3.4.2]}

end; {FixScrollBar}

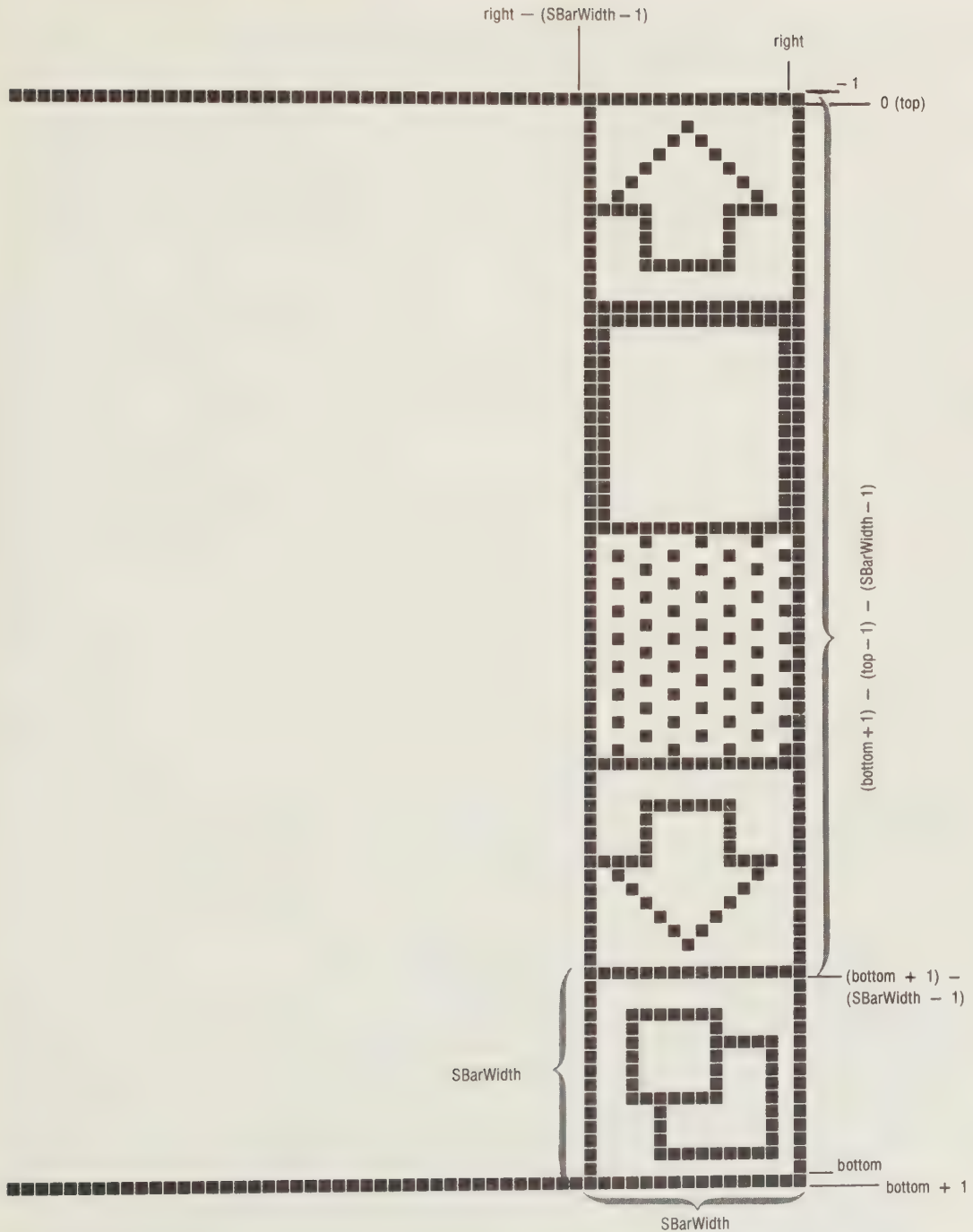
```

Program 6-10 Resize scroll bar

horizontally and -1 vertically, with a width of `SBarWidth` pixels and a height of

$$(\text{bottom} + 1) - (\text{top} - 1) - (\text{SBarWidth} - 1)$$

as shown in the program. Finally, since there's always an update event pending when this routine is called, we remove the scroll bar from the window's update region with `ValidRect` to avoid unnecessary redrawing.

**Figure 6-6** Scroll bar positioning

FixText (Program 6-11) is the routine that readjusts a window's text rectangle when the window is resized. Changing the size of the text rectangle requires rewrapping the text to the new width and changing all the line breaks. We begin by finding the first text character currently visible in the window, so we can scroll it back to the top after the text is rewrapped. The current scroll bar setting tells us which line is at the top of the window. We then look in the edit record's lineStarts array [5.1.1] to get the character position at the beginning of that line.

```
{ Global declarations }
```

```
const
  SBarWidth = 16;           {Width of scroll bar in pixels}
  TextMargin = 4;          {Inset from window to text rectangle}

var
  TheWindow = WindowPtr;    {Pointer to currently active window [3.1.1]}
  TheScrollBar = ControlHandle; {Handle to active window's scroll bar [6.1.1]}
  TheText = TEHandle;       {Handle to active window's edit record [5.1.1]}

  Watch = CursHandle;       {Handle to wristwatch cursor [2.5.1]}

procedure FixText;

  { Resize window's text rectangle. }

  var
    topLine : INTEGER;      {First line visible in window}
    firstChar : INTEGER;    {Character position of first character in window}
    maxTop : INTEGER;       {Maximum value for top line in window}

  begin {FixText}

    SetCursor (Watch^^);    {Indicate delay [2.5.2]}

    HLock (Handle(TheText)); {Lock edit record [1:3.2.4]}
    with TheText^^ do
      begin

        topLine := GetCtlValue (TheScrollBar); {Get previous first line [6.2.4]}
        firstChar := lineStarts[topLine];      {Find first character previously visible [5.1.1]}

        viewRect := TheWindow^.portRect;      {Display text in window's port rectangle [3.1.1]}
        with viewRect do
```

Program 6-11 Resize text rectangle

```

begin
    right := right - (SBarWidth - 1); {Exclude scroll bar, allowing for 1-pixel overlap}
    bottom := bottom - (SBarWidth - 1); {Leave space for scroll bar at bottom}
    bottom := (bottom div lineHeight) * lineHeight
                                   {Truncate to a whole number of lines [5.1.1]}
end;

destRect := viewRect; {Wrap to same rectangle [5.1.1]}
InsetRect (destRect, TextMargin, TextMargin); {Inset by text margin [I:4.4.4]}

TECalText (TheText); {Recalibrate line starts [5.3.1]}
AdjustScrollBar; {Adjust scroll bar to new length [Prog. 6-5]}

ScrollCharacter (firstChar, FALSE) {Scroll same character to top of window [Prog. 6-12]}

end; {with}
HUnlock (Handle(TheText)) {Unlock edit record [I:3.2.4]}

end; {FixText}

```

Program 6-11 *(continued)*

We calculate the coordinates of the new view rectangle by starting with the window's port rectangle and inseting for the scroll bars and size box at the right and bottom. (We also truncate the text rectangle to a whole number of line heights to avoid displaying a partial line of characters at the bottom of the window.) The wrapping rectangle is inset another few pixels from the edges of the view rectangle for legibility. After recalibrating the line starts with `TECalText` [5.3.1], we call `AdjustScrollBar` (Program 6-5) to adjust the scroll bar's range to the new number of lines. Finally we have to scroll the old first character back to the top of the window; this is done by calling the utility routine `ScrollCharacter`, shown in Program 6-12.

`ScrollCharacter` scrolls a designated character position to the top or bottom of the active window. First it scans through the edit record's `lineStarts` array until it finds the line containing the given character position. Then it sets the window's scroll bar to that line number and calls `AdjustText` (Program 6-7) to reposition the text to the new setting. (If it's asked to scroll the character to the bottom of the window instead of the top, it adjusts for the height of the window before setting the scroll bar.)

```

{ Global variable }

var
    TheText : THandle;                                (Handle to active window's edit record [5.1.1])

procedure ScrollCharacter (theCharacter : INTEGER; toBottom : BOOLEAN);

    { Scroll character into view. }

var
    theLine      : INTEGER;                            (Number of line containing character)
    windowHeight : INTEGER;                            (Height of text rectangle in lines)

begin {ScrollCharacter}

    HLock (Handle(TheText));                            (Lock edit record [1:3.2.4])
    with TheText^^ do
        begin
            theLine := 0;                                (Start search at first line)
            while lineStarts[theLine+1] <= theCharacter do
                theLine := theLine + 1;                  (Find line containing character [5.1.1])

            if toBottom then                               (Scrolling to bottom of window?)
                begin
                    with viewRect do
                        windowHeight := (bottom - top) div lineHeight; (Get window height)
                        theLine := theLine - (windowHeight - 1)          (Offset for window height)
                    end; {if}

                    SetCtlValue (TheScrollBar, theLine); (Adjust setting of scroll bar [6.2.4])
                    AdjustText                                     (Scroll text to match new setting [Prog. 6-7])

                end; {with}
            HUnlock (Handle(TheText))                        (Unlock edit record [1:3.2.4])

        end; {ScrollCharacter}
end;

```

Program 6-12 Scroll character into view

ScrollToSelection (Program 6-13) does one last bit of useful house-keeping, scrolling the current text selection into view. The editing routines of Chapter 5 call this routine to keep the selection visible


```

{ Global variable }

var
  TheText : THandle;                                {Handle to active window's edit record [5.1.1]}

procedure ScrollToSelection;

  { Scroll current selection into view. }

var
  topLine      : INTEGER;                            {First line visible in window}
  bottomLine   : INTEGER;                            {First line beyond bottom of window}
  windowHeight : INTEGER;                            {Height of text rectangle in lines}

begin {ScrollToSelection}

  HLock (Handle(TheText));                          {Lock edit record [I:3.2.4]}
  with TheText^^, viewRect do
    begin
      topLine      := GetCtlValue (TheScrollBar); {Get current top line [6.2.4]}
      windowHeight := (bottom - top) div lineHeight; {Get window height [5.1.1]}
      bottomLine   := topLine + windowHeight;      {Find line beyond bottom}

      if GetCtlMax (TheScrollBar) = 0 then          {Not enough text to fill the window? [6.2.4]}
        AdjustText                                {Start of text to top of window [Prog. 6-7]}

      else if selEnd < lineStarts[topLine] then     {Whole selection above window top? [5.1.1]}
        ScrollCharacter (selStart, FALSE)          {Start of selection to top of window [Prog. 6-12]}

      else if selStart >= lineStarts[bottomLine] then {Whole selection below window bottom? [5.1.1]}
        ScrollCharacter (selEnd, TRUE)             {End of selection to bottom of window [Prog. 6-12]}

    end; {with}
  HUnlock (Handle(TheText))                        {Unlock edit record [I:3.2.4]}

end; {ScrollToSelection}

```

Program 6-13 Scroll current selection into view

before and after any editing operation or typing from the keyboard. If the entire text is small enough to fit in the window at once, ScrollToSelection calls AdjustText to make sure that it's all visible. Otherwise, if any part of the selection is already visible, no scrolling is needed. If the whole selection is out of view beyond the top of the window, ScrollToSelection calls ScrollCharacter (Program 6-12) to scroll the beginning of the selection to the top of the window; if the entire selection is beyond the bottom, it scrolls the end of the selection to

the bottom. This guarantees that as much as possible of the selection will become visible.

We can't use the new Macintosh Plus routine `TESelView` [5.3.3] to scroll the selection into view, for the same reasons that we can't use the built-in click-loop routine for automatic scrolling: first, because `TESelView` doesn't adjust the window's scroll bar setting to match the position of the text; and second, because it isn't available on older models of Macintosh.

REFERENCE

6.1 Internal Representation of Controls

6.1.1 Control Records



Definitions

type

ControlHandle = ^ControlPtr;
ControlPtr = ^ControlRecord;

ControlRecord = **packed record**

nextControl	: ControlHandle;	{Handle to next control in window's control list}
ctrlOwner	: WindowPtr;	{Pointer to window this control belongs to}
ctrlRect	: Rect;	{Location of control within window}
ctrlVis	: Byte;	{Is control visible?}
ctrlHilite	: Byte;	{Highlighting state [6.3.3]}
ctrlValue	: INTEGER;	{Current setting}
ctrlMin	: INTEGER;	{Minimum setting}
ctrlMax	: INTEGER;	{Maximum setting}
ctrlDefProc	: Handle;	{Handle to control definition function}
ctrlData	: Handle;	{Handle to definition function's data}
ctrlAction	: ProcPtr;	{Pointer to default action procedure [6.4.2]}
ctrlRfCon	: LONGINT;	{Reference "constant" for application use}
ctrlTitle	: Str255	{Title of control}

end;



Notes

1. `ctrlOwner` is a pointer to the window that “owns” this control.
2. `nextControl` is a handle to the next control in the window’s control list. The beginning of the control list is in the `controlList` field of the window record [3.1.1].
3. A `nextControl` value of `NIL` marks the end of the control list.
4. `ctrlRect` is the control’s *enclosing rectangle*, which defines its location and dimensions in local (window) coordinates.
5. `ctrlVis` is nominally defined as a 1-byte integer for packing purposes, but is really a Boolean flag telling whether the control is visible. Use `HideControl` and `ShowControl` [6.3.1] to manipulate this field instead of storing into it yourself.
6. `ctrlVis` tells whether the control is *logically* visible, independently of whether it’s exposed to view or covered by overlapping objects.
7. `ctrlHilite` is an integer from 0 to 255 denoting the control’s highlighting state. See `HiliteControl` [6.3.3] for further information.
8. `ctrlValue` is the control’s current setting; `ctrlMin` and `ctrlMax` define the minimum and maximum values the setting can take.
9. The handle to the control definition function (`ctrlDefProc`) is obtained when the definition function is read into memory from a resource file.
10. The high-order byte of the `ctrlDefProc` field contains some additional identifying information to distinguish between different types of control that share the same definition function. The Toolbox stores this additional information into the field automatically when the control is created.
11. `ctrlData` is reserved for use by the control definition function in any way it chooses. `ctrlRfCon` is for your program’s own use.
12. `ctrlAction` is a pointer to the control’s default *action procedure*, used by the `TrackControl` routine; see [6.4.2] for details.
13. `ctrlTitle` is the title of the control, in Pascal string format (1-byte character count followed by the characters themselves). The actual length of this field (and hence of the control record itself) is just enough to include the characters of the title.



Assembly Language Information

Field offsets in a control record:

(Pascal) Field name	(Assembly) Offset name	Offset in bytes
nextControl	nextControl	0
ctrlOwner	ctrlOwner	4
ctrlRect	ctrlRect	8
ctrlVis	ctrlVis	16
ctrlHilite	ctrlHilite	17
ctrlValue	ctrlValue	18
ctrlMin	ctrlMin	20
ctrlMax	ctrlMax	22
ctrlDefProc	ctrlDefHandle	24
ctrlData	ctrlData	28
ctrlAction	ctrlAction	32
ctrlRfCon	ctrlRfCon	36
ctrlTitle	ctrlTitle	40

Assembly-language constant:

Name	Value	Meaning
CtrlSize	40	Size of control record in bytes, excluding title

6.2 Creating and Destroying Controls

6.2.1 Creating Controls



Definitions

function NewControl

(owningWindow	: WindowPtr;	{Pointer to window the new control belongs to}
controlRect	: Rect;	{Location of control within window}
title	: Str255;	{Title of control}
visible	: BOOLEAN;	{Is control initially visible?}
initialValue	: INTEGER;	{Initial setting}
minValue	: INTEGER;	{Minimum setting}
maxValue	: INTEGER;	{Maximum setting}
controlType	: INTEGER;	{Control definition ID}
refCon	: LONGINT)	{Initial reference constant}
	: ControlHandle;	{Handle to new control}

function GetNewControl

(templateID	: INTEGER;	{Resource ID of control template}
owningWindow	: WindowPtr)	{Pointer to window the new control belongs to}
	: ControlHandle;	{Handle to new control}

const

PushButProc	= 0;	{Standard control definition IDs: }	{Pushbutton}
CheckBoxProc	= 1;		{Checkbox}
RadioButProc	= 2;		{Radio button}
ScrollBarProc	= 16;		{Standard scroll bar}
UseWFont	= 8;		{Use window's font for control title}



Notes

1. NewControl and GetNewControl both create a new control, enter it in its window's control list, and return a handle to it.
2. Before creating any controls, you must first call InitGraf [I:4.3.1], InitFonts [I:8.2.4], and InitWindows [3.2.1].
3. NewControl takes initialization information as parameters; GetNewControl gets it from a control template in a resource file.
4. templateID is the resource ID of a control template; its resource type is 'CNTL' [6.5.1].

5. `owningWindow` is a pointer to the window that the new control will belong to.
6. The new control will be inserted at the beginning of the window's control list.
7. `controlRect` is the control's enclosing rectangle, which determines its size and location within the window. It is expressed in *local (window) coordinates*.
8. `controlRect` should be at least 20 pixels high for standard pushbuttons, 16 pixels high for checkboxes and radio buttons, 16 pixels wide for vertical scroll bars, and 16 pixels high for horizontal scroll bars.
9. `title` is the title of the new control, and may be set to the empty string for controls that don't display a title (such as scroll bars).
10. If the title is too long to fit in the given enclosing rectangle, it will be truncated at the right for checkboxes and radio buttons, or centered and truncated at both ends for pushbuttons.
11. `visible` tells whether the new control is *logically* visible, even though it may be covered by other overlapping objects. The control will be drawn on the screen if visible and exposed.
12. `initialValue` is the control's initial setting; `minValue` and `maxValue` define its initial range.
13. The setting and range don't matter for standard pushbuttons, since they don't retain a setting. For checkboxes and radio buttons, set `minValue = 0` and `maxValue = 1`.
14. `controlType` is a coded integer (a *control definition ID*) that includes the resource ID of the control definition function. The definition function is read into memory from its resource file and a handle to it is placed in the `controlDefProc` field of the control record.
15. Use the built-in constants `PushbutProc`, `CheckboxProc`, `RadioButProc`, and `ScrollBarProc` for the standard control types.
16. A control's title is normally displayed in the standard system font (12-point Chicago). Adding the constant `UseWFont` to the control type causes it to use the owning window's current typeface and size [1:8.3.1] instead.
17. `refCon` is the initial value of the control's reference constant (`controlRfCon`).
18. The new control will initially have no highlighting (`controlHilite = 0`) and no default action procedure (`controlAction = NIL`); you can change these attributes if necessary with `HiliteControl` [6.3.3] and `SetCtlAction` [6.4.2].



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
NewControl	__NewControl	\$A954
GetNewControl	__GetNewControl	\$A9BE

Standard control definition IDs:

Name	Value	Meaning
PushbutProc	0	Pushbutton
CheckboxProc	1	Checkbox
RadioButProc	2	Radio button
ScrollBarProc	16	Standard scroll bar
UseWFont	8	Use window font for title

6.2.2 Destroying Controls



Definitions

procedure DisposeControl
 (theControl : ControlHandle); {Control to be destroyed}

procedure KillControls
 (theWindow : WindowPtr); {Window whose controls are to be destroyed}



Notes

1. DisposeControl destroys a designated control; KillControls destroys all controls belonging to a given window.
2. Destroying a control removes it from the screen and from its window's control list.
3. If you're using the control's reference constant (ctrlRfCon) to hold a handle to auxiliary information about the control, it's up to you to dispose of it before destroying the control itself. All other storage associated with the control is released automatically.

4. All existing handles to the control become invalid and must not be used again.
5. Destroying a window with `CloseWindow` or `DisposeWindow` [3.2.3] automatically destroys all of its controls; there's no need to call `KillControls` explicitly.
6. The trap macro for `DisposeControl` is spelled `_DisposControl`.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
<code>DisposeControl</code>	<code>_DisposControl</code>	<code>\$A955</code>
<code>KillControls</code>	<code>_KillControls</code>	<code>\$A956</code>

6.2.3 Setting Control Properties



Definitions

procedure `SetTitle`

```
(theControl : ControlHandle;    {Handle to the control}
 newTitle  : Str255);           {New title}
```

procedure `GetTitle`

```
(theControl : ControlHandle;    {Handle to the control}
 var theTitle : Str255);         {Returns current title}
```

procedure `SetCRefCon`

```
(theControl : ControlHandle;    {Handle to the control}
 newRefCon : LONGINT);          {New reference constant}
```

function `GetCRefCon`

```
(theControl : ControlHandle)    {Handle to the control}
 : LONGINT;                     {Current reference constant}
```



Notes

1. SetCTitle sets a control's title; GetCTitle returns its current title via parameter theTitle. Always use these routines instead of manipulating the control's title field directly.
2. SetCTitle redisplay the control on the screen with its new title.
3. SetCRefCon sets a control's reference constant; GetCRefCon returns its current reference constant.
4. The reference "constant" (really a variable) is for your program's optional private use. You can give it any 4-byte value that makes sense to your program.
5. If you need more than 4 bytes of private data per control, allocate space for the data from the heap and store a handle to it as the reference constant. (Don't forget to deallocate this space before destroying the control!)



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
SetCTitle	__SetCTitle	\$A95F
GetCTitle	__GetCTitle	\$A95E
SetCRefCon	__SetCRefCon	\$A95B
GetCRefCon	__GetCRefCon	\$A95A

6.2.4 Control Setting and Range



Definitions

```

procedure SetCtlValue
    (theControl : ControlHandle;    {Handle to the control}
     newValue   : INTEGER);        {New setting}

function   GetCtlValue
    (theControl : ControlHandle)    {Handle to the control}
    : INTEGER;                      {Current setting}

procedure SetCtlMin
    (theControl : ControlHandle;    {Handle to the control}
     newMin     : INTEGER);        {New minimum setting}

function   GetCtlMin
    (theControl : ControlHandle)    {Handle to the control}
    : INTEGER;                      {Current minimum setting}

procedure SetCtlMax
    (theControl : ControlHandle;    {Handle to the control}
     newMax     : INTEGER);        {New maximum setting}

function   GetCtlMax
    (theControl : ControlHandle)    {Handle to the control}
    : INTEGER;                      {Current maximum setting}
  
```



Notes

1. SetCtlValue gives a control a new setting; GetCtlValue returns its current setting.
2. SetCtlMin and SetCtlMax set the range of values a control's setting can assume; GetCtlMin and GetCtlMax return its current range.
3. A control's setting is never permitted to go outside the current range. If the value specified to SetCtlValue, SetCtlMin, or SetCtlMax would place the setting out of range, it is automatically forced to the nearest endpoint (minimum or maximum) of the range.
4. SetCtlValue, SetCtlMin, and SetCtlMax all redisplay the control on the screen to reflect its new setting and range.
5. The trap macros for SetCtlMin and GetCtlMin are spelled __SetMinCtl and

`__GetMinCtl`; those for `SetCtlMax` and `GetCtlMax` are spelled `__SetMaxCtl` and `__GetMaxCtl`.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:		
(Pascal)	(Assembly)	
Routine name	Trap macro	Trap word
SetCtlValue	__SetCtlValue	\$A963
GetCtlValue	__GetCtlValue	\$A960
SetCtlMin	__SetMinCtl	\$A964
GetCtlMin	__GetMinCtl	\$A961
SetCtlMax	__SetMaxCtl	\$A965
GetCtlMax	__GetMaxCtl	\$A962

6.3 Control Display

6.3.1 Showing and Hiding Controls



Definitions

```

procedure HideControl
    (theControl : ControlHandle);      {Handle to the control}

procedure ShowControl
    (theControl : ControlHandle);      {Handle to the control}

procedure DrawControls
    (theWindow : WindowPtr);           {Pointer to the window}

procedure UpdtControls
    (theWindow : WindowPtr;            {Pointer to the window}
     inRegion : RgnHandle);            {Region to be updated}

```



Notes

1. HideControl makes a control invisible; ShowControl makes it visible.
2. The contrlVis field of the control record [6.1.1] is nominally defined as a 1-byte integer instead of a Boolean, so that it will be packed into a single byte of the record. Always use ShowControl or HideControl to make a control visible or invisible, instead of storing directly into the contrlVis field.
3. HideControl erases the control by filling its enclosing rectangle (contrlRect) with the owning window's background pattern. The rectangle is also added to the window's update region, causing anything previously obscured by the control to be redisplayed.
4. ShowControl makes the control *logically* visible; it will actually appear on the screen only if not obscured by other objects.
5. Hiding an already invisible control or showing an already visible one has no effect.
6. DrawControls draws all of a window's visible controls on the screen.
7. UpdtControls draws all of a window's visible controls whose enclosing rectangles intersect with a specified region (normally the window's visible or update region).
8. UpdtControls is more efficient than DrawControls, since it skips those controls that lie outside the given region. DrawControls attempts to draw all the controls, leaving it to QuickDraw to "clip out" those outside the visible region.
9. UpdtControls is available only on the Macintosh Plus.
10. Always call DrawControls or UpdtControls as part of your response to an update event for a window. The window's controls are *not* redrawn automatically by ShowWindow [3.3.1], SelectWindow [3.5.2], or BringToFront [3.3.3].



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
HideControl	__HideControl	\$A958
ShowControl	__ShowControl	\$A957
DrawControls	__DrawControls	\$A969
UpdtControls	__UpdtControls	\$A953

Assembly-language constant:

Name	Value	Meaning
SBarPatID	17	Resource ID of pattern for scroll bar shaft

6.3.2 Moving and Sizing Controls



Definitions

procedure MoveControl

(theControl : ControlHandle;	{Handle to the control}
hLocal : INTEGER;	{New horizontal coordinate}
vLocal : INTEGER);	{New vertical coordinate}

procedure SizeControl

(theControl : ControlHandle;	{Handle to the control}
newWidth : INTEGER;	{New width}
newHeight : INTEGER);	{New height}



Notes

1. MoveControl moves a control to a new location within its window; SizeControl changes its size.
2. If the control is visible, it is erased and redrawn in its new location or size.
3. All coordinates apply to the control's enclosing rectangle (controlRect).

4. For MoveControl, hLocal and vLocal give the new location of the control's top-left corner, in *local (window) coordinates*. The control's size remains the same.
5. For SizeControl, newWidth and newHeight give the control's (that is, the enclosing rectangle's) new dimensions in pixels. The location of the top-left corner remains the same.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
MoveControl	__MoveControl	\$A959
SizeControl	__SizeControl	\$A95C

6.3.3 Control Highlighting



Definitions

procedure HiliteControl

(theControl : ControlHandle;	{Handle to the control}
hiliteState : INTEGER);	{Part of the control to be highlighted}



Notes

1. HiliteControl specifies the way a control is highlighted on the screen and redraws it accordingly.
2. hiliteState is a 1-byte integer (0-255) denoting the control's new highlighting state.
3. A highlighting state of 0 stands for no highlighting at all.
4. A highlighting state of 255 marks the control as *inactive*. Such a control is displayed in some distinctive way and behaves as if it were invisible; TextControl and FindControl [6.4.1] will not report mouse clicks in the control.

5. For historical reasons, a highlighting state of 254 is invalid and should not be used.
6. Any other highlighting state (1-253) is a *part code* [6.4.1] identifying which part of the control is highlighted.
7. The actual appearance of a control in any given highlighting state is determined by its control definition function.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal)

(Assembly)

Routine name

Trap macro

Trap word

HiliteControl

__HiliteControl

\$A95D

6.4 Responding to the Mouse

6.4.1 Locating Mouse Clicks



Definitions

function FindControl

(mousePoint	:	Point;	{Point where mouse was pressed, in window coordinates}
theWindow	:	WindowPtr;	{Window the mouse was pressed in}
var theControl	:	ControlHandle)	{Returns control the mouse was pressed in}
	:	INTEGER;	{Part of the control where mouse was pressed}

function TestControl

(theControl	:	ControlHandle;	{Control to be tested}
mousePoint	:	Point)	{Point where mouse was pressed, in window coordinates}
	:	INTEGER;	{Part of the control where mouse was pressed}

const

InButton	=	10;	{In a pushbutton}
InCheckbox	=	11;	{In a checkbox or radio button}
InUpButton	=	20;	{In up arrow of a scroll bar}
InDownButton	=	21;	{In down arrow of a scroll bar}
InPageUp	=	22;	{In page-up region of a scroll bar}
InPageDown	=	23;	{In page-down region of a scroll bar}
InThumb	=	129;	{In scroll box of a scroll bar}



Notes

1. FindControl finds which of a window's controls (if any), and which part of the control, contains a given point. This is normally a point where the mouse button was pressed; call FindControl after FindWindow [3.5.1] reports that the point lies in the window's content region.
2. TestControl tests whether a given point lies inside a given control, and if so, in which part of the control.
3. For both routines, mousePoint should give the location of a mouse-down event, in *local (window) coordinates*. In the where field of the event record [2.1.1], the point is reported in *global* coordinates. Use GlobalToLocal [1:4.4.2] to convert the point before passing it to either of these routines.

4. For FindControl, the parameter theWindow identifies the window in whose coordinate system the point is expressed; for TestControl, the window is the one the given control (theControl) belongs to.
5. FindControl returns a handle to the control containing the given point in the variable parameter theControl.
6. If the point isn't in any control (or is in an invisible control), theControl is set to NIL.
7. Both functions return a *part code* as the function result, identifying the part of the control containing the given point.
8. The constants shown represent the part codes for the standard control types.
9. If the point isn't in the given control (for TestControl) or isn't in any control (for FindControl), or if the control is invisible, the function result is 0.
10. For inactive controls (those with a highlighting state [6.3.3] of 255), both functions return a part code of 0 as if the control were invisible; FindControl also sets parameter theControl to NIL.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
FindControl	_FindControl	\$A96C
TestControl	_TestControl	\$A966

Part codes for standard controls:

Name	Value	Meaning
InButton	10	Pushbutton
InCheckbox	11	Checkbox or radio button
InUpButton	20	Scroll bar up arrow
InDownButton	21	Scroll bar down arrow
InPageUp	22	Scroll bar page-up region
InPageDown	23	Scroll bar page-down region
InThumb	129	Scroll box

6.4.2 Tracking the Mouse



Definitions

```

function  TrackControl
    (theControl : ControlHandle; {Handle to the control}
     startPoint : Point;         {Point where mouse was pressed, in window coordinates}
     actionProc : ProcPtr)      {Repeated action while tracking}
     : INTEGER;                 {Part of control affected}

procedure SetCtlAction
    (theControl : ControlHandle; {Handle to the control}
     newAction  : ProcPtr;       {New action procedure}

function  GetCtlAction
    (theControl : ControlHandle) {Handle to the control}
     : ProcPtr;                  {Current action procedure}
  
```



Notes

1. Call `TrackControl` after a mouse-down event in a control, to track the mouse's movements and respond accordingly.
2. `startPoint` should give the location of the mouse-down event, in *local (window) coordinates*. In the `where` field of the event record [2.1.1], the point is reported in *global* coordinates. Use `GlobalToLocal` [I:4.4.2] to convert the point before passing it to `TrackControl`.
3. `TrackControl` keeps control for as long as the user holds down the mouse button, tracking the mouse's movements and providing visual feedback on the screen.
4. All actions are limited to the part of the control that contains the original starting point.
5. If the mouse was pressed in the indicator of a dial, an outline of the indicator follows the mouse as long as the button remains down. When the button is released, the control is redrawn with the indicator at its new position and its setting is adjusted accordingly. You should then do whatever is appropriate to respond to the new setting.
6. If `theControl` is not a dial, or if the mouse was pressed in a part of a dial other than the indicator, the selected part is highlighted and unhighlighted as the mouse moves into and out of it. When the mouse is released, the part is unhighlighted.

7. If the mouse is released in the same part of the control where it was originally pressed, `TrackControl` returns the corresponding part code as its function result; otherwise it returns 0.
8. While the mouse button is down, `TrackControl` performs some continuous action by repeatedly calling the specified *action procedure* (`actionProc`).
9. For tracking the indicator of a dial, the action procedure should take no parameters; for any other control part, it should be of the form

```

procedure Action (theControl : ControlHandle;
                  thePart   : INTEGER);

```

10. Each time the action procedure is called, the value passed for parameter `thePart` will be either the part code of the part where the mouse was originally pressed (if the mouse is still within that part) or 0 (if it isn't). The procedure should normally do nothing on receiving a part code of 0.
11. If `actionProc` is NIL, no continuous action will be performed while tracking, other than highlighting and unhighlighting the selected control part.
12. If `actionProc` is `ProcPtr(-1)`, the control's default action procedure (`ctrlAction`) will be used. The default action procedure can be set with `SetCtlAction` or read with `GetCtlAction`.
13. Notice that the action procedure for tracking a dial indicator takes a different number of parameters than the one for other control parts. This means that a given action procedure can only be used for one case or the other. If you specify a default action procedure with `SetCtlAction`, make sure it only gets called in the appropriate case.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
<code>TrackControl</code>	<code>_TrackControl</code>	<code>\$A968</code>
<code>SetCtlAction</code>	<code>_SetCtlAction</code>	<code>\$A96B</code>
<code>GetCtlAction</code>	<code>_GetCtlAction</code>	<code>\$A96A</code>

6.4.3 Dragging a Control



Definitions

```

procedure DragControl
    (theControl : ControlHandle;    {Handle to the control}
     startPoint : Point;            {Point where mouse was pressed}
     limitRect  : Rect;            {Rectangle limiting movement}
     trackRect  : Rect;            {Rectangle limiting tracking}
     axis       : INTEGER);        {Axis constraint}

const
    BothAxes    = 0;               {Both axes}
    HAxisOnly   = 1;               {Horizontal only}
    VAxisOnly   = 2;               {Vertical only}
  
```



Notes

1. DragControl allows the user to drag a control with the mouse to a new position in its window.
2. This is an unusual operation; the normal way of responding to a mouse event in a control is with TrackControl [6.4.2].
3. startPoint should give the location of a mouse-down event, in *local (window) coordinates*. In the where field of the event record [2.1.1], the point is reported in *global* coordinates. Use GlobalToLocal [1:4.4.2] to convert the point before passing it to DragControl.
4. DragControl keeps control for as long as the user holds down the mouse button, following the mouse's movements on the screen with an outline of the control. When the button is released, the control is moved to the new location: you needn't call MoveControl [6.3.2] yourself.
5. limitRect limits the movement of the control's outline on the screen. If the mouse leaves this rectangle, the outline "pins" at the edge of the rectangle and will not travel any further.
6. trackRect limits the tracking of the mouse. If the mouse leaves this rectangle, the control outline disappears from the screen; it will reappear if the mouse re-enters the rectangle while the button is still down. If the button is released outside the tracking rectangle, the control's position is left unchanged.
7. Both rectangles are expressed in *local (window) coordinates*.

8. `limitRect` should lie entirely within both `trackRect` and the window's content region. To allow the user some margin of error in dragging the control, `trackRect` should be slightly larger than `limitRect`.
9. `axis` allows the motion of the control to be limited to horizontal motion only (`HAxisOnly`), vertical only (`VAxisOnly`), or both (`BothAxes`).



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

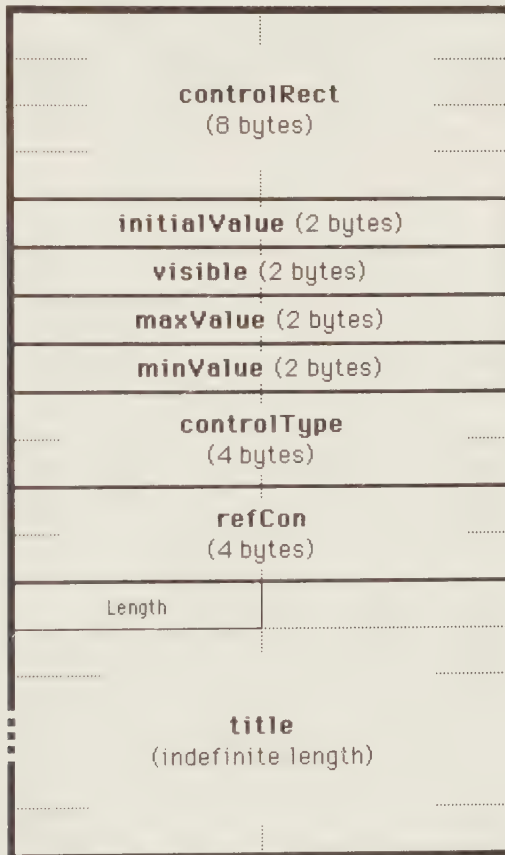
(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
<code>DragControl</code>	<code>_DragControl</code>	<code>\$A967</code>

Assembly-language constants:

Name	Value	Meaning
<code>NoConstraint</code>	0	Both axes
<code>HAxisOnly</code>	1	Horizontal only
<code>VAxisOnly</code>	2	Vertical only

6.5 Control-Related Resources

6.5.1 Resource Type 'CNTL'



Notes

1. A resource of type 'CNTL' contains a control template.
2. All fields of the control template are in the same form as the corresponding parameters to `NewControl` [6.2.1].
3. The control title is in Pascal string form, with a 1-byte length count followed by the characters of the title. The overall size of the control template depends on the length of the title string.
4. To create a control from a control template, call `GetNewControl` [6.2.1] with the template's resource ID.

CHAPTER

7

Meaningful Dialogs

Generally speaking, Macintosh commands take effect as soon as the user invokes them, whether through a menu or by typing a keyboard alias with the Command key. Often the command operates on information that's already available at the time it's invoked, such as the currently active window or the current selection. Sometimes, though, some further information is needed before the command can be carried out: for instance, a command that does disk input or output may need the name of a file to operate on, or a Find command may need to know what string of characters to search for. In these cases the program can ask the user for the needed information by opening a *dialog box* on the screen. Dialog boxes are also useful for conveying important information *to* the user, such as error messages or progress reports, or for pausing to let the user perform some preliminary action, such as inserting a piece of paper in the printer.

There are actually three different levels of dialog, differing in how much interaction they permit with the user and how long they remain on the screen. (Throughout this chapter, the term “dialog box,” or just “dialog,” refers equally to all three kinds unless explicitly stated otherwise.) At the lowest level are *alerts*, normally used to display error messages or other status information (see Figure 7-1). When an alert box is visible, it's always the frontmost window on the screen. The only meaningful action the user can take is to *dismiss* the alert, usually by clicking the mouse in a pushbutton; all other actions are ignored.

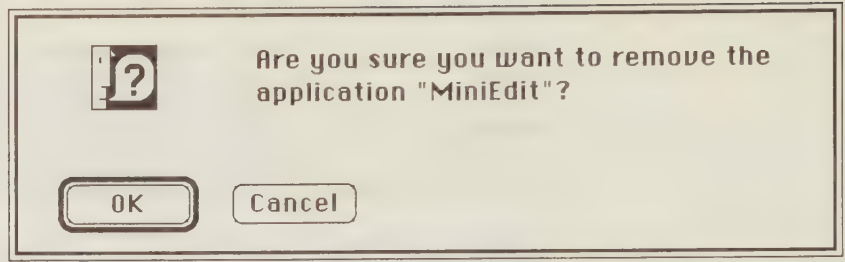


Figure 7-1 Alert box

The next level up from alerts is *modal dialogs* (Figure 7-2), so called because they put the system in a “mode” that restricts the user’s freedom of action: only the dialog box will respond to the mouse and keyboard. Like an alert box, a modal dialog remains frontmost on the screen until the user dismisses it by clicking a pushbutton. As long as it’s visible, no other window can be brought to the front; mouse clicks outside the dialog box produce no response except a beep from the speaker. Unlike an alert, however, a modal dialog allows the user to do other things than just dismiss it, such as manipulate controls with the mouse or type text from the keyboard.

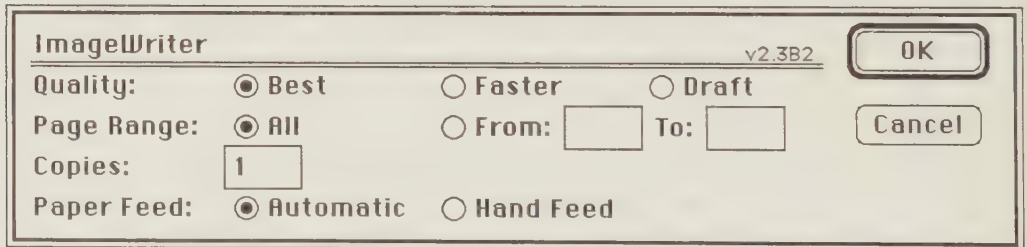


Figure 7-2 Modal dialog box

Finally there are *modeless dialogs* (Figure 7-3), which don’t restrict the user’s actions in any way. A modeless dialog box behaves just like an ordinary document window: it can be activated, deactivated, and moved around freely on the screen. The user can activate other windows and work in them—type, edit, change the selection, and so forth—then reactivate the dialog window and continue to use it. When it’s no longer needed, the user dismisses it by clicking the mouse in its close box or choosing Close from the File menu, just like any other window.

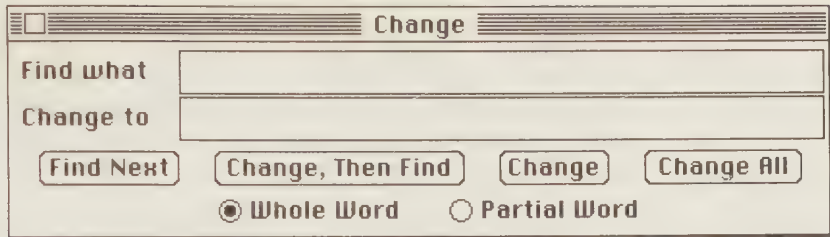


Figure 7-3 Modeless dialog box

As usual, there's a one-time initialization routine, `InitDialogs` [7.2.1], that you have to call before performing any dialog-related operation. It must be preceded in turn by `InitGraf` [I:4.3.1], `InitFonts` [I:8.2.4], `InitWindows` [3.2.1], `InitMenus` [4.2.1], and `TEInit` [5.2.1].

Creating and Destroying Dialogs

From the point of view of the Toolbox, a dialog box is just another window on the screen that happens to have some unusual extra properties. A *dialog record* [7.1.1], the internal data structure representing a dialog or alert box, has a complete window record embedded within it as its first field, just the way a window record in turn contains a complete graphics port. Just as you can think of a window as a sort of extended graphics port, a dialog is an extended window.

The most important piece of extra information in the dialog record is a handle to the dialog's *item list*. The item list in turn contains handles to each of the individual items. A dialog can have any number of items, which may include text, icons, pictures, controls of any kind, and text boxes where the user can type in information such as a file name or a search string.

There are two ways of creating a new dialog box, analogous to the two ways of creating a window. You can either supply all the needed information as parameters to `NewDialog` [7.2.2] or use a predefined template (resource type 'DLOG' [7.6.2]) and pass its resource ID to `GetNewDialog` [7.2.2]. The Toolbox needs exactly the same information to create a dialog as to create a window, plus an item list to define the dialog's contents. The item list is normally taken from a resource file, under resource type 'DITL' ("dialog item list") [7.6.3]. The

template you provide to `GetNewDialog` includes the resource ID of the item list, which the Toolbox will read in for you from the resource file. When you use `NewDialog` instead, you have to read in the item list yourself with `GetResource` [I:6.3.1] and pass its handle as a parameter.

`NewDialog` and `GetNewDialog` are used only for creating modal and modeless dialogs. As we'll see later, alerts are always created for you implicitly by the Toolbox from templates of resource type 'ALRT' [7.6.1]. You just supply the resource ID of the template when you want to display the alert.

A dialog window's `windowKind` field is set automatically on creation to the constant `DialogKind` [3.1.1], to identify it as a dialog box and not an ordinary application window. Just as when you create a window, you can either allocate your own space for the dialog record and pass a pointer to it as the `dStorage` parameter, or pass `NIL` for `dStorage` to have the Toolbox allocate the space for you. When the time comes to destroy the dialog record, you'll use `CloseDialog` [7.2.3] if you supplied your own storage, or `DisposDialog` [7.2.3] if you let the Toolbox allocate it for you.

You specify the overall appearance of your dialog box by passing one of the standard window definition IDs [3.2.2] as the `windowType` parameter to `NewDialog`, or in the corresponding field of the dialog template to `GetNewDialog`. (Refer back to Figure 3-9 for the appearance of the standard window types.) Alert boxes always use window type `DBoxProc`, the standard double-bordered dialog window. Modal dialogs can use either the double border, a plain border (`PlainDBoxProc`), or a two-pixel "shadow" (`AltDBoxProc`). Modeless dialogs should have a title bar so the user can drag them around on the screen; they're usually of window type `NoGrowDocProc`, the standard document window with no zoom or size box.

Dialog Pointers

Since a dialog record is ultimately based on a graphics port, it's a nonrelocatable object and is referred to with a pointer instead of a handle. Just as there are two kinds of window pointer, a `WindowPtr` for treating a window as a graphics port and a `WindowPeek` for treating it specifically as a window, so are there two kinds of dialog pointer. A

DialogPtr is defined to be equivalent to a WindowPtr [3.1.1], which in turn is equivalent to a GrafPtr—a pointer to a GrafPort [I:4.2.2]. On the other hand, a DialogPeek is defined as a pointer to a DialogRecord, so you can use it to “peek” at the record’s dialog-specific fields.

When you create a new dialog box with NewDialog or GetNewDialog, you get back a DialogPtr. Since this is equivalent to both a GrafPtr and a WindowPtr, you can pass it to any Toolbox routine that operates on ports or windows, as well as those that operate exclusively on dialogs. If necessary, you can use typecasting to convert the DialogPtr to a WindowPeek in order to access its window-related fields, or to a DialogPeek to access those specific to dialogs. For example, suppose you declare

```
var
  dPtr   : DialogPtr;
  wPeek  : WindowPeek;
  dPeek  : DialogPeek;
```

then create a new dialog record and convert the resulting DialogPtr by typecasting:

```
dPtr   := GetNewDialog ( . . . );
wPeek  := WindowPeek(dPtr);
dPeek  := DialogPeek (dPtr)
```

You can now pass the DialogPtr to any routine that operates on graphics ports

```
SetPort (dPtr)
```

or on windows

```
ShowWindow (dPtr)
```

or on dialogs

```
DrawDialog (dPtr)
```

You can access the fields of the dialog’s graphics port with any of the three types of pointer

```
dPtr^.portRect
wPeek^.port.portRect
```

```
dPeek^.window.port.portRect
```

those of its window with the WindowPeek or the DialogPeek

```
wPeek^.updateRgn
```

```
dPeek^.window.updateRgn
```

and those specific to the dialog itself with the DialogPeek only

```
dPeek^.textH
```

Item Lists

As noted earlier, a dialog's item list is normally defined by a resource of type 'DITL' [7.6.3]. This item list resource begins with a word-length (2-byte) integer giving the number of items in the list minus 1; this is followed by the list entries describing the items themselves. The list entry for each item contains the following information:

- An empty 4-byte field that will be filled with an *item handle* when the list is copied into memory
- A *display rectangle* giving the item's size and location in the local coordinate system of the dialog window
- A 1-byte integer code (from 0 to 255) identifying the *item type* [7.1.2]
- One additional piece of descriptive information, depending on the type of item

The length of the additional descriptive information, and hence the overall length of the item list entry itself, can vary from one item to another; the only restriction is that the length must be even, so it will align on word boundaries in memory. So each list entry also contains a length count giving the length of the descriptive information in bytes. When you create a dialog box, the Toolbox uses the descriptive information in each entry of the item list to create the corresponding item itself, then stores (in most cases) a handle to the item into the field reserved for it in the list entry. (The one exception is discussed later, in the section "User Items.") Finally, it places a handle to the resulting item list into the *items* field of the new dialog record.

When you create a dialog box from a template with `GetNewDialog`, the Toolbox makes a *copy* of the item list and uses the copy from then on. Once the copy is made, the original is no longer needed in memory. Always be sure to make the item list a purgeable resource, so it can be removed from the heap to make room for something else.

On the other hand, when you use `NewDialog` to create a dialog from scratch (rather than from a template), the item list you supply is *not* copied; the `items` field of the dialog record will hold a handle to the original item list itself. So in this case the item list must be *unpurgeable*.

To access or change the properties of individual items, you can use the Toolbox routines `GetDItem` and `SetDItem` [7.3.1]. You identify the item you want by giving a pointer to the dialog it belongs to, along with the *item number* of the individual item. (The item number is simply the index of the item within the dialog's item list: the first item in the list is item number 1, the second is item number 2, and so on.) `GetDItem` returns the item type, item handle, and display rectangle through variable parameters; `SetDItem` accepts these same three pieces of information and modifies the item accordingly. After getting the item handle from `GetDItem`, you can use it to perform any needed operation on the item. For example, to hide a control that's an item in a dialog, you might do something like this:

```
GetDItem (theDialog, itemNumber, itemType, itemHandle, dispRect);
ctrlHandle := ControlHandle(itemHandle);
HideControl (ctrlHandle)
```

Item Types

Item types fall into two broad categories, which we can call *static* and *interactive*. Static items are those that are displayed purely to convey information *to* the user, such as noneditable text, icons, and pictures; interactive items are those that gather information *from* the user via the mouse and keyboard, such as controls of any kind and text boxes in which text can be entered from the keyboard.

Static Text

Static text items have an item type of `StatText`, to distinguish them from editable text boxes that the user can type into. The item list resource contains the actual text of the item. When the item is copied

into memory, a copy of this text is made in the heap and a handle to the copy becomes the item handle. The item's display rectangle is used for both the destination and view rectangles of the edit record used to display the text; this means that the text will be both wrapped and clipped to this same rectangle.

Sometimes the text of an item can't be completely defined ahead of time. For instance, you may want your Find command to display a message such as

Can't find string "Rutabaga"

when it can't find the string the user has asked to search for. A static text item can include as many as four such variable strings, to be substituted in at the time the dialog is displayed. They're represented in the text of the item by the special placeholders ^0, ^1, ^2, and ^3; you specify the actual text to be substituted for the placeholders by calling the Toolbox routine ParamText [7.4.6]. This routine takes four strings as parameters, one for each of the four placeholders. (If you're not using all four, you can just pass null strings for the ones you don't need.) For example, to display the message shown above, you would define a static text item with the text

Can't find string "^0"

and substitute the user's search string into the text by calling

ParamText (searchString, '', '', '')

before displaying the dialog.

Icon and Picture Items

A dialog's item list can include icons (item type IconItem) and Quick-Draw pictures of arbitrary complexity (PicItem). The descriptive information in the item list resource is the resource ID of the icon or picture (resource type 'ICON' [I:5.5.3] or 'PICT' [I:5.5.5]). The Toolbox will read in the designated resource from the resource file and store its handle into the item list in memory as the item handle. When drawn in the dialog box, the icon or picture will be scaled to the display rectangle specified for the item.

The Toolbox provides three standard *alert icons*, shown in Figure 7-4. These are intended to denote alerts of differing levels of severity:



a. Note



b. Caution



c. Stop

Figure 7-4 Standard alert icons

- A *note alert* (Figure 7-4a) merely calls some possibly useful information to the user's attention, such as

Memory space is running low.
Consider splitting your document into smaller pieces.

It doesn't necessarily mean that an actual error has occurred, and implies that it's probably safe to proceed with the original operation.

- A *caution alert* (Figure 7-4b) reports a more serious error or anomaly, or asks the user for additional instructions about how to proceed:

Save changes to file "Term Paper" before quitting?

- A *stop alert* (Figure 7-4c) reports a serious error or problem that makes it impossible to complete the requested operation, or warns the user of potentially dangerous or irrevocable consequences: for example,

Are you sure you want to erase that disk?

The standard alert icons don't have to be included explicitly in an alert's item list. Instead, you can request any of the three icons implicitly by displaying the alert box with one of the Toolbox routines `NoteAlert`, `CautionAlert`, or `StopAlert` instead of just `Alert` [7.4.2]. The icon will always be displayed at a standard position within the alert box, running from local coordinates (10, 20) at the top left to (42, 52) at the bottom right. (If you want to put it somewhere else instead, you can define an explicit item of type `IconItem`, giving one of the constants `NoteIcon`, `CautionIcon`, or `StopIcon` [7.4.2] as the resource ID.)

Control Items

The item type for a control item is formed by adding the constant `CtrlItem` to another constant denoting the specific type of control: `BtnCtrl` for a pushbutton, `ChkCtrl` for a checkbox, or `RadCtrl` for a radio button. For example, the item type for a simple pushbutton is

`CtrlItem + BtnCtrl`

For these three standard button types, the descriptive information in the item list resource is just the text of the button's title. The Toolbox

will automatically create a control of the specified type with that title, using the item's display rectangle as the enclosing rectangle for the control.

For any other type of control, the item type is

`CtrlItem + ResCtrl`

("resource control"), and the additional descriptive information is the resource ID of a control template (resource type 'CNTL' [6.5.1]). The template in turn will include a control definition ID specifying the control type. For both standard and resource controls, the item handle is simply a handle to the control in memory.

An alert or modal dialog box should always include at least one pushbutton for dismissing the dialog from the screen. (A modeless dialog doesn't need such a button, since it's dismissed with the close box like an ordinary window.) Often there will be two or more pushbuttons that dismiss the dialog in different ways: for instance, an OK button to proceed with the original command and a Cancel button to rescind it. In any case, one pushbutton is singled out for special treatment as the *default button*. While the alert or dialog box is visible, the Toolbox will interpret a press of the Return or Enter key as equivalent to a mouse click in the default button. To signal this fact to the user, it will automatically outline the button on the screen with a heavy, black double border, as shown in Figure 7-5.



The default button has a heavy, double border.

Figure 7-5 Default button

For modal dialogs, the first item in the item list (item number 1) is always assumed to be the default button, so you should set up your item list accordingly. For alerts, the alert template can specify either of the first two items as the default button. These first two items are commonly used for an OK and a Cancel button; so commonly, in fact, that the Toolbox defines constants by those names to stand for the item numbers 1 and 2 [7.1.1]. The item number of the default button is kept in the `aDefItem` field of the dialog record [7.1.1].

By convention, the default button should be the “safest” way of dismissing a dialog box—that is, the one that results in the least loss of data. For instance, if you’re asking the user whether to save or discard the contents of a window before closing it, the Save button would be the safest choice and should be the default.

Text Boxes

A dialog box can contain one or more *text boxes* for entering text from the keyboard. Text boxes automatically support selection with the mouse, extended selection with the Shift key, point-and-type insertion or replacement, character deletion with the Backspace key, and (on the Macintosh Plus) automatic horizontal and vertical scrolling when the mouse is dragged outside the text box. If you want, you can also arrange to have them support the standard editing commands Cut, Copy, Paste, and Clear, or their Command-key equivalents: later we’ll see an example of how to do this.

The item type for text boxes is `EditText` (“editable text”). The item list in the resource file gives the text to be used for the initial contents of the text box; in memory, this will be converted into an item handle to the box’s current contents in the heap. You can obtain the item handle with `GetDItem` [7.3.1] and pass it to `GetIText` [7.3.2] to get the box’s contents in Pascal string form, or to `SetIText` [7.3.2] to change the contents. You can also set the box’s selection range with `SetIText` [7.3.2].

A dialog can have any number of text boxes, but only one of them is *current* at any given time. Only the current text box displays an insertion point or selection; all characters typed from the keyboard are directed to that text box. The Toolbox automatically advances from one text box to the next (or from the last back to the first) when the user presses the Tab key. The `editField` field of the dialog record [7.1.1] always identifies the current text box by giving its item number minus 1. The `textH` field holds a handle to the edit record the Toolbox uses to display the box’s contents on the screen; just as for a static text item, the edit record uses the text box’s display rectangle for both wrapping and clipping.

User Items

There’s also a catchall item type named `UserItem`, which you can use to include any kind of object you want as an item in a dialog box. In this case, instead of a handle to the item itself, the item list holds a pointer

to a procedure you supply for drawing the item on the screen. You can use `SetDItem` [7.3.1] to store this procedure pointer into the item list in place of an item handle.

The drawing procedure for a user item should be of the form

```
procedure DrawItem (theWindow : WindowPtr;  
                    itemNumber : INTEGER);
```

where `theWindow` is a pointer to the dialog window and `itemNumber` is the number of the item to be drawn (that is, its index within the window's item list). Everything this procedure draws will be clipped to the item's display rectangle. You can safely assume that the given dialog window (`theWindow`) will already be the current port at the time the procedure is called.

Error Sounds and Staged Alerts

In addition to displaying an alert box on the screen, an alert (but not a modal or modeless dialog) can also emit sounds from the Macintosh speaker. There can be as many as four different *error sounds* available for use with alerts, identified by *sound numbers* from 0 to 3. The standard sound built into the Toolbox for each sound number is just the corresponding number of short beeps, from none to three. If you want, you can replace these with any other sounds you like by writing your own *sound procedure* and installing it with `ErrorSound` [7.5.1]. See Volume Three for details on how to produce sounds through the speaker.

Another special property of alerts is that they can be *staged* to behave differently each time they occur. For instance, the first time the user attempts some questionable action you might just want to beep once without displaying an alert box; the second time, beep twice and display an alert box with a suitable error message, and with the Cancel button outlined as the recommended (default) action; beginning with the third time, don't beep at all and make OK the default button, on the assumption that the user is doing it (whatever "it" is) deliberately.

You can define as many as four stages for a given alert: one stage for each of the first three times in a row that the alert occurs, and the last stage for the fourth and all subsequent times. The alert's behavior at each stage is defined by a *stage list* in the alert template [7.1.3], which consists of four 4-bit fields packed into a single memory word. For each stage, the stage list tells the Toolbox whether to display an

alert box, which button to treat as the default, and how many times to beep (or more precisely, which of the four currently defined error sounds to emit). If you don't need four distinct stages, you can define some or all of them to behave the same way.

For reasons best known to Apple's programmers, the fields of the stage list are stored backwards: the last field defines stage 1 of the alert and the first defines stage 4.

If you need to, you can find out what stage an alert is currently up to with the Toolbox function `GetAlertStage`, or reset the alert back to stage 1 with `ResetAlertStage` [7.5.2]. Both of these routines apply implicitly to the last alert that was displayed on the screen; all other alerts are, of course, at stage 1 by definition. `GetAlertStage` returns an integer from 0 to 3 that's *one less than* the stage at which the last alert occurred.

In assembly language, you can find the resource ID and stage of the last alert in the system globals `ANumber` and `ACount`, respectively. To reset the alert to stage 1, store `-1` into `ACount`.

Using Alerts

Alerts are the simplest form of dialog to use, because they require no active intervention on your part. An alert normally consists of nothing but static items (text, icons, pictures) and simple pushbuttons for dismissing the alert. (Other interactive items, such as checkboxes, radio buttons, and text boxes, are meaningful only in modal and modeless dialogs.) When you display an alert, you relinquish control to the Toolbox and don't get it back until after the alert has been dismissed; there's no opportunity to interact directly with the user while the alert is on the screen. The only information you get about the user's actions is after the fact: the item number of the pushbutton that was clicked to dismiss the alert.

Actually, you can arrange for any item to dismiss the alert when clicked, not just pushbuttons. Every item, regardless of type, can be either *enabled* or *disabled*; the alert will be dismissed when the user clicks the mouse in an enabled item. An item is always assumed to be enabled unless you specify otherwise by adding the constant `ItemDisable` [7.1.2] to its item type when you create it. Ordinarily you'll want to disable all static items, so that mouse clicks in them will be ignored; but you can leave them enabled if you want the alert box to disappear when they're clicked.

The basic Toolbox routine for putting up an alert box on the screen is `Alert` [7.4.2]. The alternate routines `NoteAlert`, `CautionAlert`, and `StopAlert` work exactly the same way; the only difference is that they automatically include one of the standard icons of Figure 7-4 in the alert box when they display it on the screen. In each case, you supply the resource ID of an alert template, along with an optional *filter function* that we'll be discussing later. (For now, we can assume that you just pass `NIL` for the filter parameter.)

The `Alert` routine retains control and monitors the user's actions for as long as the alert remains on the screen. It ignores mouse presses in disabled items, or those that don't fall within any item's display rectangle. (If the mouse is pressed outside the alert box entirely, `Alert` will emit error sound number 1, normally a single beep.) When the user finally presses the mouse in an enabled item, `Alert` will remove the alert box from the screen, dispose of it, and return as its function result the item number of the item that was clicked.

In the case of a control item such as a pushbutton, `Alert` first calls the Toolbox routine `TrackControl` [6.4.2] to track the mouse until it's released. `Alert` will dismiss the alert box and return the control's item number only if the mouse is released inside the same control it was originally pressed in; otherwise it will treat the mouse press as if it were in a disabled item and just ignore it. Notice that disabling a control item isn't the same as deactivating it with `HiliteControl` [6.3.3]. An inactive control doesn't respond to the mouse at all; one that's active but disabled responds to the mouse but doesn't dismiss the alert box.

Program 7-1 (DoAbout) illustrates the straightforward use of an alert box. This routine is called from the `MiniEdit` routine `DoAppleChoice` (Program 4-6) when the user chooses the About `MiniEdit...` item from the Apple menu. All it does is display the alert shown in Figure 7-6 and



Figure 7-6 About alert

```

{ Global declaration }

const
    AboutID = 1000;                                {Resource ID for About alert}

procedure DoAbout;

    { Handle About MiniEdit... command. }

    var
        ignore : INTEGER;                            {Item number for About alert}

    begin {DoAbout}

        ignore := Alert (AboutID, NIL)              {Post alert [7.4.2]}

    end; {DoAbout}

```

Program 7-1 Handle About MiniEdit... command

return when the user dismisses the alert. Since there's only one enabled item (the OK button), the item number returned by the Toolbox Alert routine doesn't convey any useful information in this case, so DoAbout just ignores it.

A more interesting example arises when the user attempts to close a "dirty" window (one containing changes that haven't yet been saved to the disk). When this happens, our CloseAppWindow routine

displays the alert shown in Figure 7-7, offering the user three choices:

- Save the window's contents before closing.
- Discard the contents; just close the window.
- Cancel the operation; don't close the window.

Recall that `CloseAppWindow` is called by `DoClose` (Program 3-3), which in turn can be called by way of `DoFileChoice` (Program 4-8) when the user chooses the Close command from the File menu, via `DoGoAway` (Program 3-10) when the mouse is clicked in a window's close box, or via `DoEvent` (Program 2-5) after the user chooses the Quit command or types Command-Q. In our earlier discussion of `CloseAppWindow` in Chapter 3, we glossed over a few steps that we weren't yet ready to discuss; now we're in a position to look at the complete version of the routine (Program 7-2).

The first thing we have to do in `CloseAppWindow` (after getting the active window's data record and locking it down in the heap) is check

```
{ Global variables }
```

```
var
  TheWindow : WindowPtr;           {Pointer to currently active window [3.1.1]}
  TheEvent   : EventRecord;        {Current event [2.1.1]}
  ErrorFlag  : BOOLEAN;            {I/O error flag}
  Quitting   : BOOLEAN;            {Quit command in effect?}
```

```
procedure CloseAppWindow;
```

```
{ Close application window. }
```

```
const
  saveID = 1001;                   {Resource ID for Save alert}

  saveItem   = 1;                  {Item number for Save button}
  discardItem = 2;                 {Item number for Discard button}
  cancelItem = 3;                  {Item number for Cancel button}
```

```
var
  theData    : WDHandle;           {Handle to window's data record [Prog. 5-1]}
  dataHandle : Handle;             {Untyped handle for destroying data record [1:3.1.1]}
  theTitle   : Str255;             {Title of window [1:2.1.1]}
  theItem    : INTEGER;            {Item number for Save alert}
  resultCode : OSErr;              {I/O error code [1:3.1.2]}
  thisWindow : WindowPtr;          {Pointer to window being closed [3.1.1]}
```

Program 7-2 Close application window


```

begin (CloseAppWindow)

    dataHandle := Handle(GetWRefCon(TheWindow));    (Get window data [3.2.4])
    HLock (dataHandle);                            (Lock data record [I:3.2.4])

    theData := WDHandle(dataHandle);               (Convert to typed handle [Prog. 5-1])
    with theData^^ do
        begin
            if dirty then                          (Have window contents been changed? [Prog. 5-1])
                begin
                    GetWTitle (TheWindow, theTitle); (Get window title [3.2.4])
                    ParamText (theTitle, '', '', ''); (Substitute into alert text [7.4.6])

                    theItem := CautionAlert (saveID, NIL); (Post alert [7.4.2])
                    case theItem of

                        saveItem:
                            begin
                                DoSave;                (Save window contents to disk [Prog. 8-2])
                                if ErrorFlag then      (Check for I/O error)
                                    begin
                                        HUnlock (dataHandle); (Unlock data record [I:3.2.4])
                                        EXIT (CloseAppWindow) (Exit to main event loop)
                                    end (if)
                                end (if);

                        discardItem:
                            (Do nothing);

                        cancelItem:
                            begin
                                Quitting := FALSE;      (Cancel Quit command, if any)
                                HUnlock (dataHandle);   (Unlock data record [I:3.2.4])
                                EXIT (CloseAppWindow)   (Exit to main event loop)
                            end

                    end (case)

                end (if)
            if fileNumber <> 0 then                    (Is window associated with a file? [Prog. 5-1])
                begin
                    resultCode := FSClose (fileNumber); (Close file [8.2.2])
                    IOCheck (resultCode);              (Check for error [Prog. 8-1])
                    if ErrorFlag then                  (Error detected?)

```

```

begin
    HUnlock (dataHandle);          (Unlock data record [1:3.2.4])
    EXIT (CloseAppWindow)         (Exit to main event loop)
end (if)
end; (if)

TDispose (editRec);               (Dispose of edit record [5.2.2])

TheScrollBar := NIL;              (Clear global handles)
TheText      := NIL;

end; (with)

HUnlock (dataHandle);             (Unlock data record [1:3.2.4])

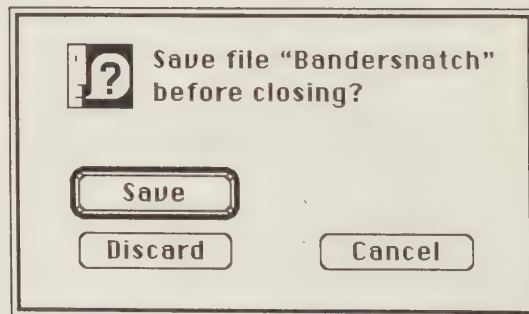
thisWindow := TheWindow;          (Save window pointer (DoActivate will change TheWindow))
HideWindow (TheWindow);           (Force deactivate event [3.3.1])

if GetNextEvent (ActivateEvt, TheEvent) then (Get deactivate event [2.2.1, 2.1.2])
    DoActivate;                    { and handle it [Prog. 5-14] }
if GetNextEvent (ActivateEvt, TheEvent) then (Get activate event [2.2.1, 2.1.2])
    DoActivate;                    { and handle it [Prog. 5-14] }

DisposHandle (dataHandle);         (Dispose of window data record [1:3.2.2])
DisposeWindow (thisWindow)         (Dispose of window [3.2.3])

end; (CloseAppWindow)

```

Program 7-2 (continued)**Figure 7-7** Save alert

whether the window's contents have been changed since the last Save. If the dirty flag in the data record is FALSE, there's no need for an alert; if it's TRUE, we get the window's title and substitute it into the text of the Save alert with ParamText [7.4.6], then call CautionAlert to

display the alert with the standard caution icon. Next we use a **case** statement on the item number we get back, to decide how to proceed depending on which pushbutton the user clicked to dismiss the alert. If it was the Save button, we call the MiniEdit routine DoSave to save the window's contents, just as if the user had chosen Save from the menu. We'll be looking at DoSave in detail when we talk about filing operations in Chapter 8; we'll also discuss the MiniEdit global variable ErrorFlag at that time.

If the alert was dismissed with the Discard button, then the user doesn't want to save the window's contents and there's nothing to do. If the user clicked the Cancel button, we take an immediate exit from CloseAppWindow back to our program's main event loop. (In case the window is being closed as part of a Quit sequence, we also take the additional precaution of clearing the global Quitting flag, discussed earlier in Chapter 2, to cancel the Quit command.)

Assuming we've gotten through the **case** statement without heading for the exit, the next step is to close the disk file associated with the window, if there is one. (The Toolbox routine for this purpose, FSClose, will be covered in the next chapter, as well as the MiniEdit routine IOCheck, which checks for errors during an input/output operation.) Finally, we dispose of the window's edit record with TEDispose [5.2.2] and clear MiniEdit's global handles TheScrollBar and TheText to NIL. The rest of the CloseAppWindow routine has already been discussed in Chapter 3.

Using Modal Dialogs

Modal dialogs are a bit more complicated to use than alerts, because they call for intervention by your program while the dialog box is still on the screen. For one thing, you have to create the dialog for yourself with NewDialog or GetNewDialog and put it up on the screen with ShowWindow [3.1.1], instead of letting the Toolbox do it all for you as it does with the Alert routine. Once the dialog is on the screen, you repeatedly call the Toolbox routine ModalDialog [7.4.3] to handle the user's mouse and keyboard actions.

Like Alert, ModalDialog intercepts all user events in a dialog box and reports back to you by item number those that involve an enabled item. However, it doesn't automatically dismiss the dialog when the user clicks an enabled item; it leaves it on the screen to allow further interaction. It's up to you to decide, depending on the item number you receive, whether to dismiss the dialog with HideWindow [3.3.1] or leave it up and call ModalDialog again to continue processing events.

Also like `Alert`, `ModalDialog` ignores mouse presses in a disabled item, as well as those that aren't in any item at all. It responds with a single beep (or whatever is currently defined as sound number 1) if the mouse is pressed outside the dialog box entirely. Only those mouse events that involve an enabled item are reported back to you.

`ModalDialog` automatically handles all window events (activate, deactivate, and update) directed to the dialog window. When the mouse is pressed in a control, it calls `TrackControl` [6.4.2] to track the mouse, and reports the event to you only if the mouse is released inside the same control. Since the dialog box doesn't go away when an enabled item is clicked, its controls aren't limited to simple pushbuttons that cause an immediate action, like those of an alert: a modal dialog can include checkboxes, radio buttons, and even adjustable dials such as scroll bars if they make sense. Of course, on receiving back the item number of such a control, it's up to you to do whatever is appropriate in response, such as turning a checkbox on or off or turning off one radio button when another is clicked.

If the dialog includes editable text boxes, `ModalDialog` will also take care of all mouse selection and keyboard type-in for you. It passes all mouse presses in a text box to the `TextEdit` routine `TEClick` [5.4.1], to track the mouse and perform standard text selection. This includes double-click word selection and extended selection with the Shift key; on the Macintosh Plus, it also includes automatic horizontal and vertical scrolling when the mouse is dragged outside the text box. Characters typed from the keyboard are inserted into the current text box with `TEKey` [5.5.1], which also handles character deletion with the Backspace key. When the user presses the Tab key, `ModalDialog` automatically advances to the next text box and selects its entire contents, so that they can be replaced simply by typing from the keyboard.

However, `ModalDialog` does *not* handle Command-key combinations automatically; it just ignores the Command key and treats them as ordinary characters. If you want to interpret such combinations as commands, you have to do it yourself with a filter function; we'll see how in a minute.

If a text box is enabled, `ModalDialog` will report its item number back to you after every mouse press or typed character directed to it. Normally, though, there's nothing more you need to do, since the

standard point-and-type selection and editing conventions will already have been taken care of. All you really care about are the final contents of the text box, which you can get with `GetText` [7.3.2] after the dialog is finally dismissed. So you'll usually want to disable all your text boxes by giving them an item type of

```
EditText + ItemDisable
```

`ModalDialog` will still handle events in the text box as described; it just won't bother to tell you about them.

Using Modeless Dialogs

Modeless dialogs require even more active intervention on your part than modal ones. This is because a modeless dialog can coexist with other active windows on the screen. Events outside the dialog box aren't ignored, as they are when an alert or a modal dialog is active; so you can't just rely on a Toolbox routine like `Alert` or `ModalDialog` to intercept and handle all events for you until the dialog is dismissed. Instead you just carry on with your normal event processing, but pick out those events directed to the dialog and pass them through to the Toolbox to handle.

The Toolbox routine `IsDialogEvent` [7.4.4] helps you decide which events are dialog-related. It accepts an event record as a parameter and returns `TRUE` if the event pertains to a dialog window, `FALSE` if it doesn't. Whenever there's a modeless dialog box on the screen (even when it isn't the frontmost window), you should pass each event you receive from `GetNextEvent` [2.2.1] to `IsDialogEvent`. If the result you get back is `FALSE`, then the event is your responsibility to handle; if the result is `TRUE`, then the event is directed to a dialog box and you should pass it to the Toolbox routine `DialogSelect` for processing.

`DialogSelect` [7.4.4] handles a single dialog-related event. You pass it an event record and it responds to the event in exactly the same way `ModalDialog` would. That is, it activates, deactivates, and updates dialog windows, tracks the mouse in controls and text boxes with `TrackControl` or `TEClick`, and inserts typed characters into the current text box with `TEKey`. But whereas `ModalDialog` calls `GetNextEvent` for itself, `DialogSelect` expects *you* to get the event and pass it in as a parameter. And whereas `ModalDialog` will continue to get and process events until it gets one for an enabled dialog item, `DialogSelect` always handles just one single event; it returns a Boolean result to let you know if an enabled item was involved. In other words, if `ModalDialog` would have

notified you of the event, `DialogSelect` returns `TRUE`; if `ModalDialog` would have suppressed the event and kept on processing, `DialogSelect` returns `FALSE`. When it does return `TRUE`, it identifies the item affected by passing back a dialog pointer and an item number as variable parameters. You can then respond with whatever action the item calls for, which may or may not include dismissing the dialog box from the screen.

Filter Functions

Both `Alert` and `ModalDialog` accept a pointer to an optional *filter function* [7.4.5] as a parameter. As the Toolbox routine gets and processes events, it will pass each event to the filter function before responding to it. This gives you a chance to intercept the event and handle it your own way, or to modify its meaning before it's acted upon by the Toolbox.

If you supply a filter function, it should be of the form

```
function Filter (theDialog      : DialogPtr;  
                var theEvent    : EventRecord;  
                var itemNumber : INTEGER)  
                : BOOLEAN;
```

The Toolbox will pass you a dialog pointer and an event record. You can either handle the event yourself, leave it alone for the Toolbox to handle, or change it into some other event. (Notice that `theEvent` is declared as a variable parameter, so that you can modify the fields of the event record and send it back to the Toolbox for processing in altered form.) A function result of `FALSE` tells the Toolbox to go ahead and process the event in the normal way; `TRUE` tells it to report the event as if it were a mouse click in the item identified by variable parameter `itemNumber`. The standard Toolbox filter function (which you get if you pass `NIL` for the filter parameter to `Alert` or `ModalDialog`) uses this feature to convert a press of the Return or Enter key into a click of the dialog's default button.

Program 7-3 shows an example of a filter function to provide the standard cut-and-paste editing operations as Command-key combinations in a dialog text box. First we check the event type to see if it's a key-down event; if not, we simply return `FALSE` from the filter function to let the Toolbox handle the event in the normal way. For key-down events, we get the key code, character code, and Command bit

```

function EditFilter (theDialog      : DialogPtr;      (Pointer to dialog)
                    var theEvent    : EventRecord;    (Event to be processed)
                    var itemNumber : INTEGER;         (Item number to report)
                    : BOOLEAN;         (Bypass normal event processing?)

{ Filter function to allow Command-key aliases for standard editing operations. }

const
    returnCode = $24;                (Key code for Return key)
    enterCode  = $34;                (Key code for Enter key)
    cancelCode = $32;                (Key code for Cancel (tilde) key)

var
    keyCode : INTEGER;                (Key code)
    chCode  : INTEGER;                (Character code)
    ch      : CHAR;                  (Character that was typed)
    cmdDown : BOOLEAN;                (Command key down?)

begin (EditFilter)

    with theEvent do

        if what (<) keyDown then      (Was it a key-down event? [2.1.2])
            EditFilter := FALSE        (Not a keystroke, handle as a normal event)

        else
            begin

                EditFilter := TRUE;      (Initialize function result to bypass normal processing)

                keyCode := BitAnd (message, KeyCodeMask);    (Get key code from event message [1:2.2.2, 2.1.4])
                keyCode := BitShift (-8, keyCode);           (Shift to low-order byte [1:2.2.2])

                chCode := BitAnd (message, CharCodeMask);    (Get character code [1:2.2.2, 2.1.4])
                ch      := CHR(chCode);                      (Convert to a character)

                cmdDown := (BitAnd (modifiers, CmdKey) <> 0); (Command key down? [2.1.5])

                if keyCode in [returnCode, enterCode] then (Return or Enter key?)
                    itemNumber := OK                        (Masquerade as OK button [7.1.1])

                else if keyCode = cancelCode then          (Tilde key?)
                    itemNumber := Cancel                    (Masquerade as Cancel button [7.1.1])

                else if not cmdDown then                    (Command key down?)
                    EditFilter := FALSE                    (Ordinary keystroke, handle as a normal event)
            end
        end
    end
end

```

Program 7-3 Filter function for keyboard editing

```

else
  begin
    itemNumber := theDialog^.editField + 1; {Return item number of current text box [7.1.1]}

    case ch of
      'X':
        DlgCut (theDialog);           {Command-X means Cut [7.4.7]}
      'C':
        DlgCopy (theDialog);          {Command-C means Copy [7.4.7]}
      'V':
        DlgPaste (theDialog);         {Command-V means Paste [7.4.7]}
      'B':
        DlgDelete (theDialog);        {Command-B means Clear [7.4.7]}

      {Other Command-key equivalents, if any}

    otherwise
      {Do nothing}                    {Ignore meaningless Command combinations}

    end {case}

  end {else}

end {else}

end; {EditFilter}

```

Program 7-3 (continued)

from the event record and start checking for keystrokes that require special handling.

Like the standard filter function, we want to translate the Return or Enter key into a click of the dialog's default button. We do this by returning a function result of TRUE along with the item number OK, denoting the first item in the dialog's item list. (Recall that in a modal dialog the default button is always item number 1.) As an added feature, we'll also interpret the tilde key (top-left on the keyboard) as an alias for the dialog's Cancel button. Notice that these tests are based on the event's key code rather than its character code; this makes them depend only on the key's physical position on the keyboard, regardless of what character it may represent under the current keyboard configuration.

If the keystroke wasn't an alias for the OK or Cancel button, we next check for a Command-key combination. If the Command key wasn't down, then the event is an ordinary keystroke and we again pass it through with a FALSE function result to be handled normally. For Command combinations, we'll return TRUE along with the item number of the current text box, which we get from the dialog record; if the text box is an enabled item, `ModalDialog` will in turn report this item number back to the calling program.

We can now proceed to check for the standard editing commands and respond to them with the Toolbox calls `DlgCut`, `DlgCopy`, `DlgPaste`, and `DlgDelete` [7.4.7]. Each of these performs the corresponding editing operation on a dialog's current text box. At this point we can also check for any other Command combinations we might want to add. For unrecognizable combinations, we just report back the item number of the text box and otherwise ignore the event.

Another important use of filter functions is for mouse tracking in interactive dials or nonstandard (user) items. Your filter function can intercept mouse events in these items and do whatever is needed in response, such as redrawing the dial's indicator to follow the mouse or performing some continuous action while the mouse button is held down. You can also use a filter function to check for and respond to disk-inserted events while a dialog box is active. (The `Alert` and `ModalDialog` routines mask out disk events in their `GetNextEvent` calls, so it's up to you to detect and handle them if your application requires it.)

You may have noticed that although `Alert` and `ModalDialog` accept a filter function parameter, the Toolbox routine for modeless dialogs, `DialogSelect`, doesn't. This is because in a modeless dialog you yourself request the events from `GetNextEvent` and feed them one by one to `DialogSelect`. If there's any filtering to be done, you can do it yourself instead of supplying a filter function for the Toolbox to do it with.

Nuts and Bolts

If you want, you can change the typeface used in dialogs and alerts with the Toolbox routine `SetDAFont` [7.5.1]. (Ordinarily the system font is used.) The typeface you specify will be used from that time on for

all static text items and editable text boxes in dialogs and alerts. Control titles, however, are always displayed in the system font and are unaffected by SetDAFont.

One problem that can sometimes arise is that a dialog's resources are inaccessible when they're needed because the disk they're on has been ejected from the disk drive. When this happens, the Toolbox will automatically eject the disk that's currently in the drive and put up an alert of its own asking the user to insert the disk it needs. You can minimize this problem by using the Toolbox routines `CouldDialog` and `CouldAlert` [7.5.3] before beginning any operation that may involve disk swapping. You give the resource ID of a dialog or alert that you know might occur during the swapping operation; all resources associated with that dialog or alert will be read into the heap and made un purgeable, so that they're guaranteed to be available if needed. When the operation is finished and the disk containing the resources is back in the drive, you can call `FreeDialog` or `FreeAlert` [7.5.3] to reclaim the heap space occupied by the resources.

REFERENCE

7.1 Internal Representation of Dialogs

7.1.1 Dialog Records



Definitions

type

```
DialogPtr    = WindowPtr;           {For treating as a window}
DialogPeek   = ^DialogRecord;       {For accessing dialog-specific fields}

DialogRecord = record
    window    : WindowRecord;        {Dialog window}
    items     : Handle;               {Handle to item list}
    textH     : TEHandle;             {Handle to edit record for current text box}
    editField : INTEGER;              {Item number of current text box minus 1}
    editOpen  : INTEGER;              {Private}
    aDefItem  : INTEGER               {Item number of default button}
end;
```

const

```
OK      = 1;           {Item number of OK button}
Cancel  = 2;           {Item number of Cancel button}
```



Notes

1. window is a complete window record (not just a pointer) embedded within the dialog record. Use a `DialogPtr` to refer to the dialog as a window or as a graphics port (to draw into it with `QuickDraw`); use a `DialogPeek` to refer to it specifically as a dialog (to access the fields of the dialog record).
2. A dialog window's class (field `windowKind` of the window record [3.1.1]) is `DialogKind`.
3. `items` is a handle to the dialog's item list in memory. This is the Toolbox's own private copy of the item list; its structure differs somewhat from that of the item list resource [7.6.3] supplied when the dialog was created.
4. Use `SetDItem` and `GetDItem` [7.3.1], `SetIText` and `GetIText` [7.3.2] to access the contents of the item list, rather than accessing it directly through the item list handle.
5. If the dialog includes any editable text boxes, `editField` is one less than the item number of the current text box, and `textH` is a handle to the text box's edit record. `editOpen` is used privately by the Toolbox and is of no concern to the application.
6. If the dialog has no text boxes, `editField` is -1 and `textH` is undefined.
7. `aDefaultItem` is the item number of the dialog's *default button*. Pressing the Return or Enter key will (normally) be considered equivalent to clicking the mouse in this button.
8. The default button is boldly outlined on the screen. The outline is 3 pixels thick and extends 4 pixels beyond the button's display rectangle in each direction.
9. For modal dialogs, the default button is always the OK button (item number 1); for alerts, it can be either OK (1) or Cancel (2). Modeless dialogs have no default button.



Assembly Language Information

Field offsets in a dialog record:

(Pascal) Field name	(Assembly) Offset name	Offset in bytes
window	dWindow	0
items	items	156
textH	teHandle	160
editField	editField	164
editOpen	editOpen	166
aDefItem	aDefItem	168

Assembly-language constants:

Name	Value	Meaning
DWindLen	170	Length of dialog record in bytes
OKButton	1	Item number of OK button
CancelButton	2	Item number of Cancel button

7.1.2 Item Types



Definitions

const

UserItem	= 0;	{Application-defined item}
CtrlItem	= 4;	{Control}
BtnCtrl	= 0;	{Pushbutton}
ChkCtrl	= 1;	{Checkbox}
RadCtrl	= 2;	{Radio button}
ResCtrl	= 3;	{Other, defined by control template resource}
StatText	= 8;	{Static text}
EditText	= 16;	{Editable text box}
IconItem	= 32;	{Icon}
PicItem	= 64;	{Picture}
ItemDisable	= 128;	{Item is disabled}



Notes

1. The item type for a control item is formed by adding together the constant `CtrlItem` and a second constant (`BtnCtrl`, `ChkCtrl`, `RadCtrl`, or `ResCtrl`) for the specific control type.
2. Static text items and editable text boxes are limited to a maximum length of 241 characters.
3. A user item is defined by a drawing procedure of the form

```

procedure DrawUserItem
    (theDialog   : DialogPtr;
     itemNumber  : INTEGER);
  
```

to draw the item within its dialog window.

4. The constant `ItemDisable` added to any item type specifies that the item is *disabled*; without this constant, the item is *enabled*. This affects the reporting of events involving the item by the alert routines [7.4.2], `ModalDialog` [7.4.3], and `DialogSelect` [7.4.4].



Assembly Language Information

Item types:

Name	Value	Meaning
UserItem	0	Application-defined item
CtrlItem	4	Control
BtnCtrl	0	Pushbutton
ChkCtrl	1	Checkbox
RadCtrl	2	Radio button
ResCtrl	3	Other control
StatText	8	Static text
EditText	16	Editable text box
IconItem	32	Icon
PicItem	64	Picture
ItemDisable	128	Item is disabled

7.1.3 Alert Templates



Definitions

type

AlertTHndle = ^AlertTPtr;
AlertTPtr = ^AlertTemplate;

AlertTemplate = record

boundsRect : Rect;	{Alert window's port rectangle}
	{ in screen coordinates }
itemsID : INTEGER;	{Resource ID of item list}
stages : StageList	{Stage list}

end;

StageList = packed record

boldItm4 : 0..1;	{Stage 4: item number of default button minus 1}
boxDrwn4 : BOOLEAN;	{Stage 4: draw alert box on screen?}
sound4 : 0..3;	{Stage 4: sound number to emit}
boldItm3 : 0..1;	{Stage 3: item number of default button minus 1}
boxDrwn3 : BOOLEAN;	{Stage 3: draw alert box on screen?}
sound3 : 0..3;	{Stage 3: sound number to emit}
boldItm2 : 0..1;	{Stage 2: item number of default button minus 1}
boxDrwn2 : BOOLEAN;	{Stage 2: draw alert box on screen?}
sound2 : 0..3;	{Stage 2: sound number to emit}
boldItm1 : 0..1;	{Stage 1: item number of default button minus 1}
boxDrwn1 : BOOLEAN;	{Stage 1: draw alert box on screen?}
sound1 : 0..3	{Stage 1: sound number to emit}

end;



Notes

1. AlertTemplate represents the structure of an alert template, as stored in a resource file under resource type 'ALRT' [7.6.1].
2. boundsRect defines the alert window's port rectangle, in global (screen) coordinates.
3. boundsRect should have a top coordinate of at least 25, to allow for the height of the menu bar and the border of the alert box itself.

4. `itemsID` is the resource ID of the alert's item list, resource type 'DITL' [7.6.3].
5. `stages` is a *stage list* defining the behavior of the alert at each of four consecutive stages.
6. The stage list identifies the default button at each stage of the alert (for example, `boldItm1` for the first stage), the sound to be emitted (`sound1`), and whether the alert box is to be drawn on the screen at that stage (`boxDrwn1`).
7. The value given for the default button is *one less than* the button's actual item number.
8. Stages 1 to 3 apply to the first three consecutive occurrences of the same alert; stage 4 applies to the fourth and all subsequent occurrences.
9. Notice that the stage list specifies the stages in *reverse order*, from stage 4 down to stage 1.
10. The assembly-language constants `VolBits`, `AlBit`, and `OKDismissal` (below) are masks for extracting the various subfields within a single 4-bit element of the stage list word.



Assembly Language Information

Field offsets in an alert template:

(Pascal) Field name	(Assembly) Offset name	Offset in bytes
<code>boundsRect</code>	<code>aBounds</code>	0
<code>itemsID</code>	<code>altems</code>	8
<code>stages</code>	<code>aStages</code>	10

Masks within a stage list item:

Name	Value	Meaning
<code>VolBits</code>	3	Sound number
<code>AlBit</code>	4	Draw alert box?
<code>OKDismissal</code>	8	Item number of default button

7.1.4 Dialog Templates



Definitions

type

```
DialogTHndle = ^DialogTPtr;
DialogTPtr   = ^DialogTemplate;
```

```
DialogTemplate = record
    boundsRect : Rect;           {Dialog window's port rectangle}
                                {    in screen coordinates    }
    procID      : INTEGER;       {Dialog window's definition ID}
    visible     : BOOLEAN;       {Is dialog window visible?}
    filler1     : BOOLEAN;       {Padding}
    goAwayFlag  : BOOLEAN;       {Does dialog window have a close box?}
    filler2     : BOOLEAN;       {Padding}
    refCon      : LONGINT;       {Dialog window's reference constant}
    itemsID     : INTEGER;       {Resource ID of item list}
    title       : Str255         {Title of dialog window}
end;
```



Notes

1. DialogTemplate represents the structure of a dialog template, as stored in a resource file under resource type 'DLOG' [7.6.2].
2. boundsRect defines the dialog window's port rectangle, in global (screen) coordinates.
3. boundsRect should have a top coordinate of at least 25 for a modal dialog or 40 for a modeless one, to allow for the height of the menu bar and the border or title bar of the dialog window itself.
4. procID is the window type (window definition ID [3.2.2]) of the dialog window.
5. itemsID is the resource ID of the dialog's item list, resource type 'DITL' [7.6.3].
6. All remaining fields of the dialog template (except the "padding" fields filler1 and filler2) contain the same information as the corresponding parameters to NewWindow [3.2.2] or NewDialog [7.2.2].



Assembly Language Information

Field offsets in a dialog template:

(Pascal) Field name	(Assembly) Offset name	Offset in bytes
boundsRect	dBounds	0
procID	dWindProc	8
visible	dVisible	10
goAwayFlag	dGoAway	12
refCon	dRefCon	14
itemsID	dItems	18
title	dTitle	20

7.2 Creating and Destroying Dialogs

7.2.1 Initializing the Toolbox for Dialogs



Definitions

```
procedure InitDialogs
    (resumeProc : ProcPtr);    {Pointer to restart procedure}
```



Notes

1. InitDialogs must be called before any other dialog-related operation, to initialize the Toolbox's internal data structures pertaining to dialogs and alerts.
2. Before calling InitDialogs, you must first call InitGraf [I:4.3.1], InitFonts [I:8.2.4], InitWindows [3.2.1], InitMenus [4.2.1], and TEInit [5.2.1].
3. resumeProc is a pointer to a parameterless procedure that can be used to restart your program after a system error, or NIL if there is no such procedure.
4. A pointer to the restart procedure is kept in the assembly-language global variable ResumeProc.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
InitDialogs	_InitDialogs	\$A97B

Assembly-language global variable:

Name	Address	Meaning
ResumeProc	\$A8C	Pointer to restart procedure

7.2.2 Creating Dialogs



Definitions

function NewDialog

dStorage	: Ptr;	{Storage for dialog record}
windowRect	: Rect;	{Dialog window's port rectangle in screen coordinates}
title	: Str255;	{Title of dialog window}
visible	: BOOLEAN;	{Is dialog window initially visible?}
windowType	: INTEGER;	{Dialog window's definition ID}
behindWindow	: WindowPtr;	{Window in front of this one}
goAwayFlag	: BOOLEAN;	{Does dialog window have a close box?}
refCon	: LONGINT;	{Dialog window's reference constant}
itemList	: Handle)	{Handle to item list}
	: DialogPtr;	{Pointer to new dialog record}

function GetNewDialog

(templateID	: INTEGER;	{Resource ID of dialog template}
dStorage	: Ptr;	{Storage for dialog record}
behindWindow	: WindowPtr)	{Window in front of this one}
	: DialogPtr;	{Pointer to new dialog record}



Notes

1. `NewDialog` and `GetNewDialog` both create a new dialog record, enter it in the window list, and return a pointer to it.
2. These routines are for creating modal and modeless dialogs only; alerts are always created implicitly by the alert routines [7.4.2].
3. `NewDialog` takes its initialization information as parameters; `GetNewDialog` gets it from a dialog template in a resource file.
4. Both routines return a `DialogPtr`; to access the fields of the new dialog record, you can convert this pointer to a `DialogPeek` [7.1.1] by typecasting.
5. The new dialog window's class (field `windowKind` of the window record [3.1.1]) is set to `DialogKind`.
6. `NewDialog` accepts a handle to the dialog's item list. The item list is normally taken from a resource file (resource type 'DITL' [7.6.3]); you have to read it in yourself with `GetResource` [1:6.3.1] and pass the resulting handle to `NewDialog`.
7. `GetNewDialog` accepts the resource ID of a dialog template (resource type 'DLOG' [7.6.2]), which in turn contains the resource ID of the item list. In this case the item list will be read in automatically; you needn't call `GetResource` to read it in yourself.
8. After reading the item list from the resource file, `GetNewDialog` makes a *copy* for use in the dialog record. The original item list should be a purgeable resource, so that it can be discarded after the copy is made. `NewDialog` uses the original item list you give it, *not* a copy—so make sure the item list is un purgeable.
9. `dStorage` is a pointer to the storage for the new dialog record; use `CloseDialog` [7.2.3] to destroy the dialog when no longer needed. If `dStorage` = `NIL`, storage will be allocated from the heap; use `DisposDialog` [7.2.3] to destroy.
10. The remaining parameters are identical to those for `NewWindow` and `GetNewWindow` [3.2.2].
11. `windowRect` should have a top coordinate of at least 25 for a modal dialog or 40 for a modeless one, to allow for the height of the menu bar and the border or title bar of the dialog window itself.
12. Modal dialog windows normally have no title bar; pass the empty string for the title parameter.
13. Use window type `DBoxProc`, `PlainDBoxProc`, or `AltDBoxProc` [3.2.2] for a modal dialog, `NoGrowDocProc` for a modeless one.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
NewDialog	__NewDialog	\$A97D
GetNewDialog	__GetNewDialog	\$A97C

7.2.3 Destroying Dialogs



Definitions

```

procedure CloseDialog
    (theDialog : DialogPtr);      {Dialog to destroy}

procedure DisposDialog
    (theDialog : DialogPtr);      {Dialog to destroy}
  
```



Notes

- Both CloseDialog and DisposDialog destroy a dialog and remove it from the screen and the window list.
- If this dialog window covered any others on the screen, they will be updated. If it was the active (frontmost) window, the next-frontmost will be activated. All needed update and activate events are generated automatically.
- DisposDialog frees *all* storage associated with the dialog. Use it if you let the Toolbox allocate the space (dStorage = NIL) when you created the dialog [7.2.2, note 9].
- CloseDialog frees all of the dialog's storage *except* the item list and the dialog record itself. Use it if you allocated your own storage for the dialog record (dStorage ≠ NIL). You must then dispose of the dialog record and item list yourself if they reside in the heap.
- If you're using the dialog window's reference constant (refCon) to hold a handle to auxiliary information about the window [3.2.4, note 4], be

sure to dispose of the auxiliary information before destroying the dialog itself.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
CloseDialog	__CloseDialog	\$A982
DisposDialog	__DisposDialog	\$A983

7.3 Manipulating Items

7.3.1 Access to Items



Definitions

procedure SetDItem

(theDialog	: DialogPtr;	{Pointer to the dialog}
itemNumber	: INTEGER;	{Item number}
itemType	: INTEGER;	{New item type}
itemHandle	: Handle;	{New item handle}
dispRect	: Rect);	{New display rectangle}

procedure GetDItem

(theDialog	: DialogPtr;	{Pointer to the dialog}
itemNumber	: INTEGER;	{Item number}
var itemType	: INTEGER;	{Returns item type}
var itemHandle	: Handle;	{Returns item handle}
var dispRect	: Rect);	{Returns display rectangle}



Notes

1. SetDItem sets the properties of an item in a dialog's item list; GetDItem returns the item's current properties.

2. The item is identified by a pointer to the dialog and an item number within the item list.
3. Use typecasting to convert between the untyped item handle and whatever specific handle type is appropriate. For control items, the item handle is equivalent to a `ControlHandle` [6.1.1]; for picture items, a `PicHandle` [I:5.4.1]; for text items, a `CharsHandle` [5.1.2]. For icon items, it's a handle to the icon in the heap.
4. For an editable text box, the item handle leads to the current contents of the box. Pass this handle to `GetText` or `SetText` [7.3.2] to get or change the item's text; don't attempt to change the text directly with `SetDItem`.
5. For user items, the "item handle" is actually a *pointer* (not a handle) to the item's drawing procedure [7.1.2, note 3].
6. `SetDItem` doesn't redraw the item on the screen after changing its properties.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
<code>SetDItem</code>	<code>__SetDItem</code>	<code>\$A98E</code>
<code>GetDItem</code>	<code>__GetDItem</code>	<code>\$A98D</code>

7.3.2 Text of an Item



Definitions

```

procedure SetIText
    (itemHandle : Handle;      {Handle to text item}
     theText    : Str255);    {New text}

procedure GetIText
    (itemHandle : Handle;      {Handle to text item}
     var theText : Str255);    {Returns current text}

procedure SelIText
    (theDialog  : DialogPtr;    {Pointer to the dialog}
     itemNumber : INTEGER;      {Item number}
     selStart   : INTEGER;      {Start of selection (character position)}
     selEnd     : INTEGER);     {End of selection (character position)}
  
```



Notes

1. SetIText sets the text of a text item; GetIText returns the item's current text.
2. The item is identified by a handle, obtained from GetDItem [7.3.1]. It may be either static text or an editable text box.
3. Text items are limited to a maximum length of 241 characters.
4. SelIText sets the selection range in an editable text box. The previous selection is unhighlighted on the screen and the new one is highlighted.
5. The text box is identified by a pointer to the dialog and an item number within the item list.
6. selStart and selEnd are character positions (points between characters, not the characters themselves) designating the beginning and end of the new selection range.
7. selStart and selEnd have the same meanings as for TETSetSelect [5.4.2]. In particular, if they're equal, they designate an insertion point represented by a blinking vertical bar at the given character position.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
SetlText	__SetlText	\$A98F
GetlText	__GetlText	\$A990
SellText	__SellText	\$A97E

7.3.3 Showing and Hiding Items



Definitions

```

procedure HideDItem
    (theDialog : DialogPtr;    {Pointer to the dialog}
     itemNumber : INTEGER);    {Number of item to hide}

procedure ShowDItem
    (theDialog : DialogPtr;    {Pointer to the dialog}
     itemNumber : INTEGER);    {Number of item to show}
  
```



Notes

1. HideDItem makes a dialog item invisible; ShowDItem makes it visible.
2. The item is identified by a pointer to the dialog and an item number within the item list.
3. An item is hidden by adding a large number (16384) to the left and right coordinates of its display rectangle, moving it outside the visible region of the dialog window; to show it again, the same value is subtracted from its left and right coordinates, restoring it to its original position within the visible region.
4. HideDItem erases the item by filling its previous display rectangle with the dialog window's background pattern.
5. Both routines add the rectangle containing the item to the dialog win-

dow's update region, causing the item to be erased or redrawn on the screen.

6. If the item being hidden is the currently active text box, it is deactivated with TEDeactivate [5.4.3] and the next visible text box (if any) in the dialog's item list becomes current.
7. If the item being shown is a text box and no other text box is currently visible, it is activated with TEOActivate [5.4.3] and becomes the current text box.
8. Hiding an already invisible item or showing an already visible one has no effect.
9. These routines are available only on the Macintosh Plus.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
HideDItem	<code>_HideDItem</code>	\$A827
ShowDItem	<code>_ShowDItem</code>	\$A828

7.3.4 Locating Mouse Clicks



Definitions

function	FindDItem	
	(theDialog : DialogPtr;	{Pointer to the dialog}
	mousePoint : INTEGER)	{Mouse position in window coordinates}
	: INTEGER;	{Item number of item containing mouse}



Notes

1. FindDItem finds which of a dialog's items (if any) contains a given point, normally the current mouse position.

2. mousePoint should give the position of the mouse in *local (window) coordinates*. This is the form in which the point is reported by the Toolbox routine GetMouse [2.4.1].
3. The function result is the item number of the first item in the dialog's item list whose enclosing rectangle contains the given point.
4. The search is not limited to enabled items; disabled ones may be reported as well.
5. If the point isn't in the display rectangle of any dialog item, the function result is -1.
6. This routine is useful for changing the appearance of the cursor when it's in a particular dialog item (for instance, to an I-beam [2.5.2] in an editable text box).
7. This routine is available only on the Macintosh Plus.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
FindDItem	__FindDItem	\$A984

7.4 Using Alerts and Dialogs

7.4.1 Static Display



Definitions

```

procedure DrawDialog
    (theDialog : DialogPtr);      {Dialog to be drawn}

procedure UpdtDialog
    (theDialog : DialogPtr;      {Pointer to the dialog}
     inRegion : RgnHandle);     {Region to be updated}
  
```



Notes

1. DrawDialog draws the contents of a dialog window on the screen. Its main use is in responding to an update event for the window.
2. Only the window's contents are drawn, not its frame. The Toolbox will already have drawn the frame by the time the update event is processed.
3. UpdtDialog draws all of a dialog window's visible items whose display rectangles intersect with a specified region (normally the window's visible or update region).
4. UpdtDialog is more efficient than DrawDialog, since it skips those items that lie outside the given region. DrawDialog attempts to draw all the items, leaving it to QuickDraw to "clip out" those outside the visible region.
5. It isn't normally necessary to call these routines for yourself, since the alert routines [7.4.2], ModalDialog [7.4.3], and DialogSelect [7.4.4] handle a dialog window's update events automatically.
6. UpdtDialog is available only on the Macintosh Plus.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
DrawDialog	__DrawDialog	\$A981
UpdtDialog	__UpdtDialog	\$A978

7.4.2 Using Alerts



Definitions

function Alert

(alertID : INTEGER;	{Resource ID of alert template}
filter : ProcPtr)	{Pointer to filter function}
: INTEGER;	{Item number that dismissed alert}

function NoteAlert

(alertID : INTEGER;	{Resource ID of alert template}
filter : ProcPtr)	{Pointer to filter function}
: INTEGER;	{Item number that dismissed alert}

function CautionAlert

(alertID : INTEGER;	{Resource ID of alert template}
filter : ProcPtr)	{Pointer to filter function}
: INTEGER;	{Item number that dismissed alert}

function StopAlert

(alertID : INTEGER;	{Resource ID of alert template}
filter : ProcPtr)	{Pointer to filter function}
: INTEGER;	{Item number that dismissed alert}

const

Notelcon	= 1;	{Resource ID of standard Note icon}
CautionIcon	= 2;	{Resource ID of standard Caution icon}
StopIcon	= 0;	{Resource ID of standard Stop icon}



a. Note



b. Caution



c. Stop

Standard alert icons



Notes

1. These routines display an alert box on the screen and handle all user activity until it's dismissed.
2. alertID is the resource ID of an alert template (resource type 'ALRT' [7.6.1]).

3. An alert box should normally contain only static items (item types `StatText`, `IconItem`, `PicItem` [7.1.2]) and simple pushbuttons (`CtrlItem + BtnCtrl`). Other interactive items (checkboxes, radio buttons, text boxes) are intended for use in modal and modeless dialogs only.
4. Alert displays the alert box exactly as defined; `NoteAlert`, `CautionAlert`, and `StopAlert` display it with one of the three standard icons added (see figure).
5. The standard icons appear within the alert window in a display rectangle 32 pixels wide by 32 high, with its top-left corner at coordinates (10, 20).
6. If you wish, you can override the standard icons by including 'ICON' resources [I:5.5.3] in your own application resource file under the same resource IDs.
7. After displaying the alert box on the screen, each alert routine gets and processes all events until the user clicks the mouse in an enabled item. It then removes the box from the screen, disposes of it, and returns the corresponding item number as its function result.
8. Mouse clicks in a disabled item, or in no item at all, are ignored.
9. Mouse clicks outside the alert box produce error sound number 1 [7.5.1], normally a single beep or a flash of the menu bar.
10. If the mouse is pressed in an enabled control item, `TrackControl` [6.4.2] is called to track its movements until it's released. If the mouse is released inside the same control, the alert routine dismisses the alert and returns the control's item number; if it's released outside the original control, the event is ignored.
11. All keyboard events are ignored.
12. Disk-inserted events are masked out. If you want to respond to them while the alert is on the screen, you have to check for them yourself in your filter function (see notes 15–17, below).
13. The alert routines take care of calling `SystemTask` [2.7.2] periodically to perform any needed tasks associated with active desk accessories.
14. If the alert's stage list specifies that the alert box is not to be drawn on the screen at the current stage, the alert routines simply emit the error sound called for in the stage list and return an item number of `-1`.
15. `filter` is a pointer to an optional *filter function* [7.4.5]. All events are passed to the filter function for preprocessing before being handled by the alert routines.
16. If the filter function returns `TRUE`, the alert routine immediately dismisses the alert and returns the item number it receives from the filter function. If the filter function returns `FALSE`, the alert routine handles the event in the normal way.
17. A `NIL` value for the filter parameter specifies the standard filter function,

which converts a press of the Return or Enter key into a click of the alert's default button.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
Alert	<code>__Alert</code>	\$A985
NoteAlert	<code>__NoteAlert</code>	\$A987
CautionAlert	<code>__CautionAlert</code>	\$A988
StopAlert	<code>__StopAlert</code>	\$A986

Resource IDs of standard alert icons:

Name	Value	Meaning
Notelcon	1	Note icon
Ctnlcon	2	Caution icon
Stoplcon	0	Stop icon

7.4.3 Using Modal Dialogs



Definitions

```

procedure ModalDialog
    (filter          : ProcPtr;    {Pointer to filter function}
     var itemNumber : INTEGER);    {Returns item number of reported item}
  
```



Notes

1. ModalDialog handles user activity in a modal dialog box.
2. The dialog box must already be on the screen as the frontmost window. Use NewDialog or GetNewDialog [7.2.2] to create it and ShowWindow [3.3.1] to display it before calling ModalDialog.
3. ModalDialog gets and processes all events until the user clicks the mouse in an enabled item or types a character into an enabled text box. It then

returns the corresponding item number in the variable parameter `itemNumber`.

4. The dialog box remains visible on the screen for further interaction with the user.
5. All window events (activate, deactivate, and update) for the dialog box are handled automatically.
6. Mouse clicks in a disabled item, or in no item at all, are ignored.
7. Mouse clicks outside the dialog box produce error sound number 1 [7.5.1], normally a single beep or a flash of the menu bar.
8. If the mouse is pressed in an enabled control item, `TrackControl` [6.4.2] is called to track its movements until it's released. If the mouse is released inside the same control, `ModalDialog` returns the control's item number; if it's released outside the original control, the event is ignored.
9. If the mouse is pressed in a text box, `TEClick` [5.4.1] is called to track its movements and perform text selection. Extended selection with the Shift key and double-click word selection are handled properly, as well as (on the Macintosh Plus) automatic horizontal and vertical scrolling when the mouse is dragged outside the text box. If the text box is enabled, `ModalDialog` returns its item number; otherwise it just goes on to process the next event.
10. If the dialog includes any text boxes, keyboard events are directed to the current text box via `TEKey` [5.5.1]. If the text box is enabled, `ModalDialog` returns its item number; otherwise it just goes on to process the next event. If there are no text boxes, keyboard events are ignored.
11. The Command key is ignored on all keyboard events. If you want to allow Command combinations in a dialog box, you have to recognize and respond to them yourself in your filter function (see notes 14–16, below).
12. Disk-inserted events are masked out. If you want to respond to them while a modal dialog is on the screen, you have to check for them yourself in your filter function.
13. `ModalDialog` takes care of calling `SystemTask` [2.7.2] periodically to perform any needed tasks associated with active desk accessories.
14. `filter` is a pointer to an optional *filter function* [7.4.5]. All events are passed to the filter function for preprocessing before being handled by `ModalDialog`.
15. If the filter function returns `TRUE` for an event, `ModalDialog` immediately returns the item number it receives from the filter function. If the filter function returns `FALSE`, `ModalDialog` handles the event in the normal way.
16. A `NIL` value for the filter parameter specifies the standard filter function, which converts a press of the Return or Enter key into a click of the dialog's default button.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal)	(Assembly)	
Routine name	Trap macro	Trap word
ModalDialog	__ModalDialog	\$A991

7.4.4 Using Modeless Dialogs



Definitions

```

function IsDialogEvent
    (theEvent : EventRecord)           {Event to be handled}
    : BOOLEAN;                        {Is event dialog-related?}

function DialogSelect
    (theEvent      : EventRecord;      {Event to be handled}
     var theDialog  : DialogPtr;        {Returns pointer to dialog affected}
     var itemNumber : INTEGER;         {Returns item number of reported item}
    : BOOLEAN;                        {Response needed?}
  
```



Notes

1. IsDialogEvent tells whether a given event is directed to a dialog window.
2. Call this routine for every event you receive when a modeless dialog box is on the screen (whether active or not). If it returns TRUE, pass the event on to DialogSelect to be processed; if FALSE, handle the event yourself in the normal way.
3. IsDialogEvent returns TRUE for the following types of event:
 - Window events involving a dialog window
 - Mouse presses in an active dialog window's content region
 - All other types of event when a dialog window is active

For all other events it returns FALSE.

4. DialogSelect handles user activity in a modeless dialog box.
5. theEvent should be a dialog-related event (one for which IsDialogEvent returned TRUE); DialogSelect just processes that one event. This differs from

the alert routines [7.4.2] and `ModalDialog` [7.4.3], which get events for themselves and continue to get and process them until they receive one involving an enabled item.

6. The dialog box remains visible on the screen for further interaction with the user.
7. The function result tells whether the event involved an enabled dialog item: `TRUE` if it did, `FALSE` if it didn't.
8. If the function result is `TRUE`, the variable parameters `theDialog` and `itemNumber` identify the item affected by the event. You can then do whatever is needed to respond to that item. If the result is `FALSE`, the values returned in the variable parameters are undefined.
9. For window events (activate, deactivate, and update) involving a dialog window, `DialogSelect` responds to the event as appropriate and returns a result of `FALSE`.
10. For mouse clicks in a disabled item, or in no item at all, `DialogSelect` returns `FALSE`.
11. If the mouse is pressed in an enabled control item, `TrackControl` [6.4.2] is called to track its movements until it's released. If the mouse is released inside the same control, `DialogSelect` returns `TRUE`; if it's released outside the original control, `DialogSelect` returns `FALSE`.
12. If the mouse is pressed in a text box, `TEClick` [5.4.1] is called to track its movements and perform text selection. Extended selection with the Shift key and double-click word selection are handled properly, as well as (on the Macintosh Plus) automatic horizontal and vertical scrolling when the mouse is dragged outside the text box. `DialogSelect` then returns `TRUE` if the text box is enabled, `FALSE` if it's disabled.
13. If the dialog includes any text boxes, keyboard events are directed to the current text box via `TEKey` [5.5.1]. `DialogSelect` then returns `TRUE` if the text box is enabled, `FALSE` if it's disabled (or if there are no text boxes).
14. The Command key is ignored on all keyboard events. If you want to allow Command combinations in a dialog box, you have to recognize and respond to them yourself instead of passing the event to `DialogSelect`.
15. Disk-inserted events are ignored. If you want to respond to them while a modeless dialog box is active, you have to check for them and handle them yourself.
16. Unlike the alert routines and `ModalDialog`, `DialogSelect` doesn't accept a filter function [7.4.5] as a parameter. Any preprocessing that the filter function would have done must be performed directly by your program, before or instead of calling `DialogSelect`.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
IsDialogEvent	_IsDialogEvent	\$A97F
DialogSelect	_DialogSelect	\$A980

7.4.5 Filter Functions



Definitions

```
function YourFilterFunction
    (theDialog : DialogPtr;      {Pointer to dialog affected}
     var theEvent : EventRecord; {Event to be handled}
     var itemNumber : INTEGER)   {Returns item number to report}
    : BOOLEAN;                  {Report item immediately?}
```



Notes

1. The function heading shown above is a model for the filter function you pass to the alert routines [7.4.2] or ModalDialog [7.4.3]. There is no Toolbox routine named YourFilterFunction.
2. The alert and ModalDialog routines pass every event they receive to the filter function before processing it. The filter function can do any of the following:
 - Respond to the event itself
 - Convert it into the equivalent of a mouse click in a specified item
 - Modify it and pass it back for processing
 - Leave it unchanged
3. A function result of TRUE causes the event to be treated as a mouse click in the item identified by variable parameter itemNumber. That is, both the alert routines and ModalDialog will return the given item number as if the mouse had been clicked in that item; the alert routines will also dismiss and dispose of the alert box.
4. A function result of FALSE causes the event to be processed normally.

Since theEvent is a variable parameter, the filter function can modify the fields of the event record before passing it back for processing.

5. The standard filter function, used if you pass NIL for the filter parameter, just converts a press of the Return or Enter key into a click of the alert's or dialog's default button. If you write your own filter function, it should also perform this same conversion.
6. For modal dialogs, the default button is always item number 1 (OK); for alerts, you can get the item number of the default button from the aDefItem field of the dialog record [7.1.1].
7. Since the alert routines and ModalDialog mask out disk-inserted events, your filter function has to check for them itself if you want to respond to them. You can do this by calling GetNextEvent [2.2.1] with a mask parameter of DiskMask [2.1.3].
8. Filter functions are also commonly used for responding to Command-key combinations typed from the keyboard, since the alert routines and ModalDialog ignore the Command key.
9. Another use of filter functions is to track the mouse when it's pressed in a user item (item type UserItem [7.1.2]) or a resource-based control item (CtrlItem + ResCtrl).

7.4.6 Text Substitution



Definitions

```

procedure ParamText
    (subText0 : Str255;    {Text to substitute for '^0'}
     subText1 : Str255;    {Text to substitute for '^1'}
     subText2 : Str255;    {Text to substitute for '^2'}
     subText3 : Str255);   {Text to substitute for '^3'}
  
```



Notes

1. ParamText defines as many as four text strings to be substituted into a dialog's static text items when it's displayed on the screen.
2. The four substitution strings are represented in the actual text of the items by the placeholders ^0, ^1, ^2, and ^3.
3. The four strings passed to ParamText will be substituted into all static text items in all subsequent dialogs and alerts until changed by another

ParamText call. The substitution is performed at the time the dialog is displayed.

4. Handles to the four current substitution strings are kept in consecutive locations in memory beginning at the assembly-language global variable DStrings.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
ParamText	__ParamText	\$A98B

Assembly-language global variable:

Name	Address	Meaning
DStrings	\$AA0	Handles to four text substitution strings

7.4.7 Editing in Text Boxes



Definitions

```

procedure DlgCut
    (theDialog : DialogPtr);    {Pointer to the dialog}

procedure DlgCopy
    (theDialog : DialogPtr);    {Pointer to the dialog}

procedure DlgPaste
    (theDialog : DialogPtr);    {Pointer to the dialog}

procedure DlgDelete
    (theDialog : DialogPtr);    {Pointer to the dialog}
  
```



Notes

1. These routines perform the standard cut-and-paste editing operations in an editable text box.
2. The operations apply to the current selection or insertion point in the dialog's current text box. If the dialog doesn't include any text boxes, nothing happens.
3. These routines are part of the Pascal Toolbox interface, not part of the Toolbox itself. They don't reside in ROM and can't be called from assembly language via the trap mechanism.
4. In assembly language, get the edit record handle for the current text box from the `textH` field of the dialog record [7.1.1] and pass it directly to the Toolbox routines `TECut`, `TECopy`, `TEPaste`, and `TEDelete` [5.5.2, 5.5.3].

7.5 Nuts and Bolts

7.5.1 Text Font and Error Sounds



Definitions

```

procedure SetDAFont
    (fontNumber : INTEGER);    {Font number for dialogs and alerts}

procedure ErrorSound
    (soundProc : ProcPtr);     {Pointer to sound procedure}
  
```



Notes

1. `SetDAFont` sets the typeface for all subsequent dialog and alert boxes displayed on the screen.
2. The typeface is identified by a font number [1:8.2.1].
3. The text is always displayed in a standard type size of 12 points. If a font in that size doesn't exist for the given typeface, a suitable existing size will be scaled.
4. The default typeface for dialog and alert text is the system font (Chicago, font number 0).
5. The typeface setting affects static text and editable text boxes only. Titles of control items are always displayed in the system font.

6. SetDAFont is part of the Pascal Toolbox interface, not part of the Toolbox itself. It doesn't reside in ROM and can't be called from assembly language via the trap mechanism.
7. In assembly language, you can control the font number for dialogs and alerts by storing directly into the global variable DlgFont.
8. ErrorSound sets the sound procedure for use in alerts.
9. The sound procedure should be of the form

```
procedure SoundProc (soundNumber : INTEGER);
```

The argument selects the desired sound with a *sound number* from 0 to 3; the sound procedure emits the corresponding sound. See Volume Three for information on how to emit sounds from the Macintosh speaker.

10. The standard sound procedure simply emits a number of short beeps, from none to three, as specified by the sound number. If the user has set the speaker volume to 0 with the Control Panel desk accessory, the procedure flashes the menu bar instead of beeping the speaker.
11. Passing NIL for the soundProc parameter results in no sound or blinking of the menu bar at all.
12. A pointer to the current sound procedure is kept in the assembly-language global variable DABeeper.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
ErrorSound	__ErrorSound	\$A98C

Assembly-language global variables:

Name	Address	Meaning
DlgFont	\$AFA	Current font number for dialogs and alerts
DABeeper	\$A9C	Pointer to current sound procedure

7.5.2 Alert Stages



Definitions

```
function  GetAlertStage
           : INTEGER;           {Stage of last alert minus 1}

procedure ResetAlertStage;
```



Notes

1. GetAlertStage tells the stage number at which the last alert occurred; ResetAlertStage resets the alert stage so that the next alert will occur at stage 1.
2. The result returned by GetAlertStage is *one less than* the stage number of the last alert (0 to 3 instead of 1 to 4).
3. These routines are part of the Pascal Toolbox interface, not part of the Toolbox itself. They don't reside in ROM and can't be called from assembly language via the trap mechanism.
4. In assembly language, the stage number of the last alert is kept in the global variable ACount and its resource ID in ANumber. To reset to stage 1, store -1 into ACount.



Assembly Language Information

Assembly-language global variables:

Name	Address	Meaning
ANumber	\$A98	Resource ID of last alert
ACount	\$A9A	Stage of last alert minus 1

7.5.3 Preloading Dialog Resources



Definitions

```

procedure CouldAlert
    (alertID : INTEGER);           {Resource ID of alert}

procedure CouldDialog
    (dialogID : INTEGER);         {Resource ID of dialog}

procedure FreeAlert
    (alertID : INTEGER);           {Resource ID of alert}

procedure FreeDialog
    (dialogID : INTEGER);         {Resource ID of dialog}
  
```



Notes

1. CouldAlert and CouldDialog read all resources associated with a given alert or dialog into the heap and make them unpurgeable.
2. Before any operation that involves ejecting or swapping disks, call these routines to read in the resources of any alerts or dialogs that may occur during the operation. This guarantees that the resources will be available even when the disk they reside on is not in the disk drive.
3. When the resources are no longer needed in memory, call FreeAlert or FreeDialog to allow them to be purged from the heap.



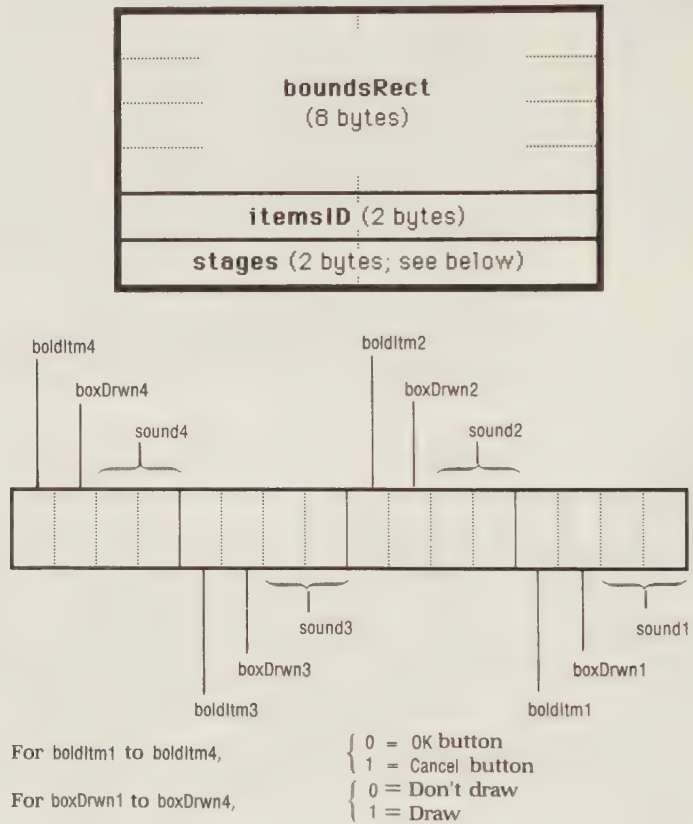
Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
CouldAlert	_CouldAlert	\$A989
CouldDialog	_CouldDialog	\$A979
FreeAlert	_FreeAlert	\$A98A
FreeDialog	_FreeDialog	\$A97A

7.6 Dialog-Related Resources

7.6.1 Resource Type 'ALRT'



sound1 to sound4 each specify a *sound number* from 0 to 3.
Note that the stages are listed in reverse order, from 4 to 1.

Detail of Stages



Notes

1. A resource of type 'ALRT' contains an alert template.
2. The structure of the resource is the same as that of an AlertTemplate record [7.1.3].
3. The resource type of the item list is 'DITL' [7.6.3].
4. The stage list consists of four 4-bit fields packed into a single word. The

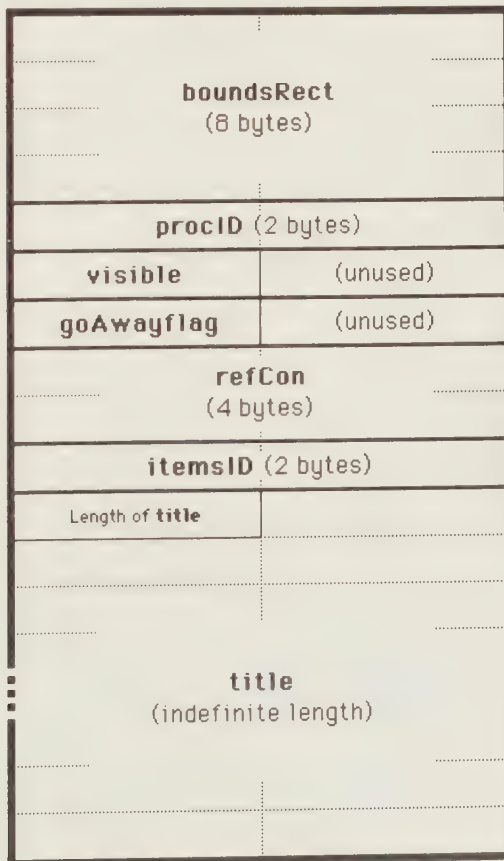
stages are given in *reverse order*: the first 4-bit field defines stage 4, the last defines stage 1.

5. In each field of the stage list:

- The first bit designates the default button at that stage of the alert: 0 for the OK button (item number 1), 1 for the Cancel button (item number 2).
- The second bit tells whether the alert box is to be drawn on the screen: 1 if it is, 0 if it isn't.
- The last two bits designate the sound number to be emitted (0 to 3).

6. To create an alert from an alert template, call one of the alert routines [7.4.2] with the template's resource ID.

7.6.2 Resource Type 'DLOG'

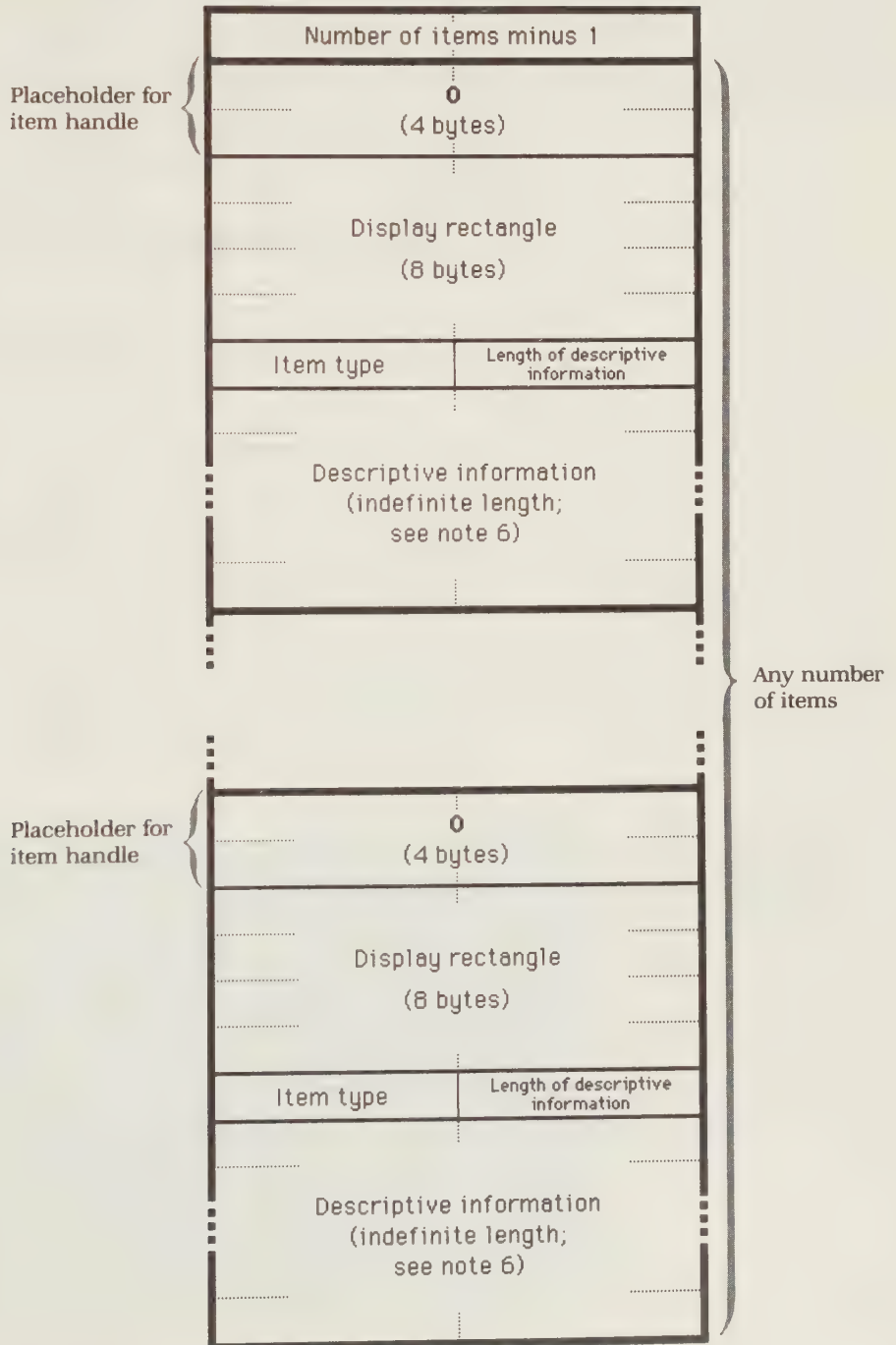




Notes

1. A resource of type 'DLOG' contains a dialog template.
2. The structure of the resource is the same as that of a `DialogTemplate` record [7.1.4]. All of its fields are in the same form as the corresponding parameters to `NewWindow` [3.2.2] or `NewDialog` [7.2.2].
3. The resource type of the item list is 'DITL' [7.6.3].
4. The dialog title is in Pascal string form, with a 1-byte length count followed by the characters of the title. The overall size of the dialog template depends on the length of the title string.
5. To create a dialog from a dialog template, call `GetNewDialog` [7.2.2] with the template's resource ID.

7.6.3 Resource Type 'DITL'





Notes

1. A resource of type 'DITL' contains an item list for an alert or dialog.
2. The first word of the resource is an integer that's *one less than* the number of items in the list. This is followed by the entries representing the items themselves, in the format shown.
3. The first 4 bytes of each item entry are reserved as a placeholder for the item handle.
4. The item's display rectangle is given in the local (window) coordinates of the alert or dialog box.
5. The length of the additional descriptive information in each entry, and hence of the list entry itself, is variable. The byte following the item type gives the length of the descriptive information in bytes, which must be even.
6. The descriptive information is as follows:
 - For icon and picture items, the resource ID of the icon or picture (resource type 'ICON' [I:5.5.3] or 'PICT' [I:5.5.5])
 - For resource-based control items (item type `CtrlItem + ResCtrl` [7.1.2]), the resource ID of a control template (resource type 'CNTL' [6.5.1])
 - For any other control item, the title of the control
 - For static text items, the text of the item
 - For editable text boxes, the text of the box's initial contents
 - For user items, no descriptive information at all (length 0)



Assembly Language Information

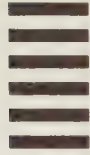
Offset within an item list:

Name	Offset in bytes	Meaning
DlgMaxIndex	0	Number of items minus 1

Offsets within each item:

Name	Offset in bytes	Meaning
itmHndl	0	Item handle
itmRect	4	Display rectangle
itmType	12	Item type
itmData	14	Additional descriptive information

CHAPTER

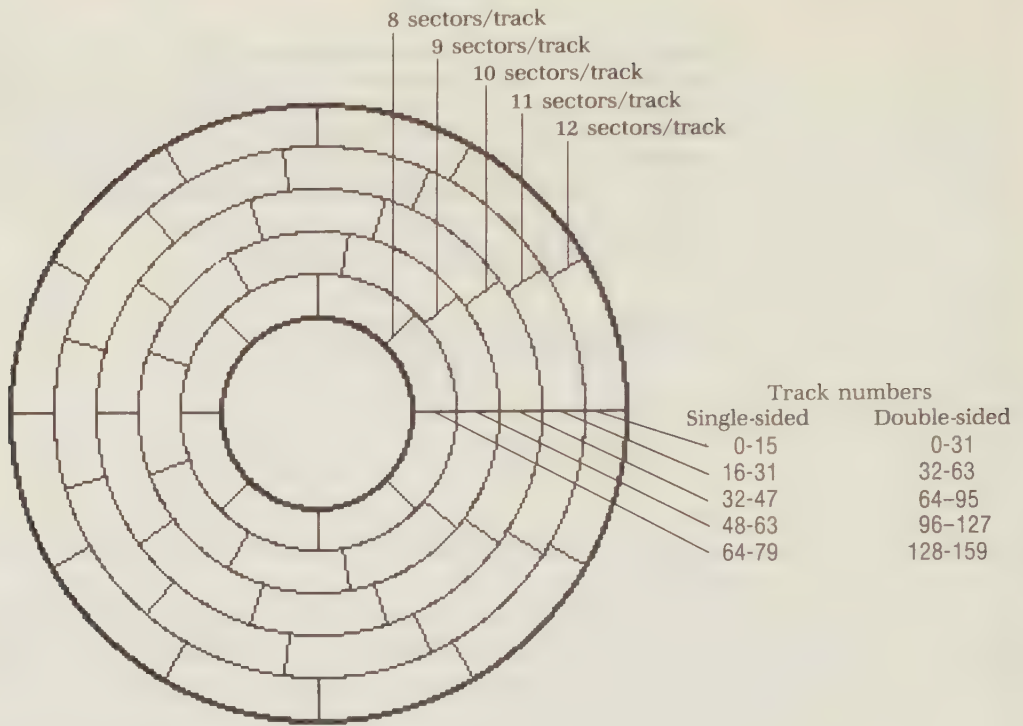


Files at Your Fingertips

The last topic we have left to cover is input/output. In this chapter we'll learn about the Macintosh's built-in disk drive and how to create and use files stored on it. We'll also learn how to use two of the standard packages in the system resource file, the Standard File Package and the Disk Initialization Package. And we'll fill in the last remaining routines of our MiniEdit application program, those that handle the File menu commands for reading and writing files.

Disk Format

The Sony disk drive built into the Macintosh Plus stores 800 kilobytes of information on both sides of a plastic-encased, 3-1/2-inch "minidisk." The disk's recording surface consists of 160 concentric *tracks*, numbered 0 to 159 from the outside in. Track numbers alternate from one side of the disk to the other: even numbers on the bottom, odd on the top. The tracks in turn are divided into *sectors* of 512 bytes each (see Figure 8-1); information is always physically transferred to and from the disk in whole 512-byte sectors.



Each sector holds 512 bytes of information.

Figure 8-1 Tracks and sectors

Actually, each sector holds 524 bytes: 512 bytes of data and an extra 12-byte *tag*. The tag contains identifying information about the sector, such as what file it belongs to, its sequential position within the file, and the date and time it was written. In case of damage to the disk, a "scavenger" program can use this tag information to salvage all or most of the files on it.

The outer tracks, being longer, can hold more information than the inner ones. To make the most efficient possible use of the available disk space, the 160 tracks are divided into five groups of 32 each. The outermost group (tracks 0-31) hold twelve sectors per track, the next group (32-63) eleven sectors, and so on to only eight sectors each for tracks 128-159, the innermost group. This makes an average of ten sectors per track over the entire disk; for 160 tracks, this comes to 1600 sectors of half a kilobyte each, or 800 kilobytes altogether.

The single-sided disk drive on earlier Macintosh models divides the disk into 80 tracks instead of 160, with 16 tracks in each of the five groups. Thus the outermost group consists of tracks 0–15, the second 16–31, and the innermost 64–79. The average is still ten sectors per track; 80 tracks make 800 sectors, or 400 kilobytes for the whole disk.

In addition to the *internal disk drive* built into the Macintosh, one *external drive* can be attached through the disk drive connector on the back of the machine. The two drives are designated by *drive numbers*, 1 for the internal drive and 2 for the external. Any other external storage device, such as a large-capacity hard disk, will have a drive number of 3 or above.

The lowest-level software that communicates directly with the disk is the *disk driver*, one of five standard device drivers built directly into the Macintosh ROM. (The others are the serial communications driver, the sound driver, and, on the Macintosh Plus, the high- and low-level AppleTalk network drivers.) The disk driver's name is .Sony and its driver reference number is -5. Different disk drives or other mass-storage devices have to provide their own device drivers to replace the standard Sony driver. These replacement drivers are RAM-based, installed in the system resource file and loaded into RAM when the system is started up.

Most of the information in this chapter should hold true no matter what disk drive you're using, but the author makes no warranties, express or implied, with respect to any but the standard single- and double-sided Sony disks.

The File System

You don't normally have to deal with the disk driver directly. That job is handled for you by a part of the Toolbox called the File Manager (or simply the *file system*), which allows you to view the disk as a collection of *files*. A file is just a linear sequence of bytes of any length, limited only by the capacity of the disk. You can read or write any number of bytes you need in a single file operation; the file system will convert your requests into the appropriate whole-sector data transfers and carry them out via the disk driver.

Every file has a *file name* that you use to refer to it; the file system translates the file name into the corresponding physical track and sector locations on the disk. File names may be up to 31 characters long, and can include embedded spaces and punctuation marks—any character except a colon (:), which as we'll see is used as a separator for volume and directory names. The file system doesn't distinguish between upper- and lowercase letters, so the names

ODDS AND ENDS

Odds and Ends

odds and ends

oDdS aNd eNdS

are all equivalent.

The original (64K ROM) version of the Toolbox allows file names up to 255 characters long. However, for compatibility with the Macintosh Plus, it's wise to limit them to no more than 31 characters.

Actually there are two separate file systems, a high-level and a low-level one. The low-level file system gives you the greatest possible control over your filing operations—more, in fact, than you'll ordinarily need. It's generally more convenient to use the high-level file system, which sacrifices some of that fine control in favor of simplicity and ease of use. The high-level routines are designed to perform the most common filing operations in the most straightforward way; they call the corresponding low-level routines for you, which in turn call the disk driver, which communicates directly with the disk (see Figure 8-2).

The low-level file system is technically part of the Macintosh Operating System rather than the Toolbox. It's meant to be called from assembly language, and communicates via the 68000 processor's registers. All the pertinent information about a file and the operation to be performed on it is collected into a complex data structure in memory known as a *parameter block*; a pointer to the parameter block is passed in one of the registers (register A0, if you must know).

The interface unit for calling the Operating System from a high-level language such as Pascal includes a set of *interface routines* (often called "glue routines" or, more whimsically, "gluons") to the low-level

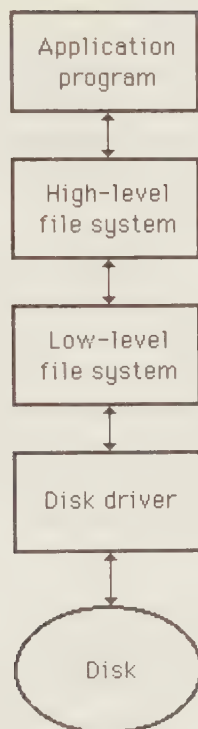


Figure 8-2 File system hierarchy

file system. Since all of these low-level interface routines accept a pointer to a parameter block as one of their arguments, their names all begin with the letters PB: PBOpen, PBWrite, and so on. Most of the high-level routines begin with FS, for “file system.” In this chapter we’ll discuss only the high-level file system; if your needs are more exotic, you’ll have to look in the *Inside Macintosh* manual for details on the low-level routines.

If you’re writing in assembly language, only the low-level routines are available.

Error Reporting

All file system routines, low level (PB) or high (FS), are functions that return an integer result code of type `OSErr` [I:3.1.2]; any other infor-

mation they have to pass back is passed through a variable parameter. As usual, a zero result code (NoErr) means that all is well and the requested operation was carried out successfully. Any nonzero result code (always negative) reports an error of some kind that prevented successful completion. Result codes relating to files are listed in [8.2.8].

Program 8-1 shows our MiniEdit program's error-handling routine, `IOCheck`. Every time we use a file system routine, we'll pass the result code it returns to `IOCheck` to check for input/output errors and respond to them as appropriate. In the normal case, when the result code it receives is 0 (NoErr), `IOCheck` just does nothing and returns; if it receives a nonzero error code, it notifies the user with an alert, then cancels the operation that caused the error.

For most unanticipated errors, we just post a general-purpose alert message like

I/O Error — 49

using `NumToString` [I:2.3.7] to convert the numerical error code into a string of digits, and `ParamText` [7.4.6] to substitute it into the text of the alert. This type of message won't mean much to the average user, though. It's generally more helpful if the program can anticipate the most common types of I/O error and offer a precise description of the problem. To illustrate, we've built one such specific error check into our `IOCheck` routine: if the user tries to open a second window onto a file that's already open, we display the more helpful message

Sorry, can't open the same file twice.

In a serious application program, you'd want to provide this kind of specific alert message for other errors as well.

Before posting the alert, `IOCheck` calls `InitCursor` [2.5.2] to restore the cursor to its normal arrow shape. This is necessary because some of the input/output routines that call `IOCheck` use a wristwatch cursor to signal a delay for disk activity, and we don't want the wristwatch to remain when our error alert appears on the screen. After the user dismisses the alert, we want to cancel whatever operation gave rise to the error and return to the program's main event loop to process the next event. Ideally we could do this directly with the statement

EXIT (DoEvent)

```
{ Global variables }
```

```
var
```

```
    Quitting : BOOLEAN;           {Quit command in effect?}
    ErrorFlag : BOOLEAN;          {I/O error flag}
```

```
procedure IOCheck (resultCode : OSErr);
```

```
{ Check for I/O error. }
```

```
const
```

```
    opWrID = 1005;                 {Resource ID for Already Open alert}
    ioErrID = 1006;                {Resource ID for I/O Error alert}
```

```
var
```

```
    alertID : INTEGER;             {Resource ID of alert}
    errorString : Str255;          {Error code in string form [I:2.1.1]}
    ignore : INTEGER;              {Item code returned by alert}
```

```
begin {IOCheck}
```

```
    if resultCode = NoErr then           {Just return if no error}
        EXIT {IOCheck};
```

```
    case resultCode of
```

```
        OpWrErr:
            alertID := opWrID;           {Use Already Open alert}
```

```
        {Insert code here to handle any other specific errors}
```

```
    otherwise
```

```
        begin
```

```
            alertID := ioErrID;          {Use general I/O Error alert}
            NumToString (resultCode, errorString); {Convert error code to a string [I:2.3.7]}
            ParamText (errorString, '', '', '') {Substitute into text of alert [7.4.6]}
```

```
        end
```

```
    end; {case}
```

Program 8-1 Check for I/O error

```

InitCursor;                                {Restore normal cursor [2.5.2]}
ignore := StopAlert (alertID, NIL);        {Post alert [7.4.2]}

Quitting := FALSE;                          {Cancel Quit command, if any}
ErrorFlag := TRUE                           {Force exit to main event loop}

end; {IOCheck}

```

Program 8-1 (continued)

but unfortunately Apple's Pascal system doesn't allow this type of "nonlocal exit." So to achieve the same effect, we have to introduce a global Boolean flag named `ErrorFlag`, which we will set to `FALSE` on each pass of the program's `DoEvent` routine and to `TRUE` when an error is detected. After each call to `IOCheck`, the calling routine must test this flag and exit immediately if it's `TRUE`; we've already seen an example of this in our `CloseAppWindow` routine in the last chapter (Program 7-2). Then the routine that called *that* routine must do the same, and so on back up the call chain to `DoEvent`. The next time through the main loop, `DoEvent` will reinitialize `ErrorFlag` to `FALSE` in preparation for the next error check.

Volumes

The file system groups files logically into larger collections known as *volumes*. Conceptually, a volume corresponds to a physical unit of information storage; on the standard Sony disk drive, for example, each disk is a separate volume. However, this correspondence doesn't necessarily hold for all devices. A hard disk, for instance, might be partitioned into several logical volumes sharing the one physical disk; or a "RAM disk" driver might treat an area of central memory as a volume to be accessed as if it were an external disk.

Every volume has a *volume name* of up to 27 characters, ending with a colon (:). As in file names, upper- and lowercase letters are considered equivalent. Any file name can be prefixed by a volume name:

Humpty:Dumpty

Normally, however, you'll just give the file name itself and identify the volume by reference number. In any case, the use of prefixed volume names should be kept hidden; don't ever ask the user to supply a file name in this form.

At any given time, there's always a *current volume*, which is used

automatically for all file names that aren't prefixed with a volume name of their own. When the Macintosh is started up, the disk it's started from becomes the current volume. You can change the current volume with `SetVol` or find out what volume is current with `GetVol` [8.1.2].

Every volume has a *file directory* and a *block map* containing information about the files it contains and where they are on the disk. (This information is of interest mainly to the file system itself; you don't need to know its exact internal structure to do straightforward input and output.) Whenever a disk is inserted in a disk drive, its directory and block map are read into memory for use by the file system. This is called *mounting* the volume, and the Toolbox does it for you automatically; by the time you receive a disk-inserted event, the corresponding volume will already have been mounted.

The event message [2.1.4] for a disk-inserted event contains the result code returned by the mounting operation in its high-order word, along with the drive number of the disk drive in the low-order word. A nonzero result code means that an error has prevented the volume from being successfully mounted—for instance, the user may have inserted an uninitialized or unreadable disk. In this case you should normally pass the event message to the routine `DIBadMount` [8.4.1] (part of the Disk Initialization Package) to give the user a chance to correct the problem by initializing or ejecting the disk.

At the time a volume is mounted, it's assigned a *volume reference number* for identification. Different volumes will always have different reference numbers, even though their names may happen to be the same; to avoid ambiguity, you should use the reference number rather than the volume name whenever possible. The Toolbox routine `GetVInfo` [8.1.1] accepts a drive number identifying a physical disk drive and returns the name and reference number of the volume currently in that drive, as well as the amount of free space available on the volume.

Mounting a volume also allocates space in memory for a *volume buffer* to hold information being transferred to or from the files on the volume. The volume buffer holds one or more whole disk sectors of information. When you ask to read from a file, the sector containing the needed information is read into the volume buffer (if it isn't already there); then only the bytes you actually requested are trans-

ferred from the buffer to your program. When you write to a file, the information is just copied into the volume buffer and held there until a whole sector's worth has accumulated, at which point the entire sector is written out to the disk at once.

The file system handles all buffering for you automatically, so you should never have to concern yourself with this level of detail. However, you can explicitly “flush” the contents of the volume buffer to the disk if necessary with `FlushVol` [8.1.3]. It's generally a good idea to do this from time to time (such as every time you close a file), to avoid losing the information in the buffer in case of a power failure, meteorite impact, or similar unforeseen catastrophe.

When a disk is ejected from the disk drive, the memory space occupied by its volume buffer and block map is released. The volume is now said to be *off-line*. An off-line volume remains mounted, however, and a small amount of identifying information remains in memory so that the volume remains known to the file system. (In the Finder, for instance, the icon representing an ejected volume remains visible on the screen, but becomes “dimmed” to show that the volume is off-line.) If the user reinserts the disk in the disk drive, its block map will be read back in and a new volume buffer allocated, placing the volume back *on-line*.

The information on a volume is immediately accessible only when the volume is on-line. If you try to access a file on a volume that's off-line, the file system will eject the disk currently in the drive and display the “disk-switch” alert shown in Figure 8-3, asking the user to insert the needed volume. The only way for the user to dismiss this alert is to insert the requested disk in the disk drive, after which the file system will proceed to carry out the operation.

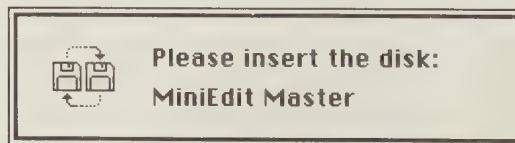


Figure 8-3 Disk-switch alert

On the Macintosh Plus, the disk-switch alert can be dismissed without inserting the requested disk, by typing Command-period. When this happens, the Toolbox will cancel the requested I/O operation and return the error code VolOffLinErr [8.2.8]. However, most application programs aren't prepared to handle this error and will either lose a file or crash the system (or both) if you try it. Use this feature at your own peril. You have been warned.

When you're completely through with a volume, call `UnmountVol` [8.1.3] to *unmount* it. This removes all information about the volume from memory. Once it's unmounted, the volume is no longer known to the file system and its contents are no longer accessible.

Directories

One of the most important new features of the Macintosh Plus Toolbox is a *hierarchical file system* (HFS), designed to make more efficient use of the new double-sided disk drives and large-capacity hard disks. Under the older Macintosh file system (MFS), the hierarchy of "folders within folders" for organizing files on the desktop is merely an illusion created by the Finder. All the Toolbox sees is a "flat" file system, with all the files on each volume listed in a single volume directory.

Besides being built into ROM on the Macintosh Plus, the new file system is also distributed in an identical RAM-based version for use with older Macintosh models. "Big disk" products such as Apple's Hard Disk 20 come with a special startup disk containing the hierarchical file system in a "patch file." When the system is started from this disk, the HFS code is loaded from the patch file into the system heap in RAM, replacing the original file system in the machine's ROM. This enables owners of older machines to maintain hierarchical file systems on their hard disks without having to upgrade to the new ROM.

On the Macintosh Plus, the folder hierarchy is not just a mirage, but an integral part of the file system itself. Each volume has a *root directory*, read into memory when the volume is mounted. In addition to individual files, the root directory can contain *subdirectories*

corresponding to the folders on the Finder desktop; the subdirectories may in turn contain subdirectories of their own, and so on. For compatibility, the new file system can still work with older, single-sided disks, and will continue to maintain the old-style flat file system on such volumes. (It's possible to install a hierarchical file system on a single-sided disk by holding down the Option key while initializing it.)

The new file system includes an extensive set of low-level routines for working with hierarchical directories, but the high-level facilities that we're discussing in this chapter are unaffected by the change. On hierarchical volumes, every directory you work with is assigned a *directory reference number*, analogous to the volume reference number mentioned in the previous section. Any high-level routine that expects a volume number as a parameter will accept a directory number instead. Thus you needn't ever worry about whether you're dealing with a flat or a hierarchical volume; a program using only the high-level file system will automatically work properly with both. (In fact, our MiniEdit program, originally developed under the old file system, runs perfectly without modification under HFS and handles hierarchical volumes just as easily as flat ones.) Unless otherwise stated, all references to volume numbers throughout this chapter are understood to refer to hierarchical directory numbers as well.

Like volumes, each directory has a *directory name*. (The maximum length of a directory name is 31 characters, compared with 27 for a volume name.) A volume's root directory has the same name as the volume itself. Any file on the volume can be uniquely identified by a *full pathname* consisting of a sequence of directory names separated by colons, starting from the root directory and leading to the desired file:

Languages:Indo-European:Germanic:West Germanic:English

Full pathnames are limited to no more than 255 characters. (Notice that our example

Humpty: Dumpty

in the preceding section is just a special case of a full pathname for a flat volume with no nested directory structure.)

Instead of a full pathname, you can give a *partial pathname* relative to a directory other than the root; the directory to start from is identified by its reference number. Partial pathnames normally begin with a colon, to distinguish them from full pathnames. For

instance, the file named above could be designated relative to the directory Germanic by the partial pathname

:West Germanic:English

The one exception to the rule that partial pathnames begin with a colon is the case of a single file name all by itself: relative to directory West Germanic, our example file would be identified just as

English

instead of

:English

Consecutive colons in a pathname, with no directory name between them, move up the hierarchy from a given directory instead of down. Starting again from directory West Germanic, the partial pathname

::North Germanic:Norwegian

designates a file whose full pathname would be

Languages:Indo-European:Germanic:North Germanic:Norwegian

and

:::Celtic:Brythonic:Welsh

is equivalent to

Languages:Indo-European:Celtic:Brythonic:Welsh

This whole discussion is really academic, though, because the use of explicit pathnames is strongly discouraged. The recommended way to identify a file is with a simple file name, along with the reference number of its home directory. For our example file, we would just use the file name

English

along with the reference number for the directory

Languages:Indo-European:Germanic:West Germanic

Files

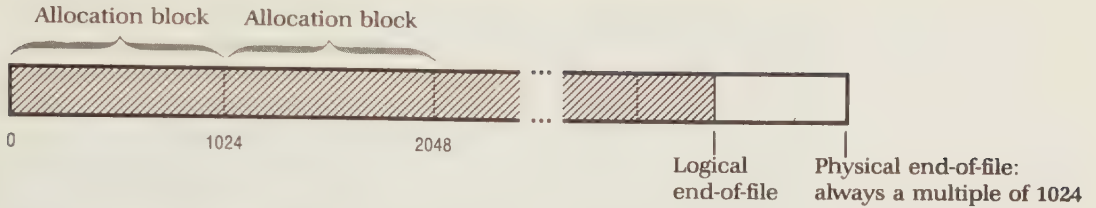
Files are, of course, the basic unit of information storage on a disk. Disk space for a file is allocated in fixed units called *allocation blocks*, which are always some whole number of 512-byte disk sectors. The number of sectors per allocation block is determined at the time the disk is initialized; for the standard Sony disk, each allocation block is normally two sectors, or 1024 bytes. The file system automatically adds and deletes allocation blocks as a file grows and shrinks.

The length of a file is essentially unlimited. (Actually, under MFS, there's a limit of 16 megabytes, or 2^{24} bytes. If you need a file longer than that, you're out of luck.) Byte positions within the file are numbered sequentially, starting from 0. Like points on the QuickDraw coordinate grid or character positions in an edit record, these represent positions *between* the bytes of the file. Byte position 0 is at the beginning of the file, before the first byte; position 24 is between the twenty-fourth and twenty-fifth bytes; and so on.

A file's length is defined by two such byte positions, marking the *physical* and the *logical end-of-file*, or *EOF* (see Figure 8-4). The physical end-of-file is the byte position at the end of the file's last allocation block; it's equivalent to the number of bytes physically allocated to the file on the disk, and is always a multiple of the allocation block size. The logical end-of-file marks the end of the file's meaningful contents, and tells how many of the physically allocated bytes actually "count" as part of the file. The logical end-of-file can never be greater than the physical end-of-file.

The physical end-of-file is manipulated entirely by the file system, and is ordinarily of no concern to your program. The term "end-of-file," without a qualifier, is always understood to refer to the logical rather than the physical EOF. The routines `GetEOF` and `SetEOF` [8.2.5] respectively return and change the position of the logical end-of-file. When you set the logical EOF, the file system automatically adjusts the physical EOF accordingly, adding new allocation blocks to the end of the file if you lengthen it or releasing unneeded blocks if you shorten it.

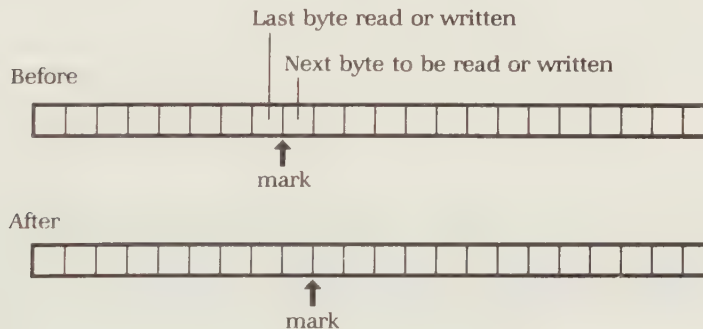
It's also possible to explicitly add allocation blocks to a file with the file system routine `Allocate` [8.2.5]. This is sometimes useful for preallocating space when you know you're going to be lengthening a file, to avoid fragmentation on the disk. Notice that you specify the amount of space to be added to the file in *bytes*, not blocks.



On the Sony disk drive, each allocation block is 2 sectors, or 1024 bytes.

Figure 8-4 Physical and logical end-of-file

Another important byte position within a file is the *file mark*, which designates the point where the next reading or writing operation will take place. The file system routine `GetFPos` [8.2.4] returns the current mark position. The next byte to be transferred is always the byte following the mark; the mark is then moved forward one position, so that it advances sequentially through the file as bytes are read or written (see Figure 8-5).



File mark advances byte by byte as file is read or written.

Figure 8-5 File mark

You can also manipulate the mark explicitly with `SetFPos` [8.2.4], to control the position of the next reading or writing operation on the file. You express the new mark position as a positive or negative offset in bytes from a specified base position, which may be either the beginning of the file (`FSFromStart`), the logical end-of-file (`FSFromLEOF`), or the current mark position (`FSFromMark`). If the resulting byte position falls before the beginning of the file or after its logical end, `SetFPos`

positions the mark at the beginning or end of the file and returns an error code of PosErr or EOFErr [8.2.8], respectively.

There's also a fourth base constant, FSAtMark, which refers unconditionally to the current mark position, ignoring any offset. This amounts to saying "set the mark at the current position of the mark," an operation whose usefulness is not readily apparent. If you're wondering why this constant is defined and what's it's good for, you're not alone.

Working with Files

In order to read from or write to a file, you must first *open* it with FSOpen [8.2.2]. This makes the file known to the file system and creates the internal data structures needed to work with it. You identify the file by name and volume (or name and directory) and get back a *file reference number* that you use from then on to refer to it. Most file system routines expect a file reference number as one of their parameters.

Of course, you can't open a file that doesn't exist. If you want to write a brand-new file to the disk, you have to create it first. The Create routine [8.2.1] accepts a file name and volume or directory reference number and creates a file with that name on that volume or directory. (You also have to supply a file type and creator signature for use by the Finder.) Notice, however, that Create doesn't open the file for you; you still have to call FSOpen to get a reference number for the file.

Once you've opened a file and obtained a reference number for it, you can proceed to read and write it with FSRead and FSWrite [8.2.3]. You give the file's reference number, the number of bytes to transfer, and a pointer either to the information to be written or to the place in memory to which the information should be read. The information will be transferred between consecutive memory locations, beginning at the address designated by the pointer, and consecutive bytes of the file, beginning at the current mark position. (You can, of course, set the mark wherever you want with SetFPos [8.2.4] before beginning the read or write operation.)

As the information is transferred, the mark advances sequentially through the file. If it reaches the logical end-of-file while read-

ing, the operation terminates immediately, returning an error code of EOFErr [8.2.8], along with the number of bytes actually read in the byteCount parameter. If the mark encounters the end-of-file while writing, the end-of-file “sticks” to the mark and begins advancing along with it, lengthening the file as it goes. When the physical end-of-file is reached, a new allocation block is automatically appended to the file and the writing operation continues.

When you’re finished with a file, you *close* it with FSClose [8.2.2], after which the reference number is no longer valid and the file can no longer be read or written. If the file was open for writing, any unwritten data that has accumulated in the volume buffer is written out to the disk. The file’s entry in the volume directory is also updated and “time-stamped” with the current date and time on the built-in clock chip. However, the new directory entry is *not* automatically written out to the disk until the volume is ejected or unmounted. To keep the directory information on the disk up-to-date, you should always follow FSClose with a call to FlushVol [8.1.3].

Besides reading and writing, there are a number of auxiliary operations that you can perform on a file even when it’s closed. The routines that perform these operations accept a file name and volume number instead of a file reference number. Operations in this category include deleting a file from a volume or changing its name [8.2.7], locking or unlocking it [8.2.6], and accessing or changing its Finder information [I:7.3.3]. Locking a file prevents it from being written to, deleted, or renamed.

Notice that the routines for locking and unlocking a file are not named FSLock and FSUnlock, as you might expect, but SetFLock (“set file lock”) and RstFLock (“reset file lock”).

Program 8-2 (DoSave) is our MiniEdit routine to handle the Save menu command. All it does is examine the fileNumber field in the window data record of the currently active window. If the window already has a file associated with it, we’ll find the file’s reference number in this field and we can go ahead and write the contents of the window to the file. If the fileNumber field is 0, we have to ask the user with a dialog box what file to write to. This makes the Save command equivalent to Save As..., so we just call our DoSaveAs routine, which we’ll be looking at later as Program 8-8.

```

{ Global variable }

var
  TheWindow : WindowPtr;           {Pointer to currently active window [3.1.1]}

procedure DoSave;

{ Handle Save command. }

var
  theData    : WDHandle;           {Handle to window's data record [Prog. 5-1]}
  dataHandle : Handle;            {Untyped handle for locking data record [I:3.1.1]}

begin {DoSave}

  dataHandle := Handle(GetWRefCon(TheWindow)); {Get window data [3.2.4]}

  HLock (dataHandle);              {Lock data record [I:3.2.4]}

  theData := WDHandle(dataHandle); {Convert to typed handle [Prog. 5-1]}
  with theData^ do
    if fileNumber = 0 then         {Is window associated with a file? [Prog. 5-1]}
      DoSaveAs                    {Get file name from user [Prog. 8-8]}
    else
      WriteFile (fileNumber, volNumber); {Write to window's file [Prog. 8-3]}

  HUnlock (dataHandle)            {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}

end; {DoSave}

```

Program 8-2 Handle Save command

The actual task of writing out a window's contents to a file is handled by the WriteFile routine shown in Program 8-3. (We've isolated this as a separate routine so that it can be shared by both DoSave and DoSaveAs.) The reference numbers of the file and its volume are passed in as parameters. Since writing to the disk entails a perceptible delay, we begin the WriteFile routine by displaying a wristwatch cursor; it will be set back to an arrow (or an I-beam) on the next pass through the main event loop. Then we get the text handle and length from the active window's edit record, which we've been keeping in the global variable TheText.

Our first operation on the file itself is to reposition its file mark to the beginning with `SetFPos` [8.2.4], using a base of `FSFromStart` and an offset of 0. Next we pass the result code we get back to our `IOCheck` routine (Program 8-1) to check for errors. If `IOCheck` sets the global error flag, we skip the rest of the routine and exit immediately to the main event loop. We have to do this same dance after each and every input/output operation that returns a result code; from now on, we won't bother to mention it every time.

```
( Global variables )

var
  TheText   : THandle;           {Handle to active window's edit record [5.1.1]}
  Watch     : CursHandle;       {Handle to wristwatch cursor [2.5.1]}
  ErrorFlag : BOOLEAN;          {I/O error flag}

procedure WriteFile (theFile : INTEGER; volNum : INTEGER);

  { Write window contents to a file. }

var
  textHandle : Handle;           {Handle to text of file [I:3.1.1]}
  textLength : LONGINT;          {Length of text in bytes}
  resultCode : OSErr;            {I/O error code [I:3.1.2]}

begin {WriteFile}

  SetCursor (Watch^^);           {Indicate delay [2.5.2]}

  HLock (Handle(TheText));       {Lock edit record [I:3.2.4]}
  with TheText^^ do
    begin
      textHandle := hText;       {Get text handle and current length}
      textLength := teLength     { from edit record [5.1.1] }
    end; {with}
  HUnlock (Handle(TheText));     {Unlock edit record [I:3.2.4]}

  resultCode := SetFPos (theFile, FSFromStart, 0); {Reset mark to beginning of file [8.2.4]}
  IOCheck (resultCode);          {Check for error [Prog. 8-1]}
  if ErrorFlag then EXIT (WriteFile); {On error, exit to main event loop}

  HLock (textHandle);            {Lock text [I:3.2.4]}
  resultCode := FSWrite (theFile, textLength, textHandle^); {Write text to file [8.2.3]}
  HUnlock (textHandle);          {Unlock text [I:3.2.4]}
  IOCheck (resultCode);          {Check for error [Prog. 8-1]}
```

Program 8-3 Write window contents to a file


```

if ErrorFlag then EXIT (WriteFile);           {On error, exit to main event loop}

resultCode := SetEOF (theFile, textLength);   {Set length of file [8.2.5]}
IOCheck (resultCode);                         {Check for error [Prog. 8-1]}
if ErrorFlag then EXIT (WriteFile);           {On error, exit to main event loop}

resultCode := FlushVol (NIL, volNum);          {Flush volume buffer [8.1.3]}
IOCheck (resultCode);                         {Check for error [Prog. 8-1]}
if ErrorFlag then EXIT (WriteFile);           {On error, exit to main event loop}

WindowDirty (FALSE)                          {Mark window as clean [Prog. 5-7]}

end; {WriteFile}

```

Program 8-3 *(continued)*

Assuming no error was detected, we're now ready to write the window's text to the file with FSWrite [8.2.3]. Notice that, since this routine expects a simple pointer to the text instead of a handle, we have to pass it the master pointer `textHandle^` instead of the text handle itself. (Of course, we have to be careful to lock the text handle before dereferencing it and unlock it again afterward.) After the writing operation is complete, we call SetEOF [8.2.5] to trim the file to the correct length, in case there was an earlier version longer than the one we've just written. Finally, we flush the volume buffer with FlushVol [8.1.3] to update the file's directory information on the disk, mark the window as clean, and return.

Program 8-4 (DoRevert) handles the Revert to Saved command and shows how to read from a file. We begin by examining the dirty flag in the window data record. If this flag is TRUE, the window contains editing changes that will be lost if we revert to the last-saved version of the file. So before proceeding with the operation we post an alert with the message

Revert to most recently saved version of file "Flapdoodle"?

to confirm that this is really what the user wants to do. If the user clicks the alert's Cancel button, we'll cancel the Revert operation by setting the global error flag and taking an immediate exit. (Notice that since we're exiting from the middle of a **with** statement, we have to be careful to unlock the window data record before exiting.)

```
{ Global variables }
```

```
var
  TheWindow : WindowPtr;           {Pointer to currently active window [3.1.1]}
  TheText   : TEHandle;           {Handle to active window's edit record [5.1.1]}
  Watch     : CursHandle;         {Handle to wristwatch cursor [2.5.1]}
  ErrorFlag : BOOLEAN;            {I/O error flag}
```

```
procedure DoRevert;
```

```
{ Handle Revert to Saved command. }
```

```
const
  revertID = 1002;                 {Resource ID for Revert alert}
```

```
var
  theData   : WDHandle;           {Handle to window's data record [Prog. 5-1]}
  dataHandle : Handle;            {Untyped handle for locking data record [I:3.1.1]}
  fileName   : Str255;            {Title of window [I:2.1.1]}
  textLength : LONGINT;           {Length of file in bytes}
  theItem    : INTEGER;           {Item number for Revert alert}
  resultCode : OSErr;             {I/O error code [I:3.1.2]}
```

```
begin {DoRevert}
```

```
  dataHandle := Handle(GetWRefCon(TheWindow)); {Get window data [3.2.4]}
  HLock (dataHandle);                         {Lock data record [I:3.2.4]}
```

```
  theData := WDHandle(dataHandle);            {Convert to typed handle}
  with theData^ do
    begin
```

```
      if dirty then                          {Have window contents been changed?}
```

```
      begin
        GetWTitle (TheWindow, fileName); {Get file name from window title [3.2.4]}
        ParamText (fileName, '', '', ''); {Substitute into text of alert [7.4.6]}
```

```
        theItem := CautionAlert (revertID, NIL); {Post alert [7.4.2]}
```

```
        if theItem = Cancel then            {Did user cancel? [7.1.1]}
```

```
          begin
            HUnlock (dataHandle);           {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}
            ErrorFlag := TRUE;              {Force exit to main event loop}
            EXIT (DoRevert)                 {Skip rest of operation}
```

```
          end {if}
```

```
        end; {if}
```

```

SetCursor (Watch^^);                (Indicate delay [2.5.2])

resultCode := GetEOF (fileNumber, textLength); (Get length of file [8.2.5])
IOCheck (resultCode);                (Check for error [Prog. 8-1])
if ErrorFlag then                    (Error detected?)
begin
    HUnlock (dataHandle);            (Unlock data record [1:3.2.4])
    EXIT (DoRevert)                  (Exit to main event loop)
end; (if)

resultCode := SetFPos (fileNumber, FSFromStart, 0); (Set mark at beginning of file [8.2.4])
IOCheck (resultCode);                (Check for error [Prog. 8-1])
if ErrorFlag then                    (Error detected?)
begin
    HUnlock (dataHandle);            (Unlock data record [1:3.2.4])
    EXIT (DoRevert)                  (Exit to main event loop)
end; (if)

HLock (Handle(TheText));              (Lock edit record [1:3.2.4])
with TheText^^ do
begin

    SetHandleSize (hText, textLength); (Adjust text to length of file [1:3.2.3, 5.1.1])
    teLength := textLength;          (Set text length [5.1.1])

    HLock (hText);                    (Lock the handle [1:3.2.4])
    resultCode := FSRead (fileNumber, textLength, hText^);
                                     (Read text of file into handle [8.2.3])
    IOCheck (resultCode);              (Check for error [Prog. 8-1])
    HUnlock (hText);                  (Unlock the handle [1:3.2.4])

    end; (with)
HUnlock (Handle(TheText));            (Unlock edit record [1:3.2.4])

if ErrorFlag then                    (Error detected during read?)
begin
    HUnlock (dataHandle);            (Unlock data record [1:3.2.4])
    EXIT (DoRevert)                  (Exit to main event loop)
end (if)

end; (with)

HUnlock (dataHandle);                (Unlock data record [1:3.2.4])

```

Program 8-4 (continued)

TECaltText (TheText);	{Wrap text to window [5.3.1]}
AdjustScrollBar;	{Adjust scroll bar to length of text [Prog. 6-5]}
TESetSelect (0, 0, TheText);	{Set insertion point at beginning of text [5.4.2]}
InvalRect (TheWindow^.portRect);	{Force update to redraw text [3.4.2]}
WindowDirty {FALSE}	{Mark window as clean [Prog. 5-7]}
end; {DoRevert}	

Program 8-4 *(continued)*

Assuming that the user has confirmed the Revert command by clicking the OK button in the alert box, we can now go ahead and read in the active window's file from the disk. We can safely assume that the window already has a file associated with it: if it didn't, our DoActivate routine (Program 5-14) would have disabled the Revert command on the menu the last time the window was activated, and we could never have gotten to where we are now. As we'll see later in Program 8-6, the file will already have been opened when it was first read into the window, so there's no need to open it now. We can just find out its length with GetEOF [8.2.5], move the mark to the beginning with SetFPos [8.2.4], set the text handle in the current edit record to the length of the file with SetHandleSize [I:3.2.3], and proceed to read the file with FSRead [8.2.3]. Then there are some housekeeping details to take care of, such as wrapping the text to the boundaries of the window, readjusting the window's scroll bar, and positioning the TextEdit insertion point at the beginning of the text. To get the window's contents redrawn on the screen, we call InvalRect [3.4.2] to force an update event. Then all that's left is to mark the window as clean and return.

The Standard File Package

Often, before you can carry out a filing operation, you need to ask the user what file to operate on. The easiest way to do this is with a set of standard routines known as the Standard File Package. As we learned in Volume One, Chapter 7, a *package* is a collection of routines that is stored as a resource in a resource file and can be read into memory when needed. Standard packages such as the Standard File Package and its sidekick, the Disk Initialization Package, are included in the System file supplied on Macintosh software disks.

The Standard File Package and the Disk Initialization Package have package numbers 3 and 2, respectively. The trap macros for using their routines from assembly language expand to call the “package traps” `_Pack3` and `_Pack2` [I:7.2.1], after first pushing an integer *routine selector* onto the stack to identify the desired routine within the package. The selectors for the various package routines are given in the assembly-language information boxes at the ends of the relevant reference sections.

The Standard File Package consists of two main routines: `SFGetFile` [8.3.2] to select an existing file to be read from the disk, and `SFPutFile` [8.3.3] to specify a file name to be written. Both routines obtain the needed information from the user by displaying a dialog box on the screen. All you do is call the routine, passing a *reply record* [8.3.1] to be filled in with the file name and other identifying information. The Standard File Package will keep control and handle all events until the dialog is dismissed. It takes care of all the needed processing to allow the user to select with the mouse from a scrollable list of available files, type or edit a file name, swap disks, switch disk drives, and so forth. When the dialog is finally dismissed, the Standard File Package will fill in the fields of the reply record you supplied and return control to your program. You can then use the information in the reply record to carry out the requested operation.

Although the standard dialogs described here are all you’ll ordinarily need, it’s possible to alter their behavior for your own purposes or replace them with “custom” dialogs of your own. You do this by providing a “dialog hook” function as a parameter to `SFGetFile` or `SFPutFile`, or by using a pair of alternate Standard File routines named `SFPPGetFile` and `SFPPPutFile` instead. See the *Inside Macintosh* manual for details.

File to Read From

Figure 8-6 shows the standard dialog box displayed by `SFGetFile`. You specify where on the screen the dialog box should appear and supply a list of up to four file types to be included in the file list. You can either list all available files of the specified types, or provide a *filter function* to decide which ones to list and suppress the rest. In any

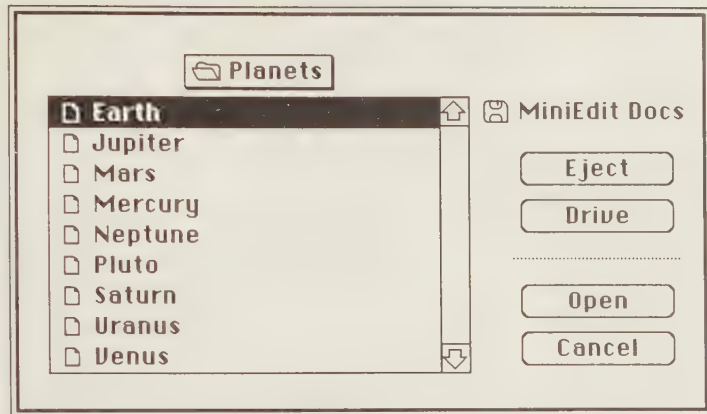


Figure 8-6 Standard Get File dialog

case, the specified files will be listed in alphabetical order. If the list is too long to be displayed on the screen all at once, `SFGetFile` will activate the list's scroll bar and handle all scrolling for you automatically; if the list is short enough to be displayed in its entirety, the scroll bar will be made inactive.

The user can select a file either by clicking it with the mouse and then clicking the `Open` button, or simply by double-clicking the file name. Either of these actions dismisses the dialog box; `SFGetFile` will fill in the file name, volume reference number, and other information in the reply record, set the record's `good` field to `TRUE` to show that the file choice was confirmed, and return control to your program. If the user dismisses the dialog with the `Cancel` button, the `good` field will be set to `FALSE` to tell you to ignore the remaining fields and cancel the operation.

The `Eject` button in the dialog box allows the user to eject one disk from the drive and insert another. As disks are ejected and inserted, `SFGetFile` keeps track of which disk is in the drive and displays its volume name in the dialog box; when the drive is empty, the `Eject` button becomes inactive. The `Drive` button switches attention from one disk drive to the other, or among the volumes on a hard disk or other multiple-volume device. (If there isn't an external disk drive connected to the Macintosh, the `Drive` button doesn't appear in the dialog box at all.)

Each time the user inserts a disk, `SFGetFile` attempts to mount the new volume. If the attempt fails because of an error, it calls the Disk Initialization Package routine `DIBadMount` [8.4.1] to deal with the problem. For errors that can be corrected by initializing the disk,

DIBadMount will post an alert such as the one shown in Figure 8-7, with the error message

This disk is unreadable



Figure 8-7 Disk initialization alert

or

This disk is damaged

or

This is not a Macintosh disk

and will proceed to initialize or eject the disk, as instructed by the user. After successfully initializing a disk, it will ask the user to supply a volume name with the dialog box shown in Figure 8-8. For problems that can't be corrected by initializing the disk, DIBadMount will just eject it and return to the Standard File Package to wait for the user to insert another.

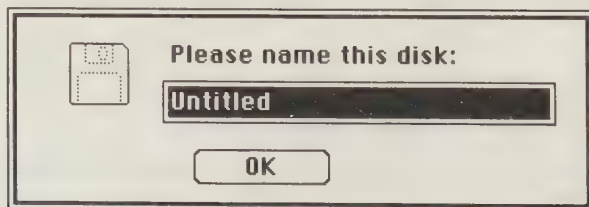


Figure 8-8 Volume name dialog

```

{ Global constants }

const
  DlgTop  = 100;           {Top edge of dialog box for Get and Put dialogs}
  DlgLeft = 85;           {Left edge of dialog box for Get and Put dialogs}

procedure DoOpen;

  { Handle Open... command. }

var
  dlgOrigin  : Point;      {Top-left corner of dialog box [I:4.1.1]}
  theTypeList : SFTYPEList; {List of file types to display [8.3.2]}
  theReply    : SFReply;   {Data returned by Get dialog [8.3.1]}

begin {DoOpen}

  SetPt (dlgOrigin, DlgLeft, DlgTop);      {Set up dialog origin [I:4.1.1]}
  theTypeList [0] := 'TEXT';              {Display text files only [8.3.2]}

  SFGetFile (dlgOrigin, '', NIL, 1, theTypeList, NIL, theReply); {Get file name from user [8.3.2]}

  with theReply do
    if good then                        {Did user confirm file selection? [8.3.1]}
      OpenFile (fName, vRefNum)        {Open file and read into window [Prog. 8-6]}

end; {DoOpen}

```

Program 8-5 Handle Open... command

Program 8-5 (DoOpen) shows how our MiniEdit program uses SFGetFile to handle the Open... command on its File menu. Since MiniEdit operates only on plain text files, we just pass the single file type 'TEXT' in the type list, asking SFGetFile to list all text files in a given volume or directory. If the good field of the reply record comes back FALSE, then the user has canceled the Open... command and there's nothing further to do. If it's TRUE, we pass the file name and volume number from the reply record to another MiniEdit routine, OpenFile (Program 8-6), to open the selected file and read it into a new window on the screen.

```

{ Global variables }

var
  TheWindow : WindowPtr;           {Pointer to currently active window [3.1.1]}
  ErrorFlag : BOOLEAN;             {I/O error flag}

procedure OpenFile (fileName : Str255; vNum : INTEGER);

{ Open document file. }

var
  theData    : WDHandle;           {Handle to window's data record [Prog. 5-1]}
  dataHandle : Handle;             {Untyped handle for locking data record [I:3.1.1]}
  theFile    : INTEGER;            {Reference number of file}
  resultCode : OSErr;              {I/O error code [I:3.1.2]}

begin {OpenFile}

  resultCode := FSOpen (fileName, vNum, theFile); {Open the file [8.2.2]}
  IOCheck (resultCode);                        {Check for error [Prog. 8-1]}
  if ErrorFlag then EXIT (OpenFile);           {On error, exit to main event loop}

  DoNew;                                       {Open a new window [Prog. 5-2]}

  dataHandle := Handle(GetWRefCon(TheWindow)); {Get window data [3.2.4]}
  HLock (dataHandle);                         {Lock data record [I:3.2.4]}

  theData := WDHandle(dataHandle);            {Convert to typed handle [Prog. 5-1]}
  with theData^^ do
    begin
      volNumber := vNum;                      {Save volume and file number in }
      fileNumber := theFile;                  { window data record [Prog. 5-1]}
      SetWTitle (TheWindow, fileName)         {File name becomes window title [3.2.4]}
    end; {with}

  HUnlock (dataHandle);                       {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}

  DoRevert                                    {Read file into window [Prog. 8-4]}

end; {OpenFile}

```

Program 8-6 Open document file

OpenFile is factored out as a separate routine so that we can use it at the beginning of the program, to read in files the user has selected and opened from the Finder, as well as in response to the Open...

command within MiniEdit itself. First we open the selected file with `FSOpen` [8.2.2], passing the file name and volume number and getting back a reference number for the file. Next we create a window for the file by calling our `DoNew` routine (Program 5-2), just as if the user had chosen the `New` command from the menu. After storing the volume and file reference numbers into the new window's data record and setting its title to the file name, we proceed to read the file's text into the window with the `DoRevert` routine we looked at earlier (Program 8-4).

We saw in Volume One, Chapter 7, how the Finder tells which document files to open at the start of the program by passing a table of *startup information*, located by way of a *startup handle* in the program's application global space. Program 8-7 (`DoStartup`) is called from the one-time `Initialize` routine at the very start of the MiniEdit program, to process the startup information and open the requested document files. First we call `CountAppFiles` [I:7.3.4] to find out how many documents the user selected (if any). `CountAppFiles` also returns a "message" telling whether the files were opened with the Finder's `Open` or `Print` command. Unfortunately, there isn't room in this book to talk about printing; we'll be discussing it in Volume Three. For now, if the `Print` command was chosen, we just post an alert with the message

```
Sorry, MiniEdit doesn't support printing.
```

and exit back to the Finder.

If the user started up the MiniEdit program by selecting its icon directly, rather than by opening a document, then the number of documents we get back from `CountAppFiles` will be 0: in this case, we just call our `DoNew` routine (Program 5-2) to open an empty window on the screen. If the number of documents is nonzero, we call `GetAppFiles` [I:7.3.4] once for each, receiving back an `AppFile` record [I:7.3.4] containing identifying information about the document file. Before opening the file, we first check to make sure it's a text file; if it isn't, we just post an alert message like

```
Sorry, file "Xanadu" is not a text file.
```

and loop back for the next document. If the file is a text file, we call `OpenFile` (Program 8-6) to open it and read it into a window. Finally we call `ClrAppFiles` [I:7.3.4] to notify the Finder that the file has been processed.


```

procedure DoStartup;

  { Process Finder startup information. }

  const
    cantPrintID = 1003;           {Resource ID for Can't Print alert}
    wrongTypeID = 1004;          {Resource ID for Wrong Type alert}

  var
    theMessage : INTEGER;        {Open or print? [I:7.3.4]}
    nDocs      : INTEGER;        {Number of documents selected in Finder}
    thisDoc    : INTEGER;        {Index number of document}
    docInfo    : AppFile;        {Startup information about one document [I:7.3.4]}
    ignore     : INTEGER;        {Item code returned by alert}

  begin {DoStartup}

    CountAppFiles (theMessage, nDocs);      {Get number of documents and startup message [I:7.3.4]}

    if theMessage = AppPrint then           {Did user choose Print in Finder? [I:7.3.4]}
      begin
        ignore := StopAlert (cantPrintID, NIL); {Post alert [7.4.2]}
        ExitToShell                                {Return to Finder [I:7.1.3]}
      end {if}

    else if nDocs = 0 then                  {If no documents selected, just }
      DoNew                                { open an empty window [Prog. 5-2]}

    else
      for thisDoc := 1 to nDocs do          {Otherwise loop through documents}
        begin

          GetAppFiles (thisDoc, docInfo);    {Get startup information [I:7.3.4]}
          with docInfo do

            if fType = 'TEXT' then          {Is it a text file?}
              begin
                OpenFile (fName, vRefNum);   {Read it into a window [Prog. 8-6]}
                ClrAppFiles (thisDoc)        {Tell Finder it's been processed [I:7.3.4]}
              end {then}

            else
              begin
                ParamText (fName, '', '', ''); {Substitute file name into text of alert [7.4.6]}
                ignore := StopAlert (wrongTypeID, NIL) {Post alert [7.4.2]}
              end {else}

          end {for}

        end; {DoStartup}

```

Program 8-7 Process Finder startup information

File to Write To

The Standard File Package routine `SFPutFile` [8.3.3] displays the dialog box shown in Figure 8-9, asking for the name of a file to be written. The prompting string that appears above the dialog's text box is a parameter you supply when you call the routine. The Eject and Drive buttons work the same way as in the Get File dialog. The user can do the usual selection and typing in the text box, then confirm the file name with the Save button (or the Return or Enter key) or cancel the operation with the Cancel button. `SFPutFile` will then return a reply record containing the specified file name and volume or directory number, with the good field set to TRUE if the dialog was confirmed, FALSE if it was canceled.

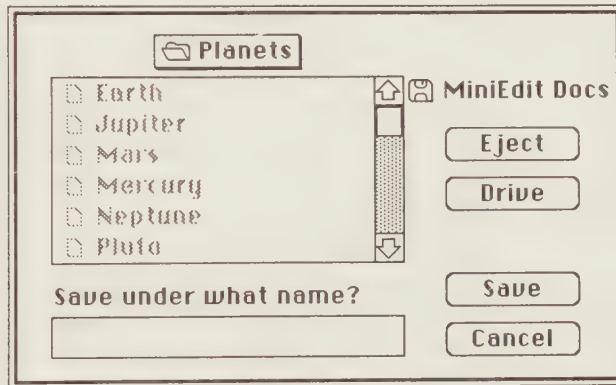


Figure 8-9 Standard Put File dialog

If the user specifies a file name that already exists on the disk, `SFPutFile` will display the alert shown in Figure 8-10. If the user clicks the No button, the Put File dialog will remain on the screen so the user can change the file name and try again; if Yes, the Put File dialog will be dismissed and the specified file name returned to you in the reply record. Even so, however, the recommended policy is *not* to replace the existing file unless it's of an appropriate file type for your own program. Don't let the user destroy other programs or their files (to say nothing of the existing Earth!) by saving a document named, say, MacPaint or Finder or System.

Program 8-8 (DoSaveAs) illustrates this last point. In response to the Save As... command, we begin by calling `SFPutFile` to get a file name

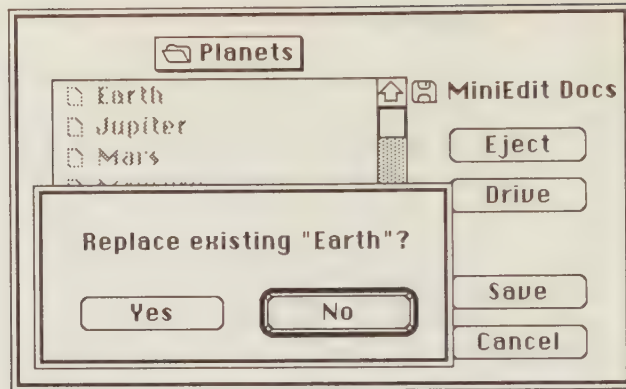


Figure 8-10 Existing file alert

from the user. If the resulting reply record has its `good` field set to `FALSE`, then the user has canceled the command: we just set the global error flag, clear the Quitting flag in case we've reached this routine as part of a Quit sequence, and exit. If the `good` field is `TRUE`, our next step is to ask for the designated file's Finder information with `GetFInfo` [I:7.3.3].

A result code of `NoErr` from `GetFInfo` means that the file already exists. We want to go ahead and write to it only if it's a text file; if the file type in the Finder information record is anything other than `'TEXT'`, we'll post an alert with the message

Sorry, file "Frumble" is not a text file.

and exit. If there *isn't* a previously existing file with the given name, `GetFInfo` will return a result code of `FNFErr` ("file not found"); in this case, we just create a new file with the given name—giving it a file type of `'TEXT'` and a creator signature of `'MEDT'` (for "MiniEdit")—and proceed. On any other result code, we call `IOCheck` (Program 8-1) to post an error alert, then exit to the main event loop.

Assuming we have a valid file name to write to, our next step is to check whether the active window already has an existing file associated with it; if so, we call `FSClose` [8.2.2] to close that file before opening the new one. Then we open the new file with `FSOpen` [8.2.2], store its volume and file reference numbers into the active window's data record and its file name as the window's title, and call our earlier `WriteFile` routine (Program 8-3) to write the window's contents to the file. (If an error occurs while opening the file, the active

```

{ Global declarations }

const
    DlgTop = 100;           {Top edge of dialog box for Get and Put dialogs}
    DlgLeft = 85;          {Left edge of dialog box for Get and Put dialogs}

var
    TheWindow : WindowPtr;  {Pointer to currently active window [3.1.1]}
    Watch      : CursHandle; {Handle to wristwatch cursor [2.5.1]}
    Quitting    : BOOLEAN;   {Quit command in effect?}
    ErrorFlag   : BOOLEAN;   {I/O error flag}

procedure DoSaveAs;

{ Handle Save As... command. }

const
    wrongTypeID = 1004;      {Resource ID for Wrong File Type alert}
    noTitleID   = 1000;      {Resource ID of title string for empty window}

var
    dlgOrigin   : Point;     {Top-left corner of dialog box [1:4.1.1]}
    theReply    : SFReply;    {Data returned by Put dialog [8.3.1]}
    theInfo     : FInfo;     {File's Finder information [1:7.3.2]}
    theFile     : INTEGER;    {Reference number of file}
    theData     : WDHandle;   {Handle to window's data record [Prog. 5-1]}
    dataHandle  : Handle;     {Untyped handle for locking data record [1:3.1.1]}
    strHandle   : StringHandle; {Handle to title string for empty window [1:8.1.2]}
    untitled    : Str255;     {Title string for empty window [1:2.1.1]}
    ignore      : INTEGER;    {Item code returned by alert}
    resultCode  : OSErr;     {I/O error code [1:3.1.2]}

begin {DoSaveAs}

    SetPt (dlgOrigin, DlgLeft, DlgTop);      {Set up dialog origin [1:4.1.1]}
    SFPutFile (dlgOrigin, 'Save under what file name?', '', nil, theReply);
                                           {Get file name from user [8.3.3]}

    with theReply do
        begin
            if not good then
                begin
                    Quitting := FALSE;      {Cancel Quit command, if any}
                    ErrorFlag := TRUE;       {Force exit to main event loop}
                    EXIT (DoSaveAs)         {Skip rest of operation}
                end; {if}
        end;

```

Program 8-8 Handle Save As... command

```

resultCode := GetFInfo (fName, vRefNum, theInfo); (Get Finder info [I:7.3.3])
case resultCode of

    NoErr:                                     (File already exists [8.2.8])
        if theInfo.fdType <> 'TEXT' then      (Not a text file? [I:7.3.2])
            begin
                ParamText (fName, '', '', ''); (Substitute file name into text of alert [7.4.6])
                ignore := StopAlert (wrongTypeID, NIL); (Post alert [7.4.2])

                ErrorFlag := TRUE;              (Force exit to main event loop)
                EXIT (DoSaveAs)                 (Skip rest of operation)
            end; if

    FNFErr:                                    (File not found [8.2.8])
        begin
            resultCode := Create (fName, vRefNum, 'MEDI', 'TEXT'); (Create the file [8.2.1])
            IOCheck (resultCode);                (Check for error [Prog. 8-1])
            if ErrorFlag then EXIT (DoSaveAs) (On error, exit to main event loop)
        end;

    otherwise                                (Unanticipated error)
        begin
            IOCheck (resultCode);                (Post error alert [Prog. 8.1])
            EXIT (DoSaveAs)                     (Exit to main event loop)
        end

end; case

dataHandle := Handle(GetWRefCon(TheWindow)); (Get window data [3.2.4])
HLock (dataHandle);                          (Lock data record [I:3.2.4])

theData := WDHandle(dataHandle);              (Convert to typed handle)
with theData^^ do
    begin
        SetCursor (Watch^^);                  (Indicate delay [2.5.2])
    end

```

Program 8-8 (continued)


```

if fileNumber <> 0 then           {Does window already have a file? [Prog. 5-1]}
begin
    resultCode := FSClose (fileNumber); {Close old file [8.2.2]}
    IOCheck (resultCode);             {Check for error [Prog. 8-1]}
    if ErrorFlag then                 {Error detected during close?}
    begin
        HUnlock (dataHandle); {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}
        EXIT (DoSaveAs)       {Exit to main event loop}
    end (if)
end; (if)

resultCode := FSOpen (fName, vRefNum, theFile); {Open new file [8.2.2]}
IOCheck (resultCode);             {Check for error [Prog. 8-1]}
if ErrorFlag then                 {Error detected during open?}
begin
    volNumber := 0;                {Window is left with no file: clear volume and}
    fileNumber := 0;                { file numbers in window data [Prog. 5-1] }

    strHandle := GetString (noTitleID); {Get string from resource file [I:8.1.2]}
    untitled := strHandle^^;           {Convert from handle}
    SetWindowTitle (TheWindow, untitled) {Set new window title [3.2.4]}
end (then)

else
begin
    volNumber := vRefNum;           {Save new volume and file numbers }
    fileNumber := theFile;          { in window data [Prog. 5-1] }
    SetWindowTitle (TheWindow, fName); {File name becomes new window title [3.2.4]}

    WriteFile (theFile, vRefNum) {Write window's contents to file [Prog. 8-3]}
end (else)

end; (with)

HUnlock (dataHandle)              {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}

end (with)

end; (DoSaveAs)

```

Program 8-8 (continued)

window will be left without a file—so we set its volume and file numbers to 0 and its title to *Untitled*, the same as a brand-new window created by our *DoNew* routine. Notice that, following recommended Macintosh practice, we define this standard title string as a resource and use *GetString* [I:8.1.2] to read it in. The window template used by *DoNew* contains this same string in its title field.)

Nuts and Bolts

Recall from Volume One, Chapter 6, that every file actually consists of two separate parts, or “forks”: a *data fork* and a *resource fork*. The *FSOpen* routine just opens the file’s data fork, which is normally what you want. There’s also a routine named *OpenRF* [8.2.2] for opening the resource fork. This allows you to access the resource fork directly as a stream of “raw” bytes, with no notion of its internal structure as a collection of resources. The Toolbox itself uses this routine to read and write resources; you’ll ordinarily want to use *OpenResFile* [I:6.2.1] instead, to access the resource fork at the resource level rather than the byte level.

Associated with every file is *permission* information about the kind of access that’s allowed to the file: read-only, write-only, or read/write. Read-only files can actually be opened more than once, creating any number of separate *access paths* to the same file. Each access path has its own reference number and its own independent file mark; what we’ve been calling the file reference number is technically a “path reference number.” A file with write permission, however, can only be opened once: if you try to open a second access path to the file, you’ll get back the same reference number as the first time, along with the error code *OpWrErr* (“already open for writing”).

When you use the low-level file system, you can specify the kind of access permission you want for each access path independently, provided that the file’s own permission information allows the type of access requested. (If it doesn’t, you’ll get back the “permission violation” error code, *PermErr*, when you try to open the path.) You’re allowed to have any number of access paths for reading the same file, but not more than one for writing to it. This degree of flexibility isn’t possible with the high-level file system: the high-level routine *FSOpen* always gives every access path the same permission, whatever the file itself allows. Since there’s no way to open a read-only path to a read/write file, you can’t have more than one path altogether for such a file.

REFERENCE

8.1 Volume Operations

8.1.1 Volume Information



Definitions

```
function GetVInfo
    (drive      : INTEGER;      {Drive number}
     vName      : StringPtr;    {Volume name}
     var vRefNum : INTEGER;      {Returns volume reference number}
     var freeBytes : LONGINT)    {Returns number of free bytes on volume}
    : OSErr;                    {Result code}
```



Notes

1. GetVInfo returns identifying information for the volume in a specified disk drive.
2. The drive parameter identifies the disk drive: 1 for the internal (built-in)

drive, 2 for the external drive, if any. Drive numbers greater than 2 refer to hard disk drives or other external storage devices.

3. The name of the volume in the specified drive is returned via parameter `vName` and its volume reference number via `vRefNum`.
4. Parameter `freeBytes` returns the number of bytes of free space available on the volume.
5. This routine is part of the high-level file system and is not directly available from assembly language. The trap macro calls the low-level routine `PBGetVInfo`; see *Inside Macintosh* for details.
6. The trap macro is spelled `_GetVolInfo`.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
PBGetVInfo	<code>_GetVolInfo</code>	<code>\$A007</code>

8.1.2 Current Volume



Definitions

function GetVol

<code>(vName : StringPtr;</code>	{Returns volume or directory name}
<code>var vRefNum : INTEGER)</code>	{Returns volume or directory reference number}
<code>: OSErr;</code>	{Result code}

function SetVol

<code>(vName : StringPtr;</code>	{Volume name}
<code>vRefNum : INTEGER)</code>	{Volume reference number}
<code>: OSErr;</code>	{Result code}



Notes

1. GetVol returns the name and reference number of the current volume or directory; SetVol makes a designated volume or directory current.
2. The volume or directory to be made current can be identified either by name or by reference number. The vRefNum parameter to SetVol is ignored unless vName is NIL.
3. The volume designated by vName or vRefNum must be a mounted volume; if it's a directory, it must reside on a mounted volume.
4. These routines are part of the high-level file system and are not directly available from assembly language. The trap macros call the low-level routines PBGetVol and PBSetVol; see *Inside Macintosh* for details.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
PBGetVol	__GetVol	\$A014
PBSetVol	__SetVol	\$A015

8.1.3 Flushing, Ejecting, and Unmounting



Definitions

```

function FlushVol
    (vName   : StringPtr;    {Volume name}
     vRefNum : INTEGER)      {Volume reference number}
    : OSErr;                 {Result code}

function Eject
    (vName   : StringPtr;    {Volume name}
     vRefNum : INTEGER)      {Volume reference number}
    : OSErr;                 {Result code}

function UnmountVol
    (vName   : StringPtr;    {Volume name}
     vRefNum : INTEGER)      {Volume reference number}
    : OSErr;                 {Result code}
  
```



Notes

1. FlushVol writes out the contents of a volume buffer from memory to the disk; Eject places a volume logically off-line and physically ejects it from the disk drive; UnmountVol unmounts a volume, removing all trace of it from the file system.
2. In each case, the volume to be operated on can be identified either by name or by reference number. The vRefNum parameter is ignored unless vName is NIL.
3. The volume designated by vName or vRefNum must be a mounted volume.
4. There is no high-level routine for explicitly mounting a volume, since the Toolbox handles this task automatically whenever a disk is inserted.
5. In addition to the contents of the volume buffer, FlushVol also writes out the directory information describing the volume's contents if it has changed since the volume was last mounted or flushed.
6. Before physically ejecting the volume, Eject flushes the volume buffer and directory information and releases most of the memory space they occupy. A small amount of directory information (94 bytes for a flat volume, 178 for a hierarchical one) is retained in memory, so that the volume and its contents remain known to the file system.
7. UnmountVol removes all information pertaining to a volume from memory

and releases the space it occupies. All open files on the volume are closed, its volume buffer and directory information are flushed, and the volume is physically ejected from the disk drive. The volume and its contents become unknown to the file system.

8. The startup volume should never be unmounted; it contains important system information that must remain accessible at all times, such as the Finder and the system resource file.
9. These routines are part of the high-level file system and are not directly available from assembly language. The trap macros call the low-level routines `PBFlushVol`, `PBEject`, and `PBUnmountVol`; there are also low-level routines named `PBOffLine`, for placing a volume off-line without physically ejecting it, and `PBMountVol`, for explicitly mounting a volume. See *Inside Macintosh* for details.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
<code>PBFlushVol</code>	<code>_FlushVol</code>	<code>\$A013</code>
<code>PBEject</code>	<code>_Eject</code>	<code>\$A017</code>
<code>PBOffLine</code>	<code>_OffLine</code>	<code>\$A035</code>
<code>PBMountVol</code>	<code>_MountVol</code>	<code>\$A00F</code>
<code>PBUnmountVol</code>	<code>_UnmountVol</code>	<code>\$A00E</code>

8.2 File Operations

8.2.1 Creating Files



Definitions

```
function Create
    (fName      : Str255;      {File name}
     vRefNum    : INTEGER;    {Volume or directory reference number}
     creator    : OSType;     {Signature of creator program}
     fileType   : OSType)     {File type}
    : OSErr;                  {Result code}
```



Notes

1. This routine creates a new file with a given name on a specified volume or directory.
2. The new file is initially unlocked and empty.
3. The file's creation and modification dates are set from the built-in clock chip.
4. The parameters creator and fileType give the new file's creator signature and file type [I:7.3.1] for use by the Finder.
5. The new file is not opened and is not assigned a file reference number. Call FSOpen [8.2.2] after Create to open the file for writing.
6. If the volume already contains a file with the given name, the error code DupFNErr ("duplicate file name") [8.2.8] is returned and no new file is created.
7. This routine is part of the high-level file system and is not directly available from assembly language. The trap macro calls the low-level routine PBCreate; see *Inside Macintosh* for details.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
PBCreate	_Create	\$A008

8.2.2 Opening and Closing Files



Definitions

function FSOpen

(fName	: Str255;	{File name}
vRefNum	: INTEGER;	{Volume or directory reference number}
var fRefNum	: INTEGER)	{Returns file reference number}
: OSErr;		{Result code}

function OpenRF

(fName	: Str255;	{File name}
vRefNum	: INTEGER;	{Volume or directory reference number}
var fRefNum	: INTEGER)	{Returns file reference number}
: OSErr;		{Result code}

function FSClose

(fRefNum : INTEGER)	{File reference number}
: OSErr;	{Result code}



Notes

1. FSOpen opens an existing file for reading or writing.
2. The file is identified by name, along with a volume or directory reference number.
3. The file is assigned a file reference number, returned via the variable parameter fRefNum. You then use this number to identify the file for all further operations.
4. For files that allow read permission only, each call to FSOpen creates a

separate *access path* to the file, with its own reference number and its own independent read position, or *mark* [8.2.4].

5. For files that allow write or read/write permission, only one access path with such permission may be open at a time. Subsequent calls to `FSOpen` will return the reference number of the already existing path, along with the error code `OpWrErr` ("already open for writing") [8.2.8]. (When using the low-level file system, however, it's possible to open multiple access paths to the same file for reading, in addition to the one and only path with write permission.)
6. `OpenRF` opens a file's resource fork instead of its data fork.
7. `OpenRF` is used by the Toolbox itself, to access the contents of the resource fork directly at the "raw" byte level. For most purposes you'll want to use `OpenResFile` [I:6.2.1] instead, to treat the resource fork specifically as a collection of resources.
8. `FSClose` closes an access path to a file. Once closed, the path can no longer be used to access the file.
9. If the access path had write permission, the contents of the volume buffer are written out to the disk and the file's directory information is updated. In particular, the file's modification date is set to the current date and time on the built-in clock chip.
10. The file's directory information is updated in memory only; it is *not* automatically written out to the disk. To make sure the disk is correctly updated, call `FlushVol` [8.1.3] immediately after closing the file.
11. These routines are part of the high-level file system and are not directly available from assembly language. The trap macros call the low-level routines `PBOpen`, `PBOpenRF`, and `PBClose`; see *Inside Macintosh* for details.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
<code>PBOpen</code>	<code>_Open</code>	<code>\$A000</code>
<code>PBOpenRF</code>	<code>_OpenRF</code>	<code>\$A00A</code>
<code>PBClose</code>	<code>_Close</code>	<code>\$A001</code>

8.2.3 Reading and Writing



Definitions

function FSRead

(fRefNum	: INTEGER;	{File reference number}
var byteCount	: LONGINT;	{Number of bytes to read}
toAddr	: Ptr)	{Address to read to}
: OSErr;		{Result code}

function FSWrite

(fRefNum	: INTEGER;	{File reference number}
var byteCount	: LONGINT;	{Number of bytes to write}
fromAddr	: Ptr)	{Address to write from}
: OSErr;		{Result code}



Notes

1. These routines transfer information to or from a file.
2. The number of bytes specified by byteCount are read to or written from consecutive locations in memory, beginning at the address designated by the pointer toAddr or fromAddr.
3. The transfer begins at the current position of the file's mark; as the transfer proceeds, the mark is advanced to consecutive positions within the file.
4. If the mark reaches the logical end-of-file during a write, the logical end-of-file begins to advance in step with the mark, lengthening the file as it goes. New allocation blocks are added to the file as needed, advancing the physical end-of-file accordingly.
5. If the mark reaches the logical end-of-file during a read, the operation terminates and the error code EOFErr [8.2.8] is returned. The mark is left positioned at the logical end-of-file.
6. On completion of either a read or a write, the byteCount parameter returns the number of bytes actually transferred.
7. These routines are part of the high-level file system and are not directly available from assembly language. The trap macros call the low-level routines PBRead and PBWrite; see *Inside Macintosh* for details.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
PBRead	_Read	\$A002
PBWrite	_Write	\$A003

8.2.4 File Mark



Definitions

function GetFPos

```
(fRefNum : INTEGER; {File reference number}
var markPos : LONGINT) {Returns current mark position in bytes}
: OSErr; {Result code}
```

function SetFPos

```
(fRefNum : INTEGER; {File reference number}
markBase : INTEGER; {Base to set mark from}
markOffset : LONGINT) {Offset in bytes relative to base}
: OSErr; {Result code}
```

const

```
FSAtMark = 0; {Position at current mark}
FSFromStart = 1; {Position relative to start of file}
FSFromLEOF = 2; {Position relative to logical end-of-file}
FSFromMark = 3; {Position relative to current mark}
```



Notes

1. GetFPos returns the current byte position of a file's mark in the variable parameter markPos; SetFPos sets the position of the mark.
2. All reading and writing takes place at the mark.
3. The new position of the mark is given as an offset relative to a specified base position within the file.
4. The offset (markOffset) may be positive (toward the end of the file) or negative (toward the beginning).

5. The base position (markBase) may be the beginning of the file (FSFromStart), the logical end-of-file (FSFromLEOF), or the current mark position (FSFromMark).
6. A base position of FSAtMark refers unconditionally to the current mark position; the offset is ignored. Thus a call to SetFPos with markBase equal to FSAtMark has no effect at all.
7. If the specified position is beyond the logical end-of-file, the mark is positioned at the logical end-of-file and the error code EOFErr [8.2.8] is returned.
8. If the specified position is negative (before the beginning of the file), the mark is positioned at the beginning of the file and the error code PosErr ("position error") [8.2.8] is returned.
9. These routines are part of the high-level file system and are not directly available from assembly language. The trap macros call the low-level routines PBGetFPos and PBSetFPos; see *Inside Macintosh* for details.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
PBGetFPos	__GetFPos	\$A018
PBSetFPos	__SetFPos	\$A044

8.2.5 End-of-File



Definitions

function GetEOF

(fRefNum	: INTEGER;	{File reference number}
var logicalEOF	: LONGINT)	{Returns current logical end-of-file in bytes}
: OSErr;		{Result code}

function SetEOF

(fRefNum	: INTEGER;	{File reference number}
logicalEOF	: LONGINT)	{New logical end-of-file in bytes}
: OSErr;		{Result code}

function Allocate

(fRefNum	: INTEGER;	{File reference number}
var byteCount	: LONGINT)	{Number of bytes to allocate}
: OSErr;		{Result code}



Notes

1. GetEOF returns the current byte position of a file's logical end-of-file; SetEOF sets it.
2. If the logical end-of-file is set beyond the current physical end-of-file, the file is lengthened by adding new allocation blocks at the end.
3. If the logical end-of-file is set more than one full allocation block short of the physical end-of-file, the file is shortened by releasing unneeded allocation blocks from the end.
4. Setting the logical end-of-file to 0 releases all disk space associated with the file.
5. Allocate adds enough new allocation blocks to the end of a file to lengthen it physically by at least a specified number of bytes.
6. Notice that the amount of disk space to be added to the file is expressed in *bytes*, not in allocation blocks or disk sectors. The value given for byteCount will be rounded upward to the next whole number of allocation blocks.
7. The actual number of bytes added to the file is returned via this same byteCount parameter.
8. Allocate has no effect on the logical end-of-file.
9. If there isn't enough free space on the volume to lengthen the file as

requested, both SetEOF and Allocate return the error code DskFulErr ("disk full") [8.2.8]. In this case, SetEOF doesn't allocate any additional space to the file and leaves its logical end-of-file unchanged; Allocate allocates all available space on the volume.

10. These routines are part of the high-level file system and are not directly available from assembly language. The trap macros call the low-level routines PBGetEOF, PBSetEOF and PBAAllocate; see *Inside Macintosh* for details.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
PBGetEOF	__GetEOF	\$A011
PBSetEOF	__SetEOF	\$A012
PBAAllocate	__Allocate	\$A010

8.2.6 Locking and Unlocking Files



Definitions

```

function SetFLock
    (fName   : Str255;      {File name}
     vRefNum : INTEGER)     {Volume or directory reference number}
    : OSErr;               {Result code}

function RstFLock
    (fName   : Str255;      {File name}
     vRefNum : INTEGER)     {Volume or directory reference number}
    : OSErr;               {Result code}

```




Notes

1. SetFlock locks a file; RstFlock ("reset file lock") unlocks it.
2. A locked file can't be opened for writing; it also can't be deleted or renamed.
3. Locking or unlocking a file only affects subsequent attempts to open an access path to the file for writing; it has no effect on existing access paths.
4. Since the file is identified by volume (or directory) and file name rather than by reference number, it needn't be open in order to lock or unlock it.
5. These routines are part of the high-level file system and are not directly available from assembly language. The trap macros call the low-level routines PBSetFlock and PBRstFlock; see *Inside Macintosh* for details.
6. The trap macros are spelled __SetFilLock and __RstFilLock.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
PBSetFlock	__SetFilLock	\$A041
PBRstFlock	__RstFilLock	\$A042

8.2.7 Deleting and Renaming Files



Definitions

function FSDelete

(fName	: Str255;	{File name}
vRefNum	: INTEGER)	{Volume or directory reference number}
	: OSErr;	{Result code}

function Rename

(oldName	: Str255;	{Old file name}
vRefNum	: INTEGER;	{Volume or directory reference number}
newName	: Str255)	{New file name}
	: OSErr;	{Result code}



Notes

1. FSDelete removes a file from its volume; Rename changes its name.
2. Deleting a file removes both its data and resource forks.
3. A file must be closed in order to delete it. If there are any access paths open to the file, the error code FBSyErr ("file busy") [8.2.8] is returned and the file is not deleted.
4. A file can be renamed whether it's open or closed. Existing access paths are not affected.
5. If oldName is the name of a volume rather than a file, the volume will be renamed.
6. A locked file cannot be deleted or renamed.
7. These routines are part of the high-level file system and are not directly available from assembly language. The trap macros call the low-level routines PBDelete and PBRename; see *Inside Macintosh* for details.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word
PBDelete	_Delete	\$A009
PBRename	_Rename	\$A00B

8.2.8 Error Reporting



Definitions

const

NoErr	=	0;	{No error}
DirFulErr	=	-33;	{Directory full}
DskFulErr	=	-34;	{Disk full}
NSVErr	=	-35;	{No such volume}
IOErr	=	-36;	{Disk I/O error}
BdNamErr	=	-37;	{Bad name}
FNOpnErr	=	-38;	{File not open}
EOFErr	=	-39;	{Attempt to read past end-of-file}
PosErr	=	-40;	{Attempt to position before start of file}
MFullErr	=	-41;	{Memory (system heap) full}
TMFOErr	=	-42;	{Too many files open (more than 12)}
FNFErr	=	-43;	{File not found}
WPrErr	=	-44;	{Disk is write-protected}
FLckdErr	=	-45;	{File locked}
VLckdErr	=	-46;	{Volume locked}
FBsyErr	=	-47;	{File busy}
DupFNErr	=	-48;	{Duplicate file name}
OpWrErr	=	-49;	{File already open for writing}
ParamErr	=	-50;	{Invalid parameter list}
RfNumErr	=	-51;	{Invalid reference number}
GFPErr	=	-52;	{Error during GetFPos}
VolOffLinErr	=	-53;	{Volume off-line}
PermErr	=	-54;	{Permission violation}
VolOnLinErr	=	-55;	{Volume already on-line}
NSDrvErr	=	-56;	{No such drive}
NoMacDskErr	=	-57;	{Non-Macintosh disk}
ExtFSErr	=	-58;	{External file system}
FSRnErr	=	-59;	{Unable to rename file}
BadMDBErr	=	-60;	{Bad master directory block}
WrPermErr	=	-61;	{No write permission}
FirstDskErr	=	-84;	{Low-level disk error}
LastDskErr	=	-64;	{Low-level disk error}



Notes

1. A result code of 0 (NoErr) signals that an operation was completed successfully.
2. Any result code between FirstDskErr and LastDskErr, inclusive, denotes a low-level disk error of some sort. See Appendix E for a complete listing of these low-level error codes.
3. In assembly language, the result code is returned in the low-order word of register D0.
4. The assembly-language constants for the various result codes have the same names and values listed above.

8.3 The Standard File Package

8.3.1 Reply Records



Definitions

type

SFReply = record

good	: BOOLEAN;	{Did user confirm file selection?}
copy	: BOOLEAN;	{Unused}
fType	: OSType;	{File type}
vRefNum	: INTEGER;	{Volume or directory reference number}
version	: INTEGER;	{File version number}
fName	: STRING[63]	{File name}
end;		



Notes

1. A reply record is the data structure through which the Standard File Package returns information about a file selected by the user to be read or written.
2. The good field tells whether the user confirmed or canceled the file selection. It will be TRUE if the selection was confirmed with the Open or Save button (or their equivalents), FALSE if the selection was canceled with the Cancel button.
3. fType is the Finder file type [I:7.3.1] of the selected file. The contents of

this field are meaningful only for a file to be read [8.3.2], not for one to be written [8.3.3].

4. `vRefNum` is the reference number of the volume or directory containing the selected file.
5. The current Standard File Package does not support file version numbers; the version field of the reply record is always set to 0.
6. `fName` is the name of the selected file.
7. The `fName` field, and hence the overall reply record, is actually of variable length, just long enough to hold the specified file name. The field is in Pascal string format, with a 1-byte length count followed by the actual characters of the file name.
8. File names are actually limited to not more than 31 characters, even though the reply record will nominally accommodate as many as 63.
9. Reply records are part of the Standard File Package, and are defined in the interface file `PackIntf`. See Volume One, Chapter 7, for further information on the package mechanism.

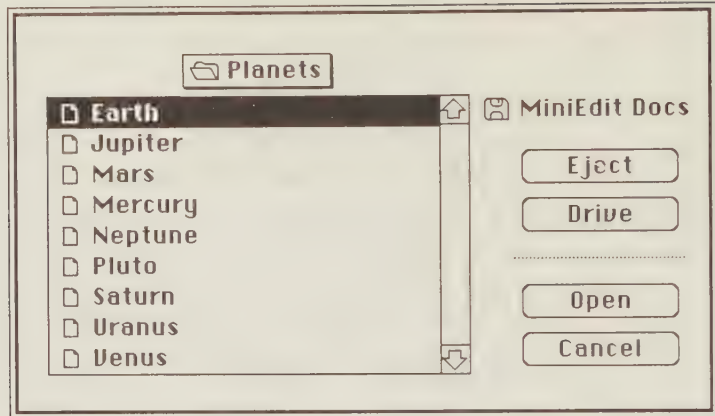


Assembly Language Information

Field offsets in a reply record:

(Pascal) Field name	(Assembly) Offset name	Offset in bytes
<code>good</code>	<code>rGood</code>	0
<code>fType</code>	<code>rType</code>	2
<code>vRefNum</code>	<code>rVolume</code>	6
<code>version</code>	<code>rVersion</code>	8
<code>fName</code>	<code>rName</code>	10

8.3.2 File to Read From



Get File dialog



Definitions

procedure SFGetFile

(topLeft	: Point;	{Top-left corner of dialog box in screen coordinates}
promptString	: Str255;	{Unused}
fileFilter	: ProcPtr;	{Filter function}
numTypes	: INTEGER;	{Number of file types}
typeList	: SFTYPEList;	{File types to display}
dialogHook	: ProcPtr;	{Dialog hook function}
var reply	: SFReply;	{Returns identifying information for file to be read}

type

SFTYPEList = array [0..3] of OSType;



Notes

1. SFGetFile displays the dialog box shown in the figure, allowing the user to select a file to be read from the disk.
2. You supply an existing reply record [8.3.1] as the reply parameter; SFGetFile will fill in the fields of this record with identifying information about the selected file.
3. SFGetFile handles all events until the user dismisses the dialog box, either

by clicking the Open or Cancel button, pressing the Return or Enter key, or double-clicking a file name.

4. The `topLeft` parameter gives the location of the dialog box in *global (screen) coordinates*.
5. The user selects a file by clicking the file name with the mouse and clicking the Open button (or pressing Return or Enter), or just by double-clicking the file name.
6. The Open button is automatically deactivated when no file is selected in the file list.
7. If the selected name is that of a file, the `good` field of the reply record is set to TRUE and the `fName`, `vRefNum`, and `fType` fields are filled in to refer to the file selected. The version field is always set to 0.
8. If the selected name is that of a folder, the contents of that folder are displayed in the file list and `SFGetFile` keeps control, allowing the user to continue navigating the folder hierarchy.
9. The name of the currently selected volume or folder is displayed above the file list. Pressing the mouse button over this name displays a pulldown menu of enclosing folders for backtracking upward through the folder hierarchy. If the menu is too long to fit within the boundaries of the file list, it is truncated to fit and can be scrolled by dragging the mouse beyond its top or bottom edge.
10. Scrolling of the file list is handled automatically when the user manipulates the scroll bar with the mouse. If the file list is short enough to be displayed all at once, the scroll bar is deactivated.
11. The file list can also be scrolled with the up and down arrow keys on the keyboard or keypad. When combined with the Command key, the up and down arrows move upward and downward through the folder hierarchy.
12. If the user types plain text characters on the keyboard, the first file name beginning with those characters is automatically selected as if it had been clicked with the mouse. If there is no file name beginning with the given characters, the next name following them alphabetically is selected.
13. If the user dismisses the dialog with the Cancel button, `SFGetFile` returns with the `good` field of the reply record set to FALSE and the remaining fields undefined.
14. The Eject button ejects the disk currently in the disk drive. When no disk is in the drive or the current volume can't be ejected (if it's a hard disk, for example), this button is deactivated. Disks can also be ejected by typing Command-Shift-1 for the internal disk drive, Command-Shift-2 for the external.
15. The Drive button (or the Tab key) switches attention between the inter-

nal and external disk drives, or among the available volumes on a multiple-volume device such as a hard disk. If only one volume is on-line (for instance, if there's no disk in the other drive), this button is deactivated; if no external disk drive is connected, the button is not displayed.

16. All disk-inserted events are handled automatically. The volume name of the disk currently in the drive is displayed above the Eject button in the dialog box.
17. If an uninitialized or otherwise unreadable disk is inserted, `DIBadMount` [8.4.1] is called to allow the user to initialize it.
18. `typeList` is a list of up to four file types [I:7.3.1]; `numTypes` tells how many. Only files of the specified types will be displayed in the file list for selection.
19. Even files that are flagged as invisible on the Finder desktop [I:7.3.2] will be displayed in the file list if they are of one of the specified types.
20. If `numTypes` = -1, all files in the directory will be displayed, regardless of type.
21. `fileFilter` is a pointer to an optional *filter function* that you can use to selectively omit files of the specified types from the file list. This function accepts one parameter, a pointer to a parameter block of the kind used by the low-level file system (see *Inside Macintosh*). It returns a Boolean result of TRUE if the file should be omitted from the displayed file list, FALSE if it should be included. If the `fileFilter` parameter is NIL, no extra filtering will be performed.
22. The `dialogHook` parameter is used for replacing the standard dialog box with a nonstandard one of your own, or for handling the standard one in a nonstandard way; see *Inside Macintosh* for details. Pass NIL for this parameter to use the standard dialog as described above.
23. The `promptString` parameter is a vestige of earlier versions of the Toolbox, and is no longer used.
24. `SFGetFile` is part of the Standard File Package, and is defined in the interface file `PackIntf`. See Volume One, Chapter 7, for further information on the package mechanism.
25. The trap macro for this routine expands to call `__Pack3` [I:7.2.1] with the routine selector given below.

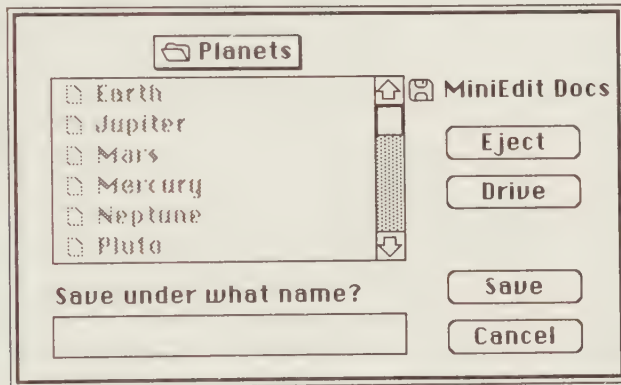


Assembly Language Information

Trap macro and routine selector:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word	Routine selector
SFGetFile	_SFGetFile	\$A9EA	2

8.3.3 File to Write To



Put File dialog



Definitions

```

procedure SFPutFile
  (topLeft      : Point;      {Top-left corner of dialog box in screen coordinates}
   promptString : Str255;    {Prompting string}
   initText     : Str255;    {Initial contents of text box}
   dialogHook   : ProcPtr;   {Dialog hook function}
   var reply    : SFReply);  {Returns identifying information for file to be written}
  
```

Notes

1. SFPutFile displays the dialog box shown in the figure, allowing the user to supply a file name for writing to the disk.
2. You supply an existing reply record [8.3.1] as the reply parameter; SFPutFile will fill in the fields of this record with the identifying information supplied by the user.
3. SFPutFile handles all events until the user dismisses the dialog box, either by clicking the Save or Cancel button or by pressing the Return or Enter key.
4. The topLeft parameter gives the location of the dialog box in *global (screen) coordinates*.
5. The user supplies a file name by typing it into the dialog's text box and either clicking the Save button or pressing the Return or Enter key.
6. The name of the currently selected volume or folder is displayed above a scrollable list of its contents, with ordinary document files "dimmed" so that only folders (subdirectories) can be selected. Double-clicking on any folder name in the list makes it the current folder and in turn displays its contents, allowing the user to continue navigating the folder hierarchy.
7. Pressing the mouse button over the current folder name displays a pulldown menu of enclosing folders for backtracking upward through the folder hierarchy. If the menu is too long to fit within the boundaries of the file list, it is truncated to fit and can be scrolled by dragging the mouse beyond its top or bottom edge.
8. Scrolling of the file list is handled automatically when the user manipulates the scroll bar with the mouse. If the file list is short enough to be displayed all at once, the scroll bar is deactivated.
9. The file list can also be scrolled with the up and down arrow keys on the keyboard or keypad. When combined with the Command key, the up and down arrows move upward and downward through the folder hierarchy.
10. The text box supports standard text selection with the mouse (including extended selection with the Shift key, double-click word selection, and automatic horizontal scrolling), text insertion and replacement from the keyboard, and deletion with the Backspace key.
11. Command-key combinations for the standard editing commands are not supported; if you want to provide them, you have to handle them yourself with a dialog hook function (see note 22).
12. When the user clicks the Save button (or presses Return or Enter), SFPutFile returns with the good field of the reply record set to TRUE. The fName and vRefNum fields are filled in with the specified file name and the

reference number of the selected volume or folder. The `fType` field is unused and should be ignored; the version field is always set to 0.

13. The Save button is automatically deactivated when the text box is empty or the current volume is write-protected.
14. If the dialog is dismissed with the Cancel button, `SFPutFile` returns with the `good` field of the reply record set to `FALSE` and the remaining fields undefined.
15. If the user supplies a file name that already exists on the disk, an alert box is displayed asking whether to replace the existing file of that name. If the user answers Yes, the dialog is dismissed and the file name is returned to the calling program in the reply record; if No, the dialog remains displayed, allowing the user to change the file name and try again.
16. The `initText` parameter specifies the initial contents of the text box when the dialog is first displayed. The entire contents of the box are initially selected, so that the user can replace them just by typing from the keyboard.
17. The `promptString` parameter is displayed as a static text item above the text box.
18. The Eject button ejects the disk currently in the disk drive. When no disk is in the drive or the current volume can't be ejected (if it's a hard disk, for example), this button is deactivated. Disks can also be ejected by typing Command-Shift-1 for the internal disk drive, Command-Shift-2 for the external.
19. The Drive button (or the Tab key) switches attention between the internal and external disk drives, or among the available volumes on a multiple-volume device such as a hard disk. If only one volume is on-line (for instance, if there's no disk in the other drive), this button is deactivated; if no external disk drive is connected, the button is not displayed.
20. All disk-inserted events are handled automatically. The volume name of the disk currently in the drive is displayed above the Eject button in the dialog box.
21. If an uninitialized or otherwise unreadable disk is inserted, `DIBadMount` [8.4.1] is called to allow the user to initialize it.
22. The `dialogHook` parameter is used for replacing the standard dialog box with a nonstandard one of your own, or for handling the standard one in a nonstandard way; see *Inside Macintosh* for details. Pass `NIL` for this parameter to use the standard dialog as described above.
23. `SFPutFile` is part of the Standard File Package, and is defined in the interface file `PackIntf`. See Volume One, Chapter 7, for further information on the package mechanism.

24. The trap macro for this routine expands to call `__Pack3 [I:7.2.1]` with the routine selector given below.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro and routine selector:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word	Routine selector
SFPutFile	__SFPutFile	\$A9EA	1

8.4 Disk Initialization

8.4.1 Initializing a Disk



Disk initialization alert



Definitions

```
function DIBadMount
    (topLeft      : Point;      {Top-left corner of dialog box in screen coordinates}
     eventMessage : LONGINT)    {Event message from disk-inserted event}
    : INTEGER;                {Result code}
```

Notes

1. DIBadMount takes whatever action is needed when an error occurs in mounting a volume.
2. When a disk is inserted in a disk drive, the Toolbox automatically attempts to mount the disk before reporting the disk-inserted event to your program. The result code returned by this mounting operation is placed in the high-order word of the event message, with the drive number in the low-order word.
3. On receiving a disk-inserted event with a nonzero result code, pass the event message to DIBadMount to handle the error.
4. If the error cannot be corrected by initializing the disk, DIBadMount ejects the disk and returns the error code from the event message as its function result.
5. If the error can be corrected by initializing the disk, an alert box is displayed describing the nature of the problem—

This disk is unreadable

or

This disk is damaged

or

This is not a Macintosh disk

—and asking the user whether to initialize the disk or eject it. The `topLeft` parameter tells where on the screen this alert box should be displayed, in *global (screen) coordinates*.

6. If the user clicks the Eject button (or presses the Return or Enter key), the disk is ejected and a positive function result of 1 is returned.
7. If the user clicks the One-Sided or Two-Sided button, DIBadMount proceeds to initialize the disk as requested. Then it asks the user with a dialog box to supply a volume name, and tries again to mount the volume. The result code from this mounting operation is returned as the function result.
8. If the disk has been inserted in a single-sided drive, just one button labeled Initialize is displayed in place of the two buttons One-Sided and Two-Sided.
9. While the disk is being initialized, an alert box is displayed with the message

Initializing disk...

10. In the event of an error during initialization, another alert appears with the message

Initialization failed!

After the user dismisses this alert, DIBadMount returns the error code from the initialization attempt as its function result. This will be a low-level disk error between FirstDskErr and LastDskErr [8.2.8]; see Appendix E for a complete listing of these low-level error codes.

11. DIBadMount is part of the Disk Initialization Package, and is defined in the interface file PackIntf. See Volume One, Chapter 7, for further information on the package mechanism.
12. If the Disk Initialization Package and its resources aren't available in memory when an uninitialized disk is inserted, the user will be asked to switch disks so they can be loaded from the system resource file. This in turn makes the disk to be initialized unavailable when needed; DIBadMount will simply return with a positive function result of 2. You can avoid this anomaly by preloading the Disk Initialization Package with DILoad [8.4.3] before any operation that may eject the system disk.
13. The trap macro for this routine expands to call `_Pack2` [I:7.2.1] with the routine selector given below.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macro and routine selector:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word	Routine selector
DIBadMount	<code>_DIBadMount</code>	<code>\$A9E9</code>	0

8.4.2 Initialization Stages



Definitions

```

function DIFormat
    (drive : INTEGER)      {Drive number}
    : OSErr;               {Result code}

function DVerify
    (drive : INTEGER)      {Drive number}
    : OSErr;               {Result code}

function DIZero
    (drive : INTEGER;      {Drive number}
     vName : Str255)       {Volume name}
    : OSErr;               {Result code}
  
```



Notes

1. These routines perform the three stages of disk initialization as separate operations. You don't normally call them yourself; they're called for you by `DIBadMount` [8.4.1].
2. `DIFormat` formats the disk into sectors; `DVerify` verifies the formatting; `DIZero` writes volume information, a block map, and a file directory representing an empty volume (one containing no files).
3. `DIZero` permanently destroys any files the disk may previously have contained.
4. `DIFormat` and `DVerify` return result codes for their respective operations. If the operation is successful, the result will be 0 (`NoErr`); otherwise it will be a low-level disk error between `FirstDskErr` and `LastDskErr` [8.2.8]. See Appendix E for a complete listing of these low-level error codes.
5. `DIZero` returns a low-level disk error if the zeroing operation fails; otherwise it proceeds to mount the new volume and returns the result code from the mounting operation.
6. These routines are part of the Disk Initialization Package, and are defined in the interface file `PackIntf`. See Volume One, Chapter 7, for further information on the package mechanism.
7. The trap macros for these routines expand to call `__Pack2` [I:7.2.1] with the routine selectors given below.



Assembly Language Information

Trap macros and routine selectors:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word	Routine selector
DIFormat	__DIFormat	\$A9E9	6
DIVerify	__DIVerify	\$A9E9	8
DIZero	__DIZero	\$A9E9	10

8.4.3 Preloading the Disk Initialization Code



Definitions

```
procedure DILoad;
procedure DIUnload;
```



Notes

1. DILoad preloads the Disk Initialization Package and its resources from the system resource file and makes them unpurgeable from the heap; DIUnload makes them purgeable again, so that the space they occupy can be reused.
2. Call DILoad before ejecting the system disk from the disk drive, or before any operation that may cause it to be ejected. This ensures that the Disk Initialization Package will be available in memory if needed, and prevents the anomalous situation described in [8.4.1, note 12].
3. Call DIUnload when the Disk Initialization Package is no longer needed in memory (for instance, when the system disk is reinserted in the disk drive).
4. The Standard File Package routines SFGetFile [8.3.2] and SFPutFile [8.3.3] automatically call DILoad and DIUnload for you, so there's no need to call them yourself when using the Standard File Package.
5. These routines are part of the Disk Initialization Package, and are defined in the interface file PackIntf. See Volume One, Chapter 7, for further information on the package mechanism.

6. The trap macros for these routines expand to call `__Pack2 [I:7.2.1]` with the routine selectors given below.

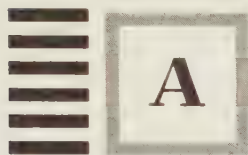


Assembly Language Information

Trap macros and routine selectors:

(Pascal) Routine name	(Assembly) Trap macro	Trap word	Routine selector
DILoad	__DILoad	\$A9E9	2
DIUnload	__DIUnload	\$A9E9	4

APPENDIX



Volume Two Toolbox Summary

Chapter 2 Events

2.1 Internal Representation of Events

2.1.1 Event Records

type

```
EventRecord = record
    what      : INTEGER;    {Event type}
    message   : LONGINT;    {Type-dependent information}
    when      : LONGINT;    {Time of event on system clock}
    where     : Point;      {Mouse position in global (screen) coordinates}
    modifiers : INTEGER     {State of modifier keys and mouse button}
end;
```


2.1.2 Event Types

const

NullEvent	= 0;	{Nothing happened}
MouseDown	= 1;	{Mouse button pressed}
MouseUp	= 2;	{Mouse button released}
KeyDown	= 3;	{Key pressed}
KeyUp	= 4;	{Key released}
AutoKey	= 5;	{Automatic keyboard repeat}
UpdateEvt	= 6;	{Window must be redrawn}
DiskEvt	= 7;	{Disk inserted}
ActivateEvt	= 8;	{Window activated or deactivated}
NetworkEvt	= 10;	{Network event (reserved for system use)}
DriverEvt	= 11;	{I/O driver event (reserved for system use)}
App1Evt	= 12;	{Available for application use}
App2Evt	= 13;	{Available for application use}
App3Evt	= 14;	{Available for application use}
App4Evt	= 15;	{Available for application use (also used by Switcher)}

2.1.3 Event Masks

const

MDownMask	= \$0002;	{Mouse-down event}
MUpMask	= \$0004;	{Mouse-up event}
KeyDownMask	= \$0008;	{Key-down event}
KeyUpMask	= \$0010;	{Key-up event}
AutoKeyMask	= \$0020;	{Auto-key event}
UpdateMask	= \$0040;	{Update event}
DiskMask	= \$0080;	{Disk-inserted event}
ActivMask	= \$0100;	{Activate/deactivate event}
NetworkMask	= \$0400;	{Network event (reserved for system use)}
DriverMask	= \$0800;	{I/O driver event (reserved for system use)}
App1Mask	= \$1000;	{Application-defined event}
App2Mask	= \$2000;	{Application-defined event}
App3Mask	= \$4000;	{Application-defined event}
App4Mask	= \$8000;	{Application-defined event (also used by Switcher)}
EveryEvent	= \$FFFF;	{Any event}

2.1.4 Event Messages

const

KeyCodeMask	= \$0000FF00;	{Mask for extracting key code from keyboard event}
CharCodeMask	= \$000000FF;	{Mask for extracting character code from keyboard event}

2.1.5 Event Modifiers

const

OptionKey	= \$0800;	{Option key}
AlphaLock	= \$0400;	{Caps Lock key}
ShiftKey	= \$0200;	{Shift key}
CmdKey	= \$0100;	{Command key}
BtnState	= \$0080;	{Mouse button}
ActiveFlag	= \$0001;	{Activate or deactivate event?}

2.2 Event Reporting

2.2.1 Retrieving Events

function	GetNextEvent		
	(mask	: INTEGER;	{Mask designating event types of interest}
	var theEvent	: EventRecord)	{Returns information about event}
		: BOOLEAN;	{Should application respond to event?}
function	EventAvail		
	(mask	: INTEGER;	{Mask designating event types of interest}
	var theEvent	: EventRecord)	{Returns information about event}
		: BOOLEAN;	{Should application respond to event?}

2.3 Posting and Removing Events

2.3.1 Emptying the Event Queue

procedure	FlushEvents		
	(whichMask	: INTEGER;	{Event types to be flushed}
	stopMask	: INTEGER);	{Event types on which to stop}

2.3.2 Posting Events

function	PostEvent		
	(eventType	: INTEGER;	{Type of event}
	message	: LONGINT)	{Event message}
		: OSErr;	{Result code}
procedure	SetEventMask		
	(newMask	: INTEGER);	{New setting of system event mask}

2.4 The Mouse

2.4.1 Reading the Mouse Position

procedure GetMouse
 (var mouseLoc : Point); {Returns mouse location in local (window) coordinates}

2.4.2 Reading the Mouse Button

function Button
 : BOOLEAN; {Is mouse button down?}

function StillDown
 : BOOLEAN; {Is mouse button still down from previous press?}

function WaitMouseUp
 : BOOLEAN; {Is mouse button still down from previous press?}

2.5 The Cursor

2.5.1 Cursor Records

type
 CursHandle = ^CursPtr;
 CursPtr = ^Cursor;
 Cursor = **record**
 data : Bits16; {Cursor image}
 mask : Bits16; {Transfer mask}
 hotSpot : Point {Point coinciding with mouse}
 end;

Bits16 = **array** [0..15] of INTEGER; {16 rows of 16 bits each}

2.5.2 Setting the Cursor

procedure InitCursor;

procedure SetCursor
 (newCursor : Cursor); {Cursor to be made current}

function GetCursor
 (cursorID : INTEGER) {Resource ID of desired cursor}
 : CursHandle; {Handle to cursor in memory}

var
 Arrow : Cursor; {Standard arrow cursor (for general use)}

const
 IBeamCursor = 1; {Resource ID for I-beam cursor (for text selection)}
 CrossCursor = 2; {Resource ID for cross cursor (for graphics selection)}
 PlusCursor = 3; {Resource ID for plus-sign cursor (for "structured selection")}
 WatchCursor = 4; {Resource ID for wristwatch cursor ("wait a minute")}

2.5.3 Showing and Hiding the Cursor

procedure HideCursor;

procedure ShowCursor;

2.5.4 Obscuring and Shielding the Cursor

procedure ObscureCursor;

procedure ShieldCursor
 (shieldRect : Rect; {Shield rectangle}
 globalOrigin : Point); {Origin of coordinate system in global (screen) coordinates}

2.6 The Keyboard

2.6.1 Reading the Keyboard

procedure GetKeys
 (var keys : KeyMap); {Returns current state of keyboard}

type
 KeyMap = packed array [0..127] of BOOLEAN;

2.7 The System Clock

2.7.1 Reading the System Clock

```
function TickCount
    : LONGINT;           {Current time on system clock}

procedure Delay
    (duration : LONGINT; {Length of delay in ticks}
    var endTime : LONGINT); {Returns time on system clock at end of delay}
```

2.7.2 Performing Periodic Tasks

```
procedure SystemTask;
```

2.8 The Speaker

2.8.1 Beeping the Speaker

```
procedure SysBeep
    (duration : INTEGER); {Length of beep in seconds}
```


Chapter 3 Windows

3.1 Internal Representation of Windows

3.1.1 Window Records

type

```

WindowPtr    = GrafPtr;           {For drawing into window}
WindowPeek   = ^WindowRecord;     {For accessing window-specific fields}

WindowRecord = record
    port           : GrafPort;      {Graphics port for this window}
    windowKind     : INTEGER;       {Window class}
    visible        : BOOLEAN;       {Is window visible?}
    hilited        : BOOLEAN;       {Is window highlighted?}
    goAwayFlag     : BOOLEAN;       {Does window have close region?}
    spareFlag      : BOOLEAN;       {Reserved for future use}
    strucRgn       : RgnHandle;     {Handle to structure region}
    contRgn        : RgnHandle;     {Handle to content region}
    updateRgn      : RgnHandle;     {Handle to update region}
    windowDefProc  : Handle;        {Handle to window definition function}
    dataHandle     : Handle;        {Handle to definition function's data}
    titleHandle    : StringHandle;  {Handle to window's title}
    titleWidth     : INTEGER;       {Private}
    controlList    : ControlHandle; {Handle to start of control list}
    nextWindow     : WindowPeek;    {Pointer to next window in window list}
    windowPic      : PicHandle;     {Handle to QuickDraw picture representing}
                                { window's contents }
    refCon         : LONGINT        {Reference constant}
end;
```

const

```

DialogKind = 2;           {Window class for dialog and alert boxes}
UserKind   = 8;           {Window class for application-}
                                { created windows }
```

3.2 Creating and Destroying Windows

3.2.1 Initializing the Toolbox for Windows

procedure InitWindows;

3.2.2 Creating Windows

```

function  NewWindow
    (wStorage      : Ptr;           {Storage for window record}
     windowRect    : Rect;         {Window's port rectangle in screen coordinates}
     title         : Str255;       {Window's title}
     visible       : BOOLEAN;      {Is window initially visible?}
     windowType    : INTEGER;      {Window definition ID}
     behindWindow  : WindowPtr;    {Window in front of this one}
     hasClose      : BOOLEAN;      {Does window have a close region?}
     refCon        : LONGINT)      {Window's reference constant}
    : WindowPtr;                  {Pointer to new window}

function  GetNewWindow
    (templateID    : INTEGER;       {Resource ID of window template}
     wStorage      : Ptr;           {Storage for window record}
     behindWindow  : WindowPtr)     {Window in front of this one}
    : WindowPtr;                  {Pointer to new window}

const                                     {Standard window definition IDs: }
    DocumentProc   = 0;               {Standard document window}
    DBoxProc       = 1;               {Standard dialog or alert box}
    PlainDBoxProc  = 2;               {Dialog or alert box with plain border}
    AltDBoxProc    = 3;               {Dialog or alert box with "shadow"}
    NoGrowDocProc  = 4;               {Document window with no size box}
    ZoomDocProc    = 8;               {Document window with zoom box}
    ZoomNoGrow     = 12;              {Document window with zoom box but no size box}
    RDocProc       = 16;              {Accessory window}

```

3.2.3 Destroying Windows

```

procedure CloseWindow
    (theWindow : WindowPtr);         {Window to destroy}

procedure DisposeWindow
    (theWindow : WindowPtr);         {Window to destroy}

```

3.2.4 Setting Window Properties

procedure SetWTitle

(theWindow : WindowPtr;	{Pointer to the window}
newTitle : Str255);	{New title}

procedure GetWTitle

(theWindow : WindowPtr;	{Pointer to the window}
var theTitle : Str255);	{Returns current title}

procedure SetWRefCon

(theWindow : WindowPtr;	{Pointer to the window}
newRefCon : LONGINT);	{New reference constant}

function GetWRefCon

(theWindow : WindowPtr)	{Pointer to the window}
: LONGINT;	{Current reference constant}

3.3 Window Display

3.3.1 Showing and Hiding Windows

procedure HideWindow

(theWindow : WindowPtr);	{Window to hide}
--------------------------	------------------

procedure ShowWindow

(theWindow : WindowPtr);	{Window to show}
--------------------------	------------------

procedure ShowHide

(theWindow : WindowPtr;	{Window to show or hide}
showFlag : BOOLEAN);	{Show or hide?}

3.3.2 Moving and Sizing Windows

procedure MoveWindow

(theWindow : WindowPtr;	{Pointer to the window}
hGlobal : INTEGER;	{New horizontal position in screen coordinates}
vGlobal : INTEGER;	{New vertical position in screen coordinates}
activate : BOOLEAN);	{Activate the window?}

procedure SizeWindow

(theWindow : WindowPtr;	{Pointer to the window}
newWidth : INTEGER;	{New width}
newHeight : INTEGER;	{New height}
update : BOOLEAN);	{Update the window?}

procedure ZoomWindow

(theWindow : WindowPtr;	{Pointer to the window}
partCode : INTEGER;	{Zoom in or out?}
activate : BOOLEAN);	{Activate the window?}

type

WStateData = **record**

userState : Rect;	{User ("zoomed-in") state}
stdState : Rect	{Standard ("zoomed-out") state}

end;

3.3.3 Front-to-Back Ordering

function FrontWindow

: WindowPtr;	{The currently active window}
--------------	-------------------------------

procedure BringToFront

(theWindow : WindowPtr);	{Window to bring to front}
--------------------------	----------------------------

procedure SendBehind

(theWindow : WindowPtr;	{Window to demote}
behindWindow : WindowPtr);	{Window to send it behind}

3.3.4 Window Highlighting

procedure HiliteWindow

(theWindow : WindowPtr;	{Window to highlight}
onOrOff : BOOLEAN);	{Highlight or unhighlight?}

procedure DrawGrowIcon

(theWindow : WindowPtr);	{Window to draw size region for}
--------------------------	----------------------------------

3.4.1 Update Processing

```
procedure EndUpdate
    (theWindow : WindowPtr);           {Window being updated}
```

```

procedure InvalRect
    (badRect    : Rect);           {Rectangle to add to update region}

procedure InvalRgn
    (badRegion   : RgnHandle);     {Region to add to update region}

procedure ValidRect
    (goodRect    : Rect);          {Rectangle to remove from update region}

procedure ValidRgn
    (goodRegion   : RgnHandle);    {Region to remove from update region}

```

```

procedure SetWindowPic
    (theWindow : WindowPtr;      {Pointer to the window}
     thePicture : PicHandle);    {Handle to its new window picture}

function GetWindowPic
    (theWindow : WindowPtr)      {Pointer to the window}
     : PicHandle;                {Handle to its current window picture}

```


3.5 Responding to the Mouse

3.5.1 Locating Mouse Clicks

```

function FindWindow
    (mousePoint      : Point;           {Point where mouse was pressed, in screen coordinates}
     var theWindow    : WindowPtr)      {Returns window the mouse was pressed in}
     : INTEGER;                       {Part of the window where mouse was pressed}

const
    InDesk      = 0;           {In desktop (screen background)}
    InMenuBar   = 1;           {In menu bar}
    InSysWindow = 2;           {In a system window}
    InContent   = 3;           {In content region of an application window}
    InDrag      = 4;           {In drag region of an application window}
    InGrow      = 5;           {In size region of an application window}
    InGoAway    = 6;           {In close region of an application window}
    InZoomIn    = 7;           {In zoom region of a "zoomed-out" application window}
    InZoomOut   = 8;           {In zoom region of a "zoomed-in" application window}

```

3.5.2 Window Selection

```

procedure SelectWindow
    (theWindow : WindowPtr);           {Window to activate}

```

3.5.3 Click in a System Window

```

procedure SystemClick
    (theEvent : EventRecord;           {Event to be processed}
     theWindow : WindowPtr);           {System window affected}

```

3.5.4 Tracking the Mouse

procedure DragWindow

(theWindow : WindowPtr;	{Pointer to the window}
startPoint : Point;	{Point where mouse was pressed, in screen coordinates}
limitRect : Rect);	{Rectangle limiting movement of window}

function GrowWindow

(theWindow : WindowPtr;	{Pointer to the window}
startPoint : Point;	{Point where mouse was pressed, in screen coordinates}
sizeRect : Rect)	{Rectangle limiting dimensions of window}
: LONGINT;	{New dimensions of window}

function TrackGoAway

(theWindow : WindowPtr;	{Pointer to the window}
startPoint : Point)	{Point where mouse was pressed, in screen coordinates}
: BOOLEAN;	{Close the window?}

function TrackBox

(theWindow : WindowPtr;	{Pointer to the window}
startPoint : Point;	{Point where mouse was pressed, in screen coordinates}
partCode : INTEGER)	{Zooming in or out?}
: BOOLEAN;	{Zoom the window?}

3.6 Nuts and Bolts

3.6.1 Nuts and Bolts

procedure GetWMgrPort

(var wMgrPort : GrafPtr);	{Returns pointer to Window Manager port}
---------------------------	--

Chapter 4 Menus

4.1 Internal Representation of Menus

4.1.1 Menu Records

type

```
MenuHandle = ^MenuPtr;
MenuPtr    = ^MenuInfo;

MenuInfo   = record
    menuID      : INTEGER; {Menu ID number}
    menuWidth   : INTEGER; {Width of menu in pixels}
    menuHeight  : INTEGER; {Height of menu in pixels}
    menuProc    : Handle;   {Handle to menu definition procedure}
    enableFlags : LONGINT;  {Which items are enabled?}
    menuData    : Str255    {Menu title and contents}
end;
```

4.2 Creating and Destroying Menus

4.2.1 Initializing the Toolbox for Menus

```
procedure InitMenus;
```

4.2.2 Creating Menus

```
function NewMenu
    (menuID   : INTEGER;           {Menu ID}
     menuTitle : Str255)           {Menu title}
    : MenuHandle;                  {Handle to new menu}

function GetMenu
    (menuID   : INTEGER)           {Resource ID of desired menu}
    : MenuHandle;                  {Handle to menu in memory}
```

4.2.3 Destroying Menus

```
procedure DisposeMenu
    (theMenu : MenuHandle); {Menu to destroy}
```

4.3 Building Menus

4.3.1 Adding Menu Items

procedure AppendMenu

(theMenu : MenuHandle; {Handle to the menu}
defString : Str255; {String defining item(s) to append}

procedure InsMenuItem

(theMenu : MenuHandle; {Handle to the menu}
defString : Str255; {String defining item(s) to insert}
afterItem : INTEGER); {Number of item to insert after}

4.3.3 Adding Resource Names to a Menu

procedure AddResMenu

(theMenu : MenuHandle; {Handle to the menu}
rsrcType : ResType); {Resource type to be added}

procedure InsertResMenu

(theMenu : MenuHandle; {Handle to the menu}
rsrcType : ResType; {Resource type to be added}
afterItem : INTEGER); {Number of item to insert after}

4.3.4 Deleting Menu Items

procedure DelMenuItem

(theMenu : MenuHandle; {Handle to the menu}
theItem : INTEGER); {Number of item to delete}

4.3.5 Counting Menu Items

function CountMItems

(theMenu : MenuHandle) {Handle to the menu}
: INTEGER; {Number of items in the menu}

4.4 Building the Menu Bar

4.4.1 Adding and Removing Menus

procedure ClearMenuBar;

procedure InsertMenu
 (theMenu : MenuHandle; {Menu to insert}
 beforeID : INTEGER); {ID of menu to insert it before}

procedure DeleteMenu
 (menuID : INTEGER); {Menu to delete}

4.4.2 Reading Menu Bars as Resources

function GetNewMBar
 (menuBarID : INTEGER) {Resource ID of desired menu bar}
 : Handle; {Handle to menu bar in memory}

4.4.3 Drawing the Menu Bar

procedure DrawMenuBar;

4.4.4 Changing Menu Bars

function GetMenuBar
 : Handle; {Handle to copy of menu bar}

procedure SetMenuBar
 (menuBar : Handle); {Handle to menu bar to be made current}

4.4.5 Getting Menus from the Menu Bar

function GetMHandle
 (menuID : INTEGER) {Menu ID}
 : MenuHandle; {Handle to the menu}

4.5 Responding to the Mouse and Keyboard

4.5.1 Choosing Menu Items

function MenuSelect
 (startPoint : Point) {Point where mouse was pressed, in screen coordinates}
 : LONGINT; {Menu item chosen}

function MenuKey
 (ch : CHAR) {Character typed with Command key}
 : LONGINT; {Menu item chosen}

4.5.2 Opening and Closing Desk Accessories

```

function   OpenDeskAcc
            (accName : Str255)           {Name of desk accessory to open}
              : INTEGER;                 {Reference number of desk accessory}

procedure CloseDeskAcc
            (refNum : INTEGER);          {Reference number of desk accessory to close}

```

4.5.3 Editing in Desk Accessories

```

function   SystemEdit
            (editCmd : INTEGER)          {Command to relay}
              : BOOLEAN;                {Handled by desk accessory?}

const
  UndoCmd  = 0;                        {Edit code for Undo command}
  CutCmd   = 2;                        {Edit code for Cut command}
  CopyCmd  = 3;                        {Edit code for Copy command}
  PasteCmd = 4;                        {Edit code for Paste command}
  ClearCmd = 5;                        {Edit code for Clear command}

```

4.5.4 Highlighting Menu Titles

```

procedure HiliteMenu
            (menuID : INTEGER);          {ID number of menu to highlight}

```

4.6 Controlling Menu Items

4.6.1 Text of an Item

```

procedure SetItem
            (theMenu   : MenuHandle;    {Handle to the menu}
             theItem   : INTEGER;        {Item number within the menu}
             itemString : Str255);       {New text of item}

procedure GetItem
            (theMenu   : MenuHandle;    {Handle to the menu}
             theItem   : INTEGER;        {Item number within the menu}
             var itemString : Str255);   {Returns current text of item}

```

4.6.2 Enabling and Disabling Items

```
procedure DisableItem
    (theMenu : MenuHandle;      {Handle to the menu}
     theItem  : INTEGER);      {Item number within the menu}
```

```
procedure EnableItem
    (theMenu : MenuHandle;      {Handle to the menu}
     theItem  : INTEGER);      {Item number within the menu}
```

4.6.3 Character Style of Menu Items

```
procedure SetItemStyle
    (theMenu   : MenuHandle;      {Handle to the menu}
     theItem   : INTEGER;         {Item number within the menu}
     theStyle  : Style);         {New character style}
```

```
procedure GetItemStyle
    (theMenu   : MenuHandle;      {Handle to the menu}
     theItem   : INTEGER;         {Item number within the menu}
     var theStyle : Style);       {Returns current character style}
```

4.6.4 Marking Items

```
procedure CheckItem
    (theMenu   : MenuHandle;      {Handle to the menu}
     theItem   : INTEGER;         {Item number within the menu}
     checked   : BOOLEAN);       {Check or uncheck?}
```

```
procedure SetItemMark
    (theMenu   : MenuHandle;      {Handle to the menu}
     theItem   : INTEGER;         {Item number within the menu}
     markChar  : CHAR);          {Character to mark item with}
```

```
procedure GetItemMark
    (theMenu   : MenuHandle;      {Handle to the menu}
     theItem   : INTEGER;         {Item number within the menu}
     var markChar : CHAR);       {Returns character item is currently marked with}
```

```
const
    NoMark = 0;                  {Item is unmarked}
```

4.6.5 Item Icons

```
procedure SetItemIcon
    (theMenu    : MenuHandle;    {Handle to the menu}
     theItem    : INTEGER;       {Item number within the menu}
     iconNum    : Byte);        {New icon number}

procedure GetItemIcon
    (theMenu    : MenuHandle;    {Handle to the menu}
     theItem    : INTEGER;       {Item number within the menu}
     var iconNum : Byte);        {Returns current icon number}
```

4.7 Nuts and Bolts

4.7.1 Menu Dimensions

```
procedure CalcMenuSize
    (theMenu : MenuHandle);    {Handle to the menu}
```

4.7.2 Flashing Menu Items

```
procedure SetMenuFlash
    (flashCount : INTEGER);    {Number of flashes when menu item chosen}

procedure FlashMenuBar
    (menuID    : INTEGER);    {Handle to the menu}
```

4.8 Menu-Related Resources

4.8.1 Resource Type 'MENU'

```
const
    TextMenuProc = 0;          {Resource ID of standard menu definition procedure}
```

Chapter 5 Text Editing

5.1 The Editing Environment

5.1.1 Edit Records

type

```
TEHandle = ^TEPtr;
TEPtr    = ^TERec;
TERec    = record
    destRect  : Rect;      {Destination (wrapping) rectangle}
    viewRect  : Rect;      {View (clipping) rectangle}
    selRect   : Rect;      {Private}
    lineHeight : INTEGER;  {Line height in pixels}
    fontAscent : INTEGER;  {First baseline}
    selPoint   : Point;     {Private}
    selStart   : INTEGER;  {Start of selection (character position)}
    selEnd     : INTEGER;  {End of selection (character position)}
    active     : INTEGER;  {Private}
    wordBreak  : ProcPtr;  {Pointer to word-break routine}
    cliLoop    : ProcPtr;  {Pointer to click-loop routine}
    clickTime  : LONGINT;  {Private}
    clickLoc   : INTEGER;  {Private}
    caretTime  : LONGINT;  {Private}
    caretState : INTEGER;  {Private}
    just       : INTEGER;  {Justification}
    teLength   : INTEGER;  {Length of text in characters}
    hText      : Handle;    {Handle to text}
    recalBack  : INTEGER;  {Private}
    recalLines : INTEGER;  {Private}
    cliStuff   : INTEGER;  {Private}
    crOnly     : INTEGER;  {Break line at carriage returns only?}
    txFont     : INTEGER;  {Font number of typeface}
    txFace     : Style;     {Character style}
    txMode     : INTEGER;  {Transfer mode for text}
    txSize     : INTEGER;  {Type size in points}
    inPort     : GrafPtr;   {Pointer to graphics port}
    highHook   : ProcPtr;   {Pointer to "custom" highlighting routine}
    caretHook  : ProcPtr;   {Pointer to "custom" insertion point routine}
    nLines     : INTEGER;  {Number of lines of text}
    lineStarts : array [0..16000] of INTEGER
                                {Character positions of line starts}
end;
```

const

```
TEJustLeft   = 0;      {Left justification}
TEJustCenter = 1;      {Center justification}
TEJustRight  = -1;     {Right justification}
```

5.1.2 Text Representation

type

CharsHandle = ^CharsPtr;
CharsPtr = ^Chars;
Chars = packed array [0..32000] of CHAR;

5.2 Preparation for Text Editing

5.2.1 Initializing the Toolbox for Text Editing

procedure TEInit;

5.2.2 Creating and Destroying Edit Records

function TENew
 (destRect : Rect; {Destination (wrapping) rectangle}
 viewRect : Rect) {View (clipping) rectangle}
 : TEHandle); {Handle to new edit record}

procedure TEDispose
 (editRec : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}

5.2.3 Text to Be Edited

procedure TETSetText
 (textPtr : Ptr; {Pointer to text}
 textLength : LONGINT; {Length of text in characters}
 editRec : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}

function TEGetText
 (editRec : TEHandle) {Handle to edit record}
 : CharsHandle; {Handle to text}

5.3 Text Display

5.3.1 Wrapping and Justification

procedure TEdText
 (editRec : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}

procedure TEdSetJust
 (just : INTEGER; {Justification}
 editRec : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}

5.3.2 Displaying Text on the Screen

procedure TEdUpdate
 (updRect : Rect; {Update rectangle in window coordinates}
 editRec : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}

procedure TEdTextBox
 (textPtr : Ptr; {Pointer to text}
 length : LONGINT; {Length of text in characters}
 textRect : Rect; {Display rectangle in local coordinates}
 just : INTEGER); {Justification}

5.3.3 Scrolling

procedure TEdScroll
 (horiz : INTEGER; {Horizontal scroll distance in pixels}
 vert : INTEGER; {Vertical scroll distance in pixels}
 editRec : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}

procedure TEdPinScroll
 (horiz : INTEGER; {Horizontal scroll distance in pixels}
 vert : INTEGER; {Vertical scroll distance in pixels}
 editRec : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}

procedure TEdSelView
 (editRec : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}

procedure TEdAutoView
 (autoView : BOOLEAN; {New setting of auto-view flag}
 editRec : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}

5.4 Text Selection

5.4.1 Selection with the Mouse

procedure TEClick
 (startPoint : Point; {Point where mouse was pressed, in window coordinates}
 extend : BOOLEAN; {Extend existing selection?}
 editRec : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}

function GetDbITime
 : LONGINT; {Current double-click interval in ticks}

5.4.2 Selection Control

procedure TETestSelect
 (selStart : LONGINT; {Start of selection (character position)}
 selEnd : LONGINT; {End of selection (character position)}
 editRec : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}

5.4.3 Selection Display

procedure TEActivate
 (editRec : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}

procedure TEDeactivate
 (editRec : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}

procedure TEIdle
 (editRec : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}

function GetCaretTime
 : LONGINT; {Current blink interval in ticks}

5.5 Editing Operations

5.5.1 Keyboard Input

procedure TEKey
 (ch : CHAR; {Character typed}
 editRec : TEHandle); {Handle to edit record}

5.5.2 Cutting and Pasting

```

procedure TECut
    (editRec : TEHandle);           {Handle to edit record}

procedure TECopy
    (editRec : TEHandle);           {Handle to edit record}

procedure TEPaste
    (editRec : TEHandle);           {Handle to edit record}
    
```

5.5.3 Scrapless Editing

```

procedure TDelete
    (editRec    : TEHandle);         {Handle to edit record}

procedure TInsert
    (textPtr     : Ptr;               {Pointer to insertion text}
     textLength  : LONGINT;           {Length of insertion text in characters}
     editRec     : TEHandle);         {Handle to edit record}
    
```

5.5.4 Scrap Access

```

function TScrapHandle
    : Handle;                         {Handle to Toolbox scrap}

function TGetScrapLen
    : LONGINT;                        {Current length of Toolbox scrap in characters}

procedure TSetScrapLen
    (newLength : LONGINT);            {New length of Toolbox scrap in characters}
    
```

5.5.5 Scrap Transfer

```

function TFromScrap
    : OSErr;                          {Result code}

function TToScrap
    : OSErr;                          {Result code}
    
```

5.5.6 Search and Replace

```

function  Munger
    (textHandle    : Handle;    {Handle to destination text}
     startAt       : LONGINT;   {Character position at which to start search}
     targetText    : Ptr;       {Pointer to target text}
     targetLength  : LONGINT;   {Length of target text}
     replaceText   : Ptr;       {Pointer to replacement text}
     replaceLength : LONGINT)   {Length of replacement text}
    : LONGINT;                  {Character position at end of operation}

```

5.6 Nuts and Bolts

5.6.1 Click-Loop Routine

```

procedure SetClickLoop
    (clikLoop : ProcPtr;    {Pointer to click-loop routine}
     editRec  : TEHandle);  {Handle to edit record}

function  YourClickLoop
    : BOOLEAN;              {Continue tracking?}

```

5.6.2 Word-Break Routine

```

procedure SetWordBreak
    (wordBreak : ProcPtr;    {Pointer to word-break routine}
     editRec   : TEHandle);  {Handle to edit record}

function  YourWordBreak
    (theText   : Ptr;         {Pointer to text}
     charPos   : INTEGER)     {Character position within text}
    : BOOLEAN;                {Is there a word break at that position?}

```

Chapter 6 Controls

6.1 Internal Representation of Controls

6.1.1 Control Records

```
type
  ControlHandle = ^ControlPtr;
  ControlPtr    = ^ControlRecord;

  ControlRecord = packed record
    nextControl : ControlHandle; {Handle to next control in window's control list}
    contrlOwner  : WindowPtr;    {Pointer to window this control belongs to}
    contrlRect   : Rect;         {Location of control within window}
    contrlVis    : Byte;         {Is control visible?}
    contrlHilite : Byte;         {Highlighting state}
    contrlValue  : INTEGER;      {Current setting}
    contrlMin    : INTEGER;      {Minimum setting}
    contrlMax    : INTEGER;      {Maximum setting}
    contrlDefProc : Handle;       {Handle to control definition function}
    contrlData   : Handle;       {Handle to definition function's data}
    contrlAction : ProcPtr;      {Pointer to default action procedure}
    contrlRfCon  : LONGINT;      {Reference "constant" for application use}
    contrlTitle  : Str255        {Title of control}
  end;
```


6.2 Creating and Destroying Controls

6.2.1 Creating Controls

```
function NewControl
    (owningWindow : WindowPtr; {Pointer to window the new control belongs to}
     controlRect   : Rect;      {Location of control within window}
     title         : Str255;    {Title of control}
     visible       : BOOLEAN;   {Is control initially visible?}
     initialValue  : INTEGER;   {Initial setting}
     minValue      : INTEGER;   {Minimum setting}
     maxValue      : INTEGER;   {Maximum setting}
     controlType   : INTEGER;   {Control definition ID}
     refCon        : LONGINT)   {Initial reference constant}
    : ControlHandle;           {Handle to new control}
```

```
function GetNewControl
    (templateID    : INTEGER; {Resource ID of control template}
     owningWindow  : WindowPtr) {Pointer to window the new control belongs to}
    : ControlHandle;           {Handle to new control}
```

```
const                                     {Standard control definition IDs: }
    PushButProc  = 0;                    {Pushbutton}
    CheckBoxProc = 1;                    {Checkbox}
    RadioButProc = 2;                    {Radio button}
    ScrollBarProc = 16;                   {Standard scroll bar}
    UseWFont     = 8;                    {Use window's font for control title}
```

6.2.2 Destroying Controls

```
procedure DisposeControl
    (theControl : ControlHandle); {Control to be destroyed}
```

```
procedure KillControls
    (theWindow : WindowPtr); {Window whose controls are to be destroyed}
```

6.2.3 Setting Control Properties

```

procedure SetCTitle
    (theControl : ControlHandle;    {Handle to the control}
     newTitle   : Str255);          {New title}

procedure GetCTitle
    (theControl : ControlHandle;    {Handle to the control}
     var theTitle : Str255);        {Returns current title}

procedure SetCRefCon
    (theControl : ControlHandle;    {Handle to the control}
     newRefCon  : LONGINT);         {New reference constant}

function  GetCRefCon
    (theControl : ControlHandle)    {Handle to the control}
     : LONGINT;                     {Current reference constant}

```

6.2.4 Control Setting and Range

```

procedure SetCtlValue
    (theControl : ControlHandle;    {Handle to the control}
     newValue   : INTEGER);         {New setting}

function  GetCtlValue
    (theControl : ControlHandle)    {Handle to the control}
     : INTEGER;                     {Current setting}

procedure SetCtlMin
    (theControl : ControlHandle;    {Handle to the control}
     newMin     : INTEGER);         {New minimum setting}

function  GetCtlMin
    (theControl : ControlHandle)    {Handle to the control}
     : INTEGER;                     {Current minimum setting}

procedure SetCtlMax
    (theControl : ControlHandle;    {Handle to the control}
     newMax     : INTEGER);         {New maximum setting}

function  GetCtlMax
    (theControl : ControlHandle)    {Handle to the control}
     : INTEGER;                     {Current maximum setting}

```

6.3 Control Display

6.3.1 Showing and Hiding Controls

procedure HideControl
 (theControl : ControlHandle); {Handle to the control}

procedure ShowControl
 (theControl : ControlHandle); {Handle to the control}

procedure DrawControls
 (theWindow : WindowPtr); {Pointer to the window}

procedure UpdtControls
 (theWindow : WindowPtr; {Pointer to the window}
 inRegion : RgnHandle); {Region to be updated}

6.3.2 Moving and Sizing Controls

procedure MoveControl
 (theControl : ControlHandle; {Handle to the control}
 hLocal : INTEGER; {New horizontal coordinate}
 vLocal : INTEGER); {New vertical coordinate}

procedure SizeControl
 (theControl : ControlHandle; {Handle to the control}
 newWidth : INTEGER; {New width}
 newHeight : INTEGER); {New height}

6.3.3 Control Highlighting

procedure HiliteControl
 (theControl : ControlHandle; {Handle to the control}
 hiliteState : INTEGER); {Part of the control to be highlighted}

6.4 Responding to the Mouse

6.4.1 Locating Mouse Clicks

```

function FindControl
    (mousePoint : Point;           {Point where mouse was pressed, in window coordinates}
     theWindow  : WindowPtr;      {Window the mouse was pressed in}
     var theControl : ControlHandle) {Returns control the mouse was pressed in}
    : INTEGER;                   {Part of the control where mouse was pressed}

function TestControl
    (theControl : ControlHandle; {Control to be tested}
     mousePoint : Point)         {Point where mouse was pressed, in window coordinates}
    : INTEGER;                   {Part of the control where mouse was pressed}

const
    InButton      = 10;           {In a pushbutton}
    InCheckbox    = 11;           {In a checkbox or radio button}
    InUpButton    = 20;           {In up arrow of a scroll bar}
    InDownButton  = 21;           {In down arrow of a scroll bar}
    InPageUp      = 22;           {In page-up region of a scroll bar}
    InPageDown    = 23;           {In page-down region of a scroll bar}
    InThumb       = 129;          {In scroll box of a scroll bar}

```

6.4.2 Tracking the Mouse

```

function TrackControl
    (theControl : ControlHandle; {Handle to the control}
     startPoint : Point;         {Point where mouse was pressed, in window coordinates}
     actionProc : ProcPtr)       {Repeated action while tracking}
    : INTEGER;                   {Part of control affected}

procedure SetCtlAction
    (theControl : ControlHandle; {Handle to the control}
     newAction : ProcPtr);       {New action procedure}

function GetCtlAction
    (theControl : ControlHandle) {Handle to the control}
    : ProcPtr;                   {Current action procedure}

```

6.4.3 Dragging a Control

procedure DragControl

(theControl : ControlHandle;	{Handle to the control}
startPoint : Point;	{Point where mouse was pressed}
limitRect : Rect;	{Rectangle limiting movement}
trackRect : Rect;	{Rectangle limiting tracking}
axis : INTEGER);	{Axis constraint}

const

BothAxes = 0;	{Both axes}
HAxisOnly = 1;	{Horizontal only}
VAxisOnly = 2;	{Vertical only}

Chapter 7 Dialogs

7.1 Internal Representation of Dialogs

7.1.1 Dialog Records

type

DialogPtr	= WindowPtr;	{For treating as a window}
DialogPeek	= ^DialogRecord;	{For accessing dialog-specific fields}
DialogRecord	= record	
	window : WindowRecord;	{Dialog window}
	items : Handle;	{Handle to item list}
	textH : TEHandle;	{Handle to edit record for current text box}
	editField : INTEGER;	{Item number of current text box minus 1}
	editOpen : INTEGER;	{Private}
	aDefItem : INTEGER	{Item number of default button}
	end;	

const

OK	= 1;	{Item number of OK button}
Cancel	= 2;	{Item number of Cancel button}

7.1.2 Item Types

const

UserItem	=	0;	{Application-defined item}
CtrlItem	=	4;	{Control}
BtnCtrl	=	0;	{Pushbutton}
ChkCtrl	=	1;	{Checkbox}
RadCtrl	=	2;	{Radio button}
ResCtrl	=	3;	{Other, defined by control template resource}
StatText	=	8;	{Static text}
EditText	=	16;	{Editable text box}
IconItem	=	32;	{Icon}
PicItem	=	64;	{Picture}
ItemDisable	=	128;	{Item is disabled}

7.1.3 Alert Templates

type

AlertTHndle = ^AlertTPtr;
AlertTPtr = ^AlertTemplate;

AlertTemplate = **record**
 boundsRect : Rect; {Alert window's port rectangle in screen coordinates}
 itemsID : INTEGER; {Resource ID of item list}
 stages : StageList {Stage list}
end;

StageList = **packed record**
 boldItm4 : 0..1; {Stage 4: item number of default button minus 1}
 boxDrwn4 : BOOLEAN; {Stage 4: draw alert box on screen?}
 sound4 : 0..3; {Stage 4: sound number to emit}
 boldItm3 : 0..1; {Stage 3: item number of default button minus 1}
 boxDrwn3 : BOOLEAN; {Stage 3: draw alert box on screen?}
 sound3 : 0..3; {Stage 3: sound number to emit}
 boldItm2 : 0..1; {Stage 2: item number of default button minus 1}
 boxDrwn2 : BOOLEAN; {Stage 2: draw alert box on screen?}
 sound2 : 0..3; {Stage 2: sound number to emit}
 boldItm1 : 0..1; {Stage 1: item number of default button minus 1}
 boxDrwn1 : BOOLEAN; {Stage 1: draw alert box on screen?}
 sound1 : 0..3; {Stage 1: sound number to emit}
end;

7.1.4 Dialog Templates

type

```
DialogTHndle  = ^DialogTPtr;
DialogTPtr    = ^DialogTemplate;

DialogTemplate = record
    boundsRect : Rect;           {Dialog window's port rectangle in screen coordinates}
    proclD      : INTEGER;       {Dialog window's definition ID}
    visible     : BOOLEAN;       {Is dialog window visible?}
    filler1     : BOOLEAN;       {Padding}
    goAwayFlag  : BOOLEAN;       {Does dialog window have a close box?}
    filler2     : BOOLEAN;       {Padding}
    refCon      : LONGINT;       {Dialog window's reference constant}
    itemsID     : INTEGER;       {Resource ID of item list}
    title       : Str255         {Title of dialog window}
end;
```

7.2 Creating and Destroying Dialogs

7.2.1 Initializing the Toolbox for Dialogs

procedure InitDialogs

```
(restartProc : ProcPtr);           {Pointer to restart procedure}
```

7.2.2 Creating Dialogs

function NewDialog

```
(dStorage      : Ptr;           {Storage for dialog record}
 windowRect    : Rect;         {Dialog window's port rectangle in screen coordinates}
 title         : Str255;       {Title of dialog window}
 visible       : BOOLEAN;      {Is dialog window initially visible?}
 windowType    : INTEGER;      {Dialog window's definition ID}
 behindWindow  : WindowPtr;    {Window in front of this one}
 goAwayFlag    : BOOLEAN;      {Does dialog window have a close box?}
 refCon        : LONGINT;      {Dialog window's reference constant}
 itemList      : Handle;       {Handle to item list}
               : DialogPtr;     {Pointer to new dialog record}
```

function GetNewDialog

```
(templateID    : INTEGER;       {Resource ID of dialog template}
 dStorage      : Ptr;           {Storage for dialog record}
 behindWindow  : WindowPtr)     {Window in front of this one}
               : DialogPtr;     {Pointer to new dialog record}
```

7.2.3 Destroying Dialogs

```
procedure CloseDialog
    (theDialog : DialogPtr);           {Dialog to destroy}
```

```
procedure DisposDialog
    (theDialog : DialogPtr);           {Dialog to destroy}
```

7.3 Manipulating Items

7.3.1 Access to Items

```
procedure SetDItem
    (theDialog      : DialogPtr;       {Pointer to the dialog}
     itemNumber     : INTEGER;         {Item number}
     itemType       : INTEGER;         {New item type}
     itemHandle     : Handle;          {New item handle}
     dispRect       : Rect);           {New display rectangle}
```

```
procedure GetDItem
    (theDialog      : DialogPtr;       {Pointer to the dialog}
     itemNumber     : INTEGER;         {Item number}
     var itemType    : INTEGER;         {Returns item type}
     var itemHandle  : Handle;          {Returns item handle}
     var dispRect    : Rect);           {Returns display rectangle}
```

7.3.2 Text of an Item

```
procedure SetIText
    (itemHandle     : Handle;           {Handle to text item}
     theText        : Str255);         {New text}
```

```
procedure GetIText
    (itemHandle     : Handle;           {Handle to text item}
     var theText     : Str255);         {Returns current text}
```

```
procedure SellText
    (theDialog      : DialogPtr;       {Pointer to dialog}
     itemNumber     : INTEGER;         {Item number}
     selStart       : INTEGER;         {Start of selection (character position)}
     selEnd         : INTEGER);        {End of selection (character position)}
```

7.3.3 Showing and Hiding Items

procedure HideDItem

(theDialog : DialogPtr;	{Pointer to the dialog}
itemNumber : INTEGER);	{Number of item to hide}

procedure ShowDItem

(theDialog : DialogPtr;	{Pointer to the dialog}
itemNumber : INTEGER);	{Number of item to show}

7.3.4 Locating Mouse Clicks

function FindDItem

(theDialog : DialogPtr;	{Pointer to the dialog}
mousePoint : INTEGER)	{Mouse position in window coordinates}
: INTEGER;	{Item number of item containing mouse}

7.4 Using Alerts and Dialogs

7.4.1 Static Display

procedure DrawDialog

(theDialog : DialogPtr;	{Dialog to be drawn}
-------------------------	----------------------

procedure UpdtDialog

(theDialog : DialogPtr;	{Pointer to the dialog}
inRegion : RgnHandle);	{Region to be updated}

7.4.2 Using Alerts

```

function   Alert
    (alertID : INTEGER;           {Resource ID of alert template}
     filter   : ProcPtr)         {Pointer to filter function}
    : INTEGER;                   {Item number that dismissed alert}

function   NoteAlert
    (alertID : INTEGER;           {Resource ID of alert template}
     filter   : ProcPtr)         {Pointer to filter function}
    : INTEGER;                   {Item number that dismissed alert}

function   CautionAlert
    (alertID : INTEGER;           {Resource ID of alert template}
     filter   : ProcPtr)         {Pointer to filter function}
    : INTEGER;                   {Item number that dismissed alert}

function   StopAlert
    (alertID : INTEGER;           {Resource ID of alert template}
     filter   : ProcPtr)         {Pointer to filter function}
    : INTEGER;                   {Item number that dismissed alert}

const
    NoteIcon    = 1;             {Resource ID of standard Note icon}
    CautionIcon = 2;             {Resource ID of standard Caution icon}
    StopIcon     = 0;             {Resource ID of standard Stop icon}

```

7.4.3 Using Modal Dialogs

```

procedure ModalDialog
    (filter           : ProcPtr;   {Pointer to filter function}
     var itemNumber : INTEGER);     {Returns item number of reported item}

```

7.4.4 Using Modeless Dialogs

```

function   IsDialogEvent
    (theEvent      : EventRecord) {Event to be handled}
    : BOOLEAN;      {Is event dialog-related?}

function   DialogSelect
    (theEvent      : EventRecord; {Event to be handled}
     var theDialog  : DialogPtr;    {Returns pointer to dialog affected}
     var itemNumber : INTEGER)      {Returns item number of reported item}
    : BOOLEAN;      {Response needed?}

```


7.4.5 Filter Functions

```
function YourFilterFunction
    (theDialog : DialogPtr;           {Pointer to dialog affected}
     var theEvent : EventRecord;      {Event to be handled}
     var itemNumber : INTEGER)        {Returns item number to report}
    : BOOLEAN;                        {Report item immediately?}
```

7.4.6 Text Substitution

```
procedure ParamText
    (subText0 : Str255;               {Text to substitute for '^0'}
     subText1 : Str255;               {Text to substitute for '^1'}
     subText2 : Str255;               {Text to substitute for '^2'}
     subText3 : Str255;               {Text to substitute for '^3'})
```

7.4.7 Editing in Text Boxes

```
procedure DlgCut
    (theDialog : DialogPtr);          {Pointer to the dialog}

procedure DlgCopy
    (theDialog : DialogPtr);          {Pointer to the dialog}

procedure DlgPaste
    (theDialog : DialogPtr);          {Pointer to the dialog}

procedure DlgDelete
    (theDialog : DialogPtr);          {Pointer to the dialog}
```

7.5 Nuts and Bolts

7.5.1 Text Font and Error Sounds

```
procedure SetDAFont
    (fontNumber : INTEGER);           {Font number for dialogs and alerts}

procedure ErrorSound
    (soundProc : ProcPtr);            {Pointer to sound procedure}
```

7.5.2 Alert Stages

```
function GetAlertStage
    : INTEGER;                        {Stage of last alert minus 1}

procedure ResetAlertStage;
```

7.5.3 Preloading Dialog Resources

```

procedure CouldAlert
    (alertID : INTEGER);           {Resource ID of alert}

procedure CouldDialog
    (dialogID : INTEGER);         {Resource ID of dialog}

procedure FreeAlert
    (alertID : INTEGER);          {Resource ID of alert}

procedure FreeDialog
    (dialogID : INTEGER);         {Resource ID of dialog}

```

Chapter 8 Files

8.1 Volume Operations

8.1.1 Volume Information

```

function GetVInfo
    (drive      : INTEGER;         {Drive number}
     vName      : StringPtr;       {Volume name}
     var vRefNum : INTEGER;         {Returns volume reference number}
     var freeBytes : LONGINT)       {Returns number of free bytes on volume}
    : OSErr;                      {Result code}

```

8.1.2 Current Volume

```

function GetVol
    (vName      : StringPtr;       {Returns volume or directory name}
     var vRefNum : INTEGER)         {Returns volume or directory reference number}
    : OSErr;                      {Result code}

function SetVol
    (vName      : StringPtr;       {Volume or directory name}
     vRefNum    : INTEGER)         {Volume or directory reference number}
    : OSErr;                      {Result code}

```

8.1.3 Flushing, Ejecting, and Unmounting

```

function FlushVol
    (vName   : StringPtr;      {Volume name}
     vRefNum : INTEGER)        {Volume reference number}
    : OSErr;                   {Result code}

function Eject
    (vName   : StringPtr;      {Volume name}
     vRefNum : INTEGER)        {Volume reference number}
    : OSErr;                   {Result code}

function UnmountVol
    (vName   : StringPtr;      {Volume name}
     vRefNum : INTEGER)        {Volume reference number}
    : OSErr;                   {Result code}

```

8.2 File Operations

8.2.1 Creating Files

```

function Create
    (fName   : Str255;          {File name}
     vRefNum : INTEGER;          {Volume or directory reference number}
     creator  : OSType;          {Signature of creator program}
     fileType : OSType)          {File type}
    : OSErr;                   {Result code}

```

8.2.2 Opening and Closing Files

```

function FSOpen
    (fName   : Str255;          {File name}
     vRefNum : INTEGER;          {Volume or directory reference number}
     var fRefNum : INTEGER)        {Returns file reference number}
    : OSErr;                   {Result code}

function OpenRF
    (fName   : Str255;          {File name}
     vRefNum : INTEGER;          {Volume or directory reference number}
     var fRefNum : INTEGER)        {Returns file reference number}
    : OSErr;                   {Result code}

function FSClose
    (fRefNum : INTEGER)          {File reference number}
    : OSErr;                   {Result code}

```

8.2.3 Reading and Writing

```
function FSRead
    (fRefNum      : INTEGER;      {File reference number}
     var byteCount : LONGINT;     {Number of bytes to read}
     toAddr       : Ptr)         {Address to read to}
    : OSErr;                     {Result code}
```

```
function FSWrite
    (fRefNum      : INTEGER;      {File reference number}
     var byteCount : LONGINT;     {Number of bytes to write}
     fromAddr     : Ptr)         {Address to write from}
    : OSErr;                     {Result code}
```

8.2.4 File Mark

```
function GetFPos
    (fRefNum      : INTEGER;      {File reference number}
     var markPos  : LONGINT)      {Returns current mark position in bytes}
    : OSErr;                     {Result code}
```

```
function SetFPos
    (fRefNum      : INTEGER;      {File reference number}
     markBase     : INTEGER;      {Base to set mark from}
     markOffset   : LONGINT)      {Offset in bytes relative to base}
    : OSErr;                     {Result code}
```

```
const
    FSAtMark    = 0;             {Position at current mark}
    FSFromStart = 1;             {Position relative to start of file}
    FSFromLEOF  = 2;             {Position relative to logical end-of-file}
    FSFromMark  = 3;             {Position relative to current mark}
```

8.2.5 End-of-File

```
function GetEOF
    (fRefNum      : INTEGER;           {File reference number}
     var logicalEOF : LONGINT)         {Returns current logical end-of-file in bytes}
    : OSErr;                           {Result code}

function SetEOF
    (fRefNum      : INTEGER;           {File reference number}
     logicalEOF    : LONGINT)         {New logical end-of-file in bytes}
    : OSErr;                           {Result code}

function Allocate
    (fRefNum      : INTEGER;           {File reference number}
     var byteCount : LONGINT)         {Number of bytes to allocate}
    : OSErr;                           {Result code}
```

8.2.6 Locking and Unlocking Files

```
function SetFLock
    (fName      : Str255;           {File name}
     vRefNum    : INTEGER)         {Volume or directory reference number}
    : OSErr;                           {Result code}

function RstFLock
    (fName      : Str255;           {File name}
     vRefNum    : INTEGER)         {Volume or directory reference number}
    : OSErr;                           {Result code}
```

8.2.7 Deleting and Renaming Files

```
function FSDelete
    (fName      : Str255;           {File name}
     vRefNum    : INTEGER)         {Volume or directory reference number}
    : OSErr;                           {Result code}

function Rename
    (oldName    : Str255;           {Old file name}
     vRefNum    : INTEGER;         {Volume or directory reference number}
     newName    : Str255)         {New file name}
    : OSErr;                           {Result code}
```


8.2.8 Error Reporting

const

NoErr	= 0;	{No error}
DirFulErr	= -33;	{Directory full}
DskFulErr	= -34;	{Disk full}
NSVErr	= -35;	{No such volume}
IOErr	= -36;	{Disk I/O error}
BdNamErr	= -37;	{Bad name}
FNOpnErr	= -38;	{File not open}
EOFFerr	= -39;	{Attempt to read past end-of-file}
PosErr	= -40;	{Attempt to position before start of file}
MFulErr	= -41;	{Memory (system heap) full}
TMFOErr	= -42;	{Too many files open (more than 12)}
FNFErr	= -43;	{File not found}
WPrErr	= -44;	{Disk is write-protected}
FLckdErr	= -45;	{File locked}
VLckdErr	= -46;	{Volume locked}
FBsyErr	= -47;	{File busy}
DupFNErr	= -48;	{Duplicate file name}
OpWrErr	= -49;	{File already open for writing}
ParamErr	= -50;	{Invalid parameter list}
RfNumErr	= -51;	{Invalid reference number}
GFPErr	= -52;	{Error during GetFPos}
VolOffLinErr	= -53;	{Volume off-line}
PermErr	= -54;	{Permission violation}
VolOnLinErr	= -55;	{Volume already on-line}
NSDrvErr	= -56;	{No such drive}
NoMacDskErr	= -57;	{Non-Macintosh disk}
ExtFSErr	= -58;	{External file system}
FSRnErr	= -59;	{Unable to rename file}
BadMDBErr	= -60;	{Bad master directory block}
WrPermErr	= -61;	{No write permission}
FirstDskErr	= -84;	{Low-level disk error}
LastDskErr	= -64;	{Low-level disk error}

8.3 The Standard File Package

8.3.1 Reply Records

type

```
SFReply = record
    good      : BOOLEAN;      {Did user confirm file selection?}
    copy      : BOOLEAN;      {Unused}
    fType     : OSType;        {File type}
    vRefNum   : INTEGER;      {Volume or directory reference number}
    version   : INTEGER;      {File version number}
    fName     : STRING[63]    {File name}
end;
```

8.3.2 File to Read From

procedure SFGetFile

```
(topLeft      : Point;        {Top-left corner of dialog box, in screen coordinates}
promptString  : Str255;        {Unused}
fileFilter    : ProcPtr;      {Filter function}
numTypes      : INTEGER;      {Number of file types}
typeList      : SFTypeList;   {File types to display}
dialogHook    : ProcPtr;      {Dialog hook function}
var reply     : SFReply);     {Returns identifying information for file to be read}
```

type

```
SFTypeList = array [0..3] of OSType;
```

8.3.3 File to Write To

procedure SFPutFile

```
(topLeft      : Point;        {Top-left corner of dialog box, in screen coordinates}
promptString  : Str255;        {Prompting string}
initText      : Str255;        {Initial contents of text box}
dialogHook    : ProcPtr;      {Dialog hook function}
var reply     : SFReply);     {Returns identifying information for file to be written}
```

8.4 Disk Initialization

8.4.1 Initializing a Disk

function DIBadMount
 (topLeft : Point; {Top-left corner of dialog box, in screen coordinates}
 eventMessage : LONGINT) {Event message from disk-inserted event}
 : INTEGER; {Result code}

8.4.2 Initialization Stages

function DIFormat
 (drive : INTEGER) {Drive number}
 : OSErr; {Result code}

function DIVERify
 (drive : INTEGER) {Drive number}
 : OSErr; {Result code}

function DIZero
 (drive : INTEGER; {Drive number}
 vName : Str255) {Volume name}
 : OSErr; {Result code}

8.4.3 Preloading the Disk Initialization Code

procedure DILoad;

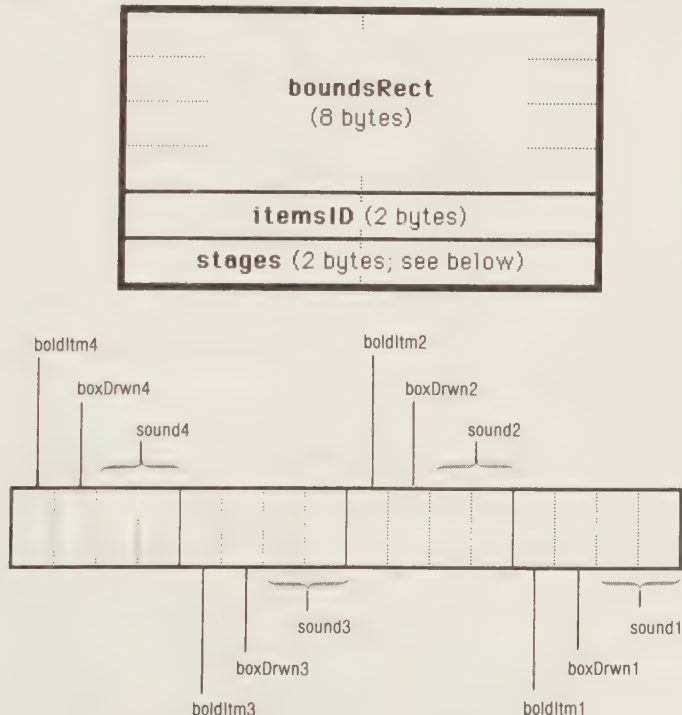
procedure DIUnload;

APPENDIX



Resource Formats

Resource Type 'ALRT' [II:7.6.1]



For boldItm1 to boldItm4,

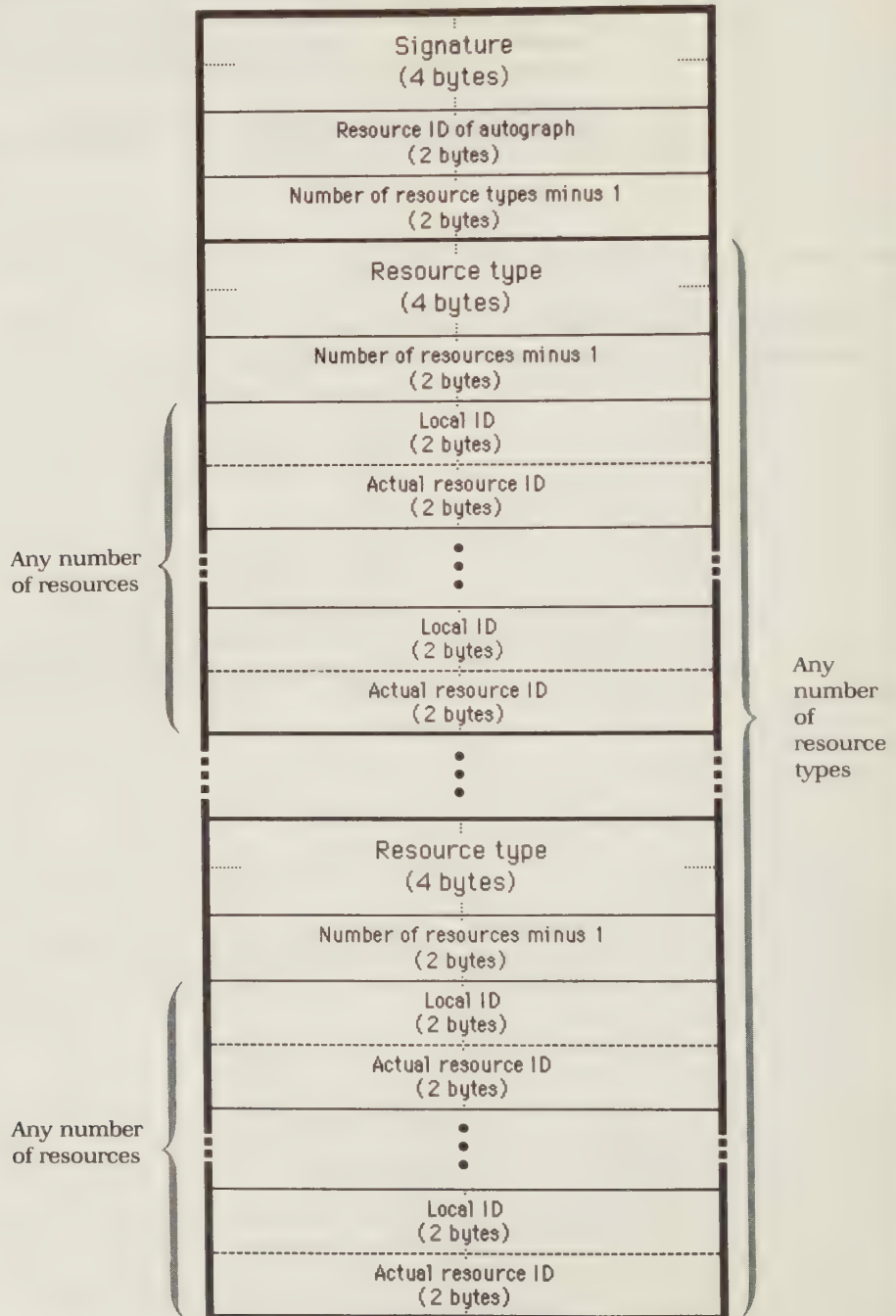
- 0 = OK button
- 1 = Cancel button

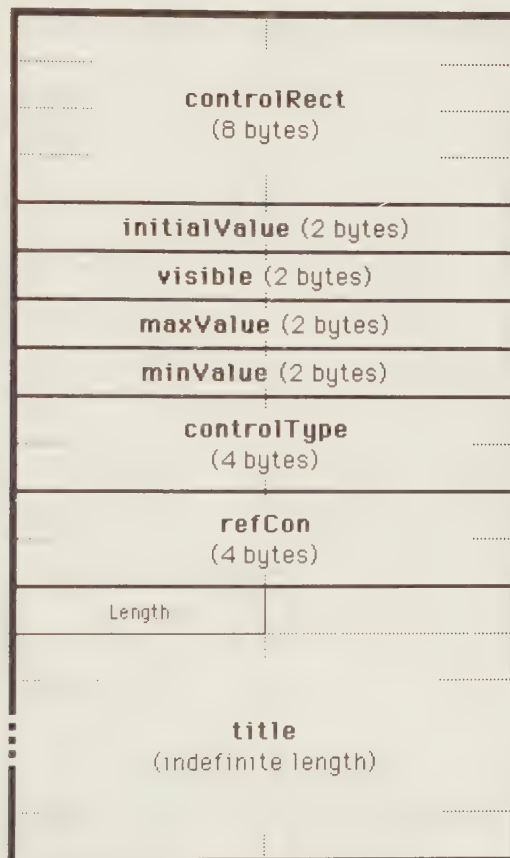
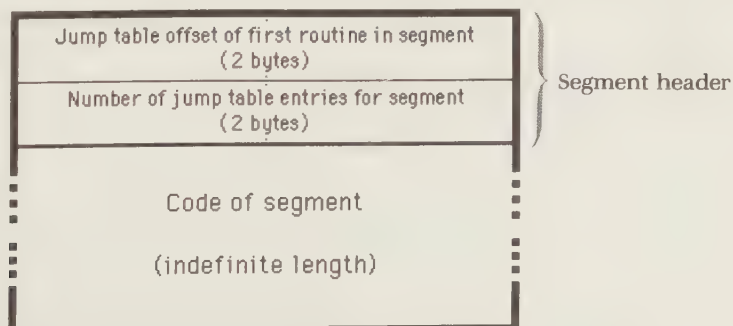
For boxDrwn1 to boxDrwn4,

- 0 = Don't draw
- 1 = Draw

sound1 to sound4 each specify a *sound number* from 0 to 3.
Note that the stages are listed in reverse order, from 4 to 1.

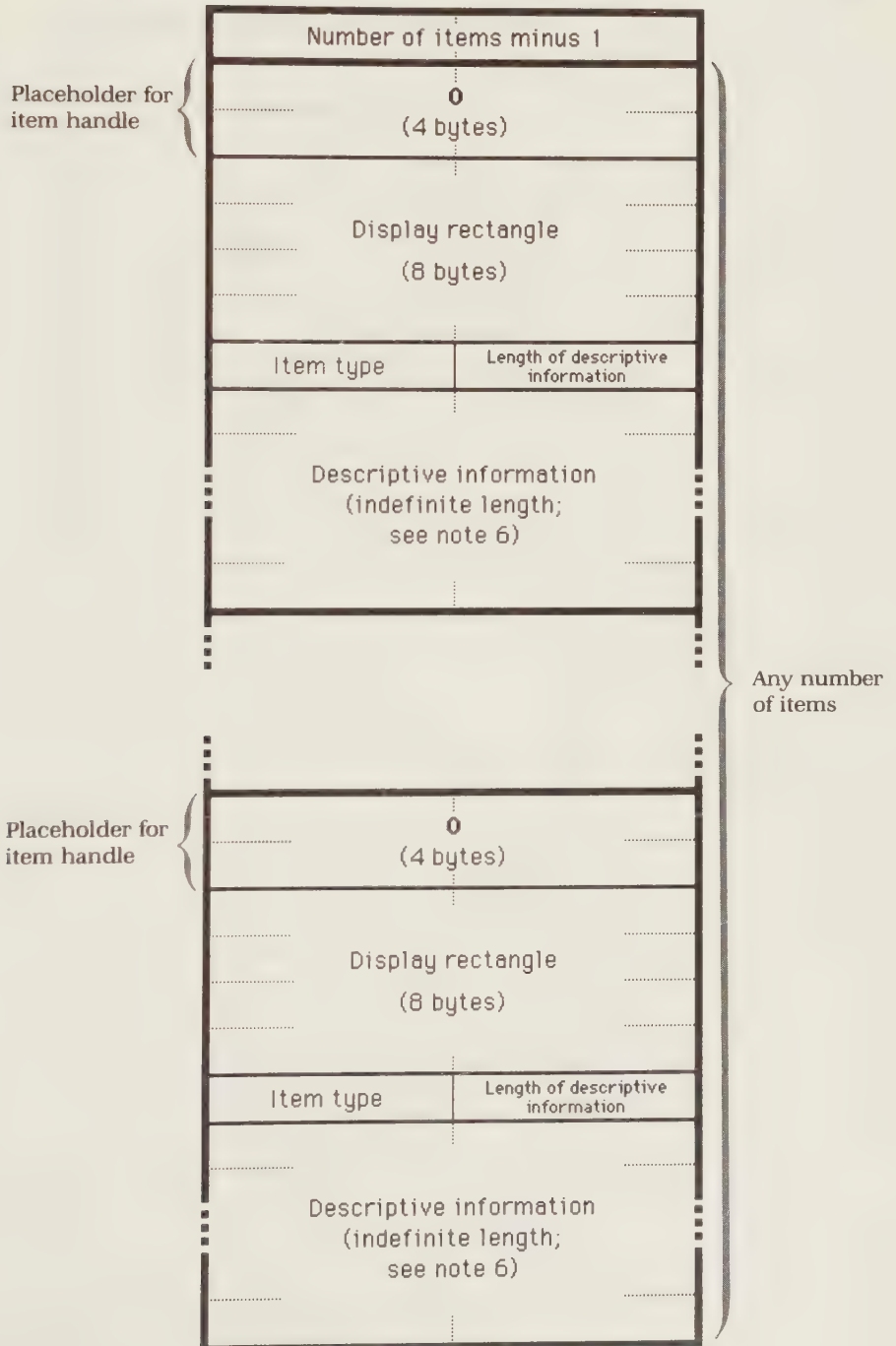
Detail of Stages

Resource Type 'BNDL' [I:7.5.4]

Resource Type 'CNTL' [II:6.6.1]**Resource Type 'CODE'** [I:7.5.1]

Resource Type 'CURS' [II:2.9.1]

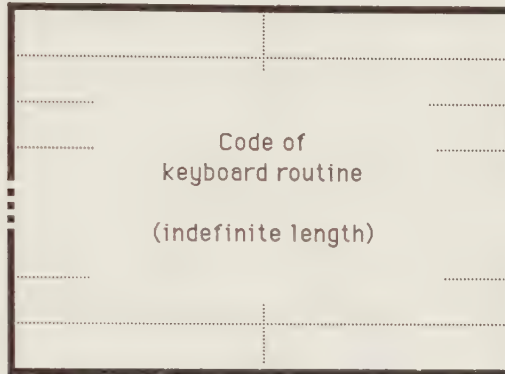
Resource Type 'DITL' [II:7.6.3]



Resource Type 'DLOG' [II:7.6.2]

boundsRect (8 bytes)	
procID (2 bytes)	
visible	(unused)
goAwayflag	(unused)
refCon (4 bytes)	
itemsID (2 bytes)	
Length of title	
title (indefinite length)	

Resource Type 'FKEY' [II:2.9.2]



Resource Type 'FONT' [I:8.4.5]

fontType (2 bytes)
firstChar (2 bytes)
lastChar (2 bytes)
widMax (2 bytes)
kernMax (2 bytes)
nDescent (2 bytes)
fRectWidth (2 bytes)
fRectHeight (2 bytes)
owTloc (2 bytes)
ascent (2 bytes)
descent (2 bytes)
leading (2 bytes)
rowWords (2 bytes)
bitImage (indefinite length)
locTable (indefinite length)
owTable (indefinite length)

Resource Type 'FREF' [I:7.5.3]

File type (4 bytes)
Local ID of icon list (2 bytes)

Resource Type 'FRSV' [I:8.4.7]

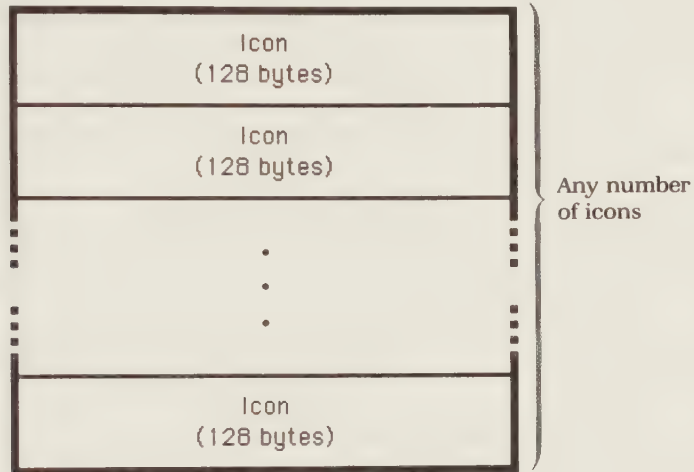
Number of fonts (2 bytes)
Resource ID of first font (2 bytes)
Resource ID of last font (2 bytes)

} Any number
of fonts

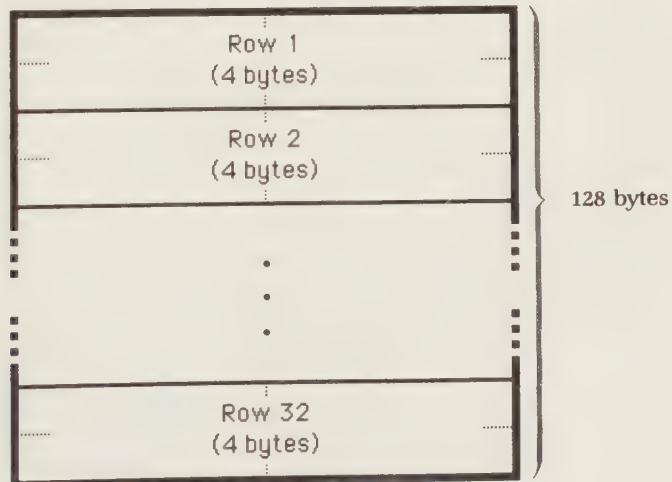
Resource Type 'FWID' [1:8.4.6]

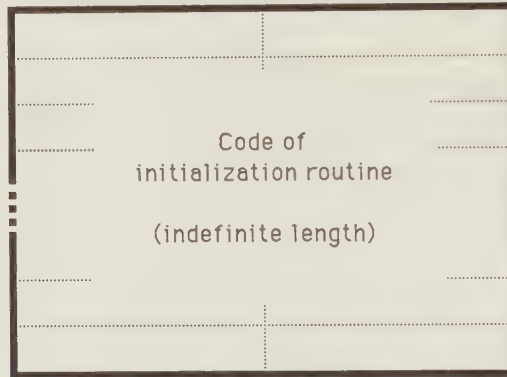
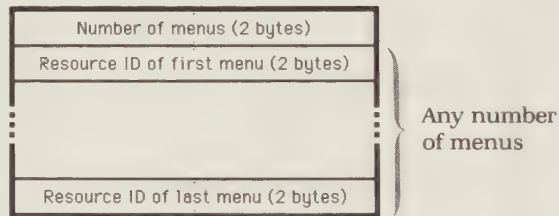
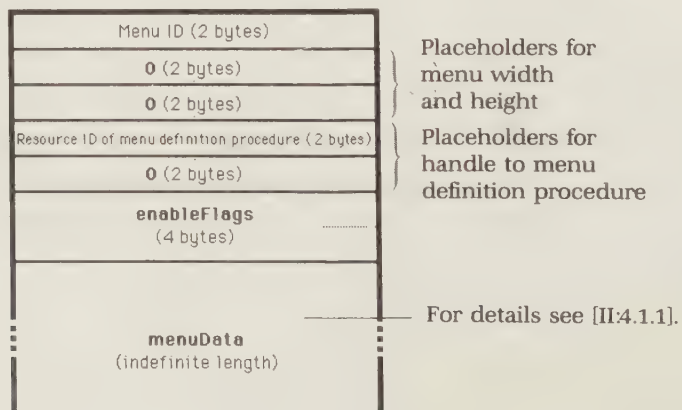
fontType (2 bytes)
firstChar (2 bytes)
lastChar (2 bytes)
widMax (2 bytes)
kernMax (2 bytes)
nDescent (2 bytes)
fRectWidth (2 bytes)
fRectHeight (2 bytes)
owTloc (2 bytes)
ascent (2 bytes)
descent (2 bytes)
leading (2 bytes)
 owTable (indefinite length)

Resource Type 'ICN#' [1:5.5.4]



Resource Type 'ICON' [1:5.5.3]

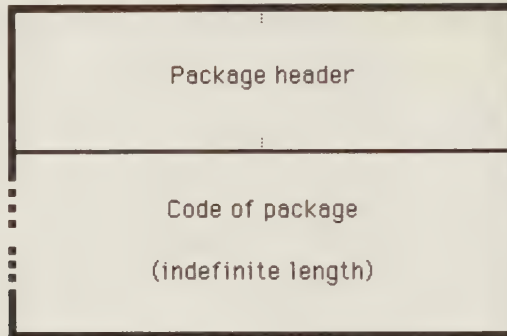


Resource Type 'INIT' [I:8.4.4]**Resource Type 'MBAR' [II:4.8.2]****Resource Type 'MENU' [II:4.8.1]**

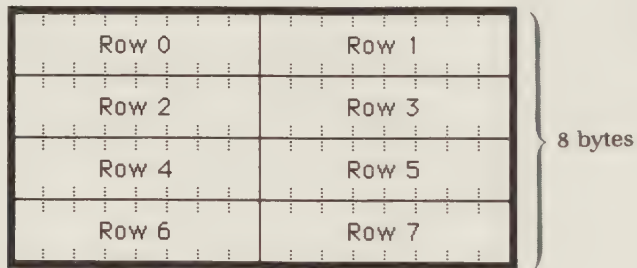
Resource Type 'NFNT' [1:8.4.5]

fontType (2 bytes)
firstChar (2 bytes)
lastChar (2 bytes)
widMax (2 bytes)
kernMax (2 bytes)
nDescent (2 bytes)
fRectWidth (2 bytes)
fRectHeight (2 bytes)
owTloc (2 bytes)
ascent (2 bytes)
descent (2 bytes)
leading (2 bytes)
rowWords (2 bytes)
bitImage (indefinite length)
locTable (indefinite length)
owTable (indefinite length)

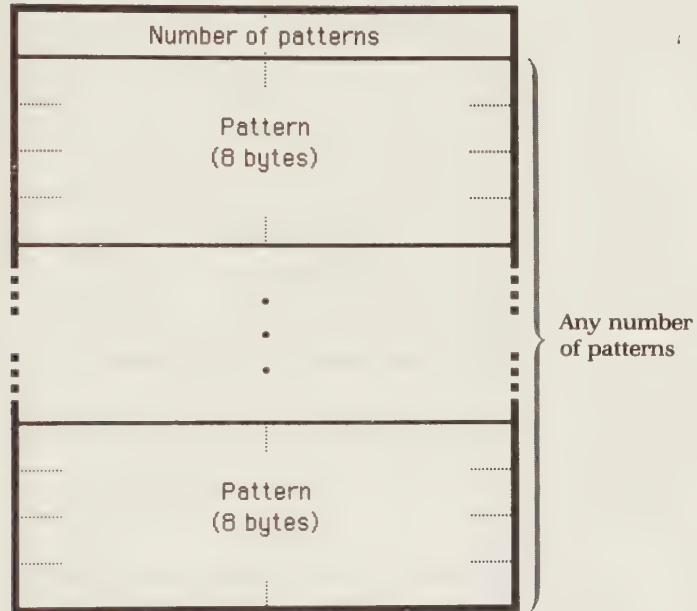
Resource Type 'PACK' [I:7.5.2]



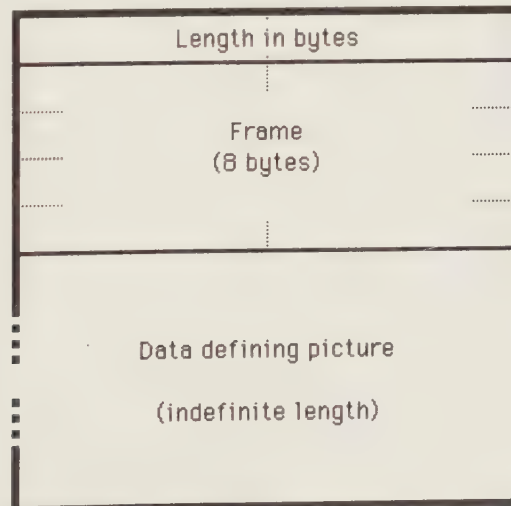
Resource Type 'PAT ' [I:5.5.1]



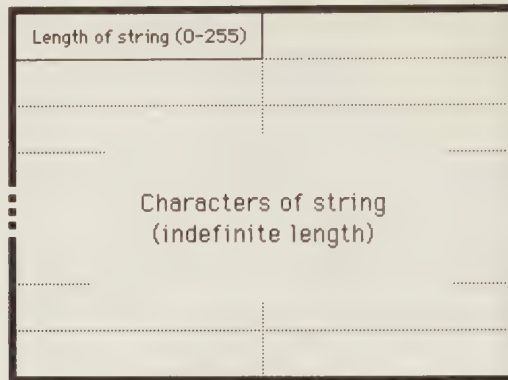
Resource Type 'PAT#' [1:5.5.2]



Resource Type 'PICT' [1:5.5.5]

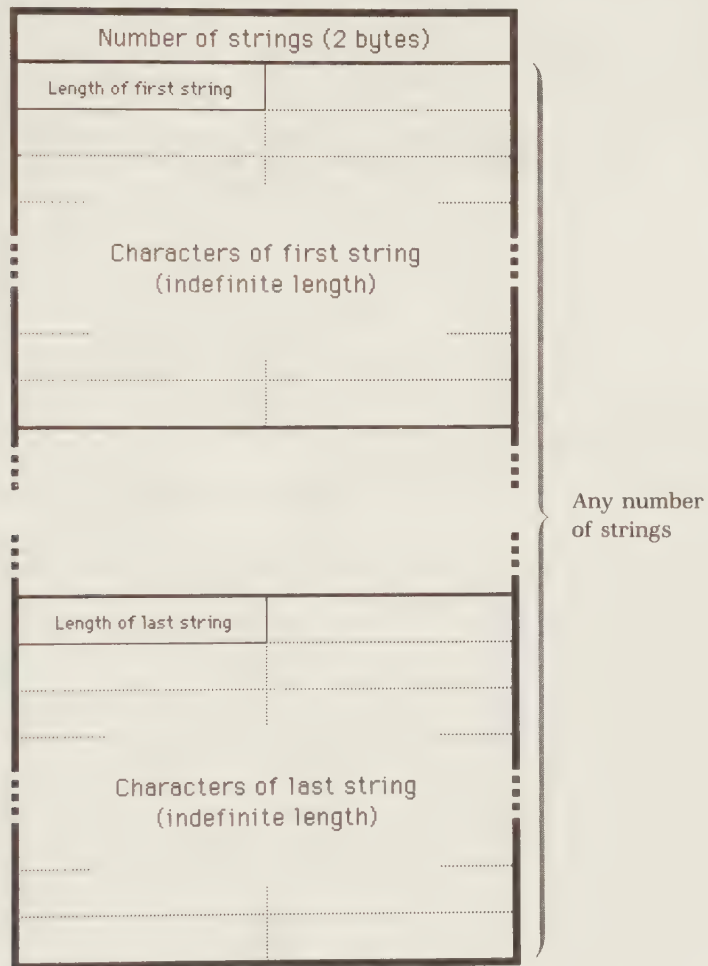


Resource Type 'STR' [1:8.4.2]

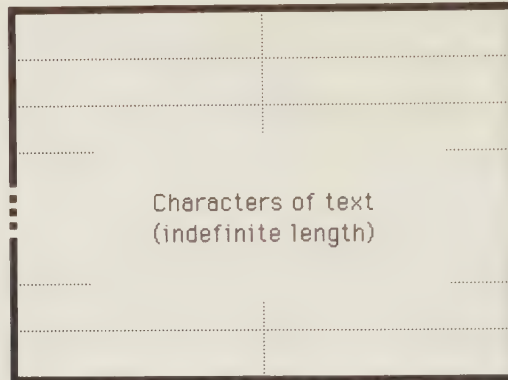


The maximum length of a 'STR' resource is 255 characters.

Resource Type 'STR#' [I:8.4.3]

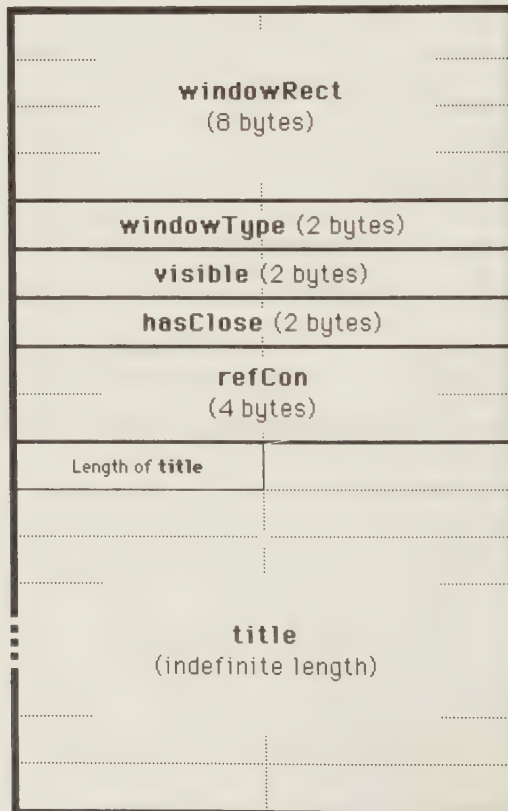


Resource Type 'TEXT' [I:8.4.1]

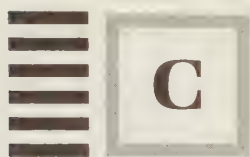


A 'TEXT' resource does *not* begin with a length byte.

Resource Type 'WIND' [II:3.7.1]

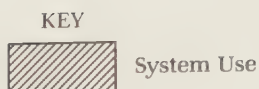
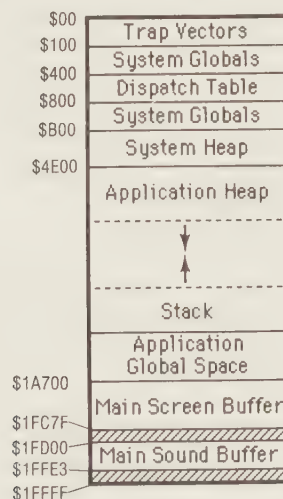


APPENDIX



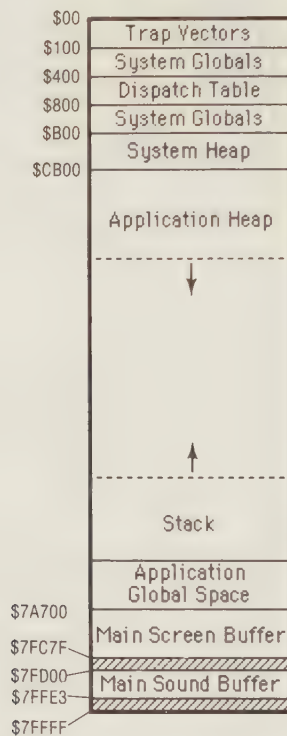
Memory Layouts

128K "Skinny Mac"



Arrows show direction of growth of stack and application heap.

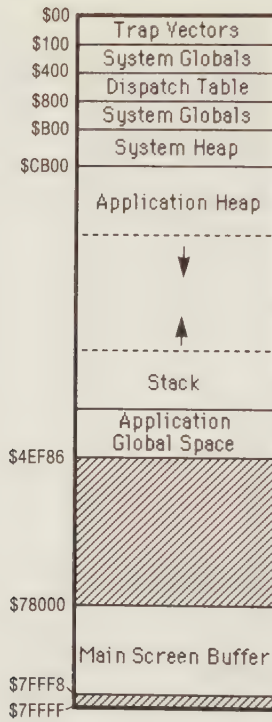
512K "Fat Mac"

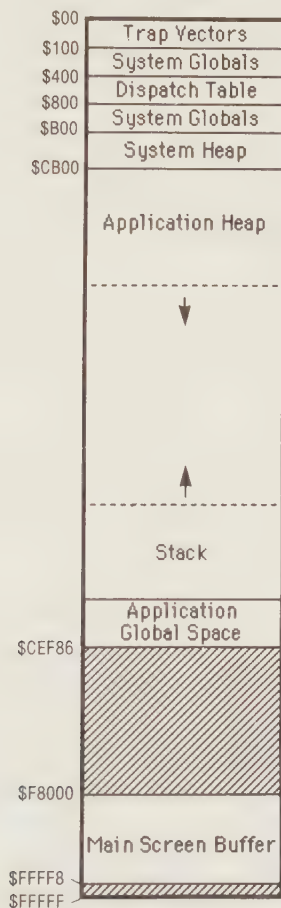


1M Macintosh Plus

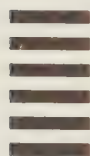


512K Macintosh XL (Lisa)



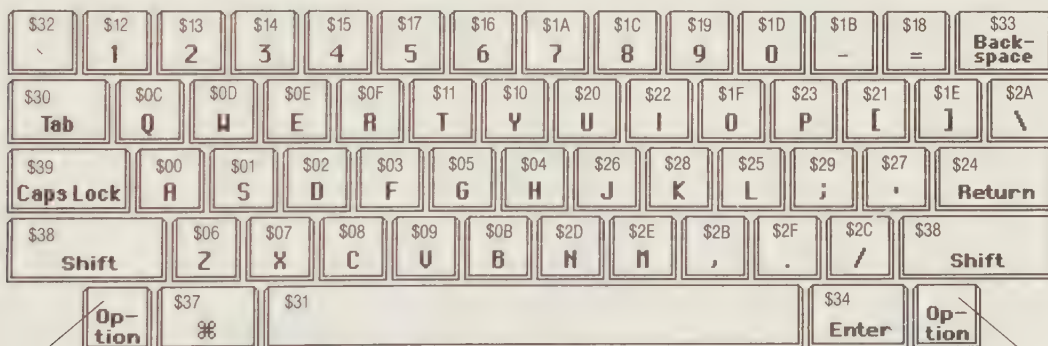
1M Macintosh XL (Lisa)

APPENDIX



Key Codes and Character Codes

Key Codes for the Standard Macintosh Keyboard and Keypad



\$3A Original keyboard



Original keypad

Key Codes for the Macintosh Plus Keyboard

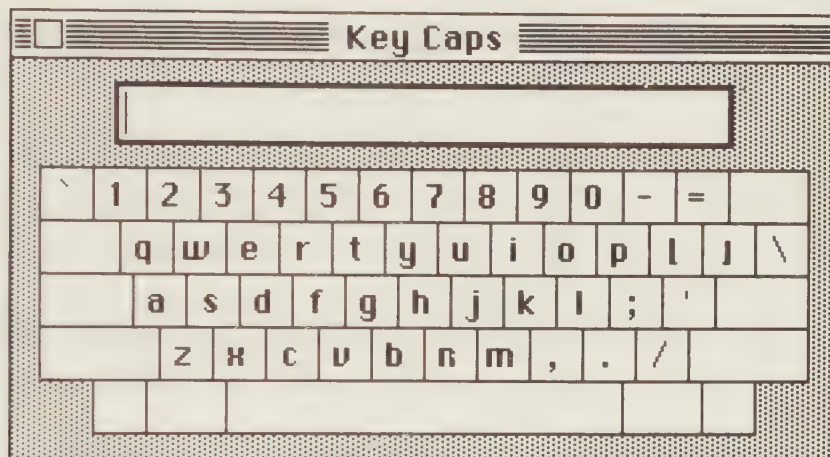
\$32 `	\$12 1	\$13 2	\$14 3	\$15 4	\$17 5	\$16 6	\$1A 7	\$1C 8	\$19 9	\$1D 0	\$1B -	\$18 =	\$33 Back-space	
\$30 Tab	\$0C Q	\$0D W	\$0E E	\$0F R	\$11 T	\$10 Y	\$20 U	\$22 I	\$1F O	\$23 P	\$21 [	\$1E]	
\$39 Caps Lock	\$00 A	\$01 S	\$02 D	\$03 F	\$05 G	\$04 H	\$26 J	\$28 K	\$25 L	\$29 ;	\$27 ,	\$24 Return		
\$38 Shift	\$06 Z	\$07 X	\$08 C	\$09 V	\$0B B	\$2D N	\$2E M	\$2B ,	\$2F .	\$2C /	\$38 Shift	\$4D ↑		
\$3A Option	\$37 ⌘	\$31									\$2A \	\$46 ←	\$42 →	\$48 ↓

Macintosh Plus keyboard

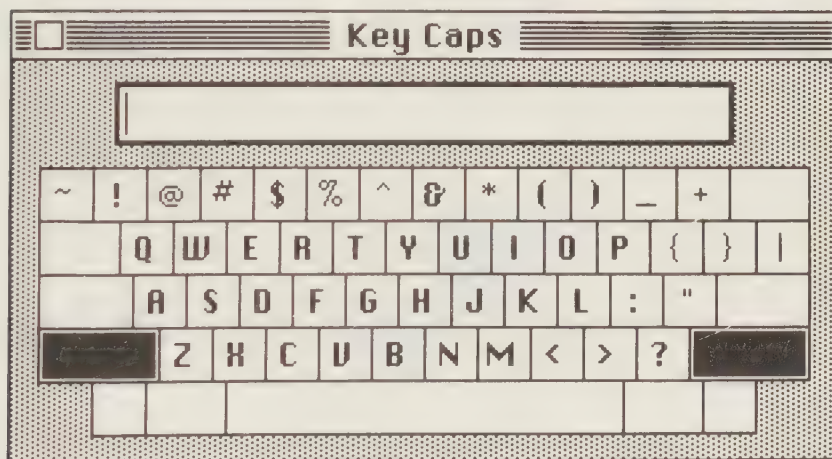
\$47 Clear	\$48 =	\$4D /	\$42 *
\$59 7	\$5B 8	\$5C 9	\$4E -
\$56 4	\$57 5	\$58 6	\$46 +
\$53 1	\$54 2	\$55 3	\$4C
\$52 0	\$41 .	Enter	

Macintosh Plus keypad

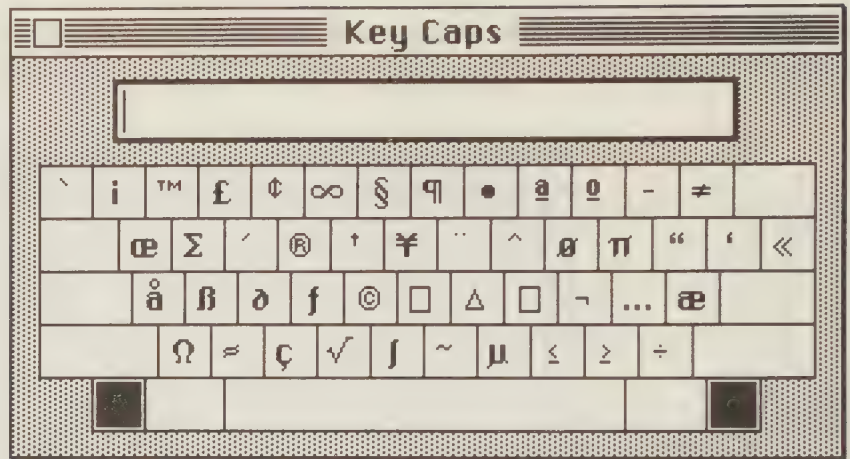
Standard Keyboard Layouts



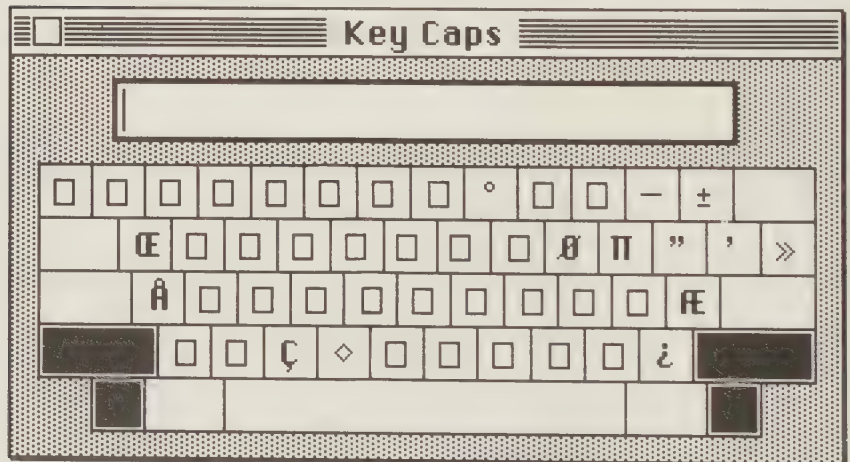
Standard keyboard layout (unshifted)



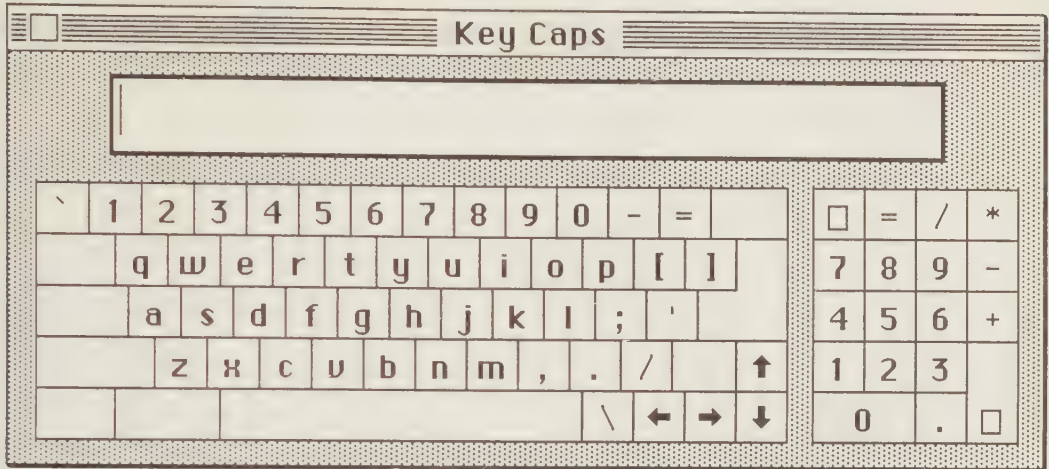
Standard keyboard layout (with Shift)



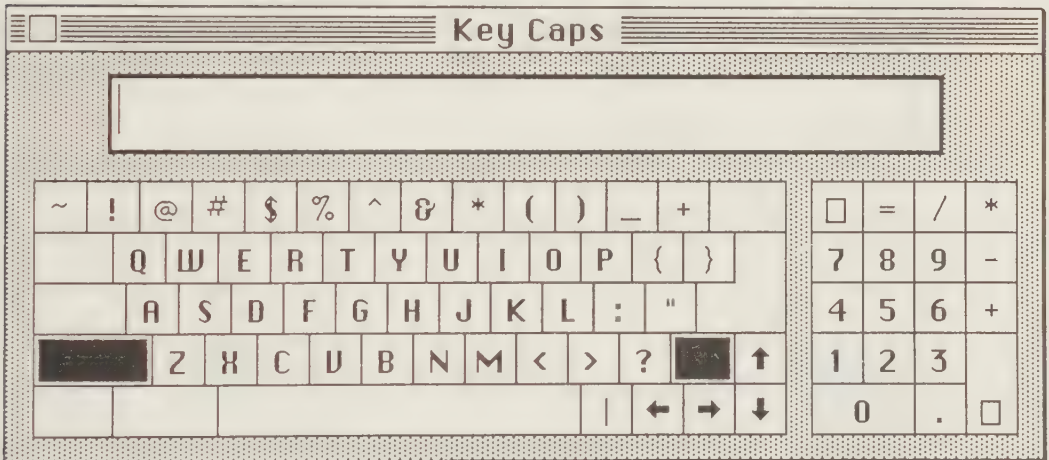
Standard keyboard layout (with Option)



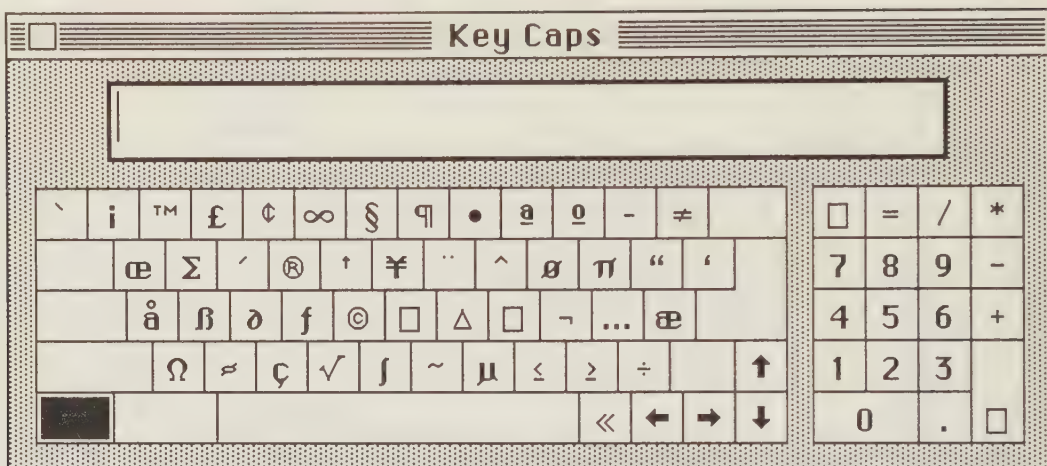
Standard keyboard layout (with Option-Shift)



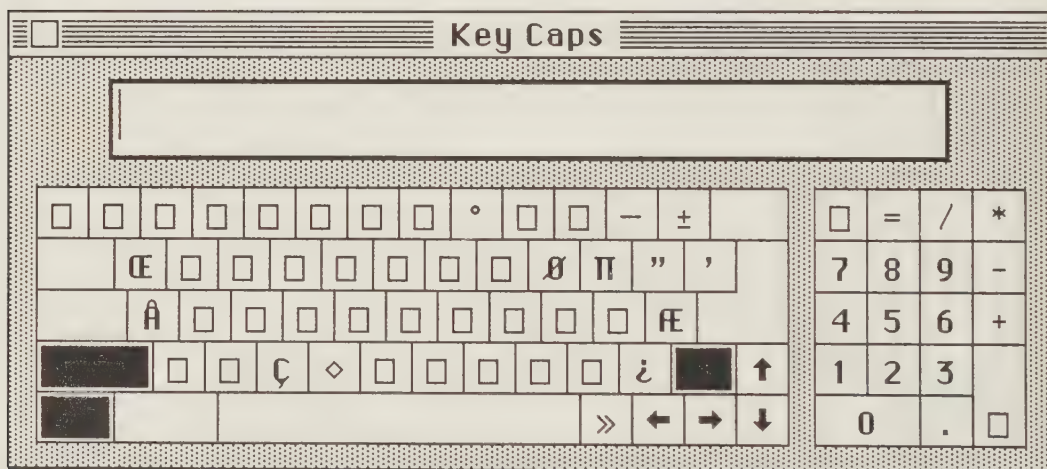
Macintosh Plus keyboard layout (unshifted)



Macintosh Plus keyboard layout (with Shift)



Macintosh Plus keyboard layout (with Option)



Macintosh Plus keyboard layout (with Option-Shift)

Character Codes

		First hex digit															
		\$0	\$1	\$2	\$3	\$4	\$5	\$6	\$7	\$8	\$9	\$A	\$B	\$C	\$D	\$E	\$F
Second hex digit	0	\\ L	□	space	0	@	P	`	p	Ä	ê	†	∞	¿	-	†	Apple
	1	□	‰	!	1	A	Q	a	q	Â	ë	°	±	i	—	•	Ò
	2	□	✓	"	2	B	R	b	r	Ç	î	¢	≤	¬	“	,	Ú
	3	□	◆	#	3	C	S	c	s	É	ï	£	≥	√	”	„	Û
	4	□	Apple	\$	4	D	T	d	t	Ñ	î	§	¥	f	‘	%.	Ù
	5	□	□	%	5	E	U	e	u	Ó	ï	•	μ	≠	’	Â	ı
	6	□	□	&	6	F	V	f	v	Ü	ñ	¶	ð	Δ	÷	Ê	ˆ
	7	□	□	'	7	G	W	g	w	á	ó	ß	Σ	«	◇	Á	˜
	8	□	□	(	8	H	X	h	x	à	ò	®	Π	»	Û	Ë	-
	9	Tab	□	)	9	I	Y	i	y	â	ô	©	π	...	ÿ	È	˘
	A	□	□	*	:	J	Z	j	z	ä	ö	™	ƒ	non-break space	/	Í	˙
	B	□	□	+	;	K	[	k	{	å	õ	‘	g	À	⌘	Î	°
	C	□	□	,	<	L	\	l	|	å	ú	“	g	Â	<	İ	,
	D	(R	□	-	=	M	]	m	}	ç	ù	≠	Ω	Û	>	ì	
	E	□	□	.	>	N	^	n	~	é	û	Æ	æ	Œ	fi	Ó	
	F	□	□	/	?	O	_	o		è	ü	ø	ø	œ	fl	ô	□

Characters with shading are typed as two-character combinations

APPENDIX



E



Error Codes

Operating System Errors

The following is a complete list of Operating System error codes. Not all are covered in this book, and some of the meanings may be obscure. (I don't know what a bit-slip nybble is either.) For the errors you're most likely to encounter, see reference sections [I:3.1.2, I:6.6.1, II:8.2.8].

Number	Name	Meaning
0	NoErr	No error; all is well
-1	QErr	Queue element not found during deletion
-2	VTypErr	Invalid queue element
-3	CorErr	Trap ("core routine") number out of range
-4	UnimpErr	Unimplemented trap
-8	SENoDB	No debugger installed
-17	ControlErr	Driver error during Control operation
-18	StatusErr	Driver error during Status operation
-19	ReadErr	Driver error during Read operation
-20	WritErr	Driver error during Write operation
-21	BadUnitErr	Bad unit number
-22	UnitEmptyErr	No such entry in unit table

Number	Name	Meaning
—23	OpenErr	Driver error during Open operation
—24	CloseErr	Driver error during Close operation
—25	DRemovErr	Attempt to remove an open driver
—26	DInstErr	Attempt to install nonexistent driver
—27	AbortErr	Driver operation aborted
—28	NotOpenErr	Driver not open
—33	DirFulErr	Directory full
—34	DskFulErr	Disk full
—35	NSVErr	No such volume
—36	IOErr	Disk I/O error
—37	BdNamErr	Bad name
—38	FNOpnErr	File not open
—39	EOFErr	Attempt to read past end-of-file
—40	PosErr	Attempt to position before start of file
—41	MFULErr	Memory (system heap) full
—42	TMFOErr	Too many files open (more than 12)
—43	FNFErr	File not found
—44	WPrErr	Disk is write-protected
—45	FLckdErr	File locked
—46	VLckdErr	Volume locked
—47	FBsyErr	File busy
—48	DupFNErr	Duplicate file name
—49	OpWrErr	File already open for writing
—50	ParamErr	Invalid parameter list
—51	RfNumErr	Invalid reference number
—52	GFPErr	Error during GetFPos
—53	VolOffLinErr	Volume off-line
—54	PermErr	Permission violation
—55	VolOnLinErr	Volume already on-line
—56	NSDrvErr	No such drive
—57	NoMacDskErr	Non-Macintosh disk
—58	ExtFSErr	External file system
—59	FSRnErr	Unable to rename file
—60	BadMDBErr	Bad master directory block
—61	WrPermErr	No write permission
—64	NoDriveErr	No such drive
—65	OffLinErr	Drive off-line
—66	NoNybErr	Can't find 5 nybbles
—67	NoAdrMkErr	No address mark
—68	DataVerErr	Data read doesn't verify
—69	BadCksmErr	Bad checksum (address mark)
—70	BadBtSlpErr	Bad bit-slip nybbles (address mark)
—71	NoDtaMkErr	No data mark

Number	Name	Meaning
-72	BadDCksum	Bad checksum (data mark)
-73	BadDBtSlp	Bad bit-slip nybbles (data mark)
-74	WrUnderrun	Write underrun
-75	CantStepErr	Can't step disk drive
-76	Tk0BadErr	Track 0 bad
-77	InitIWMErr	Can't initialize disk chip ("Integrated Wozniak Machine")
-78	TwoSideErr	Two-sided operation on one-sided drive
-79	SpdAdjErr	Can't adjust disk speed
-80	SeekErr	Seek to wrong track
-81	SectNFErr	Sector not found
-85	ClkRdErr	Error reading clock
-86	ClkWrErr	Error writing clock
-87	PRWrErr	Error writing parameter RAM
-88	PRInitErr	Parameter RAM uninitialized
-89	RcvrErr	Receiver error (serial communications)
-90	BreakRecd	Break received (serial communications)
-91	DDPSktErr	Socket error (AppleTalk, Datagram Delivery Protocol)
-92	DDPLenErr	Packet too long (AppleTalk, Datagram Delivery Protocol)
-93	NoBridgeErr	No bridge found (AppleTalk)
-94	LAPProtErr	Protocol error (AppleTalk, Link Access Protocol)
-95	ExcessCollsns	Excessive collisions (AppleTalk)
-97	PortInUse	Port already in use (AppleTalk)
-98	PortNotCf	Port not configured for this connection (AppleTalk)
-99	MemROZError	Error in read-only zone
-100	NoScrapErr	No desk scrap
-102	NoTypeErr	No item in scrap of requested type
-108	MemFullErr	No room; heap is full
-109	NilHandleErr	Illegal operation on empty handle
-110	MemAdrErr	Bad memory address
-111	MemWZErr	Illegal operation on free block
-112	MemPurErr	Illegal operation on locked block
-113	MemAZErr	Address not in heap zone
-114	MemPCErr	Pointer check failed
-115	MemBCErr	Block check failed
-116	MemSCErr	Size check failed
-117	MemLockedErr	Attempt to move a locked block

Number	Name	Meaning
-120	DirNFErr	Directory not found
-121	TMWDOErr	Too many working directories open
-122	BadMovErr	Invalid move operation
-123	WrgVolTypErr	Wrong volume type (not HFS)
-127	FSDSIntErr	Internal file system error
-192	ResNotFound	Resource not found
-193	ResFNotFound	Resource file not found
-194	AddResFailed	AddResource failed
-196	RmvResFailed	RmveResource failed
-198	ResErrAttr	Operation prohibited by resource attribute
-199	MapReadErr	Error reading resource map
-1024	NBPBuffOvr	Buffer overflow (AppleTalk, Name-Binding Protocol)
-1025	NBPNoConfirm	Name not confirmed (AppleTalk, Name-Binding Protocol)
-1026	NBPConfDiff	Name confirmed for different socket (AppleTalk, Name-Binding Protocol)
-1027	NBPDuplicate	Name already exists (AppleTalk, Name-Binding Protocol)
-1028	NBPNotFound	Name not found (AppleTalk, Name-Binding Protocol)
-1029	NBPNISerr	Names information socket error (AppleTalk, Name-Binding Protocol)
-1096	ReqFailed	Request failed (AppleTalk)
-1097	TooManyReqs	Too many concurrent requests (AppleTalk)
-1098	TooManySks	Too many responding sockets (AppleTalk)
-1099	BadATPSkt	Bad responding socket (AppleTalk Transaction Protocol)
-1100	BadBuffNum	Bad buffer number (AppleTalk)
-1101	NoRelErr	No release received (AppleTalk)
-1102	CBNotFound	Control block not found (AppleTalk)
-1103	NoSendResp	AddResponse before SendResponse (AppleTalk)
-1104	NoDataArea	Too many outstanding calls (AppleTalk)
-1105	ReqAborted	Request aborted (AppleTalk)
-3101	Buf2SmallErr	Buffer too small (AppleTalk)
-3102	NoMPPErr	Driver not installed (AppleTalk, Macintosh Packet Protocol)
-3103	CkSumErr	Bad checksum (AppleTalk)
-3104	ExtractErr	No tuple in buffer (AppleTalk)
-3105	ReadQErr	Invalid socket or protocol type (AppleTalk)

Number	Name	Meaning
—3106	ATPLenErr	Packet too long (AppleTalk Transaction Protocol)
—3107	ATPBadRsp	Bad response (AppleTalk Transaction Protocol)
—3108	RecNotFnd	No AppleBus record (AppleTalk)
—3109	SktClosedErr	Socket closed (AppleTalk)

“Dire Straits” Errors

The following errors are reported directly to the user—not to the running program—by the “Dire Straits” Manager (officially called the System Error Handler). Errors in this category are considered so serious that recovery is impossible: the Toolbox simply displays a “dire straits” alert box (the one with the bomb icon) on the screen, forcing the user to restart the system. Some people insist that DS really stands for “deep spaghetti,” but most Macintosh programmers prefer a more colorful term.

Number	Name	Meaning
1	DSBusErr	Bus error
2	DSAddressErr	Address error
3	DSIllInstErr	Illegal instruction
4	DSZeroDivErr	Attempt to divide by zero
5	DSChkErr	Check trap
6	DSOverflowErr	Overflow trap
7	DSPrivErr	Privilege violation
8	DSTraceErr	Trace trap
9	DSLineAErr	“A emulator” trap
10	DSLineFErr	“F emulator” trap
11	DSMiscErr	Miscellaneous hardware exception
12	DSCoreErr	Unimplemented core routine
13	DSIRQErr	Uninstalled interrupt
14	DSIOCoreErr	I/O core error
15	DSLoadErr	Segment Loader error
16	DSFPERR	Floating-point error
17	DSNoPackErr	Package 0 not present
18	DSNoPk1	Package 1 not present
19	DSNoPk2	Package 2 not present
20	DSNoPk3	Package 3 not present
21	DSNoPk4	Package 4 not present
22	DSNoPk5	Package 5 not present

Number	Name	Meaning
23	DSNoPk6	Package 6 not present
24	DSNoPk7	Package 7 not present
25	DSMemFullErr	Out of memory
26	DSBadLaunch	Can't launch program
27	DSFSErr	File system error
28	DSStkNHeap	Stack/heap collision
30	DSReinsert	Ask user to reinsert disk
31	DSNotTheOne	Wrong disk inserted
84	MenuPrgErr	Menu purged from heap

APPENDIX

F

Summary of Trap Macros and Trap Words

Trap Macros

The following is an alphabetical list of assembly-language trap macros covered in both volumes of this book, with their corresponding trap words. For routines belonging to the standard packages, the trap word shown is one of the eight package traps (___Pack0 to ___Pack7) and is followed by a routine selector in parentheses. Routines marked with an asterisk (*) are available only on the Macintosh Plus.

Trap macro name	Trap word	Reference section
__AddPt	\$A87E	[I:4.4.1]
__AddResMenu	\$A94D	[II:4.3.3]
__AddResource	\$A9AB	[I:6.5.3]
__Alert	\$A985	[II:7.4.2]
__Allocate	\$A010	[II:8.2.5]
__AppendMenu	\$A933	[II:4.3.1]
__BackPat	\$A87C	[I:5.1.1]
__BeginUpdate	\$A922	[II:3.4.1]
__BitAnd	\$A858	[I:2.2.2]
__BitClr	\$A85F	[I:2.2.1]
__BitNot	\$A85A	[I:2.2.2]

Trap macro name	Trap word	Reference section
__BitOr	\$A85B	[I:2.2.2]
__BitSet	\$A85E	[I:2.2.1]
__BitShift	\$A85C	[I:2.2.2]
__BitTst	\$A85D	[I:2.2.1]
__BitXOr	\$A859	[I:2.2.2]
__BlockMove	\$A02E	[I:3.2.6]
__BringToFront	\$A920	[II:3.3.3]
__Button	\$A974	[II:2.4.2]
* __CalcMask	\$A838	[I:5.1.6]
__CalcMenuSize	\$A948	[II:4.7.1]
__CautionAlert	\$A988	[II:7.4.2]
__Chain	\$A9F3	[I:7.1.1]
__ChangedResource	\$A9AA	[I:6.5.2]
__CharWidth	\$A88D	[I:8.3.4]
__CheckItem	\$A945	[II:4.6.4]
__ClearMenuBar	\$A934	[II:4.4.1]
__ClipRect	\$A87B	[I:4.3.6]
__Close	\$A001	[II:8.2.2]
__CloseDeskAcc	\$A9B7	[II:4.5.2]
__CloseDialog	\$A982	[II:7.2.3]
__ClosePgon	\$A8CC	[I:4.1.4]
__ClosePicture	\$A8F4	[I:5.4.2]
__ClosePort	\$A87D	[I:4.3.2]
__CloseResFile	\$A99A	[I:6.2.1]
__CloseRgn	\$A8DB	[I:4.1.6]
__CloseWindow	\$A92D	[II:3.2.3]
__CmpString	\$A03C	[I:2.1.2]
__CompactMem	\$A04C	[I:3.3.2]
__CopyBits	\$A8EC	[I:5.1.2]
* __CopyMask	\$A817	[I:5.1.4]
__CopyRgn	\$A8DC	[I:4.1.7]
__CouldAlert	\$A989	[II:7.5.3]
__CouldDialog	\$A979	[II:7.5.3]
__CountMItems	\$A950	[II:4.3.5]
__CountResources	\$A99C	[I:6.3.3]
__CountTypes	\$A99E	[I:6.3.3]
* __Count1Resources	\$A80D	[I:6.3.3]
* __Count1Types	\$A81C	[I:6.3.3]
__Create	\$A008	[II:8.2.1]
__CreateResFile	\$A9B1	[I:6.5.1]
__CurResFile	\$A994	[I:6.2.2]

Trap macro name	Trap word	Reference section
__Date2Secs	\$A9C7	[I:2.4.3]
__Delay	\$A03B	[II:2.7.1]
__Delete	\$A009	[II:8.2.7]
__DeleteMenu	\$A936	[II:4.4.1]
* __DelMenuItem	\$A952	[II:4.3.4]
__DeltaPoint	\$A94F	[I:4.4.1]
__DetachResource	\$A992	[I:6.3.2]
__DialogSelect	\$A980	[II:7.4.4]
__DIBadMount	\$A9E9 (0)	[II:8.4.1]
__DiffRgn	\$A8E6	[I:4.4.8]
__DIFormat	\$A9E9 (6)	[II:8.4.2]
__DILoad	\$A9E9 (2)	[II:8.4.3]
__DisableItem	\$A93A	[II:4.6.2]
__DisposControl	\$A955	[II:6.2.2]
__DisposDialog	\$A983	[II:7.2.3]
__DisposHandle	\$A023	[I:3.2.2]
__DisposMenu	\$A932	[II:4.2.3]
__DisposPtr	\$A01F	[I:3.2.2]
__DisposRgn	\$A8D9	[I:4.1.6]
__DisposWindow	\$A914	[II:3.2.3]
__DIUnload	\$A9E9 (4)	[II:8.4.3]
__DIVerify	\$A9E9 (8)	[II:8.4.2]
__DIZero	\$A9E9 (10)	[II:8.4.2]
__DragControl	\$A967	[II:6.4.3]
__DragWindow	\$A925	[II:3.5.4]
__DrawChar	\$A883	[I:8.3.3]
__DrawControls	\$A969	[II:6.3.1]
__DrawDialog	\$A981	[II:7.4.1]
__DrawGrowIcon	\$A904	[II:3.3.4]
__DrawMenuBar	\$A937	[II:4.4.3]
__DrawPicture	\$A8F6	[I:5.4.3]
__DrawString	\$A884	[I:8.3.3]
__DrawText	\$A885	[I:8.3.3]
__Eject	\$A017	[II:8.1.3]
__EmptyHandle	\$A02B	[I:3.3.3]
__EmptyRect	\$A8AE	[I:4.4.4]
__EmptyRgn	\$A8E2	[I:4.4.7]
__EnableItem	\$A939	[II:4.6.2]
__EndUpdate	\$A923	[II:3.4.1]
__EqualPt	\$A881	[I:4.4.1]
__EqualRect	\$A8A6	[I:4.4.5]
__EqualRgn	\$A8E3	[I:4.4.8]

Trap macro name	Trap word	Reference section
__EraseArc	\$A8C0	[I:5.3.5]
__EraseOval	\$A8B9	[I:5.3.4]
__ErasePoly	\$A8C8	[I:5.3.6]
__EraseRect	\$A8A3	[I:5.3.2]
__EraseRgn	\$A8D4	[I:5.3.7]
__EraseRoundRect	\$A8B2	[I:5.3.3]
__ErrorSound	\$A98C	[II:7.5.1]
__EventAvail	\$A971	[II:2.2.1]
__ExitToShell	\$A9F4	[I:7.1.3]
__FillArc	\$A8C2	[I:5.3.5]
__FillOval	\$A8BB	[I:5.3.4]
__FillPoly	\$A8CA	[I:5.3.6]
__FillRect	\$A8A5	[I:5.3.2]
__FillRgn	\$A8D6	[I:5.3.7]
__FillRoundRect	\$A8B4	[I:5.3.3]
__FindControl	\$A96C	[II:6.4.1]
* __FindDItem	\$A984	[II:7.3.4]
__FindWindow	\$A92C	[II:3.5.1]
* __FixATan2	\$A818	[I:2.3.6]
* __FixDiv	\$A84D	[I:2.3.2]
__FixMul	\$A868	[I:2.3.2]
__FixRatio	\$A869	[I:2.3.2]
__FixRound	\$A86C	[I:2.3.1]
* __Fix2Frac	\$A841	[I:2.3.3]
* __Fix2Long	\$A840	[I:2.3.1]
__FlashMenuBar	\$A94C	[II:4.7.2]
__FlushEvents	\$A032	[II:2.3.1]
__FlushVol	\$A013	[II:8.1.3]
* __FontMetrics	\$A835	[I:8.2.6]
* __FracCos	\$A847	[I:2.3.6]
* __FracDiv	\$A84B	[I:2.3.4]
* __FracMul	\$A84A	[I:2.3.4]
* __FracSin	\$A848	[I:2.3.6]
* __FracSqrt	\$A849	[I:2.3.4]
* __Frac2Fix	\$A842	[I:2.3.3]
__FrameArc	\$A8BE	[I:5.3.5]
__FrameOval	\$A8B7	[I:5.3.4]
__FramePoly	\$A8C6	[I:5.3.6]
__FrameRect	\$A8A1	[I:5.3.2]
__FrameRgn	\$A8D2	[I:5.3.7]
__FrameRoundRect	\$A8B0	[I:5.3.3]
__FreeAlert	\$A98A	[II:7.5.3]

Trap macro name	Trap word	Reference section
__FreeDialog	\$A97A	[II:7.5.3]
__FreeMem	\$A01C	[I:3.3.1]
__FrontWindow	\$A924	[II:3.3.3]
__GetAppParms	\$A9F5	[I:7.3.4]
__GetClip	\$A87A	[I:4.3.6]
__GetCRefCon	\$A95A	[II:6.2.3]
__GetCTitle	\$A95E	[II:6.2.3]
__GetCtlAction	\$A96A	[II:6.4.2]
__GetCtlValue	\$A960	[II:6.2.4]
__GetCursor	\$A9B9	[II:2.5.2]
__GetDItem	\$A98D	[II:7.3.1]
__GetEOF	\$A011	[II:8.2.5]
__GetFileInfo	\$A00C	[I:7.3.3]
__GetFName	\$A8FF	[I:8.2.5]
__GetFNum	\$A900	[I:8.2.5]
__GetFontInfo	\$A88B	[I:8.2.6]
__GetFPos	\$A018	[II:8.2.4]
__GetHandleSize	\$A025	[I:3.2.3]
__GetIndResource	\$A99D	[I:6.3.3]
__GetIndType	\$A99F	[I:6.3.3]
__GetItem	\$A946	[II:4.6.1]
__GetIText	\$A990	[II:7.3.2]
__GetItmIcon	\$A93F	[II:4.6.5]
__GetItmMark	\$A943	[II:4.6.4]
__GetItmStyle	\$A941	[II:4.6.3]
__GetKeys	\$A976	[II:2.6.1]
__GetMaxCtl	\$A962	[II:6.2.4]
__GetMenuBar	\$A93B	[II:4.4.4]
__GetMHandle	\$A949	[II:4.4.5]
__GetMinCtl	\$A961	[II:6.2.4]
__GetMouse	\$A972	[II:2.4.1]
__GetNamedResource	\$A9A1	[I:6.3.1]
__GetNewControl	\$A9BE	[II:6.2.1]
__GetNewDialog	\$A97C	[II:7.2.2]
__GetNewMBar	\$A9C0	[II:4.4.2]
__GetNewWindow	\$A9BD	[II:3.2.2]
__GetNextEvent	\$A970	[II:2.2.1]
__GetPattern	\$A9B8	[I:5.1.1]
__GetPen	\$A89A	[I:5.2.4]
__GetPenState	\$A898	[I:5.2.1]
__GetPicture	\$A9BC	[I:5.4.2]
__GetPixel	\$A865	[I:4.2.3]

Trap macro name	Trap word	Reference section
__GetPort	\$A874	[I:4.3.3]
__GetPtrSize	\$A021	[I:3.2.3]
__GetResAttrs	\$A9A6	[I:6.4.2]
__GetResFileAttrs	\$A9F6	[I:6.6.2]
__GetResInfo	\$A9A8	[I:6.4.1]
__GetResource	\$A9A0	[I:6.3.1]
__GetRMenu	\$A9BF	[II:4.2.2]
__GetScrap	\$A9FD	[I:7.4.3]
__GetString	\$A9BA	[I:8.1.2]
__GetVol	\$A014	[II:8.1.2]
__GetVolInfo	\$A007	[II:8.1.1]
__GetWindowPic	\$A92F	[II:3.4.3]
__GetWMgrPort	\$A910	[II:3.6.1]
__GetWRefCon	\$A917	[II:3.2.4]
__GetWTitle	\$A919	[II:3.2.4]
* __Get1IxResource	\$A80E	[I:6.3.3]
* __Get1IxType	\$A80F	[I:6.3.3]
* __Get1NamedResource	\$A820	[I:6.3.1]
* __Get1Resource	\$A81F	[I:6.3.1]
__GlobalToLocal	\$A871	[I:4.4.2]
__GrafDevice	\$A872	[I:8.3.2]
__GrowWindow	\$A92B	[II:3.5.4]
__HandAndHand	\$A9E4	[I:3.2.7]
__HandToHand	\$A9E1	[I:3.2.6]
* __HCInRBit	\$A068	[I:3.2.4]
* __HGetState	\$A069	[I:3.2.4]
__HideControl	\$A958	[II:6.3.1]
__HideCursor	\$A852	[II:2.5.3]
* __HideDItem	\$A827	[II:7.3.3]
__HidePen	\$A896	[I:5.2.3]
__HideWindow	\$A916	[II:3.3.1]
__HiliteControl	\$A95D	[II:6.3.3]
__HiliteMenu	\$A938	[II:4.5.4]
__HiliteWindow	\$A91C	[II:3.3.4]
__HiWord	\$A86A	[I:2.2.3]
__HLock	\$A029	[I:3.2.4]
__HNoPurge	\$A04A	[I:3.2.4]
__HomeResFile	\$A9A4	[I:6.4.3]
__HPurge	\$A049	[I:3.2.4]
* __HSetRBit	\$A067	[I:3.2.4]
* __HSetState	\$A06A	[I:3.2.4]
__HUnlock	\$A02A	[I:3.2.4]

Trap macro name	Trap word	Reference section
__InfoScrap	\$A9F9	[I:7.4.2]
__InitAllPacks	\$A9E6	[I:7.2.2]
__InitCursor	\$A850	[II:2.5.2]
__InitDialogs	\$A97B	[II:7.2.1]
__InitFonts	\$A8FE	[I:8.2.4]
__InitGraf	\$A86E	[I:4.3.1]
__InitMenus	\$A930	[II:4.2.1]
__InitPack	\$A9E5	[I:7.2.2]
__InitPort	\$A86D	[I:4.3.2]
__InitWindows	\$A912	[II:3.2.1]
__InsertMenu	\$A935	[II:4.4.1]
__InsertResMenu	\$A951	[II:4.3.3]
__InsetRect	\$A8A9	[I:4.4.4]
__InsetRgn	\$A8E1	[I:4.4.7]
* __InsMenuItem	\$A826	[II:4.3.1]
__InvalRect	\$A928	[II:3.4.2]
__InvalRgn	\$A927	[II:3.4.2]
__InverRect	\$A8A4	[I:5.3.2]
__InverRgn	\$A8D5	[I:5.3.7]
__InverRoundRect	\$A8B3	[I:5.3.3]
__InvertArc	\$A8C1	[I:5.3.5]
__InvertOval	\$A8BA	[I:5.3.4]
__InvertPoly	\$A8C9	[I:5.3.6]
__IsDialogEvent	\$A97F	[II:7.4.4]
__IUDateString	\$A9ED (0)	[I:2.4.4]
__IUTimeString	\$A9ED (2)	[I:2.4.4]
__KillControls	\$A956	[II:6.2.2]
__KillPicture	\$A8F5	[I:5.4.2]
__KillPoly	\$A8CD	[I:4.1.4]
__Launch	\$A9F2	[I:7.1.1]
__Line	\$A892	[I:5.2.4]
__LineTo	\$A891	[I:5.2.4]
__LoadSeg	\$A9F0	[I:7.1.2]
__LocalToGlobal	\$A870	[I:4.4.2]
__LodeScrap	\$A9FB	[I:7.4.4]
__LongMul	\$A867	[I:2.3.5]
* __Long2Fix	\$A83F	[I:2.3.1]
__LoWord	\$A86B	[I:2.2.3]
__MapPoly	\$A8FC	[I:4.4.9]
__MapPt	\$A8F9	[I:4.4.9]

Trap macro name	Trap word	Reference section
_MapRect	\$A8FA	[I:4.4.9]
_MapRgn	\$A8FB	[I:4.4.9]
*_MaxApplZone	\$A063	[I:3.3.4]
*_MaxBlock	\$A061	[I:3.3.1]
_MaxMem	\$A11D	[I:3.3.2]
*_MaxSizeRsrc	\$A821	[I:6.4.3]
*_MeasureText	\$A837	[I:8.3.4]
_MenuKey	\$A93E	[II:4.5.1]
_MenuSelect	\$A93D	[II:4.5.1]
_ModalDialog	\$A991	[II:7.4.3]
_MoreMasters	\$A036	[I:3.2.5]
_MountVol	\$A00F	[II:8.1.3]
_Move	\$A894	[I:5.2.4]
_MoveControl	\$A959	[II:6.3.2]
*_MoveHHi	\$A064	[I:3.2.5]
_MovePortTo	\$A877	[I:4.3.5]
_MoveTo	\$A893	[I:5.2.4]
_MoveWindow	\$A91B	[II:3.3.2]
_Munger	\$A9E0	[II:5.5.6]
_NewControl	\$A954	[II:6.2.1]
_NewDialog	\$A97D	[II:7.2.2]
*_NewEmptyHandle	\$A166	[I:3.2.1]
_NewHandle	\$A122	[I:3.2.1]
_NewMenu	\$A931	[II:4.2.2]
_NewPtr	\$A11E	[I:3.2.1]
_NewRgn	\$A8D8	[I:4.1.6]
_NewString	\$A906	[I:8.1.2]
_NewWindow	\$A913	[II:3.2.2]
_NoteAlert	\$A987	[II:7.4.2]
_NumToString	\$A9EE (0)	[I:2.3.7]
_ObscureCursor	\$A856	[II:2.5.4]
_OffLine	\$A035	[II:8.1.3]
_OffsetPoly	\$A8CE	[I:4.4.6]
_OffsetRect	\$A8A8	[I:4.4.4]
_OffsetRgn	\$A8E0	[I:4.4.7]
_Open	\$A000	[II:8.2.2]
_OpenDeskAcc	\$A9B6	[II:4.5.2]
_OpenPicture	\$A8F3	[I:5.4.2]
_OpenPoly	\$A8CB	[I:4.1.4]
_OpenPort	\$A86F	[I:4.3.2]
_OpenResFile	\$A997	[I:6.2.1]

Trap macro name	Trap word	Reference section
__OpenRF	\$A00A	[II:8.2.2]
__OpenRgn	\$A8DA	[I:4.1.6]
__Pack0	\$A9E7	[I:7.2.1]
__Pack1	\$A9E8	[I:7.2.1]
__Pack2	\$A9E9	[I:7.2.1]
__Pack3	\$A9EA	[I:7.2.1]
__Pack4	\$A9EB	[I:7.2.1]
__Pack5	\$A9EC	[I:7.2.1]
__Pack6	\$A9ED	[I:7.2.1]
__Pack7	\$A9EE	[I:7.2.1]
* __Pack8	\$A816	[I:7.2.1]
* __Pack9	\$A82B	[I:7.2.1]
* __Pack10	\$A82C	[I:7.2.1]
* __Pack11	\$A82D	[I:7.2.1]
* __Pack12	\$A82E	[I:7.2.1]
* __Pack13	\$A82F	[I:7.2.1]
* __Pack14	\$A830	[I:7.2.1]
* __Pack15	\$A831	[I:7.2.1]
__PaintArc	\$A8BF	[I:5.3.5]
__PaintOval	\$A8B8	[I:5.3.4]
__PaintPoly	\$A8C7	[I:5.3.6]
__PaintRect	\$A8A2	[I:5.3.2]
__PaintRgn	\$A8D3	[I:5.3.7]
__PaintRoundRect	\$A8B1	[I:5.3.3]
__ParamText	\$A98B	[II:7.4.6]
__PenMode	\$A89C	[I:5.2.2]
__PenNormal	\$A89E	[I:5.2.2]
__PenPat	\$A89D	[I:5.2.2]
__PenSize	\$A89B	[I:5.2.2]
__PinRect	\$A94E	[I:4.4.3]
__PortSize	\$A876	[I:4.3.5]
__PostEvent	\$A02F	[II:2.3.2]
__Pt2Rect	\$A8AC	[I:4.1.2]
__PtInRect	\$A8AD	[I:4.4.3]
__PtInRgn	\$A8E8	[I:4.4.3]
__PtrAndHand	\$A9EF	[I:3.2.7]
__PtrToHand	\$A9E3	[I:3.2.6]
__PtrToXHand	\$A9E2	[I:3.2.6]
__PtToAngle	\$A8C3	[I:5.3.5]
__PurgeMem	\$A04D	[I:3.3.2]
* __PurgeSpace	\$A162	[I:3.3.1]
__PutScrap	\$A9FE	[I:7.4.3]

Trap macro name	Trap word	Reference section
__Random	\$A861	[I:2.3.8]
__Read	\$A002	[II:8.2.3]
__RealFont	\$A902	[I:8.2.5]
__ReallocHandle	\$A027	[I:3.3.3]
__RecoverHandle	\$A128	[I:3.2.1]
__RectInRgn	\$A8E9	[I:4.4.3]
__RectRgn	\$A8DF	[I:4.1.7]
__ReleaseResource	\$A9A3	[I:6.3.2]
* __RelString	\$A050	[I:2.1.2]
__Rename	\$A00B	[II:8.2.7]
__ResError	\$A9AF	[I:6.6.1]
__ResrvMem	\$A040	[I:3.2.5]
__RmveResource	\$A9AD	[I:6.5.3]
__RstFilLock	\$A042	[II:8.2.6]
__ScalePt	\$A8F8	[I:4.4.9]
__ScrollRect	\$A8EF	[I:5.1.5]
__Secs2Date	\$A9C6	[I:2.4.3]
__SectRect	\$A8AA	[I:4.4.5]
__SectRgn	\$A8E4	[I:4.4.8]
* __SeedFill	\$A839	[I:5.1.6]
__SelectWindow	\$A91F	[II:3.5.2]
__SelIText	\$A97E	[II:7.3.2]
__SendBehind	\$A921	[II:3.3.3]
__SetApplLimit	\$A02D	[I:3.3.4]
__SetClip	\$A879	[I:4.3.6]
__SetCRefCon	\$A95B	[II:6.2.3]
__SetCTitle	\$A95F	[II:6.2.3]
__SetCtlAction	\$A96B	[II:6.4.2]
__SetCtlValue	\$A963	[II:6.2.4]
__SetCursor	\$A851	[II:2.5.2]
__SetDateTime	\$A03A	[I:2.4.1]
__SetDItem	\$A98E	[II:7.3.1]
__SetEmptyRgn	\$A8DD	[I:4.1.7]
__SetEOF	\$A012	[II:8.2.5]
__SetFileInfo	\$A00D	[I:7.3.3]
__SetFilLock	\$A041	[II:8.2.6]
__SetFontLock	\$A903	[I:8.2.7]
__SetFPos	\$A044	[II:8.2.4]
* __SetFScaleDisable	\$A834	[I:8.2.8]
__SetHandleSize	\$A024	[I:3.2.3]
__SetItem	\$A947	[II:4.6.1]
__SetIText	\$A98F	[II:7.3.2]

Trap macro name	Trap word	Reference section
__SetItmIcon	\$A940	[II:4.6.5]
__SetItmMark	\$A944	[II:4.6.4]
__SetItmStyle	\$A942	[II:4.6.3]
__SetMaxCtl	\$A965	[II:6.2.4]
__SetMenuBar	\$A93C	[II:4.4.4]
__SetMFlash	\$A94A	[II:4.7.2]
__SetMinCtl	\$A964	[II:6.2.4]
__SetOrigin	\$A878	[I:4.3.4]
__SetPBits	\$A875	[I:4.3.4]
__SetPenState	\$A899	[I:5.2.1]
__SetPort	\$A873	[I:4.3.3]
__SetPt	\$A880	[I:4.1.1]
__SetPtrSize	\$A020	[I:3.2.3]
__SetRecRgn	\$A8DE	[I:4.1.7]
__SetRect	\$A8A7	[I:4.1.2]
__SetResAttr	\$A9A7	[I:6.4.2]
__SetResFileAttr	\$A9F7	[I:6.6.2]
__SetResInfo	\$A9A9	[I:6.4.1]
__SetResPurge	\$A993	[I:6.5.5]
__SetString	\$A907	[I:8.1.2]
__SetVol	\$A015	[II:8.1.2]
__SetWindowPic	\$A92E	[II:3.4.3]
__SetWRefCon	\$A918	[II:3.2.4]
__SetWTitle	\$A91A	[II:3.2.4]
__SFGetFile	\$A9EA (2)	[II:8.3.2]
__SFPutFile	\$A9EA (1)	[II:8.3.3]
__ShieldCursor	\$A855	[II:2.5.4]
__ShowControl	\$A957	[II:6.3.1]
__ShowCursor	\$A853	[II:2.5.3]
* __ShowDItem	\$A828	[II:7.3.3]
__ShowHide	\$A908	[II:3.3.1]
__ShowPen	\$A897	[I:5.2.3]
__ShowWindow	\$A915	[II:3.3.1]
__SizeControl	\$A95C	[II:6.3.2]
__SizeRsrc	\$A9A5	[I:6.4.3]
__SizeWindow	\$A91D	[II:3.3.2]
__SpaceExtra	\$A88E	[I:8.3.2]
* __StackSpace	\$A065	[I:3.3.4]
__StillDown	\$A973	[II:2.4.2]
__StopAlert	\$A986	[II:7.4.2]
__StringToNum	\$A9EE (1)	[I:2.3.7]
__StringWidth	\$A88C	[I:8.3.4]
__StuffHex	\$A866	[I:2.2.4]

Trap macro name	Trap word	Reference section
__SubPt	\$A87F	[I:4.4.1]
__SysBeep	\$A9C8	[II:2.8.1]
__SysEdit	\$A9C2	[II:4.5.3]
__SystemClick	\$A9B3	[II:3.5.3]
__SystemTask	\$A9B4	[II:2.7.2]
__TEActivate	\$A9D8	[II:5.4.3]
* __TEAutoView	\$A813	[II:5.3.3]
__TECalText	\$A9D0	[II:5.3.1]
__TEClick	\$A9D4	[II:5.4.1]
__TECopy	\$A9D5	[II:5.5.2]
__TECut	\$A9D6	[II:5.5.2]
__TEDeactivate	\$A9D9	[II:5.4.3]
__TEDelete	\$A9D7	[II:5.5.3]
__TEDispose	\$A9CD	[II:5.2.2]
__TEGetText	\$A9CB	[II:5.2.3]
__TEIdle	\$A9DA	[II:5.4.3]
__TEInit	\$A9CC	[II:5.2.1]
__TEInsert	\$A9DE	[II:5.5.3]
__TEKey	\$A9DC	[II:5.5.1]
__TENew	\$A9D2	[II:5.2.2]
__TEPaste	\$A9DB	[II:5.5.2]
* __TEPinScroll	\$A812	[II:5.3.3]
__TEScroll	\$A9DD	[II:5.3.3]
* __TESelView	\$A811	[II:5.3.3]
__TESetJust	\$A9DF	[II:5.3.1]
__TESetSelect	\$A9D1	[II:5.4.2]
__TESetText	\$A9CF	[II:5.2.3]
__TestControl	\$A966	[II:6.4.1]
__TEUpdate	\$A9D3	[II:5.3.2]
__TextBox	\$A9CE	[II:5.3.2]
__TextFace	\$A888	[I:8.3.2]
__TextFont	\$A887	[I:8.3.2]
__TextMode	\$A889	[I:8.3.2]
__TextSize	\$A88A	[I:8.3.2]
__TextWidth	\$A886	[I:8.3.4]
__TickCount	\$A975	[II:2.7.1]
* __TrackBox	\$A83B	[II:3.5.4]
__TrackControl	\$A968	[II:6.4.2]
__TrackGoAway	\$A91E	[II:3.5.4]
__UnionRect	\$A8AB	[I:4.4.5]
__UnionRgn	\$A8E5	[I:4.4.8]

Trap macro name	Trap word	Reference section
__UniqueID	\$A9C1	[I:6.5.3]
* __Unique1ID	\$A810	[I:6.5.3]
__UnloadSeg	\$A9F1	[I:7.1.2]
__UnlodeScrap	\$A9FA	[I:7.4.4]
__UnmountVol	\$A00E	[II:8.1.3]
__UpdateResFile	\$A999	[I:6.5.4]
* __UpdtControls	\$A953	[II:6.3.1]
* __UpdtDialog	\$A978	[II:7.4.1]
__UpString	\$A854	[I:2.1.2]
__UseResFile	\$A998	[I:6.2.2]
__ValidRect	\$A92A	[II:3.4.2]
__ValidRgn	\$A929	[II:3.4.2]
__WaitMouseUp	\$A977	[II:2.4.2]
__Write	\$A003	[II:8.2.3]
__WriteResource	\$A9B0	[I:6.5.4]
__XOrRgn	\$A8E7	[I:4.4.8]
__ZeroScrap	\$A9FC	[I:7.4.3]
* __ZoomWindow	\$A83A	[II:3.3.2]

Trap Words

Here is the same list sorted numerically by trap word. Again, routine selectors are given in parentheses following the trap word for routines belonging to the standard packages, and routines marked with an asterisk (*) are available only on the Macintosh Plus.

Trap word	Trap macro name	Reference section
\$A000	__Open	[II:8.2.2]
\$A001	__Close	[II:8.2.2]
\$A002	__Read	[II:8.2.3]
\$A003	__Write	[II:8.2.3]
\$A007	__GetVollInfo	[II:8.1.1]
\$A008	__Create	[II:8.2.1]
\$A009	__Delete	[II:8.2.7]
\$A00A	__OpenRF	[II:8.2.2]
\$A00B	__Rename	[II:8.2.7]

Trap word	Trap macro name	Reference section
\$A00C	__GetFileInfo	[I:7.3.3]
\$A00D	__SetFileInfo	[I:7.3.3]
\$A00E	__UnmountVol	[II:8.1.3]
\$A00F	__MountVol	[II:8.1.3]
\$A010	__Allocate	[II:8.2.5]
\$A011	__GetEOF	[II:8.2.5]
\$A012	__SetEOF	[II:8.2.5]
\$A013	__FlushVol	[II:8.1.3]
\$A014	__GetVol	[II:8.1.2]
\$A015	__SetVol	[II:8.1.2]
\$A017	__Eject	[II:8.1.3]
\$A018	__GetFPos	[II:8.2.4]
\$A01C	__FreeMem	[I:3.3.1]
\$A11D	__MaxMem	[I:3.3.2]
\$A11E	__NewPtr	[I:3.2.1]
\$A01F	__DisposPtr	[I:3.2.2]
\$A020	__SetPtrSize	[I:3.2.3]
\$A021	__GetPtrSize	[I:3.2.3]
\$A122	__NewHandle	[I:3.2.1]
\$A023	__DisposHandle	[I:3.2.2]
\$A024	__SetHandleSize	[I:3.2.3]
\$A025	__GetHandleSize	[I:3.2.3]
\$A027	__ReallocHandle	[I:3.3.3]
\$A128	__RecoverHandle	[I:3.2.1]
\$A029	__HLock	[I:3.2.4]
\$A02A	__HUnlock	[I:3.2.4]
\$A02B	__EmptyHandle	[I:3.3.3]
\$A02D	__SetApplLimit	[I:3.3.4]
\$A02E	__BlockMove	[I:3.2.6]
\$A02F	__PostEvent	[II:2.3.2]
\$A032	__FlushEvents	[II:2.3.1]
\$A035	__OffLine	[II:8.1.3]
\$A036	__MoreMasters	[I:3.2.5]
\$A03A	__SetDateTime	[I:2.4.1]
\$A03B	__Delay	[II:2.7.1]
\$A03C	__CmpString	[I:2.1.2]
\$A040	__ResrvMem	[I:3.2.5]
\$A041	__SetFilLock	[II:8.2.6]
\$A042	__RstFilLock	[II:8.2.6]

Trap word	Trap macro name	Reference section
\$A044	__SetFPos	[II:8.2.4]
\$A049	__HPurge	[I:3.2.4]
\$A04A	__HNoPurge	[I:3.2.4]
\$A04C	__CompactMem	[I:3.3.2]
\$A04D	__PurgeMem	[I:3.3.2]
*\$A050	__RelString	[I:2.1.2]
*\$A061	__MaxBlock	[I:3.3.1]
*\$A162	__PurgeSpace	[I:3.3.1]
*\$A063	__MaxApplZone	[I:3.3.4]
*\$A064	__MoveHHi	[I:3.2.5]
*\$A065	__StackSpace	[I:3.3.4]
*\$A166	__NewEmptyHandle	[I:3.2.1]
*\$A067	__HSetRBit	[I:3.2.4]
*\$A068	__HClrRBit	[I:3.2.4]
*\$A069	__HGetState	[I:3.2.4]
*\$A06A	__HSetState	[I:3.2.4]
*\$A80D	__Count1Resources	[I:6.3.3]
*\$A80E	__Get1IxResource	[I:6.3.3]
*\$A80F	__Get1IxType	[I:6.3.3]
*\$A810	__Unique1ID	[I:6.5.3]
*\$A811	__TESelView	[II:5.3.3]
*\$A812	__TEPinScroll	[II:5.3.3]
*\$A813	__TEAutoView	[II:5.3.3]
*\$A816	__Pack8	[I:7.2.1]
*\$A817	__CopyMask	[I:5.1.4]
*\$A818	__FixATan2	[I:2.3.6]
*\$A81C	__Count1Types	[I:6.3.3]
*\$A81F	__Get1Resource	[I:6.3.1]
*\$A820	__Get1NamedResource	[I:6.3.1]
*\$A821	__MaxSizeRsrc	[I:6.4.3]
*\$A826	__InsMenuItem	[II:4.3.1]
*\$A827	__HideDItem	[II:7.3.3]
*\$A828	__ShowDItem	[II:7.3.3]
*\$A82B	__Pack9	[I:7.2.1]
*\$A82C	__Pack10	[I:7.2.1]
*\$A82D	__Pack11	[I:7.2.1]
*\$A82E	__Pack12	[I:7.2.1]
*\$A82F	__Pack13	[I:7.2.1]

Trap word	Trap macro name	Reference section
*\$A830	__Pack14	[I:7.2.1]
*\$A831	__Pack15	[I:7.2.1]
*\$A834	__SetFScaleDisable	[I:8.2.8]
*\$A835	__FontMetrics	[I:8.2.6]
*\$A837	__MeasureText	[I:8.3.4]
*\$A838	__CalcMask	[I:5.1.6]
*\$A839	__SeedFill	[I:5.1.6]
*\$A83A	__ZoomWindow	[II:3.3.2]
*\$A83B	__TrackBox	[II:3.5.4]
*\$A83F	__Long2Fix	[I:2.3.1]
*\$A840	__Fix2Long	[I:2.3.1]
*\$A841	__Fix2Frac	[I:2.3.3]
*\$A842	__Frac2Fix	[I:2.3.3]
*\$A847	__FracCos	[I:2.3.6]
*\$A848	__FracSin	[I:2.3.6]
*\$A849	__FracSqrt	[I:2.3.4]
*\$A84A	__FracMul	[I:2.3.4]
*\$A84B	__FracDiv	[I:2.3.4]
*\$A84D	__FixDiv	[I:2.3.2]
\$A850	__InitCursor	[II:2.5.2]
\$A851	__SetCursor	[II:2.5.2]
\$A852	__HideCursor	[II:2.5.3]
\$A853	__ShowCursor	[II:2.5.3]
\$A854	__UpString	[I:2.1.2]
\$A855	__ShieldCursor	[II:2.5.4]
\$A856	__ObscureCursor	[II:2.5.4]
\$A858	__BitAnd	[I:2.2.2]
\$A859	__BitXOr	[I:2.2.2]
\$A85A	__BitNot	[I:2.2.2]
\$A85B	__BitOr	[I:2.2.2]
\$A85C	__BitShift	[I:2.2.2]
\$A85D	__BitTst	[I:2.2.1]
\$A85E	__BitSet	[I:2.2.1]
\$A85F	__BitClr	[I:2.2.1]
\$A861	__Random	[I:2.3.8]
\$A865	__GetPixel	[I:4.2.3]
\$A866	__StuffHex	[I:2.2.4]
\$A867	__LongMul	[I:2.3.5]
\$A868	__FixMul	[I:2.3.2]
\$A869	__FixRatio	[I:2.3.2]

Trap word	Trap macro name	Reference section
\$A86A	__HiWord	[I:2.2.3]
\$A86B	__LoWord	[I:2.2.3]
\$A86C	__FixRound	[I:2.3.1]
\$A86D	__InitPort	[I:4.3.2]
\$A86E	__InitGraf	[I:4.3.1]
\$A86F	__OpenPort	[I:4.3.2]
\$A870	__LocalToGlobal	[I:4.4.2]
\$A871	__GlobalToLocal	[I:4.4.2]
\$A872	__GrafDevice	[I:8.3.2]
\$A873	__SetPort	[I:4.3.3]
\$A874	__GetPort	[I:4.3.3]
\$A875	__SetPBits	[I:4.3.4]
\$A876	__PortSize	[I:4.3.5]
\$A877	__MovePortTo	[I:4.3.5]
\$A878	__SetOrigin	[I:4.3.4]
\$A879	__SetClip	[I:4.3.6]
\$A87A	__GetClip	[I:4.3.6]
\$A87B	__ClipRect	[I:4.3.6]
\$A87C	__BackPat	[I:5.1.1]
\$A87D	__ClosePort	[I:4.3.2]
\$A87E	__AddPt	[I:4.4.1]
\$A87F	__SubPt	[I:4.4.1]
\$A880	__SetPt	[I:4.1.1]
\$A881	__EqualPt	[I:4.4.1]
\$A883	__DrawChar	[I:8.3.3]
\$A884	__DrawString	[I:8.3.3]
\$A885	__DrawText	[I:8.3.3]
\$A886	__TextWidth	[I:8.3.4]
\$A887	__TextFont	[I:8.3.2]
\$A888	__TextFace	[I:8.3.2]
\$A889	__TextMode	[I:8.3.2]
\$A88A	__TextSize	[I:8.3.2]
\$A88B	__GetFontInfo	[I:8.2.6]
\$A88C	__StringWidth	[I:8.3.4]
\$A88D	__CharWidth	[I:8.3.4]
\$A88E	__SpaceExtra	[I:8.3.2]
\$A891	__LineTo	[I:5.2.4]
\$A892	__Line	[I:5.2.4]
\$A893	__MoveTo	[I:5.2.4]
\$A894	__Move	[I:5.2.4]

Trap word	Trap macro name	Reference section
\$A896	__HidePen	[I:5.2.3]
\$A897	__ShowPen	[I:5.2.3]
\$A898	__GetPenState	[I:5.2.1]
\$A899	__SetPenState	[I:5.2.1]
\$A89A	__GetPen	[I:5.2.4]
\$A89B	__PenSize	[I:5.2.2]
\$A89C	__PenMode	[I:5.2.2]
\$A89D	__PenPat	[I:5.2.2]
\$A89E	__PenNormal	[I:5.2.2]
\$A8A1	__FrameRect	[I:5.3.2]
\$A8A2	__PaintRect	[I:5.3.2]
\$A8A3	__EraseRect	[I:5.3.2]
\$A8A4	__InverRect	[I:5.3.2]
\$A8A5	__FillRect	[I:5.3.2]
\$A8A6	__EqualRect	[I:4.4.5]
\$A8A7	__SetRect	[I:4.1.2]
\$A8A8	__OffsetRect	[I:4.4.4]
\$A8A9	__InsetRect	[I:4.4.4]
\$A8AA	__SectRect	[I:4.4.5]
\$A8AB	__UnionRect	[I:4.4.5]
\$A8AC	__Pt2Rect	[I:4.1.2]
\$A8AD	__PtInRect	[I:4.4.3]
\$A8AE	__EmptyRect	[I:4.4.4]
\$A8B0	__FrameRoundRect	[I:5.3.3]
\$A8B1	__PaintRoundRect	[I:5.3.3]
\$A8B2	__EraseRoundRect	[I:5.3.3]
\$A8B3	__InverRoundRect	[I:5.3.3]
\$A8B4	__FillRoundRect	[I:5.3.3]
\$A8B7	__FrameOval	[I:5.3.4]
\$A8B8	__PaintOval	[I:5.3.4]
\$A8B9	__EraseOval	[I:5.3.4]
\$A8BA	__InvertOval	[I:5.3.4]
\$A8BB	__FillOval	[I:5.3.4]
\$A8BE	__FrameArc	[I:5.3.5]
\$A8BF	__PaintArc	[I:5.3.5]
\$A8C0	__EraseArc	[I:5.3.5]
\$A8C1	__InvertArc	[I:5.3.5]
\$A8C2	__FillArc	[I:5.3.5]
\$A8C3	__PtToAngle	[I:5.3.5]
\$A8C6	__FramePoly	[I:5.3.6]

Trap word	Trap macro name	Reference section
\$A8C7	__PaintPoly	[I:5.3.6]
\$A8C8	__ErasePoly	[I:5.3.6]
\$A8C9	__InvertPoly	[I:5.3.6]
\$A8CA	__FillPoly	[I:5.3.6]
\$A8CB	__OpenPoly	[I:4.1.4]
\$A8CC	__ClosePgon	[I:4.1.4]
\$A8CD	__KillPoly	[I:4.1.4]
\$A8CE	__OffsetPoly	[I:4.4.6]
\$A8D2	__FrameRgn	[I:5.3.7]
\$A8D3	__PaintRgn	[I:5.3.7]
\$A8D4	__EraseRgn	[I:5.3.7]
\$A8D5	__InverRgn	[I:5.3.7]
\$A8D6	__FillRgn	[I:5.3.7]
\$A8D8	__NewRgn	[I:4.1.6]
\$A8D9	__DisposRgn	[I:4.1.6]
\$A8DA	__OpenRgn	[I:4.1.6]
\$A8DB	__CloseRgn	[I:4.1.6]
\$A8DC	__CopyRgn	[I:4.1.7]
\$A8DD	__SetEmptyRgn	[I:4.1.7]
\$A8DE	__SetRecRgn	[I:4.1.7]
\$A8DF	__RectRgn	[I:4.1.7]
\$A8E0	__OffsetRgn	[I:4.4.7]
\$A8E1	__InsetRgn	[I:4.4.7]
\$A8E2	__EmptyRgn	[I:4.4.7]
\$A8E3	__EqualRgn	[I:4.4.8]
\$A8E4	__SectRgn	[I:4.4.8]
\$A8E5	__UnionRgn	[I:4.4.8]
\$A8E6	__DiffRgn	[I:4.4.8]
\$A8E7	__XOrRgn	[I:4.4.8]
\$A8E8	__PtInRgn	[I:4.4.3]
\$A8E9	__RectInRgn	[I:4.4.3]
\$A8EC	__CopyBits	[I:5.1.2]
\$A8EF	__ScrollRect	[I:5.1.5]
\$A8F3	__OpenPicture	[I:5.4.2]
\$A8F4	__ClosePicture	[I:5.4.2]
\$A8F5	__KillPicture	[I:5.4.2]
\$A8F6	__DrawPicture	[I:5.4.3]
\$A8F8	__ScalePt	[I:4.4.9]
\$A8F9	__MapPt	[I:4.4.9]
\$A8FA	__MapRect	[I:4.4.9]

Trap word	Trap macro name	Reference section
\$A8FB	__MapRgn	[I:4.4.9]
\$A8FC	__MapPoly	[I:4.4.9]
\$A8FE	__InitFonts	[I:8.2.4]
\$A8FF	__GetFName	[I:8.2.5]
\$A900	__GetFNum	[I:8.2.5]
\$A902	__RealFont	[I:8.2.5]
\$A903	__SetFontLock	[I:8.2.7]
\$A904	__DrawGrowlcon	[II:3.3.4]
\$A906	__NewString	[I:8.1.2]
\$A907	__SetString	[I:8.1.2]
\$A908	__ShowHide	[II:3.3.1]
\$A910	__GetWMgrPort	[II:3.6.1]
\$A912	__InitWindows	[II:3.2.1]
\$A913	__NewWindow	[II:3.2.2]
\$A914	__DisposWindow	[II:3.2.3]
\$A915	__ShowWindow	[II:3.3.1]
\$A916	__HideWindow	[II:3.3.1]
\$A917	__GetWRefCon	[II:3.2.4]
\$A918	__SetWRefCon	[II:3.2.4]
\$A919	__GetWTitle	[II:3.2.4]
\$A91A	__SetWTitle	[II:3.2.4]
\$A91B	__MoveWindow	[II:3.3.2]
\$A91C	__HiliteWindow	[II:3.3.4]
\$A91D	__SizeWindow	[II:3.3.2]
\$A91E	__TrackGoAway	[II:3.5.4]
\$A91F	__SelectWindow	[II:3.5.2]
\$A920	__BringToFront	[II:3.3.3]
\$A921	__SendBehind	[II:3.3.3]
\$A922	__BeginUpdate	[II:3.4.1]
\$A923	__EndUpdate	[II:3.4.1]
\$A924	__FrontWindow	[II:3.3.3]
\$A925	__DragWindow	[II:3.5.4]
\$A927	__InvalRgn	[II:3.4.2]
\$A928	__InvalRect	[II:3.4.2]
\$A929	__ValidRgn	[II:3.4.2]
\$A92A	__ValidRect	[II:3.4.2]
\$A92B	__GrowWindow	[II:3.5.4]
\$A92C	__FindWindow	[II:3.5.1]
\$A92D	__CloseWindow	[II:3.2.3]
\$A92E	__SetWindowPic	[II:3.4.3]

Trap word	Trap macro name	Reference section
\$A92F	__GetWindowPic	[II:3.4.3]
\$A930	__InitMenus	[II:4.2.1]
\$A931	__NewMenu	[II:4.2.2]
\$A932	__DisposMenu	[II:4.2.3]
\$A933	__AppendMenu	[II:4.3.1]
\$A934	__ClearMenuBar	[II:4.4.1]
\$A935	__InsertMenu	[II:4.4.1]
\$A936	__DeleteMenu	[II:4.4.1]
\$A937	__DrawMenuBar	[II:4.4.3]
\$A938	__HiliteMenu	[II:4.5.4]
\$A939	__EnableItem	[II:4.6.2]
\$A93A	__DisableItem	[II:4.6.2]
\$A93B	__GetMenuBar	[II:4.4.4]
\$A93C	__SetMenuBar	[II:4.4.4]
\$A93D	__MenuSelect	[II:4.5.1]
\$A93E	__MenuKey	[II:4.5.1]
\$A93F	__GetItmIcon	[II:4.6.5]
\$A940	__SetItmIcon	[II:4.6.5]
\$A941	__GetItmStyle	[II:4.6.3]
\$A942	__SetItmStyle	[II:4.6.3]
\$A943	__GetItmMark	[II:4.6.4]
\$A944	__SetItmMark	[II:4.6.4]
\$A945	__CheckItem	[II:4.6.4]
\$A946	__GetItem	[II:4.6.1]
\$A947	__SetItem	[II:4.6.1]
\$A948	__CalcMenuSize	[II:4.7.1]
\$A949	__GetMHandle	[II:4.4.5]
\$A94A	__SetMFlash	[II:4.7.2]
\$A94C	__FlashMenuBar	[II:4.7.2]
\$A94D	__AddResMenu	[II:4.3.3]
\$A94E	__PinRect	[I:4.4.3]
\$A94F	__DeltaPoint	[I:4.4.1]
\$A950	__CountMItems	[II:4.3.5]
\$A951	__InsertResMenu	[II:4.3.3]
*\$A952	__DelMenuItem	[II:4.3.4]
*\$A953	__UpdtControls	[II:6.3.1]
\$A954	__NewControl	[II:6.2.1]
\$A955	__DisposControl	[II:6.2.2]
\$A956	__KillControls	[II:6.2.2]
\$A957	__ShowControl	[II:6.3.1]

Trap word	Trap macro name	Reference section
\$A958	__HideControl	[II:6.3.1]
\$A959	__MoveControl	[II:6.3.2]
\$A95A	__GetCRefCon	[II:6.2.3]
\$A95B	__SetCRefCon	[II:6.2.3]
\$A95C	__SizeControl	[II:6.3.2]
\$A95D	__HiliteControl	[II:6.3.3]
\$A95E	__GetCTitle	[II:6.2.3]
\$A95F	__SetCTitle	[II:6.2.3]
\$A960	__GetCtlValue	[II:6.2.4]
\$A961	__GetMinCtl	[II:6.2.4]
\$A962	__GetMaxCtl	[II:6.2.4]
\$A963	__SetCtlValue	[II:6.2.4]
\$A964	__SetMinCtl	[II:6.2.4]
\$A965	__SetMaxCtl	[II:6.2.4]
\$A966	__TestControl	[II:6.4.1]
\$A967	__DragControl	[II:6.4.3]
\$A968	__TrackControl	[II:6.4.2]
\$A969	__DrawControls	[II:6.3.1]
\$A96A	__GetCtlAction	[II:6.4.2]
\$A96B	__SetCtlAction	[II:6.4.2]
\$A96C	__FindControl	[II:6.4.1]
\$A970	__GetNextEvent	[II:2.2.1]
\$A971	__EventAvail	[II:2.2.1]
\$A972	__GetMouse	[II:2.4.1]
\$A973	__StillDown	[II:2.4.2]
\$A974	__Button	[II:2.4.2]
\$A975	__TickCount	[II:2.7.1]
\$A976	__GetKeys	[II:2.6.1]
\$A977	__WaitMouseUp	[II:2.4.2]
*\$A978	__UpdtDialog	[II:7.4.1]
\$A979	__CouldDialog	[II:7.5.3]
\$A97A	__FreeDialog	[II:7.5.3]
\$A97B	__InitDialogs	[II:7.2.1]
\$A97C	__GetNewDialog	[II:7.2.2]
\$A97D	__NewDialog	[II:7.2.2]
\$A97E	__SellText	[II:7.3.2]
\$A97F	__IsDialogEvent	[II:7.4.4]
\$A980	__DialogSelect	[II:7.4.4]
\$A981	__DrawDialog	[II:7.4.1]
\$A982	__CloseDialog	[II:7.2.3]

Trap word	Trap macro name	Reference section
\$A983	__ DisposDialog	[II:7.2.3]
*\$A984	__ FindDItem	[II:7.3.4]
\$A985	__ Alert	[II:7.4.2]
\$A986	__ StopAlert	[II:7.4.2]
\$A987	__ NoteAlert	[II:7.4.2]
\$A988	__ CautionAlert	[II:7.4.2]
\$A989	__ CouldAlert	[II:7.5.3]
\$A98A	__ FreeAlert	[II:7.5.3]
\$A98B	__ ParamText	[II:7.4.6]
\$A98C	__ ErrorSound	[II:7.5.1]
\$A98D	__ GetDItem	[II:7.3.1]
\$A98E	__ SetDItem	[II:7.3.1]
\$A98F	__ SetIText	[II:7.3.2]
\$A990	__ GetIText	[II:7.3.2]
\$A991	__ ModalDialog	[II:7.4.3]
\$A992	__ DetachResource	[I:6.3.2]
\$A993	__ SetResPurge	[I:6.5.5]
\$A994	__ CurResFile	[I:6.2.2]
\$A997	__ OpenResFile	[I:6.2.1]
\$A998	__ UseResFile	[I:6.2.2]
\$A999	__ UpdateResFile	[I:6.5.4]
\$A99A	__ CloseResFile	[I:6.2.1]
\$A99C	__ CountResources	[I:6.3.3]
\$A99D	__ GetIndResource	[I:6.3.3]
\$A99E	__ CountTypes	[I:6.3.3]
\$A99F	__ GetIndType	[I:6.3.3]
\$A9A0	__ GetResource	[I:6.3.1]
\$A9A1	__ GetNamedResource	[I:6.3.1]
\$A9A3	__ ReleaseResource	[I:6.3.2]
\$A9A4	__ HomeResFile	[I:6.4.3]
\$A9A5	__ SizeRsrc	[I:6.4.3]
\$A9A6	__ GetResAttrs	[I:6.4.2]
\$A9A7	__ SetResAttrs	[I:6.4.2]
\$A9A8	__ GetResInfo	[I:6.4.1]
\$A9A9	__ SetResInfo	[I:6.4.1]
\$A9AA	__ ChangedResource	[I:6.5.2]
\$A9AB	__ AddResource	[I:6.5.3]
\$A9AD	__ RmveResource	[I:6.5.3]
\$A9AF	__ ResError	[I:6.6.1]
\$A9B0	__ WriteResource	[I:6.5.4]

Trap word	Trap macro name	Reference section
\$A9B1	__CreateResFile	[I:6.5.1]
\$A9B3	__SystemClick	[II:3.5.3]
\$A9B4	__SystemTask	[II:2.7.2]
\$A9B6	__OpenDeskAcc	[II:4.5.2]
\$A9B7	__CloseDeskAcc	[II:4.5.2]
\$A9B8	__GetPattern	[I:5.1.1]
\$A9B9	__GetCursor	[II:2.5.2]
\$A9BA	__GetString	[I:8.1.2]
\$A9BC	__GetPicture	[I:5.4.2]
\$A9BD	__GetNewWindow	[II:3.2.2]
\$A9BE	__GetNewControl	[II:6.2.1]
\$A9BF	__GetRMenu	[II:4.2.2]
\$A9C0	__GetNewMBar	[II:4.4.2]
\$A9C1	__UniqueID	[I:6.5.3]
\$A9C2	__SysEdit	[II:4.5.3]
\$A9C6	__Secs2Date	[I:2.4.3]
\$A9C7	__Date2Secs	[I:2.4.3]
\$A9C8	__SysBeep	[II:2.8.1]
\$A9CB	__TEGetText	[II:5.2.3]
\$A9CC	__TEInit	[II:5.2.1]
\$A9CD	__TEDispose	[II:5.2.2]
\$A9CE	__TextBox	[II:5.3.2]
\$A9CF	__TESetText	[II:5.2.3]
\$A9D0	__TECalText	[II:5.3.1]
\$A9D1	__TESetSelect	[II:5.4.2]
\$A9D2	__TENew	[II:5.2.2]
\$A9D3	__TEUpdate	[II:5.3.2]
\$A9D4	__TEClick	[II:5.4.1]
\$A9D5	__TECopy	[II:5.5.2]
\$A9D6	__TECut	[II:5.5.2]
\$A9D7	__TEDelete	[II:5.5.3]
\$A9D8	__TEActivate	[II:5.4.3]
\$A9D9	__TEDeactivate	[II:5.4.3]
\$A9DA	__TEIdle	[II:5.4.3]
\$A9DB	__TEPaste	[II:5.5.2]
\$A9DC	__TEKey	[II:5.5.1]
\$A9DD	__TEScroll	[II:5.3.3]
\$A9DE	__TEInsert	[II:5.5.3]
\$A9DF	__TESetJust	[II:5.3.1]
\$A9E0	__Munger	[II:5.5.6]

Trap word	Trap macro name	Reference section
\$A9E1	__HandToHand	[I:3.2.6]
\$A9E2	__PtrToXHand	[I:3.2.6]
\$A9E3	__PtrToHand	[I:3.2.6]
\$A9E4	__HandAndHand	[I:3.2.7]
\$A9E5	__InitPack	[I:7.2.2]
\$A9E6	__InitAllPacks	[I:7.2.2]
\$A9E7	__Pack0	[I:7.2.1]
\$A9E8	__Pack1	[I:7.2.1]
\$A9E9	__Pack2	[I:7.2.1]
\$A9E9 (0)	__DIBadMount	[II:8.4.1]
\$A9E9 (2)	__DILoad	[II:8.4.3]
\$A9E9 (4)	__DIUnload	[II:8.4.3]
\$A9E9 (6)	__DIFormat	[II:8.4.2]
\$A9E9 (8)	__DIVerify	[II:8.4.2]
\$A9E9 (10)	__DIZero	[II:8.4.2]
\$A9EA	__Pack3	[I:7.2.1]
\$A9EA (1)	__SFPutFile	[II:8.3.3]
\$A9EA (2)	__SFGetFile	[II:8.3.2]
\$A9EB	__Pack4	[I:7.2.1]
\$A9EC	__Pack5	[I:7.2.1]
\$A9ED	__Pack6	[I:7.2.1]
\$A9ED (0)	__IUDateString	[I:2.4.4]
\$A9ED (2)	__IUTimeString	[I:2.4.4]
\$A9EE	__Pack7	[I:7.2.1]
\$A9EE (0)	__NumToString	[I:2.3.7]
\$A9EE (1)	__StringToNum	[I:2.3.7]
\$A9EF	__PtrAndHand	[I:3.2.7]
\$A9F0	__LoadSeg	[I:7.1.2]
\$A9F1	__UnloadSeg	[I:7.1.2]
\$A9F2	__Launch	[I:7.1.1]
\$A9F3	__Chain	[I:7.1.1]
\$A9F4	__ExitToShell	[I:7.1.3]
\$A9F5	__GetAppParms	[I:7.3.4]
\$A9F6	__GetResFileAttrs	[I:6.6.2]
\$A9F7	__SetResFileAttrs	[I:6.6.2]
\$A9F9	__InfoScrap	[I:7.4.2]
\$A9FA	__UnlodeScrap	[I:7.4.4]
\$A9FB	__LodeScrap	[I:7.4.4]
\$A9FC	__ZeroScrap	[I:7.4.3]
\$A9FD	__GetScrap	[I:7.4.3]
\$A9FE	__PutScrap	[I:7.4.3]

APPENDIX



G



Summary of Assembly-Language Variables

System Globals

Listed below are all assembly-language global variables covered in both volumes of this book, together with their hexadecimal addresses. *Warning:* The addresses given may be subject to change in future versions of the Toolbox; always refer to these variables by name instead of using the addresses directly. Variables marked with an asterisk (*) are available only on the Macintosh Plus.

Variable name	Address	Reference section	Meaning
ACount	\$A9A	[II:7.5.2]	Stage of last alert minus 1
ANumber	\$A98	[II:7.5.2]	Resource ID of last alert
ApFontID	\$984	[I:8.2.1]	True font number of current application font
ApplLimit	\$130	[I:3.3.4]	Application heap limit
ApplZone	\$2AA	[I:3.1.3]	Pointer to start of application heap
AppParmHandle	\$AEC	[I:7.3.4]	Handle to Finder startup information
BufPtr	\$10C	[I:3.1.3]	Pointer to end of application global space
CaretTime	\$2F4	[II:5.4.3]	Current blink interval in ticks

Variable name	Address	Reference section	Meaning
CurActivate	\$A64	[II:3.4.3]	Pointer to window awaiting activate event
CurApName	\$910	[I:7.3.4]	Name of current application (maximum 31 characters)
CurApRefNum	\$900	[I:6.2.2, I:7.3.4]	Reference number of application resource file
CurDeactivate	\$A68	[II:3.4.3]	Pointer to window awaiting deactivate event
CurMap	\$A5A	[I:6.2.2]	Reference number of current resource file
CurPageOption	\$936	[I:7.1.1]	Integer specifying screen and sound buffers
CurrentA5	\$904	[I:3.1.3]	Base pointer for application globals
CurStackBase	\$908	[I:3.1.3]	Pointer to base of stack
DABeeper	\$A9C	[II:7.5.1]	Pointer to current sound procedure
DAStrings	\$AA0	[II:7.4.6]	Handles to four text substitution strings
DeskPattern	\$A3C	[I:5.1.2]	Screen background pattern
DlgFont	\$AFA	[II:7.5.1]	Current font number for dialogs and alerts
DoubleTime	\$2F0	[II:5.4.1]	Current double-click interval in ticks
FinderName	\$2E0	[I:7.1.3]	Name of program to exit to (maximum 15 characters)
*FractEnable	\$BF4	[I:8.2.8]	Use fractional character widths? (1 byte)
FScaleDisable	\$A63	[I:8.2.8]	Turn off font scaling? (1 byte)
GrayRgn	\$9EE	[II:3.6.1]	Handle to region defining gray desktop
HeapEnd	\$114	[I:3.1.3]	Pointer to end of application heap
KeyMap	\$174	[II:2.6.1]	System keyboard map
KeypadMap	\$17C	[II:2.6.1]	System keypad map
Key1Trans	\$29E	[I:8.4.4]	Pointer to keyboard configuration routine
Key2Trans	\$2A2	[I:8.4.4]	Pointer to keypad configuration routine
Lo3Bytes	\$31A	[I:3.2.4]	Mask for extracting address from a master pointer
*MBarHeight	\$BAA	[II:4.4.3]	Height of menu bar in pixels
MBState	\$172	[II:2.4.2]	State of mouse button

Variable name	Address	Reference section	Meaning
MemTop	\$108	[I:3.1.3]	Pointer to end of physical memory
MenuFlash	\$A24	[II:4.7.2]	Current flash count for menu items
MenuList	\$A1C	[II:4.4.4]	Handle to current menu bar
ResErr	\$A60	[I:6.6.1]	Result code from last resource-related call
ResLoad	\$A5E	[I:6.3.4]	Load resources automatically?
ResumeProc	\$A8C	[II:7.2.1]	Pointer to restart procedure
ROMBase	\$2AE	[I:3.1.3]	Pointer to start of ROM
ROMFont0	\$980	[I:8.2.1]	Handle to system font
*ROMMapInsert	\$B9E	[I:6.6.3]	Include ROM-based resources in search? (1 byte)
ScrapCount	\$968	[I:7.4.2]	Current scrap count
ScrapHandle	\$964	[I:7.4.2]	Handle to contents of desk scrap
ScrapName	\$96C	[I:7.4.2]	Pointer to scrap file name
ScrapSize	\$960	[I:7.4.2]	Current size of desk scrap
ScrapState	\$96A	[I:7.4.2]	Current state of desk scrap
ScrDmpEnb	\$2F8	[II:2.9.2]	Intercept Command-Shift keystrokes?
ScrnbBase	\$824	[I:3.1.3]	Pointer to start of screen buffer
SoundBase	\$266	[I:3.1.3]	Pointer to start of sound buffer
SPFont	\$204	[I:8.2.1]	True font number of default application font
SysEvtMask	\$144	[II:2.3.2]	System event mask
SysMap	\$A58	[I:6.2.2]	True reference number (not 0) of system resource file
SysMapHndl	\$A54	[I:6.2.2]	Handle to resource map of system resource file
SysResName	\$AD8	[I:6.2.2]	Name of system resource file (string, maximum 19 characters)
SysZone	\$2A6	[I:3.1.3]	Pointer to start of system heap
TEScrpHandle	\$AB4	[II:5.5.4]	Handle to text scrap
TEScrpLength	\$AB0	[II:5.5.4]	Length of text scrap in characters
TEWdBreak	\$AF6	[II:5.6.2]	Pointer to built-in word-break routine
TheCrsr	\$844	[II:2.5.2]	Current cursor record
TheMenu	\$A26	[II:4.5.4]	Menu ID of currently highlighted menu
Ticks	\$16A	[II:2.7.1]	System clock
Time	\$20C	[I:2.4.1]	Current date and time in "raw" seconds

Variable name	Address	Reference section	Meaning
*TmpResLoad	\$B9F	[I:6.6.3]	Load resources automatically just this once? (1 byte)
TopMapHndl	\$A50	[I:6.2.2]	Handle to resource map of most recently opened (not necessarily current) resource file
*WidthTabHandle	\$B2A	[I:8.2.6]	Handle to global width table for current font
WindowList	\$9D6	[II:3.1.1]	Pointer to first window in window list
WMgrPort	\$9DE	[II:3.6.1]	Pointer to Window Manager port

QuickDraw Globals

The QuickDraw global variables listed below are located at the given offsets relative to the QuickDraw globals pointer, which in turn is pointed to by address register A5.

Variable name	Offset in bytes	Reference section	Meaning
ThePort	0	[I:4.3.3]	Current graphics port
White	- 8	[I:5.1.2]	Standard white pattern
Black	- 16	[I:5.1.2]	Standard black pattern
Gray	- 24	[I:5.1.2]	Standard gray pattern
LtGray	- 32	[I:5.1.2]	Standard light gray pattern
DkGray	- 40	[I:5.1.2]	Standard dark gray pattern
Arrow	- 108	[II:2.5.2]	Standard arrow cursor
ScreenBits	- 122	[I:4.2.1]	Screen bit map
RandSeed	- 126	[I:2.3.8]	"Seed" for random number generation

APPENDIX



MiniEdit Source Listing

Following is a complete listing of the source code for the MiniEdit example application program developed in this volume.

```
program MiniEdit;
```

```
{ Example program to illustrate event-driven structure [Prog. II:2-1]. }
```

```
uses
```

MacTypes,	{Elementary data types}
QuickDraw,	{QuickDraw graphics routines}
OSIntf,	{Macintosh Operating System}
ToolIntf,	{User Interface Toolbox}
PackIntf;	{Standard packages}

```
const
```

MacPlusROM = \$75;	{ROM version number for Macintosh Plus}
MenuBarHeight = 20;	{Height of menu bar in pixels}
TitleBarHeight = 18;	{Height of window title bar in pixels}
ScreenMargin = 10;	{Width of "safety margin" around edge of screen}
MinWidth = 80;	{Minimum width of window in pixels}
MinHeight = 80;	{Minimum height of window in pixels}
SBarWidth = 16;	{Width of scroll bars in pixels}
TextMargin = 4;	{Inset from window to text rectangle}

DlgTop = 100;	{Top edge of dialog box for Get and Put dialogs}
DlgLeft = 85;	{Left edge of dialog box for Get and Put dialogs}
AppleID = 1;	{Menu ID for Apple menu}
AboutItem = 1;	{Item number for About... command}
FileID = 2;	{Menu ID for File menu}
NewItem = 1;	{Item number for New command}
OpenItem = 2;	{Item number for Open... command}
CloseItem = 3;	{Item number for Close command}
SaveItem = 5;	{Item number for Save command}
SaveAsItem = 6;	{Item number for Save As... command}
RevertItem = 7;	{Item number for Revert to Saved command}
QuitItem = 9;	{Item number for Quit command}
EditID = 3;	{Menu ID for Edit menu}
UndoItem = 1;	{Item number for Undo command}
CutItem = 3;	{Item number for Cut command}
CopyItem = 4;	{Item number for Copy command}
PasteItem = 5;	{Item number for Paste command}
ClearItem = 7;	{Item number for Clear command}
AboutID = 1000;	{Resource ID for About alert}
SaveID = 1001;	{Resource ID for Save alert}
RevertID = 1002;	{Resource ID for Revert alert}
{ CantPrintID = 1003;	{Resource ID for Can't Print alert}
{ WrongTypeID = 1004;	{Resource ID for Wrong Type alert}
{ OpWrID = 1005;	{Resource ID for Already Open alert}
{ IOErrID = 1006;	{Resource ID for I/O Error alert}
NoTitleID = 1000;	{Resource ID of title string for empty window}
type	
WDHandle = ^WDPtr;	
WDPtr = ^WindowData;	
WindowData = record	
editRec : TEHandle;	{Handle to edit record [II:5.1.1]}
scrollBar : ControlHandle;	{Handle to scroll bar [II:6.1.1]}
dirty : BOOLEAN;	{Document changed since last saved?}
padding : Byte;	{Extra byte for padding [I:3.1.1]}
volNumber : INTEGER;	{Volume reference number}
fileNumber : INTEGER	{File reference number}
end;	

var

```

TheEvent : EventRecord;           {Current event [II:2.1.1]}

TheWindow  : WindowPtr;           {Pointer to currently active window [II:3.1.1]}
TheScrollBar : ControlHandle;     {Handle to active window's scroll bar [II:6.1.1]}
TheText    : TEHandle;           {Handle to active window's edit record [II:5.1.1]}

AppleMenu : MenuHandle;           {Handle to Apple menu [II:4.1.1]}
FileMenu  : MenuHandle;           {Handle to File menu [II:4.1.1]}
EditMenu  : MenuHandle;           {Handle to Edit menu [II:4.1.1]}

IBeam : CursHandle;               {Handle to I-beam cursor [II:2.5.1]}
Watch : CursHandle;               {Handle to wristwatch cursor [II:2.5.1]}

MacPlus    : BOOLEAN;             {Are we running on a Macintosh Plus?}
ScreenWidth : INTEGER;            {Width of screen in pixels}
ScreenHeight : INTEGER;           {Height of screen in pixels}

WindowCount : INTEGER;            {Total number of windows opened}
ScrapCompare : INTEGER;           {Previous scrap count for comparison [I:7.4.2]}
ScrapDirty  : BOOLEAN;            {Has scrap been changed?}

Quitting : BOOLEAN;               {Closing up shop?}
Finished  : BOOLEAN;               {All closed?}
ErrorFlag : BOOLEAN;              {I/O error flag}

```

```
{-----}
```

```
{Forward Declarations}
```

```

procedure Initialize; forward;
    { One-time-only initialization. }
    procedure SetUpMenus; forward;
        { Set up menus. }
    + procedure SetUpCursors; forward;
        { Set up cursors. }
    - procedure DoStartup; forward;
        { Process Finder startup information. }
procedure MainLoop; forward;
    { Execute one pass of main program loop. }
    procedure FixCursor; forward;
        { Adjust cursor for region of screen. }

```

```

procedure DoEvent; forward;
    { Get and process one event. }
procedure DoMouseDown; forward;
    { Handle mouse-down event. }
procedure DoMenuClick; forward;
    { Handle mouse-down event in menu bar. }
procedure DoMenuChoice (menuChoice : LONGINT); forward;
    { Handle user's menu choice. }
procedure DoAppleChoice (theItem : INTEGER); forward;
    { Handle choice from Apple menu. }
procedure DoAbout; forward;
    { Handle About MiniEdit... command. }
procedure DoFileChoice (theItem : INTEGER); forward;
    { Handle choice from File menu. }
procedure DoNew; forward;
    { Handle New command. }
procedure OffsetWindow (whichWindow : WindowPtr); forward;
    { Offset location of new window. }
procedure DoOpen; forward;
    { Handle Open... command. }
procedure OpenFile (fileName : Str255; vNum : INTEGER); forward;
    { Open document file. }
procedure DoClose; forward;
    { Handle Close command. }
procedure CloseAppWindow; forward;
    { Close application window. }
procedure CloseSysWindow; forward;
    { Close system window. }
procedure DoSave; forward;
    { Handle Save command. }
procedure DoSaveAs; forward;
    { Handle Save As... command. }
procedure WriteFile (theFile : INTEGER; volNum : INTEGER); forward;
    { Write window contents to a file. }
procedure DoRevert; forward;
    { Handle Revert to Saved command. }
procedure DoQuit; forward;
    { Handle Quit command. }
procedure DoEditChoice (theItem : INTEGER); forward;
    { Handle choice from Edit menu. }
procedure DoUndo; forward;
    { Handle Undo command. }
procedure DoCut; forward;
    { Handle Cut command. }

```



```

    procedure DoCopy; forward;
        { Handle Copy command. }
    procedure DoPaste; forward;
        { Handle Paste command. }
    procedure DoClear; forward;
        { Handle Clear command. }
    procedure DoContent (whichWindow : WindowPtr); forward;
        { Handle mouse-down event in content region. }
    procedure DoScroll (thePart : INTEGER; thePoint : Point); forward;
        { Handle mouse-down event in scroll bar. }
    procedure ScrollText (theControl: ControlHandle; thePart : INTEGER); forward;
        { Scroll text within window. }
    procedure AdjustText; forward;
        { Adjust text within window to match scroll bar setting. }
    function AutoScroll : BOOLEAN; forward;
        { Handle automatic scrolling during text selection. }
    procedure DoSelect (thePoint : Point); forward;
        { Handle mouse-down event in text rectangle. }
    procedure FixEditMenu; forward;
        { Enable/disable editing commands. }
    procedure DoDrag (whichWindow : WindowPtr); forward;
        { Handle mouse-down event in drag region. }
    procedure DoGrow (whichWindow : WindowPtr); forward;
        { Handle mouse-down event in size region. }
    procedure FixScrollBar; forward;
        { Resize window's scroll bar. }
    procedure FixText; forward;
        { Resize window's text rectangle. }
    procedure DoGoAway (whichWindow : WindowPtr); forward;
        { Handle mouse-down event in close region. }
    procedure DoZoom (whichWindow : WindowPtr; inOrOut : INTEGER); forward;
        { Handle mouse-down event in zoom region. }
    procedure DoKeystroke; forward;
        { Handle keystroke. }
    procedure DoTyping (ch : CHAR); forward;
        { Handle character typed from keyboard. }
    procedure DoUpdate; forward;
        { Handle update event. }
    procedure DoActivate; forward;
        { Handle activate and deactivate events. }
    procedure WindowDirty (isDirty : BOOLEAN); forward;
        { Mark window dirty or clean. }
    procedure AdjustScrollBar; forward;
        { Adjust scroll bar to length of document. }

```

```

procedure ScrollToSelection; forward;
    { Scroll current selection into view. }
procedure ScrollCharacter (theCharacter : INTEGER; toBottom : BOOLEAN); forward;
    { Scroll character into view. }
procedure ReadDeskScrap; forward;
    { Copy desk scrap to Toolbox scrap. }
procedure WriteDeskScrap; forward;
    { Copy Toolbox scrap to desk scrap. }
procedure IOCheck (resultCode : OSErr); forward;
    { Check for I/O error. }

{-----}

```

```

procedure Initialize;

```

```

    { Do one-time-only initialization [Prog. II:2-6]. }

```

```

var

```

theMask : INTEGER;	{New value for system event mask [II:2.1.3]}
machineType : INTEGER;	{Type of machine we're running on [I:3.1.3]}
romVersion : INTEGER;	{Version number of machine's ROM [I:3.1.3]}

```

begin (Initialize)

```

InitGraf (@ThePort);	{Initialize QuickDraw [I:4.3.1]}
InitFonts;	{Initialize fonts [I:8.2.4]}
InitWindows;	{Initialize windows [II:3.2.1]}
InitMenus;	{Initialize menus [II:4.2.1]}
TEInit;	{Initialize text editing [II:5.2.1]}
InitDialogs (NIL);	{Initialize dialogs [II:7.2.1]}
theMask := EveryEvent - KeyUpMask - MUpMask;	{Disable key-up and mouse-up events [II:2.1.3]}
SetEventMask (theMask);	{Set the mask [II:2.3.2]}
FlushEvents (EveryEvent, 0);	{Clear out event queue [II:2.3.1]}
SetUpMenus;	{Create program's menus}
SetUpCursors;	{Get standard cursors}
TheText := NIL;	{Clear global pointers/handles}
TheWindow := NIL;	
TheScrollBar := NIL;	

```

Environs (romVersion, machineType);
MacPlus := (romVersion >= MacPlusROM);
with ScreenBits.bounds do
  begin
    ScreenWidth := right - left;
    ScreenHeight := bottom - top
  end;

ScrapDirty := FALSE;
ScrapCompare := InfoScrap^.scrapCount + 1;
ReadDeskScrap;

WindowCount := 0;
DoStartup;

Quitting := FALSE;
Finished := FALSE

end; {Initialize}

{-----}

procedure SetUpMenus;

( Set up menus [Prog. II:4-2]. )

begin {SetUpMenus}

  AppleMenu := GetMenu (AppleID);
  AddResMenu (AppleMenu, 'DRVr');
  InsertMenu (AppleMenu, 0);

  FileMenu := GetMenu (FileID);
  InsertMenu (FileMenu, 0);

  EditMenu := GetMenu (EditID);
  InsertMenu (EditMenu, 0);

  DrawMenuBar

end; {SetUpMenus}

```

X

{II:4.2.21}
{Add names of available desk accessories [II:4.3.3]}
{Install at end of menu bar [II:4.4.1]}

{Get File menu from resource file [II:4.2.2]}
{Install at end of menu bar [II:4.4.1]}

{Get Edit menu from resource file [II:4.2.2]}
{Install at end of menu bar [II:4.4.1]}

{Show new menu bar on screen [II:4.4.3]}

```
{-----}
```

```
procedure SetUpCursors;
```

```
  ( Set up cursors [Prog. II:2-7]. )
```

```
begin {SetUpCursors}
```

```
  IBeam := GetCursor (IBeamCursor);
```

```
  {Get cursors from system resource file [II:2.5.2]}
```

```
  Watch := GetCursor (WatchCursor);
```

```
  InitCursor
```

```
  {Set standard arrow cursor [II:2.5.2]}
```

```
end; {SetUpCursors}
```

```
{-----}
```

```
procedure DoStartup;
```

```
  ( Process Finder startup information [Prog. II:8-7]. )
```

```
var
```

```
  theMessage : INTEGER;
```

```
  {Open or print? [I:7.3.4]}
```

```
  nDocs      : INTEGER;
```

```
  {Number of documents selected in Finder}
```

```
  thisDoc    : INTEGER;
```

```
  {Index number of document}
```

```
  docInfo    : AppFile;
```

```
  {Startup information about one document [I:7.3.4]}
```

```
  ignore     : INTEGER;
```

```
  {Item code returned by alert}
```

```
begin {DoStartup}
```

```
  CountAppFiles (theMessage, nDocs);
```

```
  {Get number of documents and startup message [I:7.3.4]}
```

```
  if theMessage = AppPrint then
```

```
    {Did user choose Print in Finder? [I:7.4.3]}
```

```
    begin
```

```
      ignore := StopAlert (CantPrintID, NIL);
```

```
      {Post alert [II:7.4.2]}
```

```
      ExitToShell
```

```
      {Return to Finder [I:7.1.3]}
```

```
    end {if}
```

```
  else if nDocs = 0 then
```

```
    {If no documents selected, }
```

```
    DoNew
```

```
    { just open an empty window}
```

```

else
  for thisDoc := 1 to nDocs do
    begin
      GetAppFiles (thisDoc, docInfo);
      with docInfo do
        if fType = 'TEXT' then
          begin
            OpenFile (fName, vRefNum);
            ClrAppFiles (thisDoc)
          end (then)
        else
          begin
            ParamText (fName, '', '', '');
            ignore := StopAlert (WrongTypeID, NIL)
          end (else)
        end (for)
      end; (DoStartup)
    }-----}

procedure MainLoop;

( Execute one pass of main program loop [Prog. II:2-2]. )

begin (MainLoop)

  if FrontWindow = NIL then begin
    DisableItem (EditMenu, UndoItem);
    DisableItem (EditMenu, CutItem);
    DisableItem (EditMenu, CopyItem);
    DisableItem (EditMenu, PasteItem);
    DisableItem (EditMenu, ClearItem);

    DisableItem (FileMenu, CloseItem);
    DisableItem (FileMenu, SaveItem);
    DisableItem (FileMenu, SaveAsItem);
    DisableItem (FileMenu, RevertItem)

  end; (then)

```



```

FixCursor;
SystemTask;

if TheText <> NIL then
    TEIdle (TheText);

DoEvent

end; (MainLoop)

{-----}

procedure FixCursor;

( Adjust cursor for region of screen [Prog. II:2-8]. )

var
    mousePoint : Point;
    textRect   : Rect;

begin (FixCursor)

    if Quitting then
        EXIT (FixCursor);

    if FrontWindow = NIL then
        InitCursor

    else if FrontWindow = TheWindow then
        begin

            GetMouse (mousePoint);
            textRect := TheText^.viewRect;

            if PtInRect (mousePoint, textRect) then
                SetCursor (IBeam^^)

            else
                InitCursor

        end (if)

```

{Adjust cursor for region of screen}
 {Do system idle processing [II:2.7.2]}
 {Blink cursor [II:5.4.3]}
 {Get and process one event}
 {Current mouse position in window coordinates [I:4.1.2]}
 {Active window's text rectangle [I:4.1.2]}
 {Skip cursor adjustment during quit sequence}
 {Screen empty? [II:3.3.3]}
 {Set arrow cursor [II:2.5.2]}
 {Is one of our windows active? [II:3.3.3]}
 {Get mouse position [II:2.4.1]}
 {Get window's text rectangle [II:5.1.1]}
 {Is mouse in text rectangle? [I:4.4.3]}
 {Set I-beam cursor [II:2.5.2]}
 {Set arrow cursor [II:2.5.2]}

```

    else
        (Do nothing)
        (A system window is active:      }
        ( let desk accessory set cursor}

end; (FixCursor)

{-----}

procedure DoEvent;

    ( Get and process one event [Prog. II:2-5]. )

begin (DoEvent)

    ErrorFlag := FALSE;
        (Clear I/O error flag)

    if GetNextEvent (EveryEvent, TheEvent) then
        (Get next event [II:2.2.1])

        case TheEvent.what of

            MouseDown:
                if not Quitting then
                    DoMouseDown;
                        (Handle mouse-down event)

            KeyDown, AutoKey:
                if not Quitting then
                    DoKeystroke;
                        (Handle keystroke)

            UpdateEvt:
                DoUpdate;
                    (Handle update event)

            ActivateEvt:
                DoActivate;
                    (Handle activate/deactivate event)

            otherwise
                (Do nothing)

        end (case)

    else if Quitting and (TheEvent.what = NullEvent) then
        (Closing up shop after a Quit command?)
        begin
            if FrontWindow <> NIL then
                (Any windows on the screen? [II:3.3.3])
                DoClose
                    (Close the frontmost)
        end
    end
end

```

```

    else
        Finished := TRUE                                {Signal end of program}
    end {if}

end; {DoEvent}

{-----}

procedure DoMouseDown;

{ Handle mouse-down event [Prog. II:3-7]. }

var
    whichWindow : WindowPtr;                            {Window that mouse was pressed in [II:3.1.1]}
    thePart      : INTEGER;                              {Part of screen where mouse was pressed [II:3.5.1]}

begin {DoMouseDown}

    thePart := FindWindow (TheEvent.where, whichWindow); {Where on the screen was mouse pressed? [II:3.5}

    case thePart of

        InDesk:
            {Do nothing};

        InMenuBar:
            DoMenuClick;                                {Handle click in menu bar}

        InSysWindow:
            SystemClick (TheEvent, whichWindow);        {Handle click in system window [II:3.5.3]}

        InContent:
            DoContent (whichWindow);                     {Handle click in content region}

        InDrag:
            DoDrag (whichWindow);                        {Handle click in drag region}

        InGrow:
            DoGrow (whichWindow);                        {Handle click in size region}

        InGoAway:
            DoGoAway (whichWindow);                     {Handle click in close region}

        InZoomIn:
            DoZoom (whichWindow, InZoomIn);             {Handle click in zoom region}

```

[illegible]

```
AppleID:
  DoAppleChoice (theItem);           {Handle choice from Apple menu}
```

```
FileID:
  DoFileChoice (theItem);           {Handle choice from File menu}
```

```
EditID:
  DoEditChoice (theItem)           {Handle choice from Edit menu}
```

```
end; {case}
```

```
HiliteMenu(0)                       {Unhighlight menu title [II:4.5.4]}
```

```
end; {DoMenuChoice}
```

```
{-----}
```

```
procedure DoAppleChoice ((theItem : INTEGER));
```

```
{ Handle choice from Apple menu [Prog. II:4-6]. }
```

```
var
```

```
  accName   : Str255;               {Name of desk accessory [I:2.1.1]}
  accNumber : INTEGER;              {Reference number of desk accessory}
```

```
begin {DoAppleChoice}
```

```
  case theItem of
```

```
    AboutItem:
      DoAbout;                       {Handle About MiniEdit... command}
```

```
  otherwise
```

```
    begin
```

```
      if FrontWindow = NIL then           {Is the desktop empty? [II:3.3.3]}
        begin
```

```
          EnableItem (FileMenu, CloseItem); {Enable Close command [II:4.6.2]}
```

```
          EnableItem (EditMenu, UndoItem);  {Enable standard editing commands}
```

```
          EnableItem (EditMenu, CutItem);   { for desk accessory [II:4.6.2]}
```

```
          EnableItem (EditMenu, CopyItem);
```

```
          EnableItem (EditMenu, PasteItem);
```

```
          EnableItem (EditMenu, ClearItem)
```

```
      end;
```



```

    GetItem (AppleMenu, theItem, accName);    (Get accessory name [II:4.6.1])
    accNumber := OpenDeskAcc (accName)        (Open desk accessory [II:4.5.2])

```

```

    end

```

```

end {case}

```

```

end; {DoAppleChoice}

```

```

-----

```

```

procedure DoAbout;

```

```

{ Handle About MiniEdit... command [Prog. II:7-1]. }

```

```

var

```

```

    ignore : INTEGER;                (Item number for About alert)

```

```

begin {DoAbout}

```

```

    ignore := Alert (AboutID, NIL)    (Post alert [II:7.4.2])

```

```

end; {DoAbout}

```

```

-----

```

```

procedure DoFileChoice ((theItem : INTEGER));

```

```

{ Handle choice from File menu [Prog. II:4-8]. }

```

```

begin {DoFileChoice}

```

```

    case theItem of

```

```

        NewItem:

```

```

            DoNew;                (Handle New command)

```

```

        OpenItem:

```

```

            DoOpen;                (Handle Open... command)

```

```

        CloseItem:

```

```

            DoClose;                (Handle Close command)

```

```

SaveItem:
    DoSave;                                {Handle Save command}

SaveAsItem:
    DoSaveAs;                              {Handle Save As... command}

RevertItem:
    DoRevert;                              {Handle Revert to Saved command}

QuitItem:
    DoQuit                                {Handle Quit command}

end {case}

end; {DoFileChoice}

```

procedure DoNew;

```
{ Handle New command [Prog. II:5-2]. }
```

const

```

windowID = 1000;                          {Resource ID for window template [II:3.7.1]}
scrollID = 1000;                          {Resource ID for scroll bar template [II:6.5.1]}

```

var

```

thisWindow : WindowPeek;                  {Pointer for "peeking" into window's fields [II:3.1]}
theData    : WDHandle;                    {Handle to window's data record}
dataHandle : Handle;                      {Untyped handle for creating data record [I:3.1.1]}
destRect   : Rect;                       {Wrapping rectangle for window's text [I:4.1.2]}
viewRect   : Rect;                       {Clipping rectangle for window's text [I:4.1.2]}

```

begin {DoNew}

```
TheWindow := GetNewWindow (windowID, NIL, WindowPtr(-1)); {Make new window from template [II:3.2.2]}
```

```

thisWindow := WindowPeek(TheWindow);      {Convert to a "peek" pointer [II:3.1.1]}
thisWindow^.spareFlag := MacPlus;         {Enable zooming on Mac Plus only [II:3.1.1]}

```

```

OffsetWindow (TheWindow);                 {Offset from location of previous window}
ShowWindow   (TheWindow);                 {Make window visible [II:3.3.1]}

```

```

SetPort (TheWindow);           {Get into the window's port [I:4.3.3]}
TextFont (Geneva);             {Set text font [I:8.3.2, I:8.2.1]}

with TheWindow^.portRect do    {Set up clipping rectangle [I:4.2.2]} ✓
  SetRect (viewRect, 0, 0, right - (SBarWidth - 1), bottom - (SBarWidth - 1));
destRect := viewRect;
InsetRect (destRect, TextMargin, TextMargin); {Inset wrapping rectangle by text margin [I:4.4.4]}

dataHandle := NewHandle (SIZEOF(WindowData)); {Allocate window data record [I:3.2.1]}
SetWRefCon (TheWindow, LONGINT(dataHandle));  {Store as reference constant [I:3.2.4]}

HLock (dataHandle);            {Lock data record [I:3.2.4]}
  theData := WDHandle(dataHandle); {Convert to typed handle}
  with theData^^ do
    begin
      editRec := TENew (destRect, viewRect); {Make edit record [II:5.2.2]}
      scrollBar := GetNewControl (scrollID, TheWindow); {Make scroll bar [II:6.2.1]}
      dirty := FALSE; {Document is initially clean}
      fileNumber := 0; {Window has no associated file}
      volNumber := 0; { or volume }

      SetClickLoop (@AutoScroll, editRec); {Install auto-scroll routine [II:5.6.1]}

      TheScrollBar := scrollBar; {Set global handles}
      TheText := editRec
    end; {with}
HUnlock (dataHandle); {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}

EnableItem (FileMenu, CloseItem) {Enable Close command on menu [II:4.6.2]}

end; {DoNew}

{-----}

procedure OffsetWindow (whichWindow : WindowPtr);

{ Offset location of new window [Prog. II:3-12]. }

const
  hOffset = 20; {Horizontal offset from previous window, in pixels}
  vOffset = 20; {Vertical offset from previous window, in pixels}

```

Var

width	: INTEGER;	{Width of window in pixels}
height	: INTEGER;	{Height of window in pixels}
hExtra	: INTEGER;	{Excess screen width in pixels}
vExtra	: INTEGER;	{Excess screen height in pixels}
hMax	: INTEGER;	{Maximum number of windows horizontally}
vMax	: INTEGER;	{Maximum number of windows vertically}
left	: INTEGER;	{Left edge of window in global coordinates}
top	: INTEGER;	{Top edge of window in global coordinates}

```
begin {OffsetWindow}
```

with whichWindow^.portRect do

begin

```

windowWidth := right - left;           {Get window dimensions from }

```

```
windowHeight := bottom - top; { port rectangle [I:4.2.2]}
```

```
windowHeight := windowHeight + TitleBarHeight      {Adjust for title bar}
```

```
end;
```

```
hExtra := ScreenWidth - windowWidth;           {Find excess screen width}
```

```
vExtra := ScreenHeight - (windowHeight + MenuBarHeight); { and height }
```

```
hMax := (hExtra div hOffset) + 1;           {Find maximum number of windows horizontally}
```

```
vMax := (vExtra div vOffset) + 1; { and vertically
```

```
WindowCount := WindowCount + 1;           {Increment window count}
```

```
windowLeft := (WindowCount mod hMax) * hOffset;           {Calculate offsets}
```

```

windowTop := (WindowCount mod vMax) * vOffset;

```

```

windowTop := windowTop + TitleBarHeight + MenuBarHeight; {Adjust for title bar and menu bar}

```

MoveWindow (whichWindow, windowLeft, windowTop, FALSE) {Move window to new location [II:3.3.21]}

```
end; {OffsetWindow}
```

—

```
procedure DoOpen;
```

```
{ Handle Open... command [Prog. II:8-5]. }
```

var

dlgOrigin	: Point;	{Top-left corner of dialog box [I:4.1.1]}
theTypeList	: SFTypelist;	{List of file types to display [II:8.3.2]}
theReply	: SFReply;	{Data returned by Get dialog [II:8.3.1]}

```

begin (DoOpen)

    SetPt (dlgOrigin, DlgLeft, DlgTop);           (Set up dialog origin [I:4.1.1])
    theTypeList [0] := 'TEXT';                   (Display text files only [II:8.3.2])

    SFGetFile (dlgOrigin, '', NIL, 1, theTypeList, NIL, theReply); (Get file name from user [II:8.3.2])

    with theReply do
        if good then                             (Did user confirm file selection? [II:8.3.1])
            OpenFile (fileName, vRefNum)          (Open file and read into window)

end; (DoOpen)

{-----}

procedure OpenFile ((fileName : Str255; vNum : INTEGER));

    ( Open document file [Prog. II:8-6]. )

var
    theData      : WDHandle;                     (Handle to window's data record)
    dataHandle    : Handle;                      (Untyped handle for locking data record [I:3.1.1])
    theFile       : INTEGER;                     (Reference number of file)
    resultCode    : OSErr;                      (I/O error code [I:3.1.2])

begin (OpenFile)

    resultCode := FSOpen (fileName, vNum, theFile); (Open the file [II:8.2.2])
    IOCheck (resultCode);                         (Check for error)
    if ErrorFlag then EXIT (OpenFile);           (On error, exit to main event loop)

    DoNew;                                       (Open a new window)

    dataHandle := Handle(GetWRefCon(TheWindow)); (Get window data [II:3.2.4])
    HLock (dataHandle);                        (Lock data record [I:3.2.4])

    theData := WDHandle(dataHandle);            (Convert to typed handle)
    with theData^^ do
        begin
            volNumber := vNum;                  (Save volume and file number)
            fileNumber := theFile;              ( in window data record )
            SetWTitle (TheWindow, fileName)     (File name becomes window title [II:3.2.4])
        end; (with)
end;

```



```

    HUnlock (dataHandle);                                {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}

    DoRevert ;                                           {Read file into window}

end; {OpenFile}

{-----}

procedure DoClose;

    ( Handle Close command [Prog. II:3-3]. )

begin {DoClose}

    if FrontWindow = TheWindow then                    {Is the active window one of ours? [II:3.3.3]}
        CloseAppWindow                                {Close application window}
    else
        CloseSysWindow                                {Close system window}

end; {DoClose}

{-----}

procedure CloseAppWindow;

    ( Close application window [Prog. II:7-21]. )

const
    saveItem      = 1;                                {Item number for Save button}
    discardItem   = 2;                                {Item number for Discard button}
    cancelItem     = 3;                                {Item number for Cancel button}

var
    ~theData      : WDHandle;                          {Handle to window's data record}
    dataHandle    : Handle;                             {Untyped handle for destroying data record [I:3.1.1]}
    theTitle      : Str255;                             {Title of window [I:2.1.1]}
    theItem       : INTEGER;                             {Item number for Save alert}
    resultCode    : OSErr;                              {I/O error code [I:3.1.2]}
    thisWindow    : WindowPtr;                          {Pointer to window being closed [II:3.1.1]}

```

```

begin (CloseAppWindow)
  J
  dataHandle := Handle(GetWRefCon(TheWindow));    {Get window data [II:3.2.4]}
  HLock (dataHandle);                             {Lock data record [I:3.2.4]}

  theData := WDHandle(dataHandle);               {Convert to typed handle}
  with theData^^ do
    begin
      if dirty then                               {Have window contents been changed?}
      begin
        GetWTitle (TheWindow, theTitle); {Get window title [II:3.2.4]}
        ParamText (theTitle, '', '', ''); {Substitute into alert text [II:7.4.6]}

        theItem := CautionAlert (SaveID, NIL); {Post alert [II:7.4.2]}
        case theItem of

          saveItem:
            begin
              DoSave;                               {Save window contents to disk}
              if ErrorFlag then                     {Check for I/O error}
              begin
                HUnlock (dataHandle); {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}
                EXIT (CloseAppWindow) {Exit to main event loop}
              end {if}
            end;

          discardItem:
            {Do nothing};

          cancelItem:
            begin
              Quitting := FALSE;                   {Cancel Quit command, if any}
              HUnlock (dataHandle); {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}
              EXIT (CloseAppWindow) {Exit to main event loop}
            end

          end {case}

        end; {if}
      end;
    end;
  end;

```

```

    if fileNumber <> 0 then                (Is window associated with a file?)
    begin
        resultCode := FSClose (fileNumber); (Close file [II:8.2.2])
        IOCheck (resultCode);              (Check for error)
        if ErrorFlag then                  (Error detected?)
        begin
            HUnlock (dataHandle);           (Unlock data record [I:3.2.4])
            EXIT (CloseAppWindow)          (Exit to main event loop)
        end {if}
    end; {if}

    TEDispose (editRec);                   (Dispose of edit record [II:5.2.2])

    TheScrollBar := NIL;                   (Clear global handles)
    TheText      := NIL

    end; {with}

    HUnlock (dataHandle);                   (Unlock data record [I:3.2.4])

    thisWindow := TheWindow;                (Save window pointer (DoActivate will change TheW
    HideWindow (TheWindow);                 (Force deactivate event [II:3.3.1])

    if GetNextEvent (ActivateEvt, TheEvent) then (Get deactivate event [II:2.2.1, II:2.1.2])
    DoActivate;                             { and handle it }
    if GetNextEvent (ActivateEvt, TheEvent) then (Get activate event [II:2.2.1, II:2.1.2])
    DoActivate;                             { and handle it }

    DisposHandle (dataHandle);               (Dispose of window data record [I:3.2.2])
    DisposeWindow (thisWindow)               (Dispose of window [II:3.2.3])

end; {CloseAppWindow}

-----}

procedure CloseSysWindow;

( Close system window [Prog. II:4-7]. )

var
    whichWindow : WindowPeek;               (Pointer for access to window's fields [II:3.1.1])
    accNumber   : INTEGER;                  (Reference number of desk accessory [I:7.5.5])

```

```

begin (CloseSysWindow)

    whichWindow := WindowPeek(FrontWindow);           {Convert to a WindowPeek [II:3.1.1, II:3.3.3]}

    accNumber := whichWindow^.windowKind;             {Get reference number of desk accessory [II:3.1.1]}
    CloseDeskAcc (accNumber)                          {Close desk accessory [II:4.5.2]}

end; (CloseSysWindow)

{-----}

procedure DoSave;

    { Handle Save command [Prog. II:8-21]. }

    var

        theData    : WDHandle;                       {Handle to window's data record}
        dataHandle : Handle;                          {Untyped handle for locking data record [I:3.1.1]}

begin (DoSave)

    dataHandle := Handle(GetWRefCon(TheWindow));       {Get window data [II:3.2.4]}

    HLock (dataHandle);                               {Lock data record [I:3.2.4]}

    theData := WDHandle(dataHandle);                  {Convert to typed handle}
    with theData^^ do
        if fileNumber = 0 then                        {Is window associated with a file?}
            DoSaveAs                                  {Get file name from user}
        else
            WriteFile (fileNumber, volNumber);        {Write to window's file}

    HUnlock (dataHandle)                              {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}

end; (DoSave)

{-----}

procedure DoSaveAs;

    { Handle Save As... command [Prog. II:8-81]. }

```

var

dlgOrigin	: Point;	{Top-left corner of dialog box [I:4.1.1]}
theReply	: SFRReply;	{Data returned by Put dialog [II:8.3.1]}
theInfo	: FInfo;	{File's Finder information [I:7.3.2]}
theFile	: INTEGER;	{Reference number of file}
theData	: WDHandle;	{Handle to window's data record}
dataHandle	: Handle;	{Untyped handle for locking data record [I:3.1.1]}
strHandle	: StringHandle;	{Handle to title string for empty window [II:8.1.1]}
untitled	: Str255;	{Title string for empty window [I:2.1.1]}
ignore	: INTEGER;	{Item code returned by alert}
resultCode	: OSErr;	{I/O error code [I:3.1.2]}

begin (DoSaveAs)

SetPt	(dlgOrigin, DlgLeft, DlgTop);	{Set up dialog origin [I:4.1.1]}
SFPutFile	(dlgOrigin, 'Save under what file name?', '', NIL, theReply);	{Get file name from user [II:8.3.3]}

with theReply dobegin

<u>if</u> not good <u>then</u>	{Did user confirm file selection? [II:8.3.1]}
<u>begin</u>	
Quitting := FALSE;	{Cancel Quit command, if any}
ErrorFlag := TRUE;	{Force exit to main event loop}
EXIT (DoSaveAs)	{Skip rest of operation}
<u>end;</u> <u>{if}</u>	

resultCode := GetFInfo (fName, vRefNum, theInfo);	{Get Finder info [I:7.3.3]}
<u>case</u> resultCode <u>of</u>	

NoErr:	{File already exists [II:8.2.8]}
--------	----------------------------------

<u>if</u> theInfo.fdType <> 'TEXT' <u>then</u>	{Not a text file? [I:7.3.2]}
--	------------------------------

begin

ParamText (fName, '', '', '');	{Substitute file name into text of alert [II:7.4.1]}
ignore := StopAlert (wrongTypeID, NIL);	{Post alert [II:7.4.2]}

ErrorFlag := TRUE;	{Force exit to main event loop}
EXIT (DoSaveAs)	{Skip rest of operation}
<u>end;</u> <u>{if}</u>	

FNFErr:	{File not found [II:8.2.8]}
---------	-----------------------------

begin

resultCode := Create (fName, vRefNum, 'MEDI', 'TEXT');	{Create the file [II:8.2.1]}
IOCheck (resultCode);	{Check for error}
<u>if</u> ErrorFlag <u>then</u> EXIT (DoSaveAs)	{On error, exit to main event loop}
<u>end;</u>	


```

otherwise                                     {Unanticipated error}
begin
    IOCheck (resultCode);                     {Post error alert}
    EXIT (DoSaveAs)                           {Exit to main event loop}
end

end; {case}

dataHandle := Handle(GetWRefCon(TheWindow)); {Get window data [II:3.2.4]}
HLock (dataHandle);                          {Lock data record [I:3.2.4]}

theData := WDHandle(dataHandle);             {Convert to typed handle}
with theData^^ do
begin
    SetCursor (Watch^^);                     {Indicate delay [II:2.5.2]}

    if fileNumber <> 0 then                    {Does window already have a file??}
    begin
        resultCode := FSClose (fileNumber); {Close old file [II:8.2.2]}
        IOCheck (resultCode);               {Check for error}
        if ErrorFlag then                   {Error detected during close??}
        begin
            HUnlock (dataHandle); {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}
            EXIT (DoSaveAs)        {Exit to main event loop}
        end {if}
    end; {if}

    resultCode := FSOpen (fName, vRefNum, theFile); {Open new file [II:8.2.2]}
    IOCheck (resultCode);                          {Check for error}
    if ErrorFlag then                               {Error detected during open??}
    begin
        volNumber := 0;                            {Window is left with no file: clear volume}
        fileNumber := 0;                            { and file numbers in window data }

        strHandle := GetString (noTitleID); {Get string from resource file [I:8.1.2]}
        untitled := strHandle^^;           {Convert from handle}
        SetWTitle (TheWindow, untitled)    {Set new window title [II:3.2.4]}
    end {then}

else
begin
    volNumber := vRefNum;    {Save new volume and file }
    fileNumber := theFile;   { numbers in window data}
    SetWTitle (TheWindow, fName); {File name becomes new window title [II:3.2.4]}

```

```

        WriteFile (theFile, vRefNum) {Write window's contents to file}
    end {else}

end; {with}

HUnlock (dataHandle)                {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}

end {with}

end; {DoSaveAs}

-----

procedure WriteFile ({theFile : INTEGER; volNum : INTEGER});

{ Write window contents to a file [Prog. II:8-3]. }

var
    textHandle : Handle;                {Handle to text of file [I:3.1.1]}
    textLength : LONGINT;               {Length of text in bytes}
    resultCode : OSErr;                 {I/O error code [I:3.1.2]}

begin {WriteFile}
    → SetCursor (Watch^^);              {Indicate delay [II:2.5.2]}

    HLock (Handle(TheText));            {Lock edit record [I:3.2.4]}
    with TheText^^ do
        begin
            textHandle := hText;         {Get text handle and current length}
            textLength := teLength      {  from edit record [II:5.1.1] }
        end; {with}
    HUnlock (Handle(TheText));          {Unlock edit record [I:3.2.4]}

    resultCode := SetFPos (theFile, FSFromStart, 0); {Reset mark to beginning of file [II:8.2.4]}
    IOCheck (resultCode);               {Check for error}
    if ErrorFlag then EXIT (WriteFile); {On error, exit to main event loop}

    HLock (textHandle);                 {Lock text [I:3.2.4]}
    resultCode := FSWrite (theFile, textLength, textHandle^); {Write text to file [II:8.2.3]}
    HUnlock (textHandle);               {Unlock text [I:3.2.4]}
    IOCheck (resultCode);               {Check for error}
    if ErrorFlag then EXIT (WriteFile); {On error, exit to main event loop}

```

```

resultCode := SetEOF (theFile, textLength);      {Set length of file [II:8.2.5]}
IOCheck (resultCode);                             {Check for error}
if ErrorFlag then EXIT (WriteFile);              {On error, exit to main event loop}

resultCode := FlushVol (NIL, volNum);             {Flush volume buffer [II:8.1.3]}
IOCheck (resultCode);                             {Check for error}
if ErrorFlag then EXIT (WriteFile);              {On error, exit to main event loop}

WindowDirty (FALSE)                              {Mark window as clean}

```

```
end; {WriteFile}
```

```
{-----}
```

```
procedure DoRevert;
```

```
{ Handle Revert to Saved command [Prog. II:8-4]. }
```

```

var
  theData    : WDHandle;          {Handle to window's data record}
  dataHandle : Handle;            {Untyped handle for locking data record [I:3.1.1]}
  fileName   : Str255;            {Title of window [I:2.1.1]}
  textLength : LONGINT;           {Length of file in bytes}
  theItem    : INTEGER;           {Item number for Revert alert}
  resultCode : OSErr;             {I/O error code [I:3.1.2]}

```

```
begin {DoRevert}
```

```

  dataHandle := Handle(GetWRefCon(TheWindow));    {Get window data [II:3.2.4]}
  HLock (dataHandle);                             {Lock data record [I:3.2.4]}

```

```

  theData := WDHandle(dataHandle);               {Convert to typed handle}
  with theData^^ do
    begin

```

```

      if dirty then                                {Have window contents been changed?}
        begin
          GetWTitle (TheWindow, fileName);        {Get file name from window title [II:3.2.4]}
          ParamText (fileName, '', '', '');       {Substitute into text of alert [II:7.4.6]}
        end
      end

```

```

theItem := CautionAlert (RevertID, NIL); {Post alert [II:7.4.2]}
if theItem = Cancel then {Did user cancel? [II:7.1.1]}
    begin
        HUnlock (dataHandle); {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}
        ErrorFlag := TRUE; {Force exit to main event loop}
        EXIT (DoRevert) {Skip rest of operation}
    end {if}
end; {if}

SetCursor (Watch^^); {Indicate delay [II:2.5.2]}

resultCode := GetEOF (fileNumber, textLength); {Get length of file [II:8.2.5]}
IOCheck (resultCode); {Check for error}
if ErrorFlag then {Error detected?}
    begin
        HUnlock (dataHandle); {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}
        EXIT (DoRevert) {Exit to main event loop}
    end; {if}

resultCode := SetFPos (fileNumber, FSFromStart, 0); {Set mark at beginning of file [II:8.2]}
IOCheck (resultCode); {Check for error}
if ErrorFlag then {Error detected?}
    begin
        HUnlock (dataHandle); {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}
        EXIT (DoRevert) {Exit to main event loop}
    end; {if}

HLock (Handle(TheText)); {Lock edit record [I:3.2.4]}
with TheText^^ do
    begin
        SetHandleSize (hText, textLength); {Adjust text to length of file [I:3.2.3, II:5.1]}
        teLength := textLength; {Set text length [II:5.1.1]}

        HLock (hText); {Lock the handle [I:3.2.4]}
        resultCode := FSRead (fileNumber, textLength, hText^^); {Read text of file into handle [II:8.2.3]}
        IOCheck (resultCode); {Check for error}
        HUnlock (hText); {Unlock the handle [I:3.2.4]}

    end; {with}
HUnlock (Handle(TheText)); {Unlock edit record [I:3.2.4]}

```

```

    if ErrorFlag then
        begin
            HUnlock (dataHandle);
            EXIT (DoRevert)
        end {if}
    end; {with}

```

{Error detected during read?}

{Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}

{Exit to main event loop}

```
HUnlock (dataHandle);
```

{Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}

```
TECalText (TheText);
```

{Wrap text to window [II:5.3.1]}

```
AdjustScrollBar;
```

{Adjust scroll bar to length of text}

```
TESetSelect (0, 0, TheText);
```

{Set insertion point at beginning of text [II:5.4.2]}

```
InvalRect (TheWindow^.portRect);
```

{Force update to redraw text [II:3.4.2]}

```
WindowDirty (FALSE)
```

{Mark window as clean}

```
end; {DoRevert}
```

```
{-----}
```

```
procedure DoQuit;
```

```
{ Handle Quit command [Prog. II:2-4]. }
```

```
begin {DoQuit}
```

```
    Quitting := TRUE
```

{Start closing down windows}

```
end; {DoQuit}
```

```
{-----}
```

```
procedure DoEditChoice ((theItem : INTEGER));
```

```
{ Handle choice from Edit menu [Prog. II:4-9]. }
```

```
const
```

```
    undoCmd = 0;
```

{Constant representing Undo command [II:4.5.3]}

```
    cutCmd = 2;
```

{Constant representing Cut command [II:4.5.3]}

```
    copyCmd = 3;
```

{Constant representing Copy command [II:4.5.3]}

```
    pasteCmd = 4;
```

{Constant representing Paste command [II:4.5.3]}

```
    clearCmd = 5;
```

{Constant representing Clear command [II:4.5.3]}


```

begin {DoEditChoice}

  case theItem of

    UndoItem:
      if not SystemEdit (undoCmd) then
        DoUndo;                                {Handle Undo command}

    CutItem:
      if not SystemEdit (cutCmd) then
        DoCut;                                {Handle Cut command}

    CopyItem:
      if not SystemEdit (copyCmd) then
        DoCopy;                                {Handle Copy command}

    PasteItem:
      if not SystemEdit (pasteCmd) then
        DoPaste;                                {Handle Paste command}

    ClearItem:
      if not SystemEdit (clearCmd) then
        DoClear                                {Handle Clear command}

  end {case}

end; {DoEditChoice}

```

{-----}

```

procedure DoUndo;

  { Handle Undo command. }

  begin {DoUndo}

    SysBeep(1)                                {Undo command not implemented [II:2.8.1]}

  end; {DoUndo}

```

{-----}

```

procedure DoCut;

  { Handle Cut command [Prog. II:5-8]. }

```

```

begin {DoCut}

    ScrollToSelection;                                {Make sure selection is visible}

    TECut (TheText);                                  {Cut the selection [II:5.5.2]}

    AdjustScrollBar;                                  {Adjust scroll bar to length of text}
    AdjustText;                                       {Adjust text to match scroll bar}
    ScrollToSelection;                                {Keep insertion point visible}

    DisableItem (EditMenu, CutItem);                  {Disable menu items that operate on}
    DisableItem (EditMenu, CopyItem);                  {  a nonempty selection [II:4.6.2]}
    DisableItem (EditMenu, ClearItem);

    EnableItem (EditMenu, PasteItem);                  {Enable Paste command [II:4.6.2]}

    ScrapDirty := TRUE;                                {Mark scrap as dirty}
    WindowDirty (TRUE)                                {Mark window as dirty}

end; {DoCut}

```

```

{-----}

```

```

procedure DoCopy;

```

```

( Handle Copy command [Prog. II:5-9]. )

```

```

begin {DoCopy}

```

```

    ScrollToSelection;                                {Make sure selection is visible}

    TECopy (TheText);                                  {Copy the selection [II:5.5.2]}

    EnableItem (EditMenu, PasteItem);                  {Enable Paste command [II:4.6.2]}

    ScrapDirty := TRUE                                {Mark scrap as dirty}

```

```

end; {DoCopy}

```

```

{-----}

```

```

procedure DoPaste;

```

```

( Handle Paste command [Prog. II:5-10]. )

```

```
begin {DoPaste}
```

```
    ScrollToSelection;                {Make sure selection is visible}

    TEPaste (TheText);                {Paste the scrap [II:5.5.2]}

    AdjustScrollBar;                 {Adjust scroll bar to length of text}
    AdjustText;                      {Adjust text to match scroll bar}
    ScrollToSelection;                {Keep selection visible}

    DisableItem (EditMenu, CutItem);  {Disable menu items that operate on}
    DisableItem (EditMenu, CopyItem); {   a nonempty selection [II:4.6.2]}
    DisableItem (EditMenu, ClearItem);

    WindowDirty (TRUE)                {Mark window as dirty}
```

```
end; {DoPaste}
```

```
{-----}
```

```
procedure DoClear;
```

```
{ Handle Clear command [Prog. II:5-11]. }
```

```
begin {DoClear}
```

```
    ScrollToSelection;                {Make sure selection is visible}

    TDelete (TheText);                {Delete the selection [II:5.5.3]}

    AdjustScrollBar;                 {Adjust scroll bar to length of text}
    AdjustText;                      {Adjust text to match scroll bar}
    ScrollToSelection;                {Keep insertion point visible}

    DisableItem (EditMenu, CutItem);  {Disable menu items that operate on}
    DisableItem (EditMenu, CopyItem); {   a nonempty selection [II:4.6.2]}
    DisableItem (EditMenu, ClearItem);

    WindowDirty (TRUE)                {Mark window as dirty}
```

```
end; {DoClear}
```

```
{-----}
```

```
procedure DoContent ((whichWindow : WindowPtr));
```

```
    ( Handle mouse-down event in content region of active window [Prog. II:6-1]. )
```

```
    var
```

```
        thePoint : Point;
```

```
        {Location of mouse click in window coordinates [I:4.1]}
```

```
        theControl : ControlHandle;
```

```
        {Handle to control [II:6.1.1]}
```

```
        thePart : INTEGER;
```

```
        {Part of control where mouse was pressed [II:6.4.1]}
```

```
    begin (DoContent)
```

```
        if whichWindow <> FrontWindow then
```

```
            {Is it an inactive window? [II:3.3.3]}
```

```
            SelectWindow (whichWindow)
```

```
            {If so, just activate it [II:3.5.2]}
```

```
        else
```

```
            begin
```

```
                thePoint := TheEvent.where;
```

```
                {Get point in screen coordinates [II:2.1.1]}
```

```
                GlobalToLocal (thePoint);
```

```
                {Convert to window coordinates [I:4.4.2]}
```

```
                thePart := FindControl (thePoint, whichWindow, theControl);
```

```
                {Was mouse pressed in a control? [II:6.4.1]}
```

```
                if theControl = TheScrollBar then
```

```
                    {Was it in the scroll bar?}
```

```
                    DoScroll (thePart, thePoint)
```

```
                    {Go scroll the window}
```

```
                else if theControl = NIL then
```

```
                    {Not in a control?}
```

```
                    if PtInRect (thePoint, TheText^.viewRect) then {Was it in the text rectangle? [I:4.4.3]}
```

```
                    DoSelect (thePoint)
```

```
                    {Go handle text selection}
```

```
            end (else)
```

```
    end; (DoContent)
```

```
{-----}
```

```
procedure DoScroll ((thePart : INTEGER; thePoint : Point));
```

```
    ( Handle mouse-down event in scroll bar [Prog. II:6-6]. )
```

```
    begin (DoScroll)
```

```

if thePart = InThumb then                                (Dragging the indicator? [II:6.4.1])

    begin
        thePart := TrackControl (TheScrollBar, thePoint, NIL);
                                                (Track mouse with no action procedure [II:6.4.2])
        AdjustText                                (Adjust text to new setting)
    end (then)

else

    thePart := TrackControl (TheScrollBar, thePoint, @ScrollText)
                                                (Track mouse with continuous scroll [II:6.4.2])

end; (DoScroll)

(-----)

procedure ScrollText ((theControl: ControlHandle; thePart : INTEGER));
( Scroll text within window [Prog. II:6-8]. )

var
    delta      : INTEGER;                                (Amount to scroll by, in lines)
    oldValue   : INTEGER;                                (Previous setting of scroll bar)

begin (ScrollText)

    case thePart of

        inUpButton:
            delta := -1;                                    (Scroll up one line at a time)

        inDownButton:
            delta := +1;                                    (Scroll down one line at a time)

        inPageUp:
            with TheText^^, viewRect do
                delta := (top - bottom) div lineHeight + 1; (Scroll up by height of text rectangle [II:5.1])
            end;

        inPageDown:
            with TheText^^, viewRect do
                delta := (bottom - top) div lineHeight - 1; (Scroll down by height of text rectangle [II:5.1])
            end;

        otherwise
            (Do nothing)

    end; (case)

```



```

if thePart <> 0 then                                {Is mouse still in the original part?}
begin
    oldValue := GetCtlValue (theControl);           {Get old setting [II:6.2.4]}
    SetCtlValue (theControl, oldValue + delta);     {Adjust by scroll amount [II:6.2.4]}

    AdjustText                                       {Scroll text to match new setting}
end

end; {ScrollText}

{-----}

procedure AdjustText;

( Adjust text within window to match scroll bar setting [Prog. II:6-7]. )

var
    oldScroll : INTEGER;                            {Old text offset in pixels}
    newScroll : INTEGER;                            {New text offset in pixels}

begin {AdjustText}

    HLock (Handle(TheText));                        {Lock edit record [I:3.2.4]}
    with TheText^^ do
        begin

            oldScroll := viewRect.top - destRect.top;    {Get current offset [II:5.1.1]}
            newScroll := GetCtlValue (TheScrollBar) * lineHeight; {Scroll bar gives new offset [II:6.2.4]}

            TEScroll (0, (oldScroll - newScroll), TheText)    {Scroll by difference [II:5.3.3]}

        end; {with}
    HUnlock (Handle(TheText))                        {Unlock edit record [I:3.2.4]}

end; {AdjustText}

{-----}

function AutoScroll( : BOOLEAN);

( Handle automatic scrolling during text selection [Prog. II:6-9]. )

```

var

mousePoint : Point;

textRect : Rect;

saveClip : RgnHandle;

{Mouse location in local (window) coordinates [I:4.1]}

{Active window's text rectangle [I:4.1.2]}

{Original clipping region on entry [I:4.1.5]}

begin {AutoScroll}

saveClip := NewRgn;

GetClip (saveClip);

ClipRect (TheWindow^.portRect);

{Create temporary region [I:4.1.6]}

{Set it to existing clipping region [I:4.3.6]}

{Clip to entire port rectangle [I:4.3.6, I:4.2.2]}

GetMouse (mousePoint);

textRect := TheText^.viewRect;

{Find mouse location [II:2.4.1]}

{Get text rectangle [II:5.1.1]}

if mousePoint.v < textRect.top then

ScrollText (TheScrollBar, InUpButton)

{Above top of rectangle? [I:4.1.1, I:4.1.2]}

{Scroll up one line [II:6.4.1]}

else if mousePoint.v > textRect.bottom then

ScrollText (TheScrollBar, InDownButton)

{Below bottom of rectangle? [I:4.1.1, I:4.1.2]}

{Scroll down one line [II:6.4.1]}

{else do nothing};

SetClip (saveClip);

DisposeRgn (saveClip);

{Restore original clipping region [I:4.3.6]}

{Dispose of temporary region [I:4.1.6]}

AutoScroll := TRUE

{Continue tracking mouse [II:5.6.1]}

end; {AutoScroll}

{-----}

procedure DoSelect {(thePoint : Point)};

{ Handle mouse-down event in text rectangle [Prog. II:5-4]. }

var

extend : BOOLEAN;

{Extend existing selection (Shift-click)?}

begin {DoSelect}

with TheEvent do

extend := (BitAnd(modifiers, ShiftKey) <> 0); {Shift key down? [I:2.2.2, II:2.1.5]}

TEClick (thePoint, extend, TheText);

{Do text selection [II:5.4.1]}

```

    FixEditMenu                                     {Enable/disable menu items}

end; {DoSelect}

{-----}

procedure FixEditMenu;

{ Enable/disable editing commands [Prog. II:5-5]. }

begin {FixEditMenu}

    DisableItem (EditMenu, UndoItem);               {Disable Undo command [II:4.6.2]}

    HLock (Handle(TheText));                         {Lock edit record [I:3.2.4]}
    with TheText^^ do
        if selStart = selEnd then                   {Is selection empty? [II:5.1.1]}
            begin
                DisableItem (EditMenu, CutItem);     {Disable menu items that operate on }
                DisableItem (EditMenu, CopyItem);    { a nonempty selection [II:4.6.2]}
                DisableItem (EditMenu, ClearItem)
            end {then}
        else
            begin
                EnableItem (EditMenu, CutItem);       {Enable menu items that operate on }
                EnableItem (EditMenu, CopyItem);     { a nonempty selection [II:4.6.2]}
                EnableItem (EditMenu, ClearItem)
            end; {else}
    HUnlock (Handle(TheText));                       {Unlock edit record [I:3.2.4]}

    if TEGetScrapLen = 0 then                         {Is scrap empty? [II:5.5.4]}
        DisableItem (EditMenu, PasteItem)           {Disable Paste command [II:4.6.2]}
    else
        EnableItem (EditMenu, PasteItem)            {Enable Paste command [II:4.6.2]}

end; {FixEditMenu}

{-----}

procedure DoDrag {(whichWindow : WindowPtr)};

{ Handle mouse-down event in drag region [Prog. II:3-8]. }

```

```

var
  limitRect : Rect;                                (Limit rectangle for dragging [I:4.1.2])

begin (DoDrag)

  SetRect (limitRect, 0, MenuBarHeight, ScreenWidth, ScreenHeight);
                                                    (Set limit rectangle [I:4.1.2])
  InsetRect (limitRect, ScreenMargin, ScreenMargin); (Inset by screen margin [I:4.4.4])

  DragWindow (whichWindow, TheEvent.where, limitRect) (Let user drag the window [II:3.5.4])

end; (DoDrag)

-----

procedure DoGrow ((whichWindow : WindowPtr));

( Handle mouse-down event in size region [Prog. II:3-9]. )

var
  sizeRect : Rect;                                (Minimum and maximum dimensions of window [I:4.1.2])
  newSize : LONGINT;                               (Coded representation of new dimensions)
  newWidth : INTEGER;                              (New width of window)
  newHeight : INTEGER;                             (New height of window)

begin (DoGrow)

  SetRect (sizeRect, MinWidth, MinHeight, ScreenWidth, (ScreenHeight - MenuBarHeight) );
                                                    (Set size rectangle [I:4.1.2])
  newSize := GrowWindow (whichWindow, TheEvent.where, sizeRect);
                                                    (Let user drag size region [II:3.5.4])

  if newSize <> 0 then                               (Was size changed?)
  begin
    EraseRect (whichWindow^.portRect);              (Clear window to white [I:5.3.2])

    newWidth := LoWord(newSize);                     (Extract width from low word [I:2.2.3])
    newHeight := HiWord(newSize);                    (Extract height from high word [I:2.2.3])
    SizeWindow (whichWindow, newWidth, newHeight, TRUE);
                                                    (Adjust size of window [II:3.3.2])

    InvalRect (whichWindow^.portRect);               (Force update of window's contents [II:3.4.2])
  end;
end;

```

```

    FixScrollBar;           {Resize scroll bar}
    FixText                 {Resize text rectangle}

```

```

end (if)

```

```

end; {DoGrow}

```

```

{-----}

```

```

procedure FixScrollBar;

```

```

( Resize window's scroll bar [Prog. II:6-10]. )

```

```

begin {FixScrollBar}

```

```

    HideControl (TheScrollBar);           {Hide scroll bar [II:6.3.1]}

```

```

    with TheWindow^.portRect do
        begin

```

```

            MoveControl (TheScrollBar,
                          right - (SBarWidth - 1),
                          -1);           {Move top-left corner [II:6.3.2]}
                                          {Allow for 1-pixel overlap at right}
                                          {Overlap window top by 1 pixel}

```

```

            SizeControl (TheScrollBar,
                          SBarWidth,
                          (bottom + 1) - (top - 1) - (SBarWidth - 1) );
                                          {Adjust bottom-right corner [II:6.3.2]}
                                          {Allow room for size box}

```

```

        end; {with}

```

```

        ShowControl (TheScrollBar);       {Redisplay scroll bar [II:6.3.1]}

```

```

        ValidRect (TheScrollBar^.controlRect) {Avoid updating again [II:3.4.2]}

```

```

    end; {FixScrollBar}

```

```

{-----}

```

```

procedure FixText;

```

```

( Resize window's text rectangle [Prog. II:6-11]. )

```


var

topLine	:	INTEGER;	{First line visible in window}
firstChar	:	INTEGER;	{Character position of first character in window}
maxTop	:	INTEGER;	{Maximum value for top line in window}

begin {FixText}

SetCursor (Watch^^);	{Indicate delay [II:2.5.2]}
----------------------	-----------------------------

HLock (Handle(TheText));	{Lock edit record [I:3.2.4]}
--------------------------	------------------------------

with TheText^^ dobegin

topLine := GetCtlValue (TheScrollBar);	{Get previous first line [II:6.2.4]}
--	--------------------------------------

firstChar := lineStarts[topLine];	{Find first character previously visible [II:5.1.1]}
-----------------------------------	--

viewRect := TheWindow^.portRect;	{Display text in window's port rectangle [II:3.1.1]}
----------------------------------	--

with viewRect dobegin

right := right - (SBarWidth - 1);	{Exclude scroll bar, allowing for 1-pixel overlap}
-----------------------------------	--

bottom := bottom - (SBarWidth - 1);	{Leave space for scroll bar at bottom}
-------------------------------------	--

bottom := (bottom <u>div</u> lineHeight) * lineHeight	{Truncate to a whole number of lines [II:5.1.1]}
---	--

end;

destRect := viewRect;	{Wrap to same rectangle [II:5.1.1]}
-----------------------	-------------------------------------

InsetRect (destRect, TextMargin, TextMargin);	{Inset by text margin [I:4.4.4]}
---	----------------------------------

TECalText (TheText);	{Recalibrate line starts [II:5.3.1]}
----------------------	--------------------------------------

AdjustScrollBar;	{Adjust scroll bar to new length}
------------------	-----------------------------------

ScrollCharacter (firstChar, FALSE)	{Scroll same character to top of window}
------------------------------------	--

end; with

HUnlock (Handle(TheText))	{Unlock edit record [I:3.2.4]}
---------------------------	--------------------------------

end; {FixText}

{-----}

procedure DoGoAway ({whichWindow : WindowPtr});

{ Handle mouse-down event in close region [Prog. II:3-10]. }

```

begin {DoGoAway}

    if TrackGoAway (whichWindow, TheEvent.where) then {Track mouse in close region [II:3.5.4]}
        DoClose                                     { and close window if necessary }

    end; {DoGoAway}

(-----)

procedure DoZoom (whichWindow : WindowPtr; inOrOut : INTEGER);

    { Handle mouse-down event in zoom region [Prog. II:3-11]. }

begin {DoZoom}

    with TheEvent do
        if TrackBox (whichWindow, where, inOrOut) then {Track mouse in zoom region [II:3.5.4]}
            begin

                EraseRect (whichWindow^.portRect);      {Clear window to white [I:5.3.2]}

                ZoomWindow (whichWindow, inOrOut, FALSE); {Zoom window in or out [II:3.3.2]}

                InvalRect (whichWindow^.portRect);      {Force update of window's contents [II:3.4.2]}

                FixScrollBar;                            {Resize scroll bar}
                FixText                                 {Resize text rectangle}

            end {if}

        end; {DoZoom}

(-----)

procedure DoKeystroke;

    { Handle keystroke [Prog. II:4-4]. }

var
    chCode      : INTEGER;      {Character code from event message [8.1.1]}
    ch          : CHAR;         {Character that was typed}
    menuChoice  : LONGINT;      {Menu ID and item number for keyboard alias}

```

```

begin {DoKeystroke}
  with TheEvent do
    begin
      chCode := BitAnd (message, CharCodeMask); {Extract character code [I:2.2.2, II:2.1.4]}
      ch := CHR(chCode); {Convert to a character}

      if BitAnd (modifiers, CmdKey) <> 0 then {Command key down? [I:2.2.2, II:2.1.5]}
        begin
          if what <> AutoKey then {Ignore repeats [II:2.1.1, II:2.1.2]}
            begin
              menuChoice := MenuKey (ch); {Get menu equivalent [II:4.5.1]}
              DoMenuChoice (menuChoice) {Handle as menu choice}
            end
          end
        else
          DoTyping (ch) {Handle as normal character}
        end {with}
      end; {DoKeystroke}
    end;
  end;

```

-----}

```

procedure DoTyping ((ch : CHAR));

```

```

{ Handle character typed from keyboard [Prog. II:5-6]. }

```

```

begin {DoTyping}

  ScrollToSelection; {Make sure insertion point is visible}

  TEKey (ch, TheText); {Process character [II:5.5.1]}

  AdjustScrollBar; {Adjust scroll bar to length of text}
  AdjustText; {Adjust text to match scroll bar}
  ScrollToSelection; {Keep insertion point visible}

  DisableItem (EditMenu, CutItem); {Disable menu items that operate on}
  DisableItem (EditMenu, CopyItem); { a nonempty selection [II:4.6.2]}
  DisableItem (EditMenu, ClearItem);

  WindowDirty (TRUE) {Mark window as dirty}

end; {DoTyping}

```

```

{-----}

procedure DoUpdate;

  { Handle update event [Prog. II:5-3]. }

var
  savePort      : GrafPtr;           {Pointer to previous current port [I:4.2.1]}
  whichWindow   : WindowPtr;        {Pointer to window to be updated [II:3.1.1]}
  theData       : WDHandle;         {Handle to window's data record}
  dataHandle    : Handle;           {Untyped handle for locking data record [I:3.1.1]}

begin {DoUpdate}

  GetPort (savePort);                {Save previous port [I:4.3.3]}

  whichWindow := WindowPtr(TheEvent.message); {Convert long integer to pointer [II:3.1.1]}
  SetPort (whichWindow);             {Make window the current port [I:4.3.3]}

  BeginUpdate (whichWindow);         {Restrict visible region to update region [II:3.4.1]}

  EraseRect (whichWindow^.portRect); {Clear update region [I:5.3.2]}

  DrawGrowIcon (whichWindow);        {Redraw size box [II:3.3.4]}
  DrawControls (whichWindow);        {Redraw scroll bar [II:6.3.1]}

  dataHandle := Handle(GetWRefCon(whichWindow)); {Get window data [II:3.2.4]}
  HLock (dataHandle);                {Lock data record [I:3.2.4]}
  theData := WDHandle(dataHandle);   {Convert to typed handle}
  with theData^ do
    TEUpdate (editRec^.viewRect, editRec); {Redraw the text [II:5.3.2]}
  HUnlock (dataHandle);              {Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}

  EndUpdate (whichWindow);           {Restore original visible region [II:3.4.1]}

  SetPort (savePort)                {Restore original port [I:4.3.3]}

end; {DoUpdate}

{-----}

procedure DoActivate;

  { Handle activate (or deactivate) event [Prog. II:5-14]. }

```

const

active = 0;
inactive = 255;

{Highlighting code for active scroll bar [II:6.3.3]}
{Highlighting code for inactive scroll bar [II:6.3.3]}

changeFlag = \$0002;

{Mask for extracting "change bit" from event modifier}

var

whichWindow : WindowPtr;
theData : WDHandle;
dataHandle : Handle;

{Pointer to the window [II:3.1.1]}
{Handle to window's data record}
{Untyped handle for locking data record [I:3.1.1]}

begin (DoActivate)

with TheEvent do

begin

whichWindow := WindowPtr(message);
SetPort (whichWindow);

{Convert long integer to pointer [II:3.1.1]}
{Make window the current port [I:4.3.3]}

DrawGrowIcon (whichWindow);

{Highlight or unhighlight size box [II:3.3.4]}

dataHandle := Handle(GetWRefCon(whichWindow)); {Get window data [II:3.2.4]}
HLock (dataHandle); {Lock data record [I:3.2.4]}

theData := WDHandle(dataHandle); {Convert to typed handle}

with theData^ do

if BitAnd(modifiers, ActiveFlag) <> 0 then {Test activate/deactivate bit [I:2.2.2, II:2.1]}

begin

TheWindow := whichWindow; {Set global pointers/handles}
TheScrollBar := scrollBar;
TheText := editRec;

HiliteControl (scrollBar, active); {Activate scroll bar [II:6.3.3]}
TEActivate (editRec); {Highlight selection [II:5.4.3]}

if BitAnd(modifiers, changeFlag) <> 0 then

ReadDeskScrap; {Coming from a system window? [I:2.2.2, II:2.1]}
{Copy desk scrap to Toolbox scrap}

FixEditMenu; {Enable/disable editing commands}


```

EnableItem (FileMenu, SaveAsItem);    (Enable Save As... command [II:4.6.2])
if dirty then                          (Is document dirty?)
    EnableItem (FileMenu, SaveItem);  (Enable Save command [II:4.6.2])
    if dirty and (fileNumber <> 0) then (Is there a file to revert to?)
        EnableItem (FileMenu, RevertItem) (Enable Revert command [II:4.6.2])
    end {then}
end {then}

```

```
else
```

```
begin
```

```

TheWindow := NIL;                (Clear global pointers/handles)
TheScrollBar := NIL;
TheText := NIL;

TEDeactivate (editRec);          (Unhighlight selection [II:5.4.3])
HiliteControl (scrollBar, inactive); (Deactivate scroll bar [II:6.3.3])
if BitAnd(modifiers, changeFlag) <> 0 then
    (Exiting to a system window? [I:2.2.2, II:2.1.5])
begin
    WriteDeskScrap;              (Copy Toolbox scrap to desk scrap)

    EnableItem (EditMenu, UndoItem); (Enable standard editing commands)
    EnableItem (EditMenu, CutItem);  ( for desk accessory [II:4.6.2] )
    EnableItem (EditMenu, CopyItem);
    EnableItem (EditMenu, PasteItem);
    EnableItem (EditMenu, ClearItem)
end; {if}

DisableItem (FileMenu, SaveItem);   (Disable filing commands for desk    )
DisableItem (FileMenu, SaveAsItem); ( accessory or empty desk [II:4.6.2])
DisableItem (FileMenu, RevertItem)

```

```
end; {else}
```

```
HUnlock (dataHandle)
```

```
(Unlock data record [I:3.2.4])
```

```
end {with}
```

```
end; {DoActivate}
```

```
{-----}
```

```
procedure WindowDirty {(isDirty : BOOLEAN)};
```

```
{ Mark window dirty or clean [Prog. II:5-7]. }
```

```
var
```

```
  theData      : WDHandle;
```

```
{Handle to window's data record}
```

```
  dataHandle : Handle;
```

```
{Untyped handle for locking data record [I:3.1.1]}
```

```
begin {WindowDirty}
```

```
  dataHandle := Handle(GetWRefCon(TheWindow));
```

```
{Get window data [II:3.2.4]}
```

```
  HLock (dataHandle);
```

```
{Lock data record [I:3.2.4]}
```

```
  theData := WDHandle(dataHandle);
```

```
{Convert to typed handle}
```

```
  with theData^^ do
```

```
    begin
```

```
      dirty := isDirty;
```

```
{Set flag in data record}
```

```
      if isDirty then
```

```
{Is window becoming dirty or clean?}
```

```
        begin
```

```
          EnableItem (FileMenu, SaveItem);
```

```
{Enable Save command [II:4.6.2]}
```

```
          if fileNumber <> 0 then
```

```
{Is window associated with a file?}
```

```
            EnableItem (FileMenu, RevertItem)
```

```
{Enable Revert command [II:4.6.2]}
```

```
          end {then}
```

```
        else
```

```
          begin
```

```
            DisableItem (FileMenu, SaveItem);
```

```
{Disable menu items [II:4.6.2]}
```

```
            DisableItem (FileMenu, RevertItem)
```

```
          end {else}
```

```
      end; {with}
```

```
  HUnlock (dataHandle)
```

```
{Unlock data record [I:3.2.4]}
```

```
end; {WindowDirty}
```

```
{-----}
```

```
procedure AdjustScrollBar;
```

```
{ Adjust scroll bar to length of document [Prog. II:6-5]. }
```

```

const
  active   = 0;           {Highlighting code for active scroll bar [II:6.3.3]}
  inactive = 255;        {Highlighting code for inactive scroll bar [II:6.3.3]}

var
  windowHeight : INTEGER; {Height of text rectangle in lines}
  maxTop       : INTEGER; {Maximum value for top line in window}

begin {AdjustScrollBar}

  with TheText^^, viewRect do
    begin
      windowHeight := (bottom - top) div lineHeight; {Get window height [II:5.1.1]}
      maxTop       := nLines - windowHeight          {Avoid white space at bottom [II:5.1.1]}
    end; {with}

    if maxTop <= 0 then {Is text smaller than window?}
      begin
        maxTop := 0; {Show all of text}
        HiliteControl (TheScrollBar, inactive) {Disable scroll bar [II:6.3.3]}
      end {then}
    else
      HiliteControl (TheScrollBar, active); {Enable scroll bar [II:6.3.3]}

      SetCtlMax (TheScrollBar, maxTop) {Adjust range of scroll bar [II:6.2.4]}

  end; {AdjustScrollBar}

{-----}

procedure ScrollToSelection;

{ Scroll current selection into view [Prog. II:6-13]. }

var
  topLine      : INTEGER; {First line visible in window}
  bottomLine   : INTEGER; {First line beyond bottom of window}
  windowHeight : INTEGER; {Height of text rectangle in lines}

begin {ScrollToSelection}

  HLock (Handle(TheText)); {Lock edit record [I:3.2.4]}
  with TheText^^, viewRect do

```

begin

```

topLine      := GetCtlValue (TheScrollBar);    {Get current top line [II:6.2.4]}
windowHeight := (bottom - top) div lineHeight; {Get window height [II:5.1.1]}
bottomLine   := topLine + windowHeight;        {Find line beyond bottom}

if GetCtlMax (TheScrollBar) = 0 then           {Not enough text to fill the window? [II:6.2]}
    AdjustText                                {Start of text to top of window}

else if selEnd < lineStarts[topLine] then      {Whole selection above window top? [II:5.1.1]}
    ScrollCharacter (selStart, FALSE)          {Start of selection to top of window}

else if selStart >= lineStarts[bottomLine] then {Whole selection below window bottom? [II:5.1]}
    ScrollCharacter (selEnd, TRUE)             {End of selection to bottom of window}

```

end; {with}

HUnlock (Handle(TheText))

{Unlock edit record [I:3.2.4]}

end; {ScrollToSelection}

{-----}

procedure ScrollCharacter ((theCharacter : INTEGER; toBottom : BOOLEAN));

{ Scroll character into view [Prog. II:6-12]. }

var

theLine : INTEGER;

{Number of line containing character}

windowHeight : INTEGER;

{Height of text rectangle in lines}

begin {ScrollCharacter}

HLock (Handle(TheText));

{Lock edit record [I:3.2.4]}

with TheText^^ do

begin

theLine := 0;

{Start search at first line}

while lineStarts[theLine+1] <= theCharacter do

theLine := theLine + 1;

{Find line containing character [II:5.1.1]}

```

    if toBottom then                                {Scrolling to bottom of window?}
    begin
        with viewRect do
            windowHeight := (bottom - top) div lineHeight; {Get window height}
            theLine := theLine - (windowHeight - 1)         {Offset for window height}
        end; {if}

        SetCtlValue (TheScrollBar, theLine);             {Adjust setting of scroll bar [II:6.2.4]}
        AdjustText                                       {Scroll text to match new setting}

    end; {with}
    HUnlock (Handle(TheText))                            {Unlock edit record [I:3.2.4]}

end; {ScrollCharacter}

{-----}

procedure ReadDeskScrap;

( Read desk scrap into Toolbox scrap [Prog. II:5-12]. )

var
    scrapLength : LONGINT;                            {Length of desk text scrap in bytes}
    ignore      : LONGINT;                            {Dummy variable for scrap offset}
    result      : OSErr;                              {Result code from scrap transfer [I:3.1.2]}

begin {ReadDeskScrap}

    if ScrapCompare (<) InfoScrap^.scrapCount then    {Has scrap count changed? [I:7.4.2]}
    begin
        scrapLength := GetScrap (NIL, 'TEXT', ignore); {Check desk scrap for a text item [I:7.4.3]}

        if scrapLength >= 0 then                      {Is there a text item?}
        begin
            result := TEFFromScrap;                   {Transfer desk scrap to Toolbox scrap [II:5.5.5]}
            if result <> NoErr then                    {Was there an error? [I:3.1.2]}
                scrapLength := result                 {Make sure scrap length is negative}
            end; {if}

            if scrapLength > 0 then                    {Was scrap nonempty?}
                EnableItem (EditMenu, PasteItem)      {Enable Paste command [II:4.6.2]}
            else

```

```

    begin
        TETSetScrapLen (0);           {Mark Toolbox scrap as empty [II:5.5.4]}
        DisableItem (EditMenu, PasteItem) {Disable Paste command [II:4.6.2]}
    end; {else}

    ScrapCompare := InfoScrap^.scrapCount {Save scrap count for later comparison [I:7.4.2]}

end {if}

end; {ReadDeskScrap}

{-----}

procedure WriteDeskScrap;

{ Write Toolbox scrap to desk scrap [Prog. II:5-13]. }

var
    result : OSErr;           {Result code from scrap transfer [I:3.1.2]}

begin {WriteDeskScrap}

    if ScrapDirty then        {Has scrap changed since last read?}
    begin

        ScrapCompare := ZeroScrap; {Change scrap count, save for comparison [I:7.4.3]}

        result := TETToScrap;      {Transfer Toolbox scrap to desk scrap [II:5.5.5]}

        ScrapDirty := FALSE        {Toolbox and desk scraps now agree}

    end {if}

end; {WriteDeskScrap}

{-----}

procedure IOCheck ((resultCode : OSErr));

{ Check for I/O error [Prog. II:8-11]. }

var
    alertID      : INTEGER;      {Resource ID of alert}
    errorString   : Str255;       {Error code in string form [I:2.1.1]}
    ignore       : INTEGER;       {Item code returned by alert}

```



```

begin (IOCheck)

  if resultCode = NoErr then                (Just return if no error)
    EXIT (IOCheck);

  case resultCode of

    OpWrErr:
      alertID := OpWrErr;                    ↘ (Use Already Open alert)

      (Insert code here to handle any other specific errors)

    otherwise
      begin
        alertID := IOErrID;                  (Use general I/O Error alert)
        NumToString (resultCode, errorString); (Convert error code to a string [I:2.3.7])
        ParamText (errorString, '', '', '') (Substitute into text of alert [II:7.4.6])
      end

    end; (case)

  InitCursor;                               (Restore normal cursor [II:2.5.2])
  ignore := StopAlert (alertID, NIL);         (Post alert [II:7.4.2])

  Quitting := FALSE;                         (Cancel Quit command, if any)
  ErrorFlag := TRUE                          (Force exit to main event loop)

end; (IOCheck)

```

(-----)

(Main program [Prog. II:2-1].)

```

begin (MiniEdit)

  Initialize;                               (Do one-time-only initialization)

  repeat
    MainLoop                                (Execute one pass of main loop)
  until Finished;

  WriteDeskScrap                             (Copy Toolbox scrap to desk scrap)

end. (MiniEdit)

```


Glossary

The following is a comprehensive glossary for Volumes One and Two. *Note:* Terms shown in *italic* are defined elsewhere in this glossary.

A5 world: Another name for a program's *application global space*, located by means of a *base address* kept in processor register A5.

"above A5" size: The number of bytes needed between the *base address* in register A5 and the end of the *application global space*, to hold a program's *application parameters* and *jump table*.

access path: An independent channel of communication for reading or writing a *file*.

access permission: The form of communication allowed for a particular *file* or *access path*, such as read-only, write-only, or read/write.

accessory window: A *window* with rounded corners, used for displaying a *desk accessory* on the screen.

action procedure: A routine that is called repeatedly for as long as the mouse button is held down after being pressed in a *control*.

activate event: A *window event* generated by the Toolbox to signal that a given window has become the *active window*.

active control: A *control* that will respond to the mouse in the normal way; compare *inactive control*.

active menu: A *menu* that is currently included in the *menu bar*, making its contents available to be *chosen* with the mouse.

active window: The frontmost *window* on the screen, to which the user's mouse and keyboard actions are directed.

alert: Short for *alert box*.

alert box: A form of *dialog box* that prevents the user from interacting with any other window for as long as the alert remains on the screen, and in which the only meaningful action is to *dismiss* the alert by clicking a *push-button*; compare *modal dialog box*, *modeless dialog box*.

alert icons: A set of standard *icons* kept in the *system resource file* and used in *alert boxes* to indicate the severity of the alert; see *note alert*, *caution alert*, *stop alert*.

allocate: To set aside a *block* of memory from the *heap* for a particular use.

allocation block: The unit in which space is allocated on a given storage device, always equal to a multiple of 512 bytes; normally 1024 bytes on the standard single- or double-sided Sony disk drive.

and: A bit-level operation in which each bit of the result is a 1 if both operands have 1s at the corresponding bit position, or 0 if either or both have 0s.

Apple mark: A special control character (character code \$14) that appears on the Macintosh screen as a small Apple symbol; used for the title of the Apple menu.

Apple menu: A menu listing the available desk accessories, conventionally placed first in the *menu bar* with the Apple mark as its title.

AppleTalk: A network to which the Macintosh can be connected for communication with other computers.

AppleTalk drivers: The pair of *device drivers* used for communicating with other computers over the AppleTalk network.

application event: Any of the four *event types* that are reserved for the running application program to use in any way it wishes.

application file: A *file* containing the executable code of an application program, with a *file type* of 'APPL' and the program's own signature as its *creator signature*.

application font: The standard *typeface* used by an application program; normally Geneva, but can be changed to some other typeface if desired.

application global space: The area of memory containing a program's *application globals*, *application parameters*, and *jump table*; normally situated just before the *screen buffer* in memory and located by means of a *base address* kept in processor register A5.

application globals: Global variables belonging to the running application program, which reside in the *application global space* and are located at negative offsets from the *base address* in register A5.

application heap: The portion of the *heap* available for use by the running application program.

application heap limit: The memory address marking the farthest point to which the *heap* can expand, to prevent it from colliding with the *stack*.

application parameters: Descriptive information about the running program, located in the *application global space* at positive offsets from the *base address* in register A5. The application parameters are a vestige of the Lisa software environment, and most are unused on the Macintosh; the only ones still in use are the *QuickDraw globals pointer* and the *startup handle*.

application resource file: The *resource fork* of a program's *application file*, containing *resources* belonging to the program itself.

application window: A *window* used by the running program itself; compare *system window*.

arc: A part of an *oval*, defined by a given *starting angle* and *arc angle*.

arc angle: The angle defining the extent of an *arc* or *wedge*.

arrow cursor: The standard, general-purpose *cursor*, an arrow pointing upward at an angle of "eleven o'clock."

ascent: (1) For a text character, the height of the character above the *baseline*, in pixels. (2) For a *font*, the maximum ascent of any character in the font.

ascent line: The line marking a font's maximum *ascent* above the *baseline*.

ASCII: American Standard Code for Information Interchange, the industry-standard 7-bit character set on which the Macintosh's 8-bit *character codes* are based.

@ operator: An operator provided by Apple's Pascal compiler, which accepts a variable or routine name as an operand and produces a *blind pointer* to that variable or routine in memory.

attribute byte: The byte in a *resource map* entry that holds the *resource attributes*.

autograph: A *Finder resource* whose *resource type* is the same as a program's *signature*, and which serves as the program's representative in the *desktop file*; also called a *version data resource*.

auto-key event: An *event* reporting that the user held down a key on the keyboard or keypad, causing it to repeat automatically.

automatic scrolling: The *scrolling* of a window's or menu's contents when the user *drags* the mouse outside it while making a selection or choice.

auto-view flag: On the Macintosh Plus, a Boolean flag associated with an *edit record* that controls the *automatic scrolling* of the record's text by the standard *click-loop routine*.

background pattern: The *pattern* used for *erasing* shapes in a given *graphics port*.

base address: In general, any memory address used as a reference point from which to locate desired data in memory. Specifically, (1) the address of the *bit image* belonging to a given *bit map*; (2) the address of a program's *application parameters*, kept in processor register A5 and used to locate the contents of the program's *application global space*.

base of stack: The end of the *stack* that remains fixed in memory and is not affected when items are added and removed; compare *top of stack*.

base type: In Pascal, the data type to which a given pointer type is declared to point: for example, the pointer type `^INTEGER` has the base type `INTEGER`.

baseline: The reference line used for defining the *character images* in a *font*, and along which the *graphics pen* travels as text is drawn.

"below A5" size: The number of bytes needed between the beginning of the *application global space* and the *base address* in register A5, to hold a program's *application globals*.

Binary/Decimal Conversion Package: A standard *package*, provided in the *system resource file* (or in ROM on the Macintosh Plus) that converts numbers between their internal binary format and their external representation as strings of decimal digits.

binary point: The binary equivalent of a decimal point, separating the integer and fractional parts of a *fixed-point number*.

bit image: An array of bits in memory representing the *pixels* of a graphical image.

bit map: The combination of a *bit image* with a *boundary rectangle*. The bit image provides the bit map's content; the boundary rectangle defines its extent and gives it a system of coordinates.

bit-mapped display: A video display screen on which each *pixel* can be individually controlled.

blind pointer: A Pascal pointer whose *base type* is unspecified, and which can consequently be assigned to a variable of any pointer type. The standard Pascal constant `NIL` is a blind pointer; two nonstandard features of Apple's Pascal compiler, the `POINTER` function and the `@ operator`, also produce blind pointers as their results.

block: An area of contiguous memory within the *heap*, either allocated or free.

block map: A table containing information needed by the *file system* about the usage of all *allocation blocks* on a given *volume*.

bottleneck procedure: A specialized procedure for performing a low-level drawing operation in a given *graphics port*, used for *customizing* QuickDraw operations.

boundary rectangle: (1) For a *bit map*, the *rectangle* that defines the bit map's extent and determines its system of coordinates. (2) For a *graphics port*, the boundary rectangle of the port's bit map.

bounding box: The smallest *rectangle* completely enclosing a *polygon* or *region* on the coordinate grid.

bozo bit: A *Finder flag* that prevents a file from being copied; named for the Apple programmer who invented it.

bundle: A *Finder resource* that identifies all of a program's other Finder resources, so that they can be installed in the *desktop file* when the program's *application file* is copied to a new disk.

bundle bit: A *Finder flag* that tells whether an *application file* has any *Finder resources* that must accompany it when it's copied to a new disk.

busy bit: A *Finder flag* that tells whether a file is currently in use (has been opened and not yet closed).

button: A *control* with two possible settings, on (1) and off (0); compare *dial*.

byte: An independently addressable group of 8 bits in the computer's memory.

Caps Lock key: A *modifier key* on the Macintosh keyboard, used to convert lowercase letters to uppercase while leaving all nonalphabetic keys unaffected.

caret: The graphical symbol used on the screen to represent an *insertion point* in text; normally a blinking vertical bar rather than an actual proof-reader's caret mark.

caution alert: A form of *alert box*, intermediate in severity between a *note alert* and a *stop alert*, that reports a moderately serious error or anomaly or asks the user for additional instructions about how to proceed with an operation.

centered: A method of text *justification* in which each line of text is positioned midway between the left and right margins; compare *flush left*, *flush right*, *full justification*.

chain: To start up a new program after reinitializing the *stack* and *application global space*, but not the *application heap*; compare *launch*.

change bit: A *Finder flag* that tells whether a file's contents have been changed and must be updated on the disk.

character code: An 8-bit integer representing a text character; compare *key code*.

character image: A *bit image* that defines the graphical representation of a text character in a given *typeface* and *type size*.

character key: A key on the keyboard or keypad that produces a character when pressed; compare *modifier key*.

character offset: The horizontal distance, in pixels, from the left edge of the *font rectangle* to that of the *character image* for a given character; equal to the difference between the character's leftward *kern* and the maximum leftward kern in the font.

character origin: The location within a *character image* marking the position of the *graphics pen* when the character is drawn.

character position: An integer marking a point between characters in a *file* or other collection of text, from 0 (the very beginning of the text, before the first character) to the length of the text (the very end, after the last character).

character style: See *type style*.

character width: The distance in pixels by which the *graphics pen* advances after drawing a character; compare *image width*.

character-width table: An optional table in a *font record*, containing *fractional character widths* for the characters in the font. Used only by the Macintosh Plus Toolbox; ignored on earlier models.

check mark: A special *control character* (*character code* \$12) that appears on the Macintosh screen as a small check symbol; used for *marking* items on a menu.

checkbox: A *button* that retains an independent on/off setting to control the way some future action will occur; compare *pushbutton*, *radio buttons*.

choose: To designate a *menu item* by pointing with the mouse.

click-loop routine: A routine, associated with an *edit record*, that is called repeatedly for as long as the mouse button is held down after being pressed in the record's *view rectangle*.

clip: To confine a drawing operation within a specified boundary, suppressing any drawing that falls outside the boundary.

Clipboard: The term used in Macintosh user's manuals to refer to the *scrap*.

clipping boundaries: The boundaries to which all drawing in a given *graphics port* is confined, consisting of the port's *boundary rectangle*, *port rectangle*, *clipping region*, and *visible region*.

clipping rectangle: See *view rectangle*.

clipping region: A general-purpose *clipping boundary* associated with a *graphics port*, provided for the application program's use.

clock chip: A component of the Macintosh, powered independently by a battery, that keeps track of the current date and time even when the machine's main power is turned off.

close: (1) To destroy a *window* and remove it from the screen. (2) To destroy an *access path* to a *file*.

close box: The small box near the left end of the *title bar*, by which a *document window* can be closed with the mouse.

close region: The area of a *window* by which it can be closed with the mouse; also called the “go-away region.” In a *document window*, the close region is the *close box*.

code segment: A *resource* containing all or part of a program's executable machine code.

Command key: A *modifier key* on the Macintosh keyboard, used in combination with *character keys* to type *keyboard aliases* for *menu items*.

command mark: A special *control character* (character code \$11) that appears on the Macintosh screen as a “cloverleaf” symbol; used for displaying *Command-key* equivalents of *menu items*.

compaction: The process of moving together all of the *relocatable blocks* in the *heap*, in order to coalesce the available free space.

complement: A bit-level operation that reverses the bits of its operand, changing each 0 to a 1 and vice versa.

content: The information displayed in a *window*.

content region: The area of a *window* in which information is displayed, and which a program must draw for itself; compare *window frame*.

control: An object on the Macintosh screen that the user can manipulate with the mouse in order to operate on the contents of a *window* or control the way they're presented.

control character: An *ASCII* text character with a character code from \$00 to \$1F (as well as the character \$7F). Most control characters have no special meaning and no visual representation on the Macintosh, but a few are defined as special-purpose symbols for use on the screen: see *Apple mark*, *check mark*, *command mark*, *diamond mark*.

control definition function: A routine, stored as a *resource*, that defines the appearance and behavior of a particular type of *control*.

control definition ID: A coded integer representing a *control type*, which includes the *resource ID* of the *control definition function* along with additional modifying information.

control handle: A handle to a *control record*.

control list: A linked list of all the *controls* belonging to a given *window*, beginning in a field of the *window record* and chained together through a field of their *control records*.

control record: A data structure containing all the information associated with a given *control*.

control template: A *resource* containing all the information needed to create a *control*.

control type: A category of *control*, identified by a *control definition ID*,

whose appearance and behavior are determined by a *control definition function*.

covered: Describes a window, control, or other object that is obscured from view by other overlapping objects. A covered object is never displayed on the screen, even if *visible*; compare *exposed*.

creator signature: A four-character string identifying the application program to which a given *file* belongs, and which should be started up when the user opens the file in the *Finder*.

cross cursor: A standard *cursor* included in the *system resource file* (or in ROM on the Macintosh Plus) for use in graphics selection.

current port: The *graphics port* in use at any given time, to which most *QuickDraw* operations implicitly apply.

current resource file: The *resource file* that will be searched first in looking for a requested *resource*, and to which certain resource-related operations implicitly apply.

current text box: In a *dialog box*, the *text box* that displays a *selection* or *insertion point*, and to which characters typed on the keyboard are considered to be directed.

current volume: The *volume* or *directory* under consideration at any given time, to which many *file system* operations implicitly apply.

cursor: A small (16-by-16-bit) *bit image* whose movements can be controlled with the *mouse* to designate positions on the Macintosh screen.

cursor level: An integer that controls whether the *cursor* is visible on the screen. The cursor is visible if the cursor level is zero, hidden if it's negative.

cursor record: A data structure defining the form and appearance of a *cursor* on the screen.

customize: To redefine an aspect of the Toolbox's operation to meet the specialized needs of a particular program.

cut and paste: The standard method of editing used on the Macintosh, in which text, graphics, or other information is transferred from one place to another by way of an intermediate *scrap* or *Clipboard*.

dangling pointer: An invalid pointer to an object that no longer exists at the designated address.

data fork: The *fork* of a *file* that contains the file's data, such as the text of a document; compare *resource fork*.

date and time record: A data structure representing a calendar date and clock time, with fields for the year, month, day of the month, day of the week, hour, minute, and second; used for reading or setting the Macintosh's built-in *clock chip*.

deactivate event: A *window event* generated by the Toolbox to signal that a given window is no longer the *active window*.

dead character: (1) A text character with a zero *character width*, which doesn't advance the *graphics pen* when drawn. (2) A character (such as a foreign-language accent) that combines with the character following it to produce a single result character (such as an accented letter).

default button: The *pushbutton* displayed with a heavy black double border in an *alert* or *dialog box*; pressing the Return or Enter key is considered equivalent to clicking the default button with the mouse.

defining string: A string of characters specifying the title and attributes of one or more *menu items*.

definition file: An assembly-language file containing definitions of Toolbox constants and global variables, to be incorporated into an assembly-language program with an `.INCLUDE` directive.

demote: To send a *window* behind another window on the screen.

dereference: (1) In general, to convert any pointer to the value it points to. (2) Specifically, to convert a *handle* to the corresponding *master pointer*.

descent: (1) For a text character, the distance the character extends below the *baseline*, in pixels. (2) For a *font*, the maximum descent of any character in the font.

descent line: The line marking a font's maximum *descent* below the *baseline*.

desk accessory: A type of *device driver* that operates as a "mini-application" that can coexist on the screen with any other program.

desk scrap: The *scrap* maintained by the Toolbox to hold information being *cut and pasted* from one application program or *desk accessory* to another; compare *Toolbox scrap*.

desktop: (1) The gray background area of the Macintosh screen, outside of any window. (2) The arrangement of windows, icons, and other objects on the screen, particularly in the *Finder*.

desktop file: A file containing *Finder*-related information about the files on a disk, including their *file types*, *creator signatures*, and locations on the *Finder desktop*.

destination rectangle: The boundary to which text is *wrapped* in an *edit record*, determining the placement of the *line breaks*; also called the "wrapping rectangle."

destination text: The text to be operated on by a search or replacement operation; compare *target text*, *replacement text*.

detach: To decouple a *resource* from its *resource file*, so that the resource will remain in memory when the file is closed.

device code: An integer identifying the output device a *graphics port* draws on, used in selecting the appropriate *fonts* for drawing text.

device driver: The low-level software through which the Toolbox communicates with an input/output device; an important special category of device drivers are *desk accessories*.

dial: A *control* that can take on any of a range of possible settings, depending on the position of a moving *indicator* that can be manipulated with the mouse; compare *button*.

dialog: Short for *dialog box*.

dialog box: A *window* used for requesting information or instructions from the user.

dialog hook: A routine supplied to the *Standard File Package* to replace the standard dialog box with a nonstandard one, or to handle the standard one in a nonstandard way.

dialog item: A single element displayed in an *alert* or *dialog box*, such as a piece of text, an *icon*, a *control*, or a *text box*.

dialog pointer: A pointer to a *dialog record*.

dialog record: A data structure containing all the information associated with a given *alert* or *dialog box*.

dialog window: See *dialog box*.

diameters of curvature: The width and height of the *ovals* forming the corners of a *rounded rectangle*.

diamond mark: A special *control character* (character code \$13) that appears on the Macintosh screen as a small diamond symbol. This symbol is a vestige of earlier versions of the Macintosh user interface and no longer has any specific use.

dimmed: Describes an object, such as a *menu item* or a *file icon*, that is displayed in gray instead of black to show that it is not currently active or available.

directory: A table containing information about the *files* on a disk. Under the *Hierarchical File System*, directories may in turn contain other directories, and correspond to *folders* displayed on the *desktop* by the *Finder*.

directory name: Under the *Hierarchical File System*, a string of text characters identifying a particular *directory*.

directory reference number: An identifying number assigned by the *Hierarchical File System* to stand for a given *directory*.

dirty: Describes a *document* or *window* whose contents have been changed since they were last read from or written to the disk.

disabled dialog item: A *dialog item* that doesn't *dismiss* its alert or dialog box when clicked with the mouse or typed into from the keyboard.

disabled menu item: A *menu item* that cannot currently be *chosen* with the mouse; normally displayed in *dimmed* form on the screen.

disk driver: The *device driver* built into ROM for communicating with the Macintosh's built-in Sony disk drive.

Disk Initialization Package: A standard *package*, provided in the *system resource file*, that takes corrective action when an unreadable disk is inserted into the disk drive, usually by initializing the disk.

disk-inserted event: An *event* reporting that the user inserted a disk into a disk drive.

dismiss: To remove an *alert* or *dialog box* from the screen, typically by clicking a *pushbutton*.

dispatch table: A table in memory, used by the *Trap Dispatcher* to locate Toolbox routines in ROM.

display rectangle: The rectangle that defines the location and extent of a *dialog item* within an *alert* or *dialog box*.

document: A coherent unit or collection of information to be operated on by a particular application program.

document file: A *file* containing a *document*.

document window: The standard type of *window* used by application programs to display information on the screen.

double click: Two presses of the *mouse* button in quick succession, considered as a single action by the user.

down arrow: The arrow at the bottom or right end of a *scroll bar*, which causes it to scroll down or to the right a line at a time when clicked with the mouse.

drag: (1) To roll the mouse while holding down the button. (2) To move a window, icon, or other object to a new location on the screen by dragging with the mouse.

drag region: The area of a *window* by which it can be *dragged* to a new location with the mouse. In a *document window*, the drag region consists of the *title bar* minus the *close box* and *zoom box*, if any.

drive number: An integer designating a disk drive: 1 for the *internal disk drive*, 2 for the *external disk drive* (if any), 3 or greater for any other external storage device, such as a hard disk.

driver reference number: An integer between -1 and -32 , used to refer to a particular *device driver*; derived from the driver's *unit number* by the formula $\text{refNum} = -(\text{unitNum} + 1)$.

edit record: A complete text editing environment containing all the information needed for *TextEdit* operations.

eject: To remove a disk *volume* physically from a disk drive, placing the volume *off-line*.

empty handle: A *handle* that points to a *NIL master pointer*, indicating that the underlying block has been *purged* from the heap.

empty rectangle: A *rectangle* that encloses no pixels on the coordinate grid.

empty region: A *region* that encloses no pixels on the coordinate grid.

emulator trap: A form of *trap* that occurs when the *MC68000* processor attempts to execute an *unimplemented instruction*; used to “emulate” the effects of such an instruction with software instead of hardware.

enabled dialog item: A *dialog item* that *dismisses* its alert or dialog box when clicked with the mouse or typed into from the keyboard.

enabled menu item: A *menu item* that is currently available and can be *chosen* with the mouse.

enclosing rectangle: (1) The *rectangle* within which an *oval* is inscribed. (2) The rectangle that defines the location and extent of a *control* within its *owning window*.

end-of-file: The *character position* following the last byte of meaningful information included in a *file* (the *logical end-of-file*) or the last byte of physical storage space allocated to it (the *physical end-of-file*).

EOF: See *end-of-file*.

erase: To fill a *shape* with the *background pattern* of the *current port*.

error code: A nonzero *result code*, reporting an error of some kind detected by an *Operating System* routine.

error sound: A sound emitted from the Macintosh speaker by an *alert*.

event: An occurrence reported by the Toolbox for a program to respond to, such as the user's pressing the mouse button or typing on the keyboard.

event-driven: Describes a program that is structured to respond to *events* reported by the Toolbox.

event mask: A coded integer specifying the *event types* to which a given operation applies.

event message: A field of the *event record* containing information that varies depending on the *event type*.

event queue: The data structure in which *events* are recorded for later processing.

event record: A data structure containing all the information about a given *event*.

event type: An integer code that identifies the kind of occurrence reported by an *event*.

exception: See *trap*.

exclusive or: A bit-level operation in which each bit of the result is a 1 if

the corresponding bits of the two operands are different, or 0 if they're the same.

EXIT: A nonstandard feature of Apple's Pascal compiler that allows an immediate return from the middle of a procedure or function.

exposed: Describes a window, control, or other object that is not obscured from view by other overlapping objects. An exposed object is displayed on the screen if *visible*; compare *covered*.

external disk drive: A disk drive physically separate from the Macintosh itself and connected to it via a connector on the back of the machine.

external reference: A reference from one *code segment* to a routine contained in another segment.

family record: A data structure containing information about a given *typeface*; used only by the Macintosh Plus Toolbox.

Fat Mac: A model of *Macintosh* introduced in Autumn 1984, with a memory capacity of 512K and a single-sided disk drive.

field: One of the components of a Pascal record.

FIFO: First in, first out; the order in which items are added to and removed from a queue such as the *event queue*. Compare *LIFO*, *LIOF*.

file: A collection of information stored as a named unit on a disk.

file directory: A table containing information needed by the *file system* about the *files* on a given *volume*.

file icon: The *icon* used by the *Finder* to represent a *file* on the screen.

file mark: The *character position* at which the next byte will be read from or written to a *file*.

file name: A string of text characters identifying a particular *file*.

file reference: A *Finder resource* that establishes the connection between a *file type* and its *file icon*.

file reference number: An identifying number assigned by the *file system* to stand for a given *file*.

file system: (1) The part of the Toolbox that deals with *files* on a disk or other mass storage device. (2) The organization of *files* on a *volume*.

file type: A four-character string that characterizes the kind of information a *file* contains, assigned by the program that created the file.

fill: To color a *shape* with a specified *pattern*.

fill pattern: A *pattern* associated with a *graphics port*, used privately by *QuickDraw* for *filling* shapes.

filter function: (1) A function supplied by an application program to process *events* in an *alert* or *dialog box* before they're acted upon by the Toolbox. (2) A function supplied to the *Standard File Package* to selectively omit files from the list offered to the user.

Finder: The Macintosh program with which the user can manipulate files and start up applications; normally the first program to be run when the Macintosh is turned on.

Finder flags: A set of Boolean flags associated with a *file*, specifying attributes of interest to the *Finder*; see *bozo bit*, *bundle bit*, *busy bit*, *change bit*, *init bit*, *invisible bit*, *lock bit*, *system bit*.

Finder information record: A data structure summarizing the *Finder*-related properties of a *file*, including its *file type*, *creator signature*, and location on the *Finder desktop*.

Finder resources: The *resources* associated with a program that tell the *Finder* how to represent the program's *files* on the screen. Finder resources include *autographs*, *icon lists*, *file references*, and *bundles*.

Finder startup handle: See *startup handle*.

Finder startup information: See *startup information*.

fixed-point number: A binary number with a fixed number of bits before and after the *binary point*; specifically, a value of the Toolbox data type *Fixed*, consisting of a 16-bit integer part and a 16-bit fractional part.

flat file system: A *file system* in which all the *files* on a *volume* reside in a single *directory*, with no *subdirectories*.

flat volume: A *volume* with a *flat file system*.

Floating-Point Arithmetic Package: A standard *package*, provided in the *system resource file* (or in ROM on the Macintosh Plus), that performs arithmetic on *floating-point numbers* in accordance with the *IEEE standard*, using the *Standard Apple Numeric Environment (SANE)*.

floating-point number: A binary number in which the *binary point* can "float" to any required position; the number's internal representation includes a binary exponent, or order of magnitude, that determines the position of the binary point.

flush: To write out information associated with a *volume* or *file* (such as a volume's *file directory* or the contents of its *volume buffer*) from memory to an external storage medium such as a disk.

flush left: A method of text *justification* in which the left margin is straight and the right margin is "ragged"; compare *flush right*, *centered*, *full justification*.

flush right: A method of text *justification* in which the right margin is straight and the left margin is "ragged"; compare *flush left*, *centered*, *full justification*.

folder: An object in a disk's *desktop file*, represented on the screen by an icon or a window, that can contain files or other folders; used for organizing the files on the disk. Under the *Hierarchical File System*, folders correspond to *directories*.

folder number: The integer used by the *Finder* to identify a particular *folder*.

font: (1) A *resource* containing all of the *character images* and other information needed to draw text characters in a given *typeface* and *type size*. (2) Sometimes used loosely (and incorrectly) as a synonym for *typeface*, as in the terms *font number* and *text font*.

font height: The overall height of a font's *font rectangle*, from *ascent line* to *descent line*.

font image: A *bit image* consisting of all the individual *character images* in a given *font*, arranged consecutively in a single horizontal row; also called a *strike* of the font.

font information record: A data structure containing metric information about a *font* in integer form; compare *font metric record*.

font metric record: On the Macintosh Plus, a data structure containing metric information about a *font* in fixed-point form; compare *font information record*.

font number: An integer denoting a particular *typeface*.

font record: A data structure containing all the information associated with a given *font*.

font rectangle: The smallest rectangle, relative to the *baseline* and *character origin*, that would completely enclose all of the *character images* in a *font* if they were superimposed with their origins coinciding.

font scaling: The enlargement or reduction of an existing *font* to substitute for an unavailable font of a different size.

font width table: A *resource* containing all of the information on the *character widths* in a given *font*, but without the *character images* themselves; used for measuring the width of text without actually drawing it.

fork: One of the two parts of which every *file* is composed: the *data fork* or the *resource fork*.

fraction: A *fixed-point* value of the Toolbox data type *Fract*, consisting of a 2-bit integer part and a 30-bit fractional part.

fractional character widths: A new feature, available only on the Macintosh Plus, that allows the *character widths* for a font to be expressed as fractional, rather than integral, numbers of *points*. The resulting character positions are then rounded to the available resolution of whatever device they're drawn on (such as the screen or a printer).

frame: (1) To draw the outline of a *shape*, using the *pen size*, *pen pattern*, and *pen mode* of the *current port*. (2) See *window frame*.

free block: A contiguous *block* of space available for allocation within the *heap*.

full justification: A method of text *justification* (not supported by *Text-*

Edit) in which both the left and right margins are straight, with the spaces between words adjusted accordingly; compare *flush left*, *centered*, *flush right*.

full pathname: Under the *Hierarchical File System*, a *pathname* for locating a file relative to the *root directory* of its *volume*; compare *partial pathname*.

global coordinate system: The coordinate system associated with a given *bit image*, in which the top-left corner of the image has coordinates (0, 0); the global coordinate system is independent of the *boundary rectangle* of any *bit map* or *graphics port* based on the image.

global width table: A table used internally by the Macintosh Plus Toolbox, holding the fractional character widths and other low-level data about a font.

glue routine: See *interface routine*.

go-away region: See *close region*.

graphics pen: The imaginary drawing tool used for drawing lines and text characters in a *graphics port*.

graphics port: A complete drawing environment containing all the information needed for *QuickDraw* drawing operations.

grow icon: The visual representation of a window's *size region* on the screen; for a standard *document window*, a pair of small overlapping squares in the bottom-right corner of the window.

grow region: See *size region*.

handle: A pointer to a *master pointer*, used to refer to a *relocatable block*.

heap: The area of memory in which space is allocated and deallocated at the explicit request of a running program; compare *stack*.

heap zone: An independently maintained area of the *heap*, such as the *application heap* or the *system heap*.

HFS: See *Hierarchical File System*.

hide: To make a window, control, or other object *invisible*.

Hierarchical File System: The *file system* built into the Macintosh Plus Toolbox in ROM, designed for use with double-sided disks, hard disks, and other large-capacity storage devices; also available for older models in RAM-based form. Compare *Macintosh File System*.

high-level file system: A collection of *file system* routines that sacrifice detailed control over input/output operations in exchange for simplicity and ease of use; compare *low-level file system*.

highlight: To display a window, control, menu item, or other object in some distinctive way as a visual signal to the user, often (but not necessarily) by *inverting* white and black pixels.

hot spot: The point in a *cursor* that coincides with the mouse position on the screen.

I-beam cursor: A standard *cursor* included in the *system resource file* (or in ROM on the Macintosh Plus) for use in text selection.

I/O driver event: A type of *event* used internally by the Toolbox to handle communication with peripheral devices.

icon: A *bit image* of a standard size (32 pixels by 32), used on the Macintosh screen to represent an object such as a disk or file.

icon list: A *resource* containing any number of *icons*; commonly used to hold a *file icon* and its mask for use by the *Finder*.

icon number: An integer used to identify an *icon* to be displayed on a *menu*, equal to the icon's *resource ID* plus 256.

identifying information: The properties of a *resource* that uniquely identify it: its *resource type*, *resource ID*, and (optional) *resource name*.

IEEE standard: A set of standards and conventions for *floating-point* arithmetic, published by the Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers.

image-height table: An optional table in a *font record*, containing information on the heights of the *character images* in the font. Used only by the Macintosh Plus Toolbox; ignored on earlier models.

image width: The horizontal extent of a *character image*; the width in pixels of a character's graphical representation. Compare *character width*.

ImageWriter: A dot-matrix impact printer manufactured and marketed by Apple Computer.

inactive control: A *control* that will not currently respond to the mouse, usually displayed in some distinctive way on the screen.

inactive menu: A *menu* that is not currently included in the *menu bar*, making its contents unavailable to be *chosen* with the mouse.

indicator: The moving part of a *dial* that can be manipulated with the mouse to control the dial's setting.

init bit: A *Finder flag* that tells whether the *Finder resources* belonging to an application file have been installed in the *desktop file* of the disk it resides on.

initial delay: The time interval before a key begins to repeat when held down; measured in *ticks* from the initial *key-down event* until the first *auto-key event*.

insertion point: An empty *selection* in a text document, denoted by a *selection range* that begins and ends at the same *character position*.

Inside Macintosh: The comprehensive manual on the Macintosh *Toolbox*, produced by Apple Computer, Inc. and published by Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, Inc.

interactive item: A *dialog item*, such as a *control* or *text box*, that accepts information from the user via the mouse and keyboard; compare *static item*.

intercepted event: An *event* that is handled automatically by the Toolbox before being reported to the running program.

interface: A set of rules and conventions by which one part of an organized system communicates with another.

interface file: A text file that contains the declarations belonging to an *interface unit* in source-language form, to be incorporated into a Pascal program with a **uses declaration** (or a `$i` directive in some versions of Pascal).

interface routine: A routine, part of an *interface unit*, that mediates between the *stack-based* parameter-passing conventions of a Pascal calling program and those of a *register-based* Toolbox routine; also called a “glue routine.”

interface unit: A precompiled *unit* containing declarations for Toolbox routines and data structures, making them available for use in Pascal programs.

internal disk drive: The 3-1/2-inch single- or double-sided Sony disk drive built into the Macintosh.

International Utilities Package: A standard *package*, provided in the *system resource file*, that helps programs conform to the prevailing conventions of different countries in such matters as formatting of numbers, dates, times, and currency; use of metric units; and alphabetization of foreign-language accents, diacriticals, and ligatures.

interrupt: A *trap* triggered by a signal to the MC68000 processor from a peripheral device or other outside source.

interrupt handler: The *trap handler* for responding to an *interrupt*.

invalid region: An area of a window's *content region* whose contents are not accurately displayed on the screen, and which must therefore be *updated*.

invert: (1) Generally, to reverse the colors of *pixels* in a graphical image, changing white to black and vice versa. (2) Specifically, to reverse the colors of all pixels inside the boundary of a given *shape*.

invisible: Describes a window, control, or other object that is logically hidden from view. An invisible object is never displayed on the screen, even if *exposed*; compare *visible*.

invisible bit: A *Finder flag* that marks a file as invisible, so that the *Finder* will not display its *icon* on the screen.

item handle: A handle to a *dialog item*, kept in its dialog's *item list*.

item list: A data structure defining all of the *dialog items* associated with an *alert* or *dialog box*, located via a handle in the *dialog record*.

item number: The sequential position of a *menu item* within its menu, or

of a *dialog item* within its *dialog's item list*; used as an identifying number to refer to the item.

item type: An integer code denoting a kind of *dialog item*.

jump table: A table used to direct *external references* between *code segments* to the proper addresses in memory; located in the *application global space*, at positive offsets from the *base address* kept in register A5.

justification: The way in which text in an *edit record* is aligned to the left and right edges of the *destination rectangle*; see *flush left*, *centered*, *flush right*.

K: See *kilobyte*.

kern: The amount by which a *character image* extends leftward beyond the *character origin* or rightward beyond the *character width*.

kerning table: An optional table in a *family record*, containing information on the amount of *kern* between pairs of characters in a typeface; used only by the Macintosh Plus Toolbox.

key code: An 8-bit integer representing a physical key on the Macintosh keyboard or keypad; compare *character code*.

key-down event: An *event* reporting that the user pressed a key on the keyboard or keypad.

key map: An array of bits in memory representing the state of the keys on the keyboard and keypad.

key-up event: An *event* reporting that the user released a key on the keyboard or keypad.

keyboard alias: A character that can be typed in combination with the *Command key* to stand for a particular *menu item*.

keyboard configuration: The correspondence between keys on the Macintosh keyboard or keypad and the characters they produce when pressed.

keyboard driver: The low-level part of the Toolbox that communicates directly with the keyboard and keypad.

keyboard event: An *event* reporting an action by the user with the keyboard or keypad; see *key-down event*, *key-up event*, *auto-key event*.

keyboard routine: A routine to be executed directly by the *keyboard driver* when the user types a number key while holding down the Command and Shift keys; stored on the disk as a *resource* of type 'FKEY'.

keypad: See *numeric keypad*.

kilobyte: A unit of memory capacity equal to 2^{10} (1,024) bytes.

LaserWriter: A high-resolution laser printer manufactured and marketed by Apple Computer.

launch: To start up a new program after reinitializing the *stack*, *application global space*, and *application heap*; compare *chain*.

leading: The amount of extra vertical space between lines of text, measured in pixels from the *descent line* of one to the *ascent line* of the next; rhymes with “heading,” not “heeding.” Although every *font* specifies a recommended leading value, the recommendation need not be followed when drawing text in a *graphics port*.

length byte: The first byte of a *Pascal-format string*, which gives the number of characters in the string, from 0 to 255.

LIFO: Last in, first out; the order in which items are added to and removed from the *stack*. Compare *FIFO*, *LIOF*.

ligature: A text character that combines two or more separate characters into a single symbol, such as æ.

limit pointer: A pointer that marks the end of an area of memory by pointing to the address following the last byte.

limit rectangle: A rectangle that limits the movement of a window or control when *dragged* with the mouse.

line breaks: The *character positions* marking the beginning of each new line when text is *wrapped* to a boundary.

line drawing: Drawing in a *graphics port* by moving the *graphics pen*, using the QuickDraw routines Move, MoveTo, Line, and LineTo.

LIOF: “Last in, OK, fine”; describes the allocation and deallocation of items in the *heap*, which can occur in any order at all. Compare *FIFO*, *LIFO*.

Lisa: A personal computer manufactured and marketed by Apple Computer; the first reasonably priced personal computer to feature a high-resolution *bit-mapped display* and a hand-held *mouse* pointing device. Now called *Macintosh XL*.

List Manager Package: A standard *package*, provided in the *system resource file*, that displays scrollable lists of items from which the user can choose with the mouse (like the one used in selecting files to be read from the disk). This package was introduced at the same time as the Macintosh Plus, and is available only in versions 3.0 or later of the System file.

load: To read an object, such as a *resource* or the *desk scrap*, into memory from a disk file.

local coordinate system: The coordinate system associated with a given *graphics port*, determined by the *boundary rectangle* of the port's *bit map*.

local ID: The identifying number by which a *Finder resource* is referred to by other resources in the same *bundle*; not necessarily the same as its true *resource ID*.

localize: To tailor a program's behavior for use in a particular country.

location table: A table giving the horizontal position of each *character image* in a *font*, measured in pixels from the beginning of the *font image*.

lock: To temporarily prevent a *relocatable block* from being *purged* or moved within the heap during *compaction*.

lock bit: (1) A flag in the high-order byte of a *master pointer* that marks the associated block as *locked*. (2) A *Finder flag* that prevents a file from being deleted, renamed, or replaced.

logical end-of-file: The *character position* following the last byte of meaningful information included in a *file*.

logical shift: A bit-level operation that shifts the bits of a given operand left or right by a specified number of positions, with bits shifted out at one end being lost and 0s shifted in at the other end.

long integer: A data type provided by Apple's Pascal compiler, consisting of double-length integers: 32 bits including sign, covering the range ± 2147483647 .

long word: A group of 32 bits (2 *words*, or 4 *bytes*) beginning at a *word boundary* in memory.

low-level file system: A collection of *file system* routines that provide the greatest possible control over input/output operations, but are consequently more complex and difficult to use; compare *high-level file system*.

Macintosh: A personal computer manufactured and marketed by Apple Computer, Inc., featuring a high-resolution *bit-mapped display* and a hand-held *mouse* pointing device.

Macintosh Development System: A 68000 assembler and software development system produced by Consulair, Inc., and marketed by Apple Computer.

Macintosh File System: The *flat file system* built into the original Macintosh Toolbox; superseded on the Macintosh Plus by the *Hierarchical File System*.

Macintosh Operating System: The body of machine code built into the Macintosh ROM to handle low-level tasks such as memory management, disk input/output, and serial communications.

Macintosh Plus: An upgraded model of *Macintosh* introduced in January 1986, with a memory capacity of 1 megabyte (expandable to 4 megabytes) and featuring an updated and expanded version of the *Toolbox*, a double-sided disk drive, a redesigned keyboard, and a *SCSI* parallel port.

Macintosh Programmer's Workshop: A software development system produced and marketed by Apple Computer, including a Pascal compiler, C compiler, 68000 assembler, and other development tools.

Macintosh XL: A *Lisa* computer running Macintosh software under the *MacWorks* emulator.

MacWorks: The software "emulator" program that enables a *Lisa* to run Macintosh software without modification.

main entry point: The point in a program's code where execution begins when the program is first started up.

main event loop: The central control structure of an *event-driven* program, which requests *events* one at a time from the Toolbox and responds to them as appropriate.

main segment: The *code segment* containing a program's *main entry point*.

mark: To affix a *mark character* to a *menu item*, indicating that the item is in the "on" or active state.

mark character: The character (usually a *check mark*) used to *mark* a *menu item*.

master pointer: A pointer to a *relocatable block*, kept at a known, fixed location in the *heap* and updated automatically by the Toolbox whenever the underlying block is moved during *compaction*. A pointer to the master pointer is called a *handle* to the block.

MC68000: The 32-bit microprocessor used in the Macintosh, manufactured by Motorola, Inc.; usually called "68000" for short.

megabyte: A unit of memory capacity equal to 2^{20} (1,048,576) bytes.

menu: A list of choices or options from which the user can *choose* with the mouse.

menu bar: The horizontal strip across the top of the screen from which *menus* can be "pulled down" with the mouse.

menu definition procedure: A routine, stored as a *resource*, that defines the appearance and behavior of a particular type of *menu*.

menu handle: A *handle* to a *menu record*.

menu ID: An identifying integer designating a particular *menu*; commonly the *resource ID* under which the menu is stored in a resource file.

menu item: One of the choices or options listed on a *menu*.

menu list: A data structure maintained by the Toolbox, containing handles to all currently *active menus*.

menu record: A data structure containing all the information associated with a given *menu*.

menu type: A category of *menu* whose appearance and behavior are determined by a *menu definition procedure*.

MFS: See *Macintosh File System*.

MiniEdit: The extensive example program developed in this book.

missing character: A character for which no *character image* is defined in a given *font*; represented graphically by the font's *missing symbol*.

missing symbol: The graphical representation used for drawing *missing characters* in a given *font*.

modal dialog box: A form of *dialog box* that prevents the user from interacting with any other window for as long as the dialog remains on the screen, but which allows actions beyond merely *dismissing* the dialog by clicking a *pushbutton*; compare *alert box*, *modeless dialog box*.

mode: A state of the system that determines its response to the user's actions with the mouse and keyboard.

modeless dialog box: A form of *dialog box* that allows the user to interact with other windows while the dialog remains on the screen; compare *alert box*, *modal dialog box*.

modifier character: A character included in the *defining string* for a *menu item* to define an attribute or property of the item.

modifier key: A key on the Macintosh keyboard that doesn't generate a character of its own, but may affect the meaning of any *character key* pressed at the same time; see *Shift key*, *Caps Lock key*, *Option key*, *Command key*.

mount: To make a *volume* known to the file system by reading its *file directory* and *block map* into memory.

mouse: A hand-held pointing device for controlling the movements of the *cursor* to designate positions on the Macintosh screen.

mouse-down event: An *event* reporting that the user pressed the mouse button.

mouse event: An *event* reporting an action by the user with the mouse; see *mouse-down event*, *mouse-up event*.

mouse-up event: An *event* reporting that the user released the mouse button.

network event: A type of *event* used internally by the Toolbox to handle communication with other computers over a network.

nonrelocatable block: A *block* that can't be moved within the heap during *compaction*, referred to by single indirection with a simple pointer; compare *relocatable block*.

note alert: A form of *alert box*, less severe than either a *caution alert* or *stop alert*, that calls some possibly useful information to the user's attention.

null event: An *event* generated by the Toolbox when you request an event and there are none to report.

numeric keypad: A set of keys for typing numbers into the computer. On the Macintosh Plus, the keypad is physically built into the keyboard unit; on earlier models, it's an optional separate unit that connects to the keyboard with a cable.

object module: The file containing the compiled code of a Pascal *unit*, to be linked with that of an application program after compilation.

obscure: To remove the *cursor* temporarily from the screen until the next time the *mouse* is moved.

off-line: Describes a *volume* (such as a disk that has been *ejected* from a disk drive) for which only a minimal amount of the descriptive information needed by the *file system* is immediately available in memory; compare *on-line*.

offset/width table: A table giving the *character offset* and *character width* for each character in a given *font*.

on-line: Describes a *volume* (such as a disk currently in a disk drive) for which all of the descriptive information needed by the *file system* is immediately available in memory; compare *off-line*.

one-deep operation: On the Macintosh Plus, a resource-related operation that applies only to the *current resource file*, rather than to all open resource files.

open: To create an *access path* to a *file*.

Operating System: See *Macintosh Operating System*.

Option key: A *modifier key* on the Macintosh keyboard, used to type special characters such as foreign letters and accents.

or: A bit-level operation in which each bit of the result is a 1 if either or both operands have 1s at the corresponding bit position, or 0 if both have 0s.

ORD: A standard Pascal function for converting any scalar value to a corresponding integer (for instance, a character to its equivalent integer character code); on the Macintosh, ORD will also accept a pointer and return the equivalent long-integer address.

origin: (1) The top-left corner of a *rectangle*. (2) For a *bit map* or *graphics port*, the top-left corner of the *boundary rectangle*, whose coordinates determine the *local coordinate system*.

oval: A graphical figure, circular or elliptical in shape; defined by an *enclosing rectangle*.

owning window: The *window* with which a given *control* is associated.

package: A *resource*, usually residing in the *system resource file* (or in ROM on the Macintosh Plus), containing a collection of general-purpose routines that can be loaded into memory when needed; used to supplement the Toolbox with additional facilities.

package number: The *resource ID* of a *package*; must be between 0 and 7 (0 and 15 on the Macintosh Plus).

package trap: A Toolbox *trap* used at the machine-language level to call a routine belonging to a *package*. In the original Toolbox there are eight package traps, named `__Pack0` to `__Pack7`; on the Macintosh Plus there are sixteen, named `__Pack0` to `__Pack15`.

page-down region: The area of a scroll bar's *shaft* below or to the right of the *scroll box*, which causes it to scroll down or to the right a windowful ("page") at a time when clicked with the mouse.

page-up region: The area of a scroll bar's *shaft* above or to the left of the *scroll box*, which causes it to scroll up or to the left a windowful ("page") at a time when clicked with the mouse.

paint: To fill a *shape* with the *pen pattern* of the *current port*.

parameter block: A complex data structure describing an operation to be performed by the *low-level file system*.

part code: An integer denoting the part of the screen, or of a window or control, in which the mouse was pressed.

partial pathname: Under the *Hierarchical File System*, a *pathname* for locating a file relative to a given *subdirectory*; compare *full pathname*.

Pascal-format string: A sequence of text characters represented in the internal format used by Apple's Pascal compiler, consisting of a *length byte* followed by from 0 to 255 bytes of *character codes*.

path reference number: An identifying number assigned by the *file system* to stand for a given *access path* to a *file*.

pathname: Under the *Hierarchical File System*, a sequence of *directory names* leading to a desired *file*.

pattern: A small *bit image* (8 pixels by 8) that can be repeated indefinitely to fill an area, like identical floor tiles laid end to end.

pattern list: A *resource* consisting of any number of patterns.

pattern transfer modes: A set of *transfer modes* used for drawing lines or shapes or filling areas with a *pattern*.

pen: See *graphics pen*.

pen level: An integer associated with a *graphics port* that determines the visibility of the port's *graphics pen*. The pen is visible if the pen level is zero or positive, hidden if it's negative.

pen location: The coordinates of the *graphics pen* in a given *graphics port*.

pen mode: The *transfer mode* with which a *graphics port* draws lines and frames or paints shapes; should be one of the *pattern transfer modes*.

pen pattern: The *pattern* in which a *graphics port* draws lines and frames or paints shapes.

pen size: The width and height of the *graphics pen* belonging to a *graphics port*.

pen state: The characteristics of the *graphics pen* belonging to a *graphics port*, including its *pen location*, *pen size*, *pen mode*, and *pen pattern*.

physical end-of-file: The *character position* following the last byte of physical storage space allocated to a *file*.

picture: A recorded sequence of *QuickDraw* operations that can be repeated on demand to reproduce a graphical image.

picture frame: The reference *rectangle* within which a *picture* is defined, and which can be mapped to coincide with any other specified rectangle when the picture is drawn.

pixel: A single dot forming part of a graphical image; short for "picture element."

plane: A *window's* front-to-back position relative to other windows on the screen.

plus-sign cursor: A standard *cursor* included in the *system resource file* (or in ROM on the Macintosh Plus) for use in "structured selection."

point: (1) A position on the *QuickDraw* coordinate grid, specified by a pair of horizontal and vertical coordinates. (2) A unit used by printers to measure type sizes, equal to approximately 1/72 of an inch.

point size: See *type size*.

POINTER: A function provided by Apple's Pascal compiler, which accepts a *long integer* representing a memory address and returns a *blind pointer* to that address.

polygon: A graphical figure defined by any closed series of connected straight lines.

pop: To remove a data item from the top of a *stack*.

port: (1) A connector on the back of the Macintosh for communication with a peripheral device, such as a printer or modem. (2) Short for *graphics port*.

port rectangle: The rectangle that defines the portion of a *bit map* that a *graphics port* can draw into.

post: To record an *event* in the *event queue* for later processing.

printer driver: The *device driver* for communicating with a printer through one of the Macintosh's built-in *ports*.

pseudo-random numbers: Numbers that seem to be random but can be reproduced in exactly the same sequence if desired.

pull down: To display a *menu* on the screen by pressing the *mouse* inside its title in the *menu bar*.

purge: To remove a *relocatable block* from the heap to make room for other blocks. The purged block's *master pointer* remains allocated, but is set to NIL to show that the block no longer exists in the heap; all existing *handles* to the block become *empty handles*.

purge bit: A flag in the high-order byte of a *master pointer* that marks the associated block as *purgeable*.

purgeable block: A *relocatable block* that can be *purged* from the heap to make room for other blocks.

push: To add a data item to the top of a *stack*.

pushbutton: A *button* that causes some immediate action to occur, either instantaneously when clicked with the mouse or continuously for as long as the mouse button is held down; compare *checkbox*, *radio buttons*.

pushdown stack: See *stack*.

QuickDraw: The extensive collection of graphics routines built into the Macintosh *ROM*.

QuickDraw globals pointer: A pointer to the global variables used by *QuickDraw*, kept at address 0(A5) in the *application global space* and initialized with the *InitGraf* routine.

radio buttons: A group of two or more related *buttons*, exactly one of which can be on at any given time; turning on any button in the group turns off all the others. Compare *pushbutton*, *checkbox*.

RAM: See *random-access memory*.

RAM disk: An area of *read/write memory* that is treated as if it were an external disk.

random-access memory: A common but misleading term for *read/write memory*.

read-only memory: Memory that can be read but not written; usually called *ROM*. The *Skinny Mac* and *Fat Mac* have 64K of *ROM* containing the built-in machine code of the *Macintosh Operating System*, *QuickDraw*, and the *User Interface Toolbox*. The *Macintosh Plus* has an expanded 128K *ROM* that also includes some *packages*, *device drivers*, and other frequently used *resources*. Compare *read/write memory*.

read/write memory: Memory that can be both read and written; commonly known by the misleading term *random-access memory*, or *RAM*. The *Skinny Mac* has 128K of *read/write memory*; the *Fat Mac* has 512K; the *Macintosh Plus* has 1 megabyte, expandable to 4 megabytes. Compare *read-only memory*.

reallocate: To allocate fresh space for a *relocatable block* that has been *purged*, updating the block's *master pointer* to point to its new location. Only the space is reallocated; the block's former contents are not restored.

recalibrate: To recalculate the *line breaks* in an *edit record* after any change in its text, *text characteristics*, or *destination rectangle*.

rectangle: A four-sided graphical figure defined by two *points* specifying its top-left and bottom-right corners, or by four integers specifying its top, left, bottom, and right edges.

reference constant: A 4-byte field included in every *window record* or *control record* for the application program to use in any way it wishes.

region: A graphical figure that can be of any arbitrary shape. It can have curved as well as straight edges, and can even have holes in it or consist of two or more separate pieces.

register-based: Describes a Toolbox routine that accepts its parameters and returns its results directly in the processor's registers; compare *stack-based*.

release: To deallocate a *block* of memory that's no longer needed, allowing the space to be reused for another purpose.

relocatable block: A *block* that can be moved within the heap during *compaction*, referred to by double indirection with a *handle*; compare *nonrelocatable block*.

repeat interval: The time interval between successive repeats when a key is held down; measured in *ticks* from one *auto-key event* to the next.

replacement text: The text to be substituted for the *target text* in a replacement operation; compare *destination text*, *target text*.

reply record: A data structure used by the *Standard File Package* to return identifying information about a *file* designated by the user for reading or writing.

resource: A unit or collection of information kept in a *resource file* on a disk (or in ROM on the Macintosh Plus) and *loaded* into memory when needed.

resource attributes: A set of flags describing properties of a *resource*, kept in the *attribute byte* of its *resource map* entry.

resource bit: A flag in the high-order byte of a *master pointer* that marks the associated block as a *resource*.

resource compiler: A utility program that constructs *resources* according to a coded definition read from a text file.

resource data: The information a *resource* contains.

resource editor: A utility program with which *resources* can be defined or modified directly on the screen with the mouse and keyboard.

resource file: A collection of *resources* stored together as a unit on a disk; technically not a *file* as such, but merely the *resource fork* of a particular file.

resource file attributes: A set of flags describing properties of a *resource file*.

resource fork: The *fork* of a *file* that contains the file's *resources*; usually called a *resource file*. Compare *data fork*.

resource ID: An integer that identifies a particular *resource* within its *resource type*.

resource map: The table that summarizes the contents of a *resource file*, stored as part of the file itself and read into memory when the file is opened.

resource name: An optional string of text characters that identifies a particular *resource* within its *resource type*, and by which the resource can be listed on a *menu*.

resource specification: The combination of a *resource type* and *resource ID*, or a *resource type* and *resource name*, which uniquely identifies a particular resource.

resource type: A four-character string that identifies the kind of information a *resource* contains.

result code: An integer code returned by an *Operating System* routine to signal successful completion or report an error.

return link: The address of the instruction following a routine call, to which control is to return on completion of the routine.

ROM: See *read-only memory*.

root directory: Under the *Hierarchical File System*, the top-level *directory* of a *volume*, which contains all the others as *subdirectories*.

rounded rectangle: A graphical figure consisting of a *rectangle* with rounded corners; defined by the rectangle itself and the dimensions of the *ovals* forming the corners.

routine selector: An integer used to identify a particular routine within a *package*.

row width: The number of bytes in each row of a *bit image*.

SANE: See *Standard Apple Numeric Environment*.

scrap: The vehicle by which information is *cut and pasted* from one place to another.

scrap count: An integer maintained by the Toolbox that tells when the contents of the *desk scrap* have been changed by a *desk accessory*.

scrap file: A disk file holding the contents of the *desk scrap*.

scrap handle: A *handle* to the contents of the *desk scrap*, kept by the Toolbox in a *system global*.

scrap information record: A data structure summarizing the contents and status of the *desk scrap*.

screen buffer: The area of memory reserved to hold the *screen image*.

screen image: The *bit image* that defines what is displayed on the Macintosh screen.

screen map: The *bit map* representing the Macintosh screen, kept in the QuickDraw global variable ScreenBits. Its *bit image* is the *screen image*; its *boundary rectangle* has the same dimensions as the screen, with the *origin* at coordinates (0, 0).

scroll: To move the contents of a *window* with respect to the window itself, changing the portion of a document or other information that's visible within the window.

scroll bar: A *control* associated with a *window* that allows the user to *scroll* the window's contents.

scroll box: The *indicator* of a *scroll bar*, a small white box that can be dragged to any desired position within the scroll bar's *shaft*; also called the "thumb."

SCSI: Small Computer System Interface, a parallel interface built into the *Macintosh Plus* for communicating with peripheral devices; commonly pronounced "scuzzy" (or "sexy," according to personal temperament).

sector: A portion of a *track* on a disk, holding 512 bytes of information along with a 12-byte *tag*.

seed: The starting value used in generating a sequence of *pseudo-random numbers*.

segment header: Information at the beginning of a *code segment* identifying which entries in the program's *jump table* belong to this segment.

segment number: The *resource ID* of a *code segment*.

segment 0: A special *code segment* containing the information needed to initialize a program's *application global space*.

selection: An object or part of a document designated by the user to be acted on by subsequent commands or operations.

selection range: A pair of *character positions* defining the beginning and end of the *selection* in an *edit record*.

serial driver: The *device driver* built into ROM for communicating with peripheral devices through the Macintosh's built-in *serial ports*.

serial port: A connector on the back of the Macintosh for communicating with peripheral devices such as a hard disk, printer, or modem.

setting: An integer specifying the current state or value of a *control*.

shaft: The vertical or horizontal body of a *scroll bar*, within which the *scroll box* slides.

shape: Any of the figures that can be drawn with QuickDraw *shape-drawing* operations, including *rectangles*, *rounded rectangles*, *ovals*, *arcs* and *wedges*, *polygons*, and *regions*.

shape drawing: Drawing *shapes* in a *graphics port*, using the operations *frame*, *paint*, *fill*, *erase*, and *invert*.

shield: To hide the *cursor* if any part of it lies within a specified *shield rectangle*.

shield rectangle: The rectangle within which the *cursor* will be hidden when *shielded*.

Shift key: A *modifier key* on the Macintosh keyboard, used to convert lowercase letters to uppercase or to produce the upper character on a nonalphabetic key.

show: To make a window, control, or other object *visible*.

signature: A four-character string that identifies a particular application

program, used as a *creator signature* on files belonging to the program and as the *resource type* of the program's *autograph* resource.

68000: See *MC68000*.

size box: The small box at the bottom-right corner of a *document window*, with which it can be resized by dragging with the mouse.

size region: The area of a *window* with which it can be resized by dragging with the mouse; also called the "grow region." In a *document window*, the size region is the *size box*.

SIZEOF: A function provided by Apple's Pascal compiler, which accepts a variable or type name as a parameter and returns the number of bytes of memory occupied by that variable or by values of that type.

Skinny Mac: The original model of *Macintosh*, introduced in January 1984, with a memory capacity of 128K and a single-sided disk drive.

sound buffer: The area of memory whose contents determine the sounds to be emitted by the Macintosh speaker.

sound driver: The *device driver* built into ROM for controlling the sounds emitted by the Macintosh speaker.

sound number: An integer identifying the *error sound* to be emitted by an *alert*.

sound procedure: A procedure that defines the *error sounds* to be emitted by *alerts*.

source transfer modes: A set of *transfer modes* used for transferring pixels from one *bit map* to another or for drawing text characters into a bit map.

stack: (1) Generally, a data structure in which items can be added (*pushed*) and removed (*popped*) in *LIFO* order: the last item added is always the first to be removed. (2) Specifically, the area of Macintosh *RAM* that holds parameters, local variables, return addresses, and other temporary storage associated with a program's procedures and functions; compare *heap*. One end of the stack (the *base*) remains fixed in memory, while items are added or removed at the other end (the *top*); the *stack pointer* always points to the current top of the stack.

stack-based: Describes a Toolbox routine that accepts its parameters and returns its results on the *stack*, according to Pascal conventions; compare *register-based*.

stack pointer: The address of the current *top of the stack*, kept in processor register A7.

stage list: A data structure that defines the behavior of a *staged alert* at each consecutive occurrence.

staged alert: An *alert* that behaves differently at consecutive occurrences.

Standard Apple Numeric Environment: A set of routines for performing arithmetic on *floating-point numbers* in accordance with the *IEEE standard*; available on the Macintosh through the *Floating-Point Arithmetic Package*. Commonly called by the acronym *SANE*.

Standard File Package: A standard *package*, provided in the *system resource file*, that provides a convenient, standard way for the user to supply file names for input/output operations.

standard fill tones: A set of five *patterns* representing a range of homogeneous tones from solid white to solid black, provided as global variables by the *QuickDraw* graphics routines.

standard patterns: The 38 *patterns* included on the standard MacPaint pattern palette, available as a *pattern list* resource in the *system resource file*.

starting angle: The angle defining the beginning of an *arc* or *wedge*.

startup handle: A *handle* to a program's *startup information*, passed to the program by the *Finder* as an *application parameter*.

startup information: A list of *document files* selected by the user to be opened on starting up an application program.

static item: A *dialog item*, such as a piece of text, an *icon*, or a *picture*, that conveys information to the user without accepting any in return; compare *interactive item*.

sticky space: A text character (*character code* \$CA) that looks like a space but isn't considered a *word break* when text is *wrapped* or *selected*.

stop alert: A form of *alert box*, more severe than either a *note alert* or *caution alert*, that reports a serious error or problem making it impossible to complete a requested operation, or that warns the user of potentially dangerous or irrevocable consequences.

strike: See *font image*.

string list: A *resource* consisting of any number of *Pascal-format strings*.

structure region: The total area occupied by a *window*, including both its *window frame* and *content region*.

subdirectory: Under the *Hierarchical File System*, a *directory* contained within another directory.

system bit: A *Finder flag* that marks files needed by the system for proper operation.

system clock: The clock that records the elapsed time in *ticks* since the system was last started up.

system event mask: A global *event mask* maintained by the Toolbox that controls which types of *event* can be *posted* into the *event queue*.

system font: The *typeface* (Chicago) used by the Toolbox for displaying its own text on the screen, such as window titles and menu items.

system globals: Fixed memory locations reserved for use by the Toolbox.

system heap: The portion of the *heap* reserved for the private use of the Macintosh Operating System and Toolbox.

system resource file: The *resource fork* of the file System, containing shared resources that are available to all programs.

system window: A window in which a *desk accessory* is displayed on the screen; compare *application window*.

tag: Twelve bytes of identifying information associated with a *sector* on a disk for use by the *file system*.

target text: The text to be found by a search or replacement operation; compare *destination text*, *replacement text*.

text box: A *dialog item* consisting of a box into which the user can type text from the keyboard.

text characteristics: The properties of a *graphics port* that determine the way it draws text characters, including its *text face*, *text size*, *text style*, and *text mode*.

text face: The *typeface* in which a *graphics port* draws text characters.

text file: A file of file type 'TEXT', containing pure text characters with no additional formatting or other information.

text font: A term sometimes used loosely (and incorrectly) as a synonym for *text face*.

text handle: A *handle* to a sequence of text characters in memory.

text menu: The standard *menu type* used by the Toolbox, consisting of a vertical list of item titles.

text mode: The *transfer mode* with which a *graphics port* draws text characters.

text scrap: The private *scrap* maintained internally by the *TextEdit* routines to hold text being *cut and pasted* from one place to another within an application program; compare *desk scrap*.

text size: The *type size* in which a *graphics port* draws text characters.

text style: The *type style* in which a *graphics port* draws text characters.

TextEdit: The collection of text-editing routines included in the *User Interface Toolbox*.

thumb: See *scroll box*.

tick: One sixtieth of a second, the interval between successive occurrences of the *vertical retrace interrupt*; the basic unit of time on the *system clock*.

title bar: The area at the top of a *document window* that displays the

window's title, and by which the window can be *dragged* to a new location on the screen.

Toolbox: (1) The *User Interface Toolbox*. (2) Loosely, the entire contents of the Macintosh ROM, including the *Macintosh Operating System* and *QuickDraw* in addition to the *User Interface Toolbox* proper.

Toolbox scrap: See *text scrap*.

top of stack: The end of the *stack* at which items are added and removed; compare *base of stack*.

track: (1) To follow the movements of the *mouse* while the user *drags* it, taking some continuous action (such as providing visual feedback on the screen) until the button is released. (2) One of the concentric rings in which information is recorded on the surface of a disk.

tracking rectangle: A rectangle that limits the *tracking* of the mouse when the user *drags* a *control*.

Transcendental Functions Package: A standard *package*, provided in the *system resource file* (or in ROM on the Macintosh Plus), that calculates various transcendental functions on *floating-point numbers*, such as logarithms, exponentials, trigonometric functions, compound interest, and discounted value.

transfer mode: A method of combining *pixels* being transferred to a *bit map* with those already there.

translate: To move a *point* or graphical figure a given distance horizontally and vertically.

trap: An error or abnormal condition that causes the MC68000 processor to suspend normal program execution temporarily and execute a *trap handler* routine to respond to the problem; also called an *exception*.

Trap Dispatcher: The *trap handler* routine for responding to the *emulator trap*, which examines the contents of the *trap word* and jumps to the corresponding Toolbox routine in ROM.

trap handler: The routine executed by the MC68000 processor to respond to a particular type of *trap*.

trap macro: A macroinstruction used to call a Toolbox routine from an assembly-language program; when assembled, it produces the appropriate *trap word* for the desired routine. Trap macros are defined in the assembly-language interface to the Toolbox and always begin with an underscore character (`_`).

trap number: The last 8 or 9 bits of a *trap word*, which identify the particular Toolbox routine to be executed; used as an index into the *dispatch table* to find the address of the routine in ROM.

trap vector: The address of the *trap handler* routine for a particular type of *trap*, kept in the *vector table* in memory.

trap word: An *unimplemented instruction* used to stand for a particular

Toolbox operation in a machine-language program. The trap word includes a *trap number* identifying the Toolbox operation to be performed; when executed, it causes an *emulator trap* that will execute the corresponding Toolbox routine in ROM.

type size: The size in which text characters are drawn, measured in printer's *points* and sometimes referred to as a "point size."

type style: Variations on the basic form in which text characters are drawn, such as bold, italic, underline, outline, or shadow.

typecasting: A feature of Apple's Pascal compiler that allows data items to be converted from one data type to another with the same underlying representation (for example, from one pointer type to another).

typeface: The overall form or design in which text characters are drawn, independent of size or style. Macintosh typefaces are conventionally named after world cities, such as New York, Geneva, or Athens.

unimplemented instruction: A machine-language instruction whose effects are not defined by the MC68000 processor. Attempting to execute such an instruction causes an *emulator trap* to occur, allowing the effects of the instruction to be "emulated" with software instead of hardware.

unit: A collection of precompiled declarations that can be incorporated wholesale into any Pascal program.

unit number: The *resource ID* of a *device driver*; an integer between 0 and 31, related to the *driver reference number* by the formula $\text{refNum} = -(\text{unitNum} + 1)$.

unload: To remove an object, such as a *code segment* or the *desk scrap*, from memory, often (though not necessarily) by writing it out to a disk file.

unlock: To undo the effects of *locking a relocatable block*, again allowing it to be moved within the heap during *compaction*.

unmount: To make a *volume* unknown to the file system by releasing the memory space occupied by its *file directory* and *block map*.

unpurgeable block: A *relocatable block* that can't be *purged* from the heap to make room for other blocks.

up arrow: The arrow at the top or left end of a *scroll bar*, which causes it to scroll up or to the left a line at a time when clicked with the mouse.

update: (1) To write a new version of a *resource file* to the disk, incorporating all changes made in the file's resources in memory. (2) To redraw all or part of a window's *content region* on the screen, usually because it has become *exposed* as a result of the user's manipulations with the mouse.

update event: A *window event* generated by the Toolbox to signal that all or part of a given window has become *exposed* and must be *updated* (redrawn).

update rectangle: The rectangle within which text is to be redrawn when an *edit record* is *updated*.

update region: The *region* defining the portion of a *window* that must be redrawn when *updating* the window.

user: The human operator of a computer.

user interface: The set of rules and conventions by which a human *user* communicates with a computer system or program.

User Interface Guidelines: An Apple document (part of the *Inside Macintosh* manual) that defines the standard *user interface* conventions to be followed by all Macintosh application programs.

User Interface Toolbox: The body of machine code built into the Macintosh *ROM* to implement the features of the standard *user interface*.

uses declaration: A declaration that incorporates the code of a precompiled *unit* into a Pascal program.

valid region: An area of a window's *content region* whose contents are accurately displayed on the screen, and which therefore need not be *updated*.

VBL interrupt: Short for "vertical blanking interrupt"; see *vertical retrace interrupt*.

vector table: A table of *trap vectors* kept in the first kilobyte of RAM, used by the *MC68000* processor to locate the *trap handler* routine to execute when a *trap* occurs.

version data: Another name for a program's *autograph* resource, so called because its *resource data* typically holds a string identifying the version and date of the program.

vertical blanking interrupt: See *vertical retrace interrupt*.

vertical retrace interrupt: An *interrupt* generated by the Macintosh's video display circuitry when the display tube's electron beam reaches the bottom of the screen and returns to the top to begin the next frame. This interrupt, recurring regularly at intervals of one *tick* (sixty times per second), forms the "heartbeat" of the Macintosh system.

view rectangle: The boundary to which text is *clipped* when displayed in an *edit record*; also called the "clipping rectangle."

visible: Describes a window, control, or other object that is logically in view on the screen. A visible object is actually displayed only if *exposed*; compare *invisible*.

visible region: A *clipping boundary* that defines, for a *graphics port* associated with a *window*, the portion of the *port rectangle* that's exposed to view on the screen.

volume: A collection of *files* grouped together as a logical unit on a given storage device.

volume buffer: The area of memory set aside to hold information being transferred to or from a given *volume*.

volume name: A string of text characters identifying a particular *volume*.

volume reference number: An identifying number assigned by the *file system* to stand for a given *volume*.

wedge: A graphical figure bounded by a given *arc* and the radii joining its endpoints to the center of its *oval*.

wide-open region: A rectangular *region* extending from coordinates (– 32768, – 32768) to (+ 32767, + 32767), encompassing the entire QuickDraw coordinate plane.

window: An area of the Macintosh screen in which information is displayed, and which can overlap and hide or be hidden by other windows.

window class: An integer code that identifies the origin and general purpose of a *window*, as opposed to its appearance and behavior; compare *window type*.

window data record: A data structure maintained by an application program (not by the Toolbox!) that contains auxiliary information about a *window* and is accessed via a *handle* stored as the window's *reference constant*.

window definition function: A routine, stored as a *resource*, that defines the appearance and behavior of a particular type of *window*.

window definition ID: A coded integer representing a *window type*, which includes the *resource ID* of the *window definition function* along with additional modifying information.

window event: An *event* generated by the Toolbox to coordinate the display of *windows* on the screen; see *activate event*, *deactivate event*, *update event*.

window frame: The part of a *window* that's independent of the information it displays, and which is drawn automatically by the Toolbox; compare *content region*.

window list: A linked list of all *windows* in existence at any given time, chained together through a field of their *window records*.

Window Manager port: The *graphics port* in which the Toolbox draws all *window frames*.

window picture: A QuickDraw *picture* used in place of *update events* to redraw the contents of a *window*.

window pointer: A pointer to a *window record*.

window record: A data structure containing all the information associated with a given *window*.

window template: A *resource* containing all the information needed to create a *window*.

window type: A category of *window*, identified by a *window definition*

ID, whose appearance and behavior are determined by a *window definition function*; compare *window class*.

word: A group of 16 bits (2 bytes) beginning at a *word boundary* in memory.

word boundary: Any even-numbered memory address. Every *word* or *long word* in memory must begin at a word boundary.

word break: A *character position* marking the beginning or end of a word.

word-break routine: A function associated with an *edit record* that determines the locations of the *word breaks* in the record's text.

word wrap: A method of *wrapping* text in which an entire word is carried forward when beginning a new line, so that no word is ever broken between lines.

wrap: To format text or other information against a boundary by beginning a new line whenever the edge of the boundary is reached.

wrapping rectangle: See *destination rectangle*.

wristwatch cursor: A standard *cursor* included in the *system resource file* (or in ROM on the Macintosh Plus) for use in signalling processing delays.

zoom: On the Macintosh Plus, to alternate a *window* between a smaller and a larger size by clicking with the mouse in its *zoom region*.

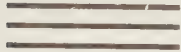
zoom box: On the Macintosh Plus, the small box near the right end of the *title bar*, by which a *document window* can be *zoomed* with the mouse.

zoom in: On the Macintosh Plus, to *zoom* a *window* from its larger to its smaller size.

zoom out: On the Macintosh Plus, to *zoom* a *window* from its smaller to its larger size.

zoom region: On the Macintosh Plus, the area of a *window* by which it can be *zoomed* with the mouse. In a *document window*, the zoom region is the *zoom box*.

Index



- About boxes, II:152
- Access paths, file, II:420, 427-428, 435
- Accessory windows, II:68-69, 92, 118
- ACount system global, II:335, 378
- Activate and deactivate events, II:17, 39, 70, 92-95
 - and DoActivate, II:233-235
 - and DragWindow, II:136
 - and HideWindow, II:123
 - and SelectWindow, II:134
 - and text selection display, II:254-255
 - and window destruction, II:120
 - and window positioning, II:83, 126
- ActivateEvt type, II:39-40, 93, 456
- ActiveFlag constant, II:44-45, 93-94, 457
- Addition, fixed-point, I:31
- AddPt, I:121, 172-173, 463
- AddResMenu, II:152-153, 155, 178-180, 467
- AddResource, I:292, 317-318, 478
- Address register, I:62-64
- ADefItem field, II:332, 349-350, 485
- Alert, II:331, 336, 347, 367-369, 488
 - Alert boxes, II:68-69, 323-324, 326
 - definition functions for, II:92
 - for dirty windows, II:213
 - Alerts, II:323
 - boxes for. *See* Alert boxes
 - dirty windows, II:404
 - disk initialization, II:409-410
 - and disk operations, II:379
 - disk-switch, II:394-395
 - existing file, II:416, 445
 - file initialization, II:447-448
 - icons, II:330-331, 368
 - for I/O errors, II:390-391
 - staged, II:334-335, 378, 489
 - templates for, II:332-334, 353-354, 367, 380-381, 484
 - using, II:335-341, 367-369, 488
 - AlertTemplate record, II:353-354, 486
 - AlertTHndle type, II:353-354, 484
 - AlertTPtr type, II:353-354, 484
 - Allocate, II:398, 432-433, 493
 - Allocation blocks, II:398, 401
 - ALRT resource type, II:326, 353, 367, 380-381, 497
 - AltDBoxProc constant, II:92, 117-119, 326, 460
- Alternate buffers, I:61-62
- ANumber system global, II:335, 378
- ApFontID system global, I:384, 539
- AppendMenu, II:148, 165-166, 169, 176-177, 467
- AppFile record, I:364-365, 482
- APPL file type, I:337
- Apple menus, II:147, 151-152, 154-155, 160-161, 336-337
- Apple symbol, II:151-152, 179
- Application event types, II:17, 39-40, 43
- Application font, I:384
- Application global space, I:61-64, 329, 331
- Application heap, I:67, 84
- Application parameters, I:63-64
- Application resource file, I:281
- Application windows, II:67
- Arcs, I:215-217, 260-262, 472-473
- Arithmetic operations, I:31-32, 42-51, 449-451
- Arrays, as parameters, I:22
- Arrow cursor, II:32-33
 - global variable for, II:64
 - and InitCursor, II:34, 55, 390
 - in WriteFile, II:402
- Ascent line, I:387
- ASCII codes, I:379-381, 403-406, 517

- Assembly language
 - and file routines, II:389
 - interface for, I:20-23
 - variables for, I:539-541, II:561-564
- At sign operator, I:25-26, II:83
- Attributes, resource, I:290-292, 312-313, 323-324, 477, 479
- Autograph resource, I:339-340
- Auto-key events, II:17-18, 20-21, 23
- Automatic resource loading, I:295
- Automatic scrolling, II:237-238, 291-293
 - and click-loop routines, II:215, 252, 263-264, 291
- Auto-view flag, II:223
 - and auto scrolling, II:237-238
 - and click-loop routines, II:264
 - and TEAutoView, II:251
- B, for bold character attribute, II:166, 195-196
- BackPat, I:195, 232-234, 467
- Backspace key, and TEKey, II:224, 256, 342
- Baseline, I:382
- BeginUpdate, II:97-99, 128-129, 274, 463
- BehindWindow parameter, II:83, 117-118, 462
- Binary/Decimal Conversion Package, I:334, 354-356. *See also* Conversions
- Bit images, I:114-117, 131
- Bit maps, I:131-134, 158-159, 460
 - and ports, I:136-137, 140, 168-169, 462
- BitAnd, I:30, 39-40, 291, 448, II:20
- BitClr, I:29, 38-39, 448
- Bit-level operations, I:29-31, 38-42, 448-449
- BitMap record, I:132, 158, 460
- BitNot, I:30, 39-40, 291, 449, II:20
- BitOr, I:30, 39-40, 291, 448, II:20
- Bits, I:114-117
 - numbering of, I:29-30, 38
- Bits16 array, II:52-53, 456
- BitSet, I:29, 38-39, 448
- BitShift, I:30, 39-40, 449
- BitTst, I:29, 38-39, 448
- BitXOr, I:30, 39-40, 291, 449, II:20
- Blank lines, in menus, II:149
- Blind pointers, I:23-24
- Block map, II:393
- BlockMove, I:82, 84, 101-102, 456
- Blocks
 - copying and combining of, I:80-84, 101-104, 455-456
 - file allocation, II:398, 401
 - locking of, I:76-80, 96-98, 455
 - memory allocation of, I:67-72, 91-95, 454-455
 - purging of, I:84-86, 107-108, 457
 - relocation of, I:70-72, 76, 81, 99-100, 455
- BNDL resource type, I:340, 375-376, 490, II:498
- Bold character attribute, II:166, 195-196
- Booleans, as parameters, I:22
- Boundary rectangle, I:117-118, 131
- Bounding box, I:126
- BringToFront, II:126-127, 462
- BtnCtrl constant, II:331, 351-352, 484
- Buffers, I:61-62, 115-116, 134
 - screen. *See under* Screen
 - volume, II:393-394, 401, 424
- Bundle bit, I:342
- Bundles, I:340
- Button, I:212, II:30, 51-52, 456
- Buttons. *See* Checkboxes; Pushbuttons; Radio buttons
- Byte type, I:73, 87, 453
- ByteCount parameter, I:81
- Bytes, I:8, II:8
- C, as Copy keyboard alias, II:150
- CalcMask, I:228, 245-246, 469
- CalcMenuSize, II:145, 200, 471
- Cancel constant, II:332, 349-351, 483
- Caps Lock key, II:18
- CaretHook field, II:239, 241-243, 472
- Carets
 - for icons in menu items, II:169, 177-178, 198-199
 - insertion bar. *See* Vertical bar, blinking
- CaretTime system global, II:223, 255
- Carriage return, II:242
 - and TEKey, II:224, 256
 - and TextEdit, II:208
 - and word-break routines, II:238-239
- Case sensitivity
 - of alias characters, II:178
 - of file names, II:388
 - of resource names, I:278
 - of volume names, II:392
- CautionAlert, II:331, 336, 340-341, 367-369, 488
- CautionIcon constant, II:331, 367-369, 488
- CDEF resource type, II:267
- Centered justification, II:218
- Chain, I:347-351, 479
- ChangedResource, I:293, 296, 316-317, 478
- ChangeFlag constant, II:95
- Character codes, I:381, 517, II:18
 - list of, II:527
 - and word-break routines, II:239
- Character images, I:382-383, 389-390
- Character keys, II:18
- Character offset, I:391
- Character origin, I:382
- Character positions, text, II:210
- Character set, I:379-381, 403-406, 483
 - check mark, II:143, 167
 - control codes, II:207, 239, 248, 252, 265
- Character strings. *See* Strings
- Characters, as parameters, I:22
- Character-width table, I:392
- Chars array, II:244
- CharsHandle type, II:244
- CharsPtr type, II:244
- CharWidth, I:400, 436-438, 488
- Check mark, with menus, II:143, 167
- Checkboxes, II:268
 - and control items, II:331-332
 - highlighting of, II:275
 - and mouse, II:281

- Checkboxes—cont.
 - part code for, II:271
 - range of, II:276-277, 305
 - titles for, II:272
- CheckBoxProc constant, II:272, 304-306, 479
- Checked parameter, II:167, 196-197, 472
- CheckItem, II:167, 196-198, 470
- CheckMark constant, II:167
- ChkCtrl constant, II:331, 351-352, 484
- Clear command
 - and AdjustScrollBar, II:285
 - and desk accessory applications, II:147
 - and DoSelect, II:222
 - and SystemEdit, II:163
 - and TDelete, II:227, 230
 - and text boxes, II:333, 344-346
- ClearCmd constant, II:163, 190-191, 469
- ClearMenuBar, II:182-183, 468
- Click-loop routines, II:215, 263-264, 477
 - and auto-view flag, II:251, 264
 - and program compatibility, II:264, 291
 - and TClick, II:252
 - and text scrolling, II:215, 237-238, 263-264
- ClickLoop field, II:237-238, 240-243, 472
- Clipboard. *See* Text scrap
- Clipboard File, I:347
- Clipping boundaries, I:137-138
 - and graphics pen, I:187
- Clipping rectangles. *See* View rectangles
- Clipping region, I:139, 170-171, 463
 - with CopyBits, I:200, 202
 - setting, I:223, 225
- ClipRect, I:139, 170-171, 463
- Clock. *See* System clock
- Clock chip, I:32-33
 - compared to system clock, II:15
 - and time stamping, II:401, 426, 428
- Close box, window, II:70
- Close command, II:25, 215
- Close regions, II:77
 - Close regions—cont.
 - events in, II:106-107, 135-137, 465
 - highlighting of, II:136
 - CloseDeskAcc, II:161, 189-190, 469
 - CloseDialog, II:326, 359-360, 486
 - ClosePicture, I:228, 266-267, 474
 - ClosePoly, I:152-153, 218, 459
 - ClosePort, I:135, 165-167, 462
 - CloseResFile, I:282, 301-302, 475
 - CloseRgn, I:155-156, 222, 459
 - CloseWindow, II:83, 88, 120-121, 460
 - and CloseAppWindow, II:90
 - and control destruction, II:273
 - Cloverleaf symbol, and keyboard aliases, II:143
 - ClrAppFiles, I:338, 364-365, 481, II:413
 - CmdKey constant, II:44-45, 155, 157
 - CNTL resource type, II:499
 - with control items, II:332, 384
 - and GetNewControl, II:271, 304, 321
 - CODE resource type, I:371-372, 491, II:499
 - and code segments, I:327-329
 - Code segments, I:327-333, 480
 - and resources, I:275-276
 - Colons
 - and file names, II:388
 - in pathnames, II:396-397
 - with volume names, II:392
 - Command key, II:18, 64-56
 - in dialog boxes, II:344-346, 370, 372
 - and disk ejection, II:441
 - and disk-switch alerts, II:395
 - and DragWindow, II:103
 - and keyboard aliases, II:142-143
 - and menu item selection, II:157
 - and ModalDialog, II:342, 346-347
 - and scrolling, II:441, 444
 - for special routines, II:35-36
 - Comments, Pascal, I:6, II:6
 - CompactMem, I:106-107, 457
 - Compatibility, program
 - and click-loop routines, II:264, 291
 - and computer models, I:16
 - and file names, II:388
 - and file systems, II:395-396
 - and TEPinScroll, II:288
 - and TSElView, II:300
 - and zoom boxes, II:108-109
 - Content region, window, II:77, 95-100
 - ContrlHilite field, II:275, 301-303, 478
 - ContrlMax field, II:276, 301-303, 478
 - ContrlMin field, II:276, 301-303, 478
 - ContrlValue field, II:276, 301-303, 478
 - Control characters, I:379-380, 405-406
 - and word breaks, II:207, 238-239, 248, 252, 265
 - Control highlighting, II:313-314, 481
 - with HiliteControl, II:274-276
 - and mouse tracking, II:317-318
 - of new controls, II:305
 - with TrackControl, II:280, 286
 - Control Panel desk accessory
 - and auto-key events, II:18
 - and caret blink interval, II:223, 255
 - and double click interval, II:221, 252
 - and menu flashing, II:201, 377
 - and speaker volume, II:62
 - Control setting and range, II:276-277, 309-310, 480
 - in control template, II:321
 - and ControlRecord, II:301-302
 - with DITL resource, II:384
 - with NewControl, II:305
 - with TrackControl, II:286
 - Control titles, II:307-308
 - and ControlRecord, II:272, 301-302
 - display of, II:272-273, 348
 - with NewControl, II:305
 - ControlHandle type, II:301-303, 478
 - ControlList field, II:82, 112-115, 272, 459
 - ControlPtr type, II:301-303, 478

ControlRecord record, II:301-303,
478

Controls

activity and inactivity of,
II:275-276, 313, 316
checkboxes. *See* Checkboxes
coordinates of, II:272, 278-
279, 315, 317, 319
creating, II:271-273, 304-
306, 479
and default action
 procedures, II:302, 305,
 318
definition function, II:267-
268, 302, 305, 314
definition ID, II:267, 272,
305
destroying, II:273, 306-307,
479
dials, II:268-270, 283, 286,
317-318
display of, II:273-276, 310-
314, 481
dragging, II:319-320
and enclosing rectangles,
 II:272-273, 293, 302, 305,
 311-313
handles for, II:271, 307, 316
hiding, II:310-312
highlighting of. *See* Control
 highlighting
items, II:331-333, 336, 361,
372, 384
list, II:82, 271-272, 304-306
and mouse, II:277-283, 315-
320, 482-483
moving, II:312-313
and owning windows,
 II:271-273, 305
and part codes. *See* Part
 codes
pushbuttons. *See*
 Pushbuttons
radio buttons. *See* Radio
 buttons
records, II:271-272, 276-277,
301-303, 478
reference constants, II:273,
305-306, 398
resizing, II:312-313
and scrolling, II:283-300
setting and range of. *See*
 Control setting and range
standard types, II:267-269

Controls—cont.

templates for, II:271, 304,
321, 332, 384
titles for, II:272-273, 302,
305, 308, 321, 348, 384
visibility of, II:273-274, 302,
305, 310-312, 481
window, II:120, 271-272,
304-306
Conversions
 of coordinate systems, I:143-
 146, 173-174, 463, II:278-
 279, 315, 317, 319
 of date and time, I:33, 54-
 55, 452
 of numbers and strings,
 I:31, 42-43, 45, 49-50,
 334, 354-356, 451
Coordinates and coordinate
 systems, I:168-169
 for bit images, I:117-121
 for controls, II:272
 conversions of, I:143-146,
 173-174, 463, II:278-279,
 315, 317, 319
 global, I:143-146
 local, I:140-146
Copy command, II:147, 222, 228,
333
 keyboard alias for, II:150
 and SystemEdit, II:163
CopyBits, I:197-204, 242-243, 468
CopyCmd constant, II:163, 190-191,
469
CopyMask, I:202, 205, 228-229,
231, 242-243, 468
CopyRgn, I:156-157, 223, 460
Cosines, I:31, 48, 451
CouldAlert, II:348, 379, 490
CouldDialog, II:348, 379, 490
Count1Resources, I:289, 307-308, 476
Count1Types, I:289, 307-308, 476
CountAppFiles, I:338, 364-365, 481,
 II:413-414
CountMItems, II:181, 467
CountResources, I:288, 307-308, 398,
476
CountTypes, I:288, 307-308, 476
Create, II:400, 426-427, 491
CreateResFile, I:293, 315-316, 478
Creator signatures, I:335-337,
358, 480
CrOnly field, II:208, 241-243, 472
CtrlItem constant, II:331, 351-352,
484

CurActivate system global, II:92
CurDeactivate system global, II:92
Current port, I:135-136, 167-168,
462
 for edit records, II:206, 211
Current resource file, I:281-282,
302-303, 475
Current text box, II:333, 342
Current volume, II:392-393, 422-
423, 490
CurrentA5 system global, I:63, 540
CurResFile, I:281, 302-303, 475
CURS resource type, II:32, 63-64,
500
CursHandle type, II:33-34, 52-53,
456
Cursor
 arrow. *See* Arrow cursor
 bit image of, II:31-32
 displaying, II:31-35, 52-58,
 456-457
 I-beam, II:33-34
 level of, II:35, 56-58
 records, II:31-32, 52-53, 64,
 456
 setting of, II:54-56
 showing and hiding of,
 II:56-58
 visibility of, II:35
 wristwatch, II:33, 35, 390,
 402
Cursor record, II:31-32, 52-53, 456
CursPtr type, II:52-53, 456
Cut command, II:147, 222, 228,
285, 333
 keyboard alias for, II:150
 and SystemEdit, II:163
CutCmd constant, II:163, 190-191,
469
Cutting and pasting, of text,
 II:226-229, 257-258, 376,
 476
Dangling pointers, I:69, 78
Data field, II:31, 52-53, 458
Data fork, I:280, II:420
Date, I:33, 51-57, 452-453, II:15
 storing of, on volume
 directory, II:401, 426,
 428
Date2Secs, I:33, 54-55, 452
DateForm type, I:55, 453

- DateTimeRec record, I:33, 53-54, 452
- DBoxProc constant, II:92, 117-119, 326, 460
- Deactivate events. *See* Activate and deactivate events
- Dead characters, I:401-402
- Declarations, Pascal, I:5-6, II:5-7
- Default buttons, II:332-333, 344, 350, 354, 374
- Defining string, menu item, II:148, 150, 177-178
- Definition files, I:21
- Delay, I:212, II:60-61, 458
- DeleteMenu, II:151, 182-183, 468
- DelMenuItem, II:148, 180, 467
- DeltaPoint, I:121, 172-173, 463
- Dereferencing, of handles, I:76-77
- DeRez, resource decompiler, I:277
- Descent line, I:387
- Desk accessories, I:344
 - and Apple menus, II:147, 152, 160-161
 - editing in, II:190-191, 469
 - and events, II:15-17, 21-22, 46
 - menu IDs for, II:157
 - menus of, II:179
 - opening and closing of, II:189-190, 469
 - reference numbers for, II:161
 - and SystemTask, II:61-62
 - and windows, II:68-69, 113
- Desk scrap, I:344-348, 366-371, 482-483
 - compared to text scrap, II:229-230
 - transfer of, II:230-233, 260-261, 476
- Desktop files, I:336, 342
- Destination rectangles, II:206-209, 241-242
 - adjusting of, to view rectangles, II:286-287
 - coordinates of, II:245
 - in DoNew, II:213
 - rewrapping of text in, II:224, 246-247, 249
 - and scrolling, II:218, 297
- Destination text, for search and replace, II:236-237, 261-262
- DetachResource, I:285, 305-306, 476
- Device drivers, I:343-344, II:387
- Dialog boxes, II:68-69, 323-325, 328-329
 - definition functions for, II:92
 - and menu items, II:151
- Dialog hooks, with files, II:408, 442, 445
- DialogKind constant, II:113, 326, 461
- DialogPeek type, II:327, 349-351, 483
- DialogPtr type, II:327, 349-351, 483
- DialogRecord record, II:332-333, 349-351, 483
- Dialogs, II:323-324
 - access to, II:360-361
 - and alerts. *See* Alerts
 - and blinking vertical bar, II:362
 - boxes for. *See* Dialog boxes
 - creating, II:325-326, 356-359, 485
 - custom, with files, II:408
 - default buttons for, II:350, 354, 374
 - destroying, II:326, 359-360, 486
 - and error sounds, II:334-335, 377, 491
 - and filter functions, II:344-347, 370, 372-374, 489
 - with files, II:408-409, 440-441, 443
 - get file, II:409
 - and insertion points, II:362
 - items. *See* Items, dialog
 - modal. *See* Modal dialogs
 - modeless. *See* Modeless dialogs
 - pointers, II:326-329
 - preloading of, II:348, 379, 490
 - put file, II:415
 - records, II:325-326, 332, 349-351, 358, 483
 - reference constant, II:359-360
 - and selection range, II:362
 - and staged alerts, II:334-335
 - static display of, II:365-366, 487
 - substitution of text in, II:374-375, 489
- Dialogs—cont.
 - templates for, II:325-326, 329, 355-356, 382, 484
 - titles, II:382
 - typeface in, II:347-348
 - window class of, II:358
- DialogSelect, II:343-344, 347, 371-373, 488
- DialogTemplate record, II:355-356, 485
- DialogTHndle type, II:355-356, 485
- DialogTPtr type, II:355-356, 485
- Dials, II:268-270, 283, 286, 317-318
- DIBadMount, II:393, 409-410, 442, 445-450, 496
- DiffRgn, I:129, 181-182, 465
- DIFormat, II:449-450, 496
- DILoad, II:450-451, 496
- "Dire straits" errors, I:523, II:533-534
- Direct bit transfer, I:197-204, 242-243, 468
- Directories
 - file, II:393, 395-398
 - names for, II:396-397
 - reference numbers, II:395-396
 - root, II:395-396
 - updating, II:401
- Dirty windows, II:212-213, 225-226
 - alert for, II:337-338, 404
- DisableItem, II:145, 166, 193-194, 469
- Disk Initialization Package, I:333, 354-356, II:408-410, 448, 450
 - preloading of, II:450-451, 496
- Disk-inserted events, II:17, 46, 442, 445-448
 - and alerts, II:368
 - and dialogs, II:370, 372, 374
 - reporting of, II:22, 393
- Disks and disk drives
 - damage to, and scavenger programs, II:386
 - and dialogs, II:379
 - driver, II:387-388
 - ejecting, II:35-36, 409, 441
 - error reporting for, II:393, 409-410, 437, 447-448
 - event messages for, II:43

- Disks and disk drives—cont.
 - format of, II:385-387, 449-450
 - initialization of, II:398, 409-410, 446-451, 496
 - mounting, II:22, 393
- Disk-switch alert, II:394-395
- Dispatch table, I:15-16
 - memory addresses for, I:61
- Display rectangles, for item lists, II:328, 363, 384
- DisposDialog, II:326, 359-360, 486
- DisposeControl, II:273, 306-307, 479
- DisposeMenu, II:155, 175-176, 466
- DisposeRgn, I:155-156, 223, 460
- DisposeWindow, II:83, 88, 90, 120-121, 273, 460
- DisposHandle, I:71, 93, 454
- DisposPtr, I:71, 93, 454
- DLTL resource type, II:383-384, 501
 - with alert templates, II:353-354
 - and ALERT resource type, II:380
 - for dialog item lists, II:325, 328
 - and DLOG resource type, II:382-383
 - and NewDialog, II:358
- DIUnload, II:450-451, 496
- DIVerify, II:449-450, 496
- Division, I:31, 44
- DIZero, II:449-450, 496
- DlgCopy, II:347, 375-376, 489
- DlgCut, II:347, 375-376, 489
- DlgDelete, II:347, 375-376, 489
- DlgPaste, II:347, 375-376, 489
- DLOG resource type, II:381-382, 502
 - for dialog boxes, II:325
 - with dialog templates, II:355
 - and GetNewDialog, II:358
- Document files, I:336-337
- Document windows. *See* Windows
- Documentation, on-line, II:152
- DocumentProc constant, II:92, 108, 117-119, 460
- Dots, for menu items, II:151-152
- Double clicking, II:220-221, 252
 - file selection with, II:409, 441, 444
- Double indirection, I:69
- DoubleTime system global, II:221
- Down arrow key, and scrolling, II:269, 275, 288, 441, 444
- Drag region, window, II:77, 101-104, 135-137, 465
- DragControl, II:319-320, 483
- DragWindow, II:102-104, 135-137, 465
- DrawChar, I:395, 400, 435-436, 487
- DrawControls, II:274, 310-312, 481
- DrawDialog, II:365-366, 486
- DrawGrowIcon, II:93-94, 127-128, 462
- DrawItem, II:334
- DrawMenuBar, II:151, 155, 167, 184-185, 468
- DrawPicture, I:228, 267-268, 474
- DrawString, I:395, 399-400, 435-436, 487
- DrawText, I:395, 435-436, 488
- DrawUserItem, II:352
- Drive buttons, II:409, 415, 441-442, 445
- Driver reference numbers, I:343
- Drivers, device, I:343-344, II:387
- DRVr resource type, I:343-344, 377-378, II:152
- Edit menus, II:147-151, 154, 163-164, 222
- Edit records, II:205-210, 240-243, 296, 472
 - and click-loop routines, II:263-264
 - creating and destroying, II:212, 245-246, 473
 - and destination rectangles. *See* Destination rectangles
 - handles for, II:206, 211-213, 216, 407
 - and line starts, II:209-210
 - MiniEdit, II:211-215, 283
 - and text scrap, II:227
 - and view rectangles. *See* View rectangles
- EditField field, II:333, 349-351, 485
- Editing. *See* Edit records; Text editing and TextEdit
- EditText type, II:333
- Eject, II:409, 415, 424-425, 441, 445, 491
- EmptyHandle, I:86, 107-108, 457
- EmptyRect, I:121-122, 176-177, 464
- EmptyRgn, I:127, 179-180, 465
- Emulator traps, I:13-14
- EnableFlags field, II:145, 170-173, 466
- EnableItem, II:145, 166, 193-194, 469
- Enclosing rectangles, II:272-273, 293, 302, 305, 311-313
- End-of-file, II:398-401, 429, 431-433, 437-438, 493
- EndUpdate, II:97-99, 128-129, 274, 463
- Enter key, as default button, II:332, 344-346, 374
- Environ, I:16, 89, 454
 - and program compatibility, II:108, 288
- EOF. *See* End-of-file
- EOFErr error code, II:400-401, 431, 437-438, 494
- .EQU directives, I:21
- EqualPt, I:121, 172-173, 463
- EqualRect, I:121, 177-178, 465
- EqualRgn, I:127, 181-182, 466
- EqualString, I:29, 35-37, 447
- EraseArc, I:261-262, 472
- EraseOval, I:259, 472
- ErasePoly, I:263, 473
- EraseRect, I:207, 209, 255-256, 471
 - and window resizing, II:106
- EraseRgn, I:264, 473
- EraseRoundRect, I:257-258, 472
- Error codes
 - "dire straits", I:523, II:533-534
 - operating system, I:519-522, II:529-533
- Error reporting
 - and dialogs, II:323, 334-335, 378, 491
 - end-of-file, II:400-401
 - for file operations. *See* File operations error reporting
 - memory management, I:74-75, 88-89, 453
 - with resources, I:294, 321-322, 479
- Error sounds, and alerts, II:334-336, 377, 491
- ErrorSound, II:334, 376-377, 489
- Event queue, II:13-14
 - and EventAvail, II:22
 - posting to and removing from, II:27-29, 47-49, 455

- EventAvail, II:22, 45-47, 455
- EventRecord, II:37-38, 453
- Events, II:11-13
 - activate. *See* Window events
 - application, II:17, 39-40, 43
 - auto-key, II:17-18, 20-21, 23
 - and cursor, II:31-35, 52-58, 456-457
 - deactivate. *See* Activate and deactivate events
 - and desk accessories, II:15-17, 21-22, 46
 - disk, II:43
 - disk-inserted. *See* Disk-inserted events
 - intercepted, II:21-22
 - I/O driver, II:17, 21, 39
 - and keyboard. *See* Keyboard events
 - masks, II:19-20, 41-42, 48-49, 454
 - messages, II:19, 42-43, 393, 454
 - modifiers, II:44-45, 455
 - and mouse. *See* Mouse events
 - network, II:17, 21
 - null. *See* Null events
 - priority of, II:20-21, 93, 97
 - queue. *See* Event queue
 - records, II:14, 18-19, 37-38, 344, 453
 - reporting, II:20-21, 45-46, 455
 - responding to, II:23-27
 - retrieving, II:45-47
 - and system clock, II:14-16, 19, 60-62, 458
 - types, II:17, 19, 39-40, 454
 - update. *See* Window events
- EveryEvent constant, II:20, 23, 41-42, 454
- Exceptions, I:13-16
- Exclamation point, for marking menu items, II:168, 177-178, 196-198
- Exclusive or, of regions, I:129, 131, 181-182
- EXIT, I:27
- ExitToShell, I:338-339, 352-353, 480
- External disk drives, II:387. *See also* Disks and disk drives
- Family records, I:385, 391
- Fat Mac
 - memory layout of, I:506, II:516
 - RAM of, I:59-61
 - system heap size of, I:65
- Fields, Pascal, I:6, II:6
- FIFO (first-in, first out) order, for event queue, II:14
- File manager, II:387-389, 404
- File menus, II:147-151, 161-163, 213
- File operations error reporting, II:389-392
 - constants for, II:437-438, 494
 - for disk initialization, II:409-410, 447-448
 - existing file, II:415-416
 - and IOCheck, II:390-392, 404
 - for volume mounting, II:393
- File reading, II:400-401, 429-430, 492
 - and DoRevert, II:404-407
 - and SFPutFile, II:407-414, 440-443, 495
- File writing, II:400-402, 429-430, 492
 - and DoSaveAs, II:415-419
 - with SFPutFile, II:415, 443-446, 495
 - and WriteFile, II:402-404
- Files
 - closing, II:401, 427-428, 491
 - creating, II:400-401, 426-427, 491
 - deleting, II:435-436, 493
 - directories for, II:393, 395-398
 - and disk format, II:385-387
 - end-of-file, II:398-401, 429, 431-433, 437-438, 493
 - error reporting for, II:389-392, 437-438, 494
 - and file marks, II:399-401, 404, 429-431, 492
 - forks of, II:420, 428
 - length of, II:398, 407
 - locking and unlocking of, II:401, 426, 433-434, 493
 - names, II:388, 401, 435-436, 493
 - opening, II:400, 412-413, 427-428, 491
- Files—cont.
 - permission information for, II:420, 428
 - reading. *See* File reading
 - reference numbers, I:281, II:400-401, 420, 427
 - reference resource, I:340
 - standard packages, II:407-419
 - types, I:335-337, 358, 480
 - and volumes, II:392-395, 421-425, 490-491
 - writing. *See* File writing
- Fill pattern, I:195
- FillArc, I:261-262, 472
- FillOval, I:223, 259, 472
- FillPoly, I:219, 263, 473
- FillRect, I:207, 255-256, 471
- FillRgn, I:223, 264, 473
- FillRoundRect, I:257-258, 471
- Filter functions
 - with alerts, II:336, 368
 - and command-key combinations, II:342
 - with dialogs, II:344-347, 370, 372-374, 489
 - for reading files, II:408-409
- FindControl, II:277-279, 286, 315-316, 482
- FindItem, II:364-365, 487
- Finder, I:361-362
 - and file types, I:335-337, 358
 - and folder hierarchy, II:395-396
 - information record, I:336, 342, 359-361, 480-482
 - resources, I:339-342
 - and signatures, I:335-337, 358
 - startup information for, I:64, 337-339, 363-365, II:401, 413-414, 416
- FindWindow, II:100-101, 132-133, 464
 - and controls, II:277
 - and menu items, II:155
 - and system windows, II:161
 - and text selection, II:221
 - and zooming, II:107-109
- FindInfo record, I:359-361, 481
- Fix2Frac, I:45, 450
- Fix2Long, I:31, 42-43, 449
- FixATan2, I:48, 451
- FixDiv, I:31, 44, 450

- Fixed type, I:31, 42-44, 449-450
- FixMul, I:31, 44, 450
- FixRatio, I:31, 44, 394, 450
- FixRound, I:31, 42-43, 449
- FKEY resource type, II:35-36, 64-65, 503
- FlashMenuBar, II:201, 471
- Floating-Point Arithmetic
 - Package, I:334, 354-356
- Flush left justification, II:218
- Flush right justification, II:218
- FlushEvents, II:27-28, 47-48, 455
- Flushing, of volume buffers,
 - II:424-425, 491
 - and file directories, II:404, 428
 - and FSClose, II:401
 - to protect data, II:394
- FlushVol, II:394, 401, 404, 424-425, 428, 491
- FMetricRec record, I:426-427, 486
- FNFErr error code, II:416, 437-438, 494
- Folders, files as, II:395-396
- FOND resource type, I:385
- FONT resource type, I:325-326, 384, 443-445, 492, II:153, 504
- FontAscent field, II:208, 240-243, 245, 472
- Font/DA Mover, and resource files, I:277
- FontInfo record, I:426-427, 486
- FontMetrics, I:426-427, 486
- FontRecord record, I:386-392, 418-420, 484-485
- Fonts
 - access to, I:425-427, 485-486
 - ascent of, II:209
 - character height of, II:208
 - for control titles, II:273, 305
 - height, I:387
 - image, I:387, 389-390, 421-424
 - initialization for, I:384, 424, 485
 - locking of, I:428, 486
 - and menus, II:143, 153, 166
 - numbers, I:384-386, 415-418, 484, II:376
 - record, I:386-392, 418-420, 484-485
 - rectangle, I:387
 - scaling of, I:386, 428-430, 486
- Fonts—cont.
 - width table, I:401
- Foreign languages
 - characters for, I:380, 401-402
 - and International Utilities
 - Package, I:29, 334, 354-356
 - and resources, I:275
 - and strings, I:29
- Frac2Fix, I:45, 450
- FracCos, I:48, 451
- FracDiv, I:46, 450
- FracMul, I:46, 450
- FracSin, I:48, 451
- FracSqrt, I:46, 450
- Fract type, I:31, 45, 450
- FractEnable global flag, I:392
- Fraction arithmetic, I:31, 45-46, 450
- Fragmentation
 - of disk, II:398
 - of heap, I:68-69, II:83
- Frame, window, II:77
- FrameArc, I:216, 261-262, 472
- FrameOval, I:223, 259, 472
- FramePoly, I:219, 263, 473
- FrameRect, I:206, 255-256, 471
- FrameRgn, I:227, 264, 473
- FrameRoundRect, I:257-258, 471
- FreeAlert, II:348, 379, 490
- FreeDialog, II:348, 379, 490
- FreeMem, I:104-105, 456
- FREF resource type, I:340, 342, 373-374, 493, II:505
- FrontWindow, II:126-127, 462
- FRSV resource type, I:446, 493, II:505
- FS prefix, for file system
 - routines, II:389
- FSAtMark constant, II:400, 430-431, 492
- FSClose, II:401, 416, 427-428, 491
- FSDelete, II:435-436, 493
- FSFromLEOF, II:399, 430-431, 492
- FSFromMark, II:399, 430-431, 492
- FSFromStart, II:399, 404, 430-431, 492
- FSOpen, II:400, 413, 416-420, 427-428, 491
- FSRead, II:400, 407, 429-430, 492
- FSWrite, II:400, 404, 429-430, 492
- Function declarations, Pascal, I:7, II:7
- FWID resource type, I:401, 445-446, 493, II:506
- Get1IndResource, I:289, 307-308, 476
- Get1IndType, I:289, 307-308, 476
- Get1NamedResource, I:283, 304-305, 476
- Get1Resource, I:283, 304-305, 475
- GetAlertStage, II:335, 378, 489
- GetAppFiles, I:338, 364-365, 481, II:413
- GetApplLimit, I:84, 109-110, 457
- GetAppParms, I:338, 364-365, 481
- GetCaretTime, II:223, 254-255, 475
- GetClip, I:139, 170-171, 463
- GetCRefCon, II:273, 307-308, 483
- GetCTitle, II:273, 307-308, 480
- GetCtlAction, II:317-318, 482
- GetCtlMax, II:277, 309-310, 480
- GetCtlMin, II:277, 309-310, 480
- GetCtlValue, II:277, 282, 309-310, 480
- GetCursor, II:32, 54-56, 457
- GetDateTime, I:33, 51-52, 452
- GetDbfTime, II:221, 251-253, 475
- GetDItem, II:329, 333, 360-361, 486
- GetEOF, II:398, 407, 432-433, 493
- GetFInfo, I:336, 361-362, 481, II:416
- GetFNum, I:385, 425, 485
- GetFontInfo, I:399, 426-427, 485
 - and edit record typeface, II:208
- GetFontName, I:385, 399, 425, 485
- GetFPos, II:399, 430-431, 492
- GetHandleSize, I:71, 94-95, 454
 - and Chars array size, II:244
- GetIcon, I:205, 268-269, 474
- GetIndPattern, I:195, 232-234, 467
- GetIndResource, I:288, 295, 307-308, 398, 476
- GetIndString, I:380, 407-408, 483
- GetIndType, I:288, 307-308, 476
- GetItem, II:160, 165, 192-193, 469
- GetItemIcon, II:169, 198-199, 471
- GetItemMark, II:167, 196-198, 470
- GetItemStyle, II:166, 195-196, 470
- GetIText, II:333, 343, 362-363, 486
- GetKeys, II:31, 58-60, 457
- GetMenu, II:153-155, 174-175, 466
- GetMenuBar, II:185-186, 468
- GetMHandle, II:186-187, 468
- GetMouse, II:29-30, 50, 456

- GetNamedResource, I:282-283, 295, 304-305, 475
- GetNewControl, II:304-306, 479
 - and CNTL template, II:271
 - and control visibility, II:274
 - and scroll bar creation, II:213-215, 283-284
- GetNewDialog, II:325-327, 329, 341, 357-359, 485
- GetNewMBar, II:155, 183-184, 468
- GetNewWindow, II:83, 90, 111, 117-119, 460
- GetNextEvent, II:20-23, 45-47, 455
 - and filter functions, II:347
 - and modeless dialogs, II:343
 - and mouse events, II:100
 - and window closing, II:90
 - and window events, II:92, 95-97
- GetPattern, I:232-234, 467
- GetPen, I:187, 252-253, 470
- GetPenState, I:197, 247-249, 469
- GetPicture, I:266-267, 474
- GetPixel, I:163, 461
- GetPort, I:135-136, 167-168, 188, 462
- GetPtrSize, I:71, 94-95, 454
- GetResAttrs, I:290, 312-313, 477
- GetResFileAttrs, I:292, 323-324, 479
- GetResInfo, I:290, 293, 296, 310-311, 398, 477
- GetResource, I:282-283, 295, 304-305, 395, 475
 - and NewDialog, II:326
- GetScrap, I:346, 369-370, 482
- GetString, I:380, 407-408, 483, II:420
- GetTime, I:33, 53, 452
- GetVInfo, II:393, 421-422, 490
- GetVol, II:393, 422-423, 490
- GetWindowPic, II:100, 130-131, 463
- GetWMgrPort, II:137-138, 465
- GetWRefCon, II:88, 121-122, 461
- GetWTitle, II:121-122, 461
- Global coordinate system, I:143-146
- Global variables, I:61-64
 - QuickDraw, I:112-113, 541, II:564
- GlobalToLocal, I:125, 146, 173-174, 463
 - and controls, II:279, 315, 317, 319
- Glue routines, I: 18-20, II:238-239, 388-389
- Go-away regions. *See* Close regions
- Good field, II:438-439, 495
 - with SFGetFile, II:409, 411, 441
 - with SFPutFile, II:415, 444
- Goto, I:27
- GrafDevice, I:434-435, 487
- GrafPort record, I:135-136, 160-161, 238-241, 461
 - and graphics pen, I:247, 251, 469-470
 - and patterns, I:232, 467
 - and QuickDraw, I:393, 431-433, 487
 - and transfer modes, I:238-241, 467
- GrafPtr type, I:135, 160, 461
- GrafSize constant, I:112
- GrafVerb type, I:254-255, 471
- Graphics. *See* Graphics pen; Graphics ports; QuickDraw; Text
- Graphics pen, I:186-197, 253, 390, 395
 - characteristics, I:247-250, 469-470
 - hiding and showing, I:192-193, 251-252, 470
 - level, I:192
 - modes, I:195-197, 250
 - and ports, I:186-187
 - size, I:191-193, 219, 250
- Graphics ports, I:134-139, 160-162, 461-463
 - and coordinate systems, I:140-146
 - and edit records, II:206
 - and graphics pen, I:186-187, 193-197
 - operations on, I:164-171
 - for windows, II:79-81
 - See also* GrafPort record
- Grow region, II:77, 93-94, 127
- GrowWindow, II:104-105, 135-137, 465
- HandAndHand, I:82-83, 103-104, 456
- Handle type, I:73, 87, 453
- Handles, I:67-72, 76-77
 - control, II:271, 307, 316
 - edit record, II:206, 211-213, 216, 407
- Handles—cont.
 - item, II:328-329
 - startup, II:413
 - text scrap, II:230
- HandToHand, I:80-82, 101-102, 455
- Hard disk drives, II:387
- HClrRBit, I:96-98, 455
- Heap and heap management, I:65-67, 104-105, 109-110, 454-457
 - compaction of, I:68-69, 79-80, 106-107, II:83
 - See also* Blocks
- Heap zones, I:67
- Hertzfeld, Andy, Switcher program by, II:17
- Hexadecimal numbers, I:8-9, 29-30, II:8
- HFS (Hierarchical file system), II:388-389, 395-396
- HGetState, I:96-98, 455
- HideControl, II:274, 310-312, 481
- HideCursor, II:35, 56-57, 457
- HideDItem, II:363-364, 487
- HidePen, I:192-193, 251-252, 470
- HideWindow, II:122-123, 341, 461
- Hierarchical file system, II:388-389, 395-396
- HighHook field, II:239, 241-243, 472
- High-level file system, II:388, 396
- Highlighting
 - of controls. *See* Control highlighting
 - of menus, II:141-142, 158-160, 184, 194
 - with text selection, II:219, 252-254
 - of title bars, II:70-71
 - of windows. *See* Window highlighting
- HiliteControl, II:275-276, 313-314, 336, 481
- Hilited field, II:94, 112-115, 459
- HiliteMenu, II:158, 191-192, 469
- HiliteWindow, II:127-128, 462
- HiWord, I:30, 40-41, 449
- HLock, I:76, 96-98, 283, 455
- HNoPurge, I:86, 96-98, 455
 - and resource files, I:283, 293
- HomeResFile, I:289, 314-315, 478
- Hot spot, cursor, II:32, 52-53, 458

- HPurge, I:86, 96-98, 455
and resource files, I:283, 293
- HSetRBit, I:96-98, 455
- HSetState, I:96-98, 455
- HText field, II:206, 241-243, 246-247, 472
and selection range, II:220
setting of, II:211-212
and TENew, II:245
- HUnlock, I:76, 96-98, 283, 455
- Hypens, and TextEdit, II:207
- I, for italic character attribute,**
II:166, 195-196
- I-beam cursor, II:33-34
- ICN# resource type, I:272, 340, 342, 495, II:507
- ICON resource type, I:271-272, 496, II:168, 330, 368, 384, 507
- IconItem item type, II:330-331, 361, 384
- Icons, I:204-205, 268-269, 474, II:1-2
dialog, II:330-331, 336, 368, 384
and Finder resources, I:339-341
grow, II:93-95, 127-128, 462
items, II:330-331, 351-352
with menu items, II:144, 168-169, 177-178, 198-199, 471
numbers for, II:168-169
resource IDs for, II:168
- Identification, of resources,
I:277-278, 290, 310-311, 477
- Image width, I:390
- Image-height table, I:392
- Images
bit. *See* Bit images
screen, I:115
- InButton part code, II:271, 315-316, 482
- InCheckBox part code, II:271, 283, 315-316, 482
- INCLUDE directives, I:19, 21
- InContent part code, II:101, 132-133, 277, 464
- InDesk part code, II:101, 132-133, 464
- InDownButton part code, II:271, 315-316, 482
- InDrag part code, II:102, 108, 132-133, 136, 464
- InfoScrap, I:346-347, 367-368, 482, II:231
- InGoAway part code, II:106, 132-133, 136, 464
- InGrow part code, II:104, 132-133, 136, 464
- INIT resource type, I:381, 402, 441-443, 496, II:508
- InitAllPacks, I:357, 480
- InitCursor, II:32, 34-35, 54-56, 390, 457
- InitDialogs, II:325, 356-357, 485
- InitFonts, I:384, 424, 485, II:83, 147, 211, 325
- InitGraf, I:112, 164-165, 384, 462, II:83, 147, 211, 325
- Initial delay, for auto-key events,
II:18
- Initialization, of Toolbox
for dialogs, II:325, 356-357, 485
for menus, II:173-174, 466
for MiniEdit, II:13, 28-29, 83, 147, 230-231
for text editing, II:211-215, 244-245, 473
for windows, II:116, 459
- InitMenus, II:147, 173-174, 325, 466
- InitPack, I:357, 480
- InitPort, I:135, 165-167, 462
- InitWindows, I:384, II:83, 116, 147, 325, 459
- Inline declarations, I:19
- InMenuBar part code, II:101, 132-133, 464
- InPageDown part code, II:281, 315-316, 482
- InPageUp part code, II:271, 315-316, 482
- InPort field, II:206, 241-243, 472
- Insertion point, II:223-224, 254-255
customizing, II:239
and dialogs, II:362
edit record, II:219-220
and TextEdit, II:208
- InsertMenu, II:151, 182-183, 468
- InsertResMenu, II:153, 178-180, 467
- InsetRect, I:123, 176-177, 464
- InsetRgn, I:127, 179-180, 465
- InsMenuItem, II:148, 176-177, 467
- InSysWindow part code, II:101, 132-133, 161, 464
- Int64Bit record, I:47, 451
- Integers, as parameters, I:22
- Interface routines. *See* Glue routines
- Interfaces
assembly-language, I:20-23
Pascal, I:18-19, II:376, 378
user, I:1, II:1-2
- International Utilities Package,
I:29, 334, 354-356. *See also* Foreign languages
- Interrupt handlers, and events,
II:13-14
- Intersection
of rectangles, I:124-125, 177-178, 464
of regions, I:129, 181-182, 465
- InThumb part code, II:271, 286, 315-316, 482
- InUpButton part code, II:271, 315-316, 482
- InvalRect, II:98, 106, 129-130, 407, 463
- InvalRgn, II:98, 129-130, 463
- InvertArc, I:261-262, 473
- InvertOval, I:259, 472
- InvertPoly, I:263, 473
- InvertRect, I:207, 209, 255-256, 471
- InvertRgn, I:264, 473
- InvertRoundRect, I:257-258, 472
- InZoomIn part code, II:107-109, 132-133, 136-137, 464
- InZoomOut part code, II:107-109, 132-133, 136-137, 464
- I/O driver events, II:17, 21, 39
- IsDialogEvent, II:343, 371-373, 488
- Italic character attribute, II:166, 195-196
- Item lists, II:325, 328-329
and ALERT templates, II:354
and DialogRecord, II:350-351
and DITL resource type, II:384
and NewDialog, II:358
and SetDItem, II:361
- ItemDisable constant, II:336, 351-352, 484
- Items, dialog
access to, II:360-361, 486
control, II:331-333, 336, 361, 372, 384

Items—cont.

- enabling and disabling of, II:336
- handles for, II:328-329
- icon, II:330-331, 351-352
- lists. *See* Item lists
- numbers for, II:329
- picture, II:330-331, 351-352, 361, 384
- showing and hiding of, II:363-364, 487
- static text, II:329-330, 368, 384
- text box, II:333
- types, II:328-334, 351-352, 484
- user, II:333-334
- IUDateString, I:33, 55-57, 453
- IUEqualString, I:29
- IUTimeString, I:33, 55-57, 453

- Jump table, I:62-63, 329-333
- Just field, II:218, 241-243, 472
- Justification, of text, II:218, 247-248, 474

Kerning, I:390-391

- Key codes, I:381, 408-410, II:18
 - and filter functions, II:346
 - for Macintosh Plus, I:512, II:522
 - for standard Macintosh, I:511, II:521

Key map, II:31, 59-60

- Key1Trans system global, I:402, 540
- Key2Trans system global, I:402, 540

- Keyboard
 - aliases, II:142-143, 150, 177-178
 - configurations for, I:381-382, 402
 - driver, I:401-402, II:35-36
 - events. *See* Keyboard events
 - and FKEY resource type, II:64-65
 - input, and text editing, II:224-226
 - and menus, II:187-192, 468-469
 - and modal dialogs, II:342
 - reading of, II:31

Keyboard—cont.

- selecting menu items with, II:155, 157-160
- standard layouts of, I:411-414, 513-516, II:523-526
- and text boxes, II:333
- Keyboard events, II:17-18, 39-40
 - and alerts, II:368
 - and DoEvent, II:25
 - interception of, II:21
 - messages for, II:42-43
 - and modal dialogs, II:370
 - posting of, II:27
 - responding to, II:23, 58-60, 457
- KeyMap array, II:58-60, 457
- KillControls, II:273, 306-307, 479
- KillPicture, I:266-267, 474
- KillPoly, I:152-153, 219, 459

Languages

- foreign. *See* Foreign languages
- programming, and Toolbox, I:11-13
- Launch, I:347-351, 479
- Leading, I:387
- Less than sign, II:166, 177-178, 195-196
- LIFO, and the stack, I:17
- Limit rectangles, window, II:104
- LimitRect parameter, II:103, 135-136, 467
- Line, I:187-188, 191, 218, 252-253, 470
- Line drawing, I:186-197, 247-253, 469-470
- LineHeight field, II:208-209, 240-243, 245, 472
- LineStarts array, II:209, 241-243, 472
 - and ScrollCharacter, II:297
 - and TSESetText, II:246-247
 - and text rectangles, II:296
- LineTo, I:187, 191, 218, 252-253, 470
- Lisa, and Macintosh, I:12-13, 63-64
- List Manager Package, I:333, 354-356
- LoadResource, I:283, 295, 309-310, 477
- LoadScrap, I:347, 370-371, 483

- LoadSeg, I:332-333, 351-352, 480
- Local coordinate system, I:140-146
- Local IDs, and resource IDs, I:340, 342
- LocalToGlobal, I:125, 146, 173-174, 463
- Location table, I:389-390
- Logical end-of-file. *See* End-of-file
- Logical operations, I:30, 39-40, 291, 448-449
- Long words, I:8, II:8
- Long2Fix, I:31, 42-43, 449
- LONGINT data type, I:22-23
- LongMul, I:31, 47, 451
- Low-level file system, II:388-389
- LoWord, I:30, 40-41, 449

Macintosh file system, II:395

- Macintosh Plus
 - key codes for, II:522
 - memory layout of, I:507, II:517
 - RAM of, I:59-61
 - system heap size of, I:65
- Macintosh Technical Support group, I:337
- Macintosh XL, memory layout of, I:508-509, II:518-519
- MacPlus global flag, II:108
- Main entry point, I:331
- Main segment, I:331
- MapChanged resource attribute, I:296, 323-324, 479
- MapCompact resource attribute, I:296-297, 323-324, 479
- Mapping, and scaling, I:183-184, 466
- MapPoly, I:183-184, 466
- MapPt, I:183-184, 466
- MapReadOnly resource attribute, I:297, 323-324, 479
- MapRect, I:183-184, 466
- MapRgn, I:183-184, 466
- Mark character, II:167, 177-178
- Mask constants, II:20
- Mask field, II:31-32, 52-53, 458
- Mask parameters, II:27-28
- Masks
 - and bit maps, I:197, 202
 - event, II:19-20, 27, 41-42, 48-49, 454
 - with icons, I:340-341

- Master pointers, I:67-72
- MaxApplZone, I:109-110, 457
- MaxBlock, I:104-105, 456
- MaxMem, I:106-107, 457
- MaxSizeRsrc, I:290, 314-315, 478
- MBAR resource type, II:155, 203, 508
- MC68000. *See* Microprocessor
- MDEF resource type, II:142, 153
- MeasureText, I:400, 436-438, 488
- MemError, I:75, 81, 88-89, 453
- MemFullErr error report, I:75, 88-89, 294, 453
- Memory
 - addressing, I:8, 23
 - allocation of. *See* Memory allocation
 - application global space, I:61-64, 329, 331
 - handles and master pointers, I:67-70
 - and heap. *See* Heap and heap management
 - layouts of, I:505-509, II:515-519
 - organization of, I:59-62
 - random-access, I:16, 59-62
 - read-only. *See* Read-only memory
 - and SIZEOF, I:26-27
 - stack and heap, I:65-67
- Memory allocation
 - of blocks, I:67-72, 76-86, 454-456
 - and code segments, I:328
 - for file operations, II:394, 398, 425
 - and fonts, I:387
 - and resource files, I:281-282
 - and resources, I:276, 284-285, 305-306
 - and variables, I:65
- MemTypes interface unit, I:18
- Menu bars, II:116, 141, 145-151, 155, 157
 - building, II:182-187, 468
- Menu item enabling and disabling, II:166-167, 193-194, 471
 - and enable flags, II:145
 - highlighting of, II:142, 194
 - with left parenthesis, II:150, 193-194
- Menu items, II:141
 - changing character style of, II:166, 195-196, 470
 - changing text of, II:165-166, 192-193, 470
 - choosing, II:155-164, 187-188, 468
 - controlling, II:165-169, 192-199, 469-470
 - counting, II:181, 467
 - defining, II:148-150
 - deleting, II:180, 467
 - and dialog boxes, II:151
 - enabling. *See* Menu item enabling and disabling
 - flashing of, II:201, 471
 - icons for, II:144, 168-169, 177-178, 198-199, 471
 - marking of, II:167-168, 196-198, 470
 - numbers, II:156, 165
- Menu lists. *See* Menu bars
- MENU resource type, II:144, 153-155, 202-203, 471, 508
- MenuData field, II:146, 153, 170-173, 466
- MenuHandle type, II:170, 466
- MenuHeight field, II:145, 153-154, 170-173, 466
- MenuID field, II:144, 170-173, 466
- MenuInfo record, II:144-146, 170-173, 466
- MenuKey, II:157, 187-188, 468
- MenuProc field, II:145, 153-154, 170-173, 466
- MenuPtr type, II:170, 466
- Menus
 - Apple. *See* Apple menus
 - bars. *See* Menu bars
 - building, II:146-151, 176-181, 467
 - creating, II:173-175, 466
 - definition procedure, II:142, 145
 - destroying, II:175-176, 466
 - dimensions of, II:145, 200, 471
 - disposing of, II:155
 - and fonts, II:143, 153, 166
 - highlighting of, II:141-142, 158-160, 184
 - IDs for, II:144-145, 147-148, 156-157
 - items for. *See* menu items
- Menus—cont.
 - and keyboard, II:187-192, 468-469
 - and mouse, II:155-164, 187-192, 468-469
 - records for, II:144-146, 170-173, 466
 - and resources, II:151-155, 178-180, 467-468
 - scrolling of, II:142
 - structure of, II:141-144
 - types, II:142
- MenuSelect, II:156-157, 187-188, 468
- MenuWidth field, II:145, 153-154, 170-173, 466
- Message field, II:19, 37-38, 453
 - and event posting, II:27, 48
 - and event retrieving, II:22
 - and keyboard events, II:157
 - and window events, II:93, 97
- MFS (Macintosh file system), II:395
- Microprocessor (MC68000), I:8-9, II:8
 - register A0, II:388
 - and word breaks, II:49, 266
 - register A5, I:62-64, 112, 329-331, 337
 - register A7, I:17
 - register D0, I:75, 402, II:48-49, 438
 - and TEClick, II:238
 - and word breaks, II:266
 - register D1, I:402
 - register D2, I:402
 - and TEClick, II:264
 - Z condition flag, and word-break routines, II:265
- MiniEdit programs, I:4
 - AdjustScrollBar, II:224, 284-286
 - AdjustText, II:224, 286-289, 290, 299
 - AutoScroll, II:291-293
 - CloseAppWindow, II:88-90, 107, 337-341
 - CloseSysWindow, II:88, 161
 - DoAbout, II:336-338
 - DoActivate, II:93-95, 233-235, 276
 - DoAppleChoice, II:160-161
 - DoClear, II:227, 230
 - DoClose, II:25-27, 88, 107, 161

MiniEdit programs—cont.

DoContent, II:221, 277-280, 286
 DoCopy, II:227-228
 DoCut, II:227-228
 DoDrag, II:102-104
 DoEditChoice, II:163-164
 DoEvent, II:13, 16, 23-25
 and I/O checking, II:392
 and keyboard, II:157
 and mouse, II:155
 DoFileChoice, II:161-162
 DoGoAway, II:106-107
 DoGrow, II:104-106, 108
 DoKeystroke, II:23, 157-158, 224
 DoMenuChoice, II:157-159
 DoMenuClick, II:155-156
 DoMouseDown, II:101-102, 107, 155, 161, 221
 DoNew, II:84-87, 109, 213-215, 283-284, 413
 DoOpen, II:410-411
 DoPaste, II:227, 229
 DoQuit, II:25
 DoRevert, II:404-407, 413
 DoSave, II:401-402
 DoSaveAs, II:415-419
 DoScroll, II:286-287
 DoSelect, II:221-222
 DoStartup, II:413-414
 DoTyping, II:224, 285
 DoUndo, II:229
 DoUpdate, II:97-98, 216-217
 DoZoom, II:107-109
 FixCursor, II:16, 34-35
 FixEditMenu, II:222, 236
 FixScrollBar, II:106, 293-295
 FixText, II:106, 296-297
 Initialize, II:13, 28-29, 83, 147, 230-231
 IOCheck, II:390-392, 404, 416
 MainLoop, II:13, 16, 34, 223
 menus, II:147-151
 OffsetWindow, II:109-111
 OpenFile, II:411-412, 416
 ReadDeskScrap, II:231-232
 ScrollCharacter, II:297-299
 ScrollText, II:288-290
 ScrollToSelection, II:224, 298-300
 SetUpCursors, II:33-34
 SetUpMenus, II:147, 153-154
 skeleton of, II:12-13
 source listing for, II:565-615
 window data record, II:212-213, 216

MiniEdit programs—cont.

WindowDirty, II:225-226
 WriteDeskScrap, II:231, 233
 WriteFile, II:402-404
 Missing symbols, I:389
 Modal dialogs, II:324, 326
 and item lists, II:332
 using, II:341-343, 369-371, 488
 ModalDialog, II:341-342, 347, 369-371, 488
 Modeless dialogs, II:324-326
 using, II:343-344, 371-373, 488
 Modifier characters, II:165-169, 177-178
 for menu items, II:150-151
 and SetItem, II:193
 Modifier keys, I:381, II:18-19, 44-45. *See also* Command key; Shift key
 Modifiers field, II:19, 37-38, 455
 and desk scrap, II:233
 and event posting, II:48
 and keyboard events, II:157, 224
 and mouse events, II:155, 222
 and window events, II:93-94
 MoreMasters, I:99-100, 455
 Mounting, in file operations, II:22, 393
 Mouse
 and click-loop routines. *See* Click-loop routines
 and controls, II:277-283, 315-320, 482-483
 and cursor display, II:31
 dragging, II:30, 102-103, 135-137, 467
 events involving. *See* Mouse events
 and filter functions, II:347
 locating, II:364-365, 487
 and menus, II:155-164, 187-192, 468-469
 reading of, II:29-30, 50-52, 456
 and scrolling, II:237-238, 286-291
 text selection with, II:251-253, 475
 tracking of, II:220-223
 and windows, II:100-109, 132-137, 464

Mouse events, II:17, 39-40

 and DoMouseDown, II:100-102
 interception of, II:21-22
 reporting of, II:29-30, 50-52, 456
 Move, I:187, 252-253, 470
 MoveControl, II:272, 312-313, 481
 MoveHHI, I:80, 99-100, 455
 MovePortTo, I:169-170, 463
 MoveTo, I:187-188, 252-253, 470
 MoveWindow, II:110, 124-125, 462
 Multiplication, I:31, 44, 47
 Munger, II:236-237, 261-263, 477

Network events, II:17, 21

NewControl, II:271, 274, 304-306, 479
 NewDialog, II:325-327, 329, 341, 357-359, 485
 NewEmptyHandle, I:91-92, 454
 NewHandle, I:70, 73, 80, 91-92, 454
 NewMenu, II:147-148, 155, 174-175, 466
 NewPtr, I:71, 73, 91-92, 454
 and ports, I:135
 NewRgn, I:155-156, 219, 223, 459
 NewString, I:380, 407-408, 483
 NewWindow, II:83, 90, 111, 117-119, 140, 460
 NextControl field, II:272, 301-303, 478
 NextWindow field, II:82, 112-115, 459
 NFNT resource type, I:394, 497, II:509
 NLines field, II:209-210, 241-243, 283-285, 474
 NoGrowDocProc constant, II:92, 108, 117-119, 326, 460
 NoMark constant, II:167, 196-198, 470
 Nonrelocatable blocks, I:70-72, 76, 81
 NoteAlert, II:331, 336, 367-369, 488
 Notelcon constant, II:331, 367-369, 488
 NotPatBic transfer mode, I:197, 238-241, 468
 NotPatCopy transfer mode, I:197, 238-241, 468
 NotPatXOr transfer mode, I:197, 238-241, 468

- NotSrcBic transfer mode, I:197, 238-241, 468
- Null characters, with marked menu items, II:167
- Null events, II:17, 19, 25, 43, 46 and EventAvail, II:22 reporting of, II:20-21
- NumToString, I:31, 49-50, 400, 451, II:390
- O, for outline character attribute, II:166, 195-196
- Object modules, I:18
- ObscureCursor, II:35, 57-58, 457
- Off-line status, of volumes, II:394
- Offset/width table, I:390
- OffsetPoly, I:127, 178-179, 465
- OffsetRect, I:122-123, 127, 176-177, 179-180, 464
- OffsetRgn, I:127, 179-180, 465
- Offsetting, of windows, II:109-111
- OK constant, II:332, 349-351, 483
- On-line documentation, II:152
- On-line status, of volumes, II:394
- Open command, II:410-411
- OpenDeskAcc, II:160, 189-190, 469
- OpenPicture, I:228, 266-267, 474
- OpenPoly, I:152-153, 218, 459
- OpenPort, I:135, 165-167, 462
- OpenResFile, I:281, 301-302, 475, II:420
- OpenRF, II:420, 427-428, 491
- OpenRgn, I:155-156, 219, 459
- Operating system, traps for, I:14, 16
- Option key, I:402, II:18-19, 44, 395-396
- ORD, and pointers, I:23-24
- Origin, of boundary rectangle, I:118
- OSErr type, I:74-75, 88, 453, II:389
- OSIntf interface unit, I:18, 75
- OSType type, I:358, 480
- Outline, menu item attribute, II:166, 195-196
- Ovals, I:212-213, 258-259, 472
- Owning window, II:271-273, 305
- PACK resource type, I:325-326, 333, 373, 498, II:510
- Package numbers, I:333, 354-356
- Package traps, I:334-335, II:408
- Packages, I:333-335, 354-357, 480, I:407-408
- PackIntf interface unit, I:18, 335
- PackMacs trap macros, I:21, 335
- Padding
 - with bit images, I:115
 - of strings, I:29
 - and word boundaries, II:212
- Page-down regions, II:269, 288
- Page-up regions, II:269, 288
- PaintArc, I:216, 261-262, 472
- PaintOval, I:259, 472
- PaintPoly, I:219, 263, 473
- PaintRect, I:207, 209, 255-256, 471
- PaintRgn, I:264, 473
- PaintRoundRect, I:257-258, 471
- Parameter blocks, II:388
- Parameters, trap macro, I:22
- ParamText, II:330, 340-341, 374-375, 391, 489
- Parentheses, and menu items, II:150, 177-178, 193-194
- Part codes, II:269-271, 314, 318
 - for checkboxes, II:283
 - and control highlighting, II:314
 - for dials, II:286
 - for inactive controls, II:276
 - and mouse, II:100, 277-280, 316, 318
 - for radio controls, II:283
 - with scrolling, II:291
 - See also specific part codes
- Pascal, I:5-8, II:5-7
 - extended features of, I:23-27
 - interface for, I:18-19, II:376, 378
 - string form of, II:140
- Paste command, II:147, 227, 229-230, 285, 333
 - keyboard alias for, II:150
 - and SystemEdit, II:163
- PasteCmd constant, II:163, 190-191, 469
- PAT resource type, I:269-270, 498, II:510
- PAT# resource type, I:270-271, 499, II:511
- PatBic transfer mode, I:197, 238-241, 468
- PatCopy transfer mode, I:195, 197, 238-241, 468
- Path reference number, II:420
- PatHandle type, I:232, 466
- Pathnames, II:396-397
- PatOr transfer mode, I:197, 238-241, 468
- PatPtr type, I:232, 466
- Pattern list, I:195
- Pattern type, I:232, 466
- Patterns, I:193-196, 232-236, 466-467
- PatXOr transfer mode, I:197, 238-241, 468
- PB prefix, for parameter block routines, II:389
- Pen. See Graphics pen
- PenMode, I:195-196, 250, 470
- PenNormal, I:197, 250, 470
- PenPat, I:194, 250, 470
- PenSize, I:191-192, 250, 470
- PenState record, I:247, 469
- Periods
 - with Command key, for disk-switch alerts, II:395
 - with I/O driver names, II:152
- PermErr error code, II:420
- Permission information, II:420, 428
- Physical end-of-file, II:398, 401, 432
- PicHandle type, I:265, 474
- PicItem type, II:330
- PicPtr type, I:265, 474
- PICT resource type, I:273, 345, 500, II:330, 511
- Picture items, dialog, II:330-331, 351-352, 361, 384
- Picture record, I:227, 265-266, 474
- Pictures, I:227-228
 - defining, I:265-267, 474
 - drawing, I:267-268, 474
 - window, II:100, 130-131, 463
- Pinning, of scrolling, II:218, 288
- PinRect, I:174-175, 464
- Pixels, I:114-117, 163, 461
- PlainDBBoxProc constant, II:92, 117-119, 326, 460
- Planes, window, II:69, 86, 118, 123, 126
- PlotIcon, I:205, 268-269, 474
- Point record, I:118-120, 147-148, 458
- POINTER, I:23-24
- Pointers, I:23-26, 67-73
 - and bit maps, I:132-133
 - dangling, I:69, 78

Pointers—cont.

- and desk scrap, I:346
- dialog, II:326-329
- for edit records, II:206, 211
- and graphic ports, I:135
- as parameters, I:22
- and QuickDraw, I:112
- to text, II:404
- window, II:81-83

Points, I:147-148, 458

- calculations with, I:121, 172-173, 463

Polygon record, I:126, 151, 459

Polygons, I:125-131, 459

- calculations on, I:178-179, 465
- defining, I:151-153
- drawing, I:218-219, 263, 473

PolyHandle type, I:151, 459

PolyPtr type, I:151, 459

Pop, and the stack, I:18

Port rectangles, I:137-139, 143, 169-170, 463

- and windows, II:83, 106, 297

Ports, graphics. *See* Graphics ports

Portsize, I:169-170, 463

PosErr error code, II:400, 437-438, 494

PostEvent, II:27, 48-49, 455

Preloading

- of dialogs, II:348, 379, 490
- of disk initialization code, II:450-451, 496

Priority, of events, II:20-21, 93, 97

Procedure declarations, Pascal, I:6-7, II:6

ProcPtr type, I:25-26, 34, 447

Programming flexibility, and resources, I:276

Programs

- BigBrother (ovals), I:213-214
- coordinate conversion, I:143-145
- dereferencing handles, I:77
- DoCheckbox, II:281-282
- DoPushbutton, II:280-281
- DoRadiobutton, II:282-283
- filter function, II:344-347
- Globe (clipping regions), I:223-225
- graphics ports, I:136

Programs—cont.

Mondrian (rectangles), I:210-212

Randomize, I:32

resources, I:284, 288, 289

SetUpMenus, II:147-151, 153-155

ShowFonts, I:395-398

startup, I:338-339

StopPoly (regions), I:220-222

StopSign (lines), I:189-191

See also MiniEdit programs

PScrapStuff type, I:367-368, 482

Pt2Rect, I:121, 149-150, 207, 459

PtInRect, I:121, 174-175, 464

PtInRgn, I:127, 174-175, 464

Ptr type, I:73, 87, 453

PtrAndHand, I:82, 84, 103-104, 456

PtrToHand, I:81-82, 101-102, 456

PtrToXHand, I:81-83, 101-102, 456

PtToAngle, I:216, 261-262, 473

PurgeMem, I:106-107, 457

PurgeSpace, I:104-105, 456

Push, and the stack, I:17

PushbutProc constant, II:272, 304-306, 479

Pushbuttons, II:268

and alerts, II:335

and control items, II:331-332

highlighting of, II:275

and mouse, II:279-281

part code for, II:271

titles for, II:272

PutScrap, I:346, 369-370, 482

Q, as Quit keyboard alias, II:150

QuickDraw, I:111, 185-186, 458-466, II:2

and direct bit transfer, I:197-204

globals, I:112-113, 541, II:564

and icons, I:204-205

initialization of, I:112-113, 164-165, 462

interface unit, I:18

line drawing with, I:186-197

shape drawing with, I:205-227

text characteristics of, I:393-394, 401, 431-438, 487-488

and windows, II:81, 83

QuickEqu definition file, I:21

QuickTraps trap macros, I:21

Quit command, II:23-25, 150, 341, 416

RadCtrl constant, II:331, 351-352, 484

Radio buttons, II:268

and control items, II:331-332

highlighting of, II:275

and mouse, II:282-283

part code for, II:271

range of, II:276-277, 305

titles for, II:272

RadioButProc constant, II:272, 304-306, 479

RAM (random-access memory), I:16, 59-62

Random and random numbers, I:32, 50-51, 451

Random-access memory, I:16, 59-62

RandSeed global variable, I:32, 50-51, 451

RDocProc constant, II:92, 117-119, 460

Read-only files, accessing, II:420

Read-only memory

and dispatch table, I:15

divisions of, I:2, II:2

and system resources, I:280, 325-326

RealFont, I:386, 425, 485

ReallocHandle, I:86, 107-108, 457

Recalibration, of text, II:210, 217, 297

Records

control, II:271-272, 276-277, 301-303, 478

cursor, II:31-32, 52-53, 64, 456

dialog, II:325-326, 332, 349-351, 358, 483

edit. *See* Edit records

event, II:14, 18-19, 37-38, 344, 453

menu, II:144-146, 170-173, 466

as parameters, I:22

reply, II:408, 439-440, 444

window, II:79-83, 112-115, 350, 459

RecoverHandle, I:91-92, 454

- Rect record, I:120, 149-150, 458-459
- Rectangles, I:169-170, 458-459
 - calculations with, I:121-125, 176-178, 464-465
 - defining, I:120-121, 149-150
 - destination. *See* Destination rectangles
 - display, for item lists, II:328, 363, 384
 - drawing of, I:206-215, 255-256, 471
 - enclosing. *See* Enclosing rectangles
 - port. *See* Port rectangles
 - rounded, I:213, 215, 256-258, 471-472
 - scrolling of, I:202-203, 244-245, 468
 - shield, II:35, 58
 - text, II:291-293, 296-297
 - update, II:216
 - validating, II:98-99, 129-130, 294, 407, 473
 - view. *See* View rectangles
 - window limit, II:104
- RectInRgn, I:127, 174-175, 464
- RectRgn, I:156-157, 223, 460
- RefCon field, II:82-83, 88, 112-115, 459
- Region record, I:126, 153-154, 459
- Regions, I:125-131
 - calculations on, I:179-182, 465-466
 - defining, I:153-157, 459-460
 - drawing of, I:219-227, 264, 473
- Register-based routines, I:19-20
- Registers. *See* Microprocessor
- ReleaseResource, I:284, 305-306, 476, II:155, 175-176, 183
- Relocatable blocks, I:70-72, 76, 81
- RelString, I:29, 35-37, 448
- Rename, II:435-436, 493
- Repeat interval, for auto-key events, II:18
- Replacement text, for search and replace, II:236-237, 261-262
- Reply records, II:408, 439-440, 444
- ResChanged attribute, I:292, 312-313, 477
- ResCtrl constant, II:332, 351-352, 484
- ResEdit, resource editor, I:277
- ResError, I:294, 321-322, 479
- ResetAlertStage, II:335, 378, 489
- ResLocked attribute, I:291, 312-313, 477
- Resource compilers and editors, for window creation, II:86
- Resource data, I:278
- Resource files, I:279-282, 301-303, 315-320, 323-324, 478-479
- Resource fork, I:280, II:420, 428
- Resource ID, I:277-278
- Resource maps, I:279, 281, 290
- Resource name, I:278
- Resource specification, I:277
- Resources, I:275-276, 295-297, 314-315, 489-503, II:497-515
 - access to, I:282-289, 304-310, 475-477
 - adding of, to menus, II:178-180
 - attributes of, I:290-292, 312-313, 323-324, 477, 479
 - control-related, II:321
 - dialog-related, II:380-384
 - error reporting with, I:294, 321-323, 479
 - event-related, II:63-65
 - files. *See* Resource files
 - Finder, I:339-342
 - identifying, I:277-278, 310-311, 477
 - list of, I:298-301
 - listing of, on menus, II:151-153
 - menu-related, II:202-203
 - menus as, II:153-155, 183-184, 468
 - modification of, I:292-294, 315-320, 478
 - QuickDraw-related, I:269-273
 - ROM based, I:325-326
 - text-related, I:438-446
 - types, I:277-278, 298-301, 475
 - See also* specific resource types
 - window-related, II:139-140
- ResPreload, attribute, I:292, 312-313, 477
- ResProtected, attribute, I:291-292, 312-313, 477
- ResPurgeable, attribute, I:291, 312-313, 477
- ResrvMem, I:80, 99-100, 455
- ResSysHeap, attribute, I:291, 312-313, 477
- Restart, I:352-353, 480
- ResType type, I:298-301, 475
- Result codes, I:74-75, 88-89, 453
 - for files, II:389-390, 404, 416, 437-438, 494
 - and HandToHand, I:81
- ResultRec parameter, I:124
- Return key, as default button, II:332, 344-346, 374
- Return link, I:17
- RevertToSaved command, II:226, 336
- Rewrapping, of text, II:210, 217, 297
- Rez, resource compiler, I:277
- RgnHandle type, I:153-154, 459
- RgnPtr type, I:153-154, 459
- RMaker, resource compiler, I:277
- RmveResource, I:292, 296, 317-318, 478
- ROM. *See* Read-only memory
- Root directories, II:395-396
- Rounded rectangles, I:213, 215, 256-258, 471-472
- Routine selector, II:408
- Row width, I:115, 132
- RstFLock, II:401, 433-434, 493
- S, for shadow character attribute, II:166, 195-196
- Save command, II:226, 236
- ScalePt, I:183-184, 200, 466
- Scaling
 - of fonts, I:386, 428-430, 486
 - of images, I:198-201
 - and mapping, I:183-184, 466
 - of random numbers, I:32
- Scrap. *See* Desk scrap; Text scrap
- Scrap count, I:346, II:231
- Scrap information record, I:346
- ScrapHandle global variable, I:346
- Scrapless editing routines, II:227, 258-259, 476
- ScrapName system global, I:347
- ScrapStuff record, I:367-368, 492

- ScrDmpEnb global flag, II:36, 65
- Screen
- buffer, I:115-116, 134, II:14
 - memory addresses for, I:61
 - printing of, with Command-Shift keys, II:35-36
- Screen image, I:115
- Screen map, I:134
- ScreenBits global variable, I:134, 136, 158-159, 460
- Scroll bars, II:74
- activating, II:95
 - and AdjustScrollBar, II:224, 284-286
 - and click-loop routines, II:291
 - as dials, II:269, 283
 - highlighting of, II:275
 - and part codes, II:269-271, 291
 - range of, II:277
 - template for, II:213-215
 - and text changes, II:224
 - and window redrawing, II:97
 - and window resizing, II:106, 293-296
- Scroll boxes, II:269-270, 286-288
- ScrollBarProc constant, II:272, 304-306, 479
- Scrolling, II:250-251, 283-285, 474
- automatic. *See* Automatic scrolling
 - and click-loop routines, II:215, 264, 237-238
 - continuous, II:288-290
 - dragging scroll box, II:286-288
 - of files, II:409, 441, 444
 - of menus, II:142
 - and text selection display, II:223
 - in view rectangle, II:218-219
 - and window resizing, II:293-300
- ScrollRect, I:202, 244-245, 468
- Search and replace text editing feature, II:236-237, 261-263, 477
- Secs2Date, I:33, 54-55, 452
- Sectors, disk, II:385-386, 388, 398
- and file operations, II:393-394
- SectRect, I:124, 177-178, 464
- SectRgn, I:129, 181-182, 465
- Seed, random-number, I:32, 51
- SeedFill, I:228, 230, 245-246, 469
- Segment header, I:332
- Segment numbers, I:328
- Segments, code. *See* Code segments
- Selection points, II:208, 239
- Selection range, II:252, 259, 362
- of edit record, II:219-220, 242, 247
 - and TSEtSelect, II:253
- SelectWindow, II:103, 133-134, 277, 464
- SelEnd field, II:219-220, 240-243, 245, 472
- SelIText, II:333, 362-363, 486
- SelStart field, II:219-220, 240-243, 245, 472
- Semicolons, as menu item separator, II:150, 177-178
- SendBehind, II:126-127, 462
- SetApplLimit, I:84, 109-110, 457
- SetClikLoop, II:215, 238, 263-264, 477
- SetClip, I:139, 170-171, 225, 463
- SetCRefCon, II:273, 307-308, 480
- SetCTitle, II:273, 307-308, 480
- SetCtlAction, II:317-318, 482
- SetCtlMax, II:277, 309-310, 480
- SetCtlMin, II:277, 309-310, 480
- SetCtlValue, II:277, 282, 309-310, 480
- SetCursor, II:32, 55-56, 457
- SetDAFont, II:347-348, 376-377, 489
- SetDateTime, I:33, 51-52, 452
- SetDItem, II:329, 334, 360-361, 486
- SetEmptyRgn, I:156-157, 223, 460
- SetEOF, II:398, 404, 432-433, 493
- SetEventMask, II:27, 48-49, 455
- SetFInfo, I:336, 361-362, 481
- SetFLock, II:401, 433-434, 493
- SetFontLock, I:428, 486
- SetFPos, II:399-400, 404, 407, 430-431, 492
- SetFractEnable, I:392, 428-430, 486
- SetFScaleDisable, I:386, 428-430, 486
- SetHandleSize, I:71, 94-95, 455, II:407
- SetItem, II:165-166, 192-193, 469
- SetItemIcon, II:168-169, 198-199, 471
- SetItemMark, II:167, 196-198, 470
- SetItemStyle, II:166, 195-196, 470
- SetIText, II:333, 362-363, 486
- SetMenuBar, II:155, 185-186, 468
- SetMenuFlash, II:201, 471
- SetOrigin, I:140-143, 168-169, 188-189, 213, 462, and control coordinates, II:272
- SetPenState, I:197, 247-249, 469
- SetPort, I:135-136, 167-168, 393, 462
- SetPortBits, I:136-137, 168-169, 462
- SetPt, I:119-120, 147-148, 458
- SetPtrSize, I:71, 94-95, 455
- SetRect, I:120, 149-150, 458
- SetRectRgn, I:156-157, 233, 460
- SetResAttrs, I:290, 293, 296, 312-313, 477
- SetResFileAttrs, I:292, 296-297, 323-324, 479
- SetResInfo, I:290, 296, 310-311, 477
- SetResLoad, I:295-296, 309-310, 477
- SetResPurge, I:293-294, 320, 479
- SetString, I:380, 407-408, 483
- SetTime, I:33, 53, 452
- SetVol, II:393, 422-423, 490
- SetWindowPic, II:100, 130-131, 463
- SetWordBreak, II:239, 265-266, 477
- SetWRefCon, II:121-122, 461
- SetWTitle, II:121-122, 461
- SFGetFile, II:408-409, 411, 440-443, 495
- SFPGetFile, II:408
- SFPPutFile, II:408
- SFPutFile, II:407-408, 415-416, 443-446, 495
- SFReply record, II:407-409, 438-439, 495
- SFTypeList type, II:440-443, 495
- Shadow, menu item attribute, II:166, 195-196
- Shapes, drawing. *See* specific shapes
- Shield rectangle, II:35, 58
- ShieldCursor, II:35, 57-58, 457
- Shift down key, II:220
- Shift key, II:18-19, 44, 370, 372
- and disk ejection, II:441
 - and keyboard events, II:18
 - with modal dialogs, II:370
 - and mouse tracking, II:222, 252
 - for special routines, II:35-36, 64-65
- Shift operation, I:30, 39-40, 449
- ShowControl, II:274, 310-312, 481

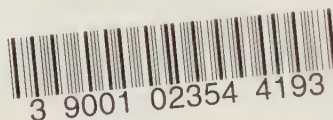
- ShowCursor, II:35, 56-57, 457
- ShowDItem, II:363-364, 487
- ShowHide, II:122-123, 461
- ShowPen, I:192-193, 251-252, 470
- ShowWindow, II:111, 122-123, 341, 461
- Signatures, I:335-337, 358, 480
- SignedByte type, I:73, 87, 453
- Sines, I:31, 48, 451
- Size boxes, window, II:74, 92, 97
- Size region, window, II:77, 93-94, 127
- Size type, I:73, 87, 453
- SizeControl, II:272, 312-313, 481
- SIZEOF, I:26-27
- Sizerect parameter, II:104, 135-136, 467
- SizeResource, I:290, 314-315, 380, 477
- SizeWindow, II:105-106, 124-125, 462
- Skinny Mac
 - memory layout of, I:505, II:515
 - RAM of, I:59-61
 - system heap size of, I:65
- Slash, for keyboard aliases, II:150, 177-178
- .Sony disk driver, II:387
- Sound buffer, I:61
- Sound numbers, II:334-336, 377
- Sound1 field, II:353-354, 484
- SpaceExtra, I:394, 434-435, 487
- Spaces
 - sticky space character, II:207
 - and word-break routines, II:238-239
- Spacing, edit record, II:208
- SpareFlag field, II:108, 112-115, 459
- Speaker, beeping of, II:62-63, 229, 458
- SpExtra field, and full justification, II:218
- Square roots, I:31, 46
- SrcCopy transfer mode, I:198, 238-241, 468
- Stack, I:17-18, 65-67, 84
 - and trap macro parameters, I:22
- Stack-based routines, I:19-20
- StackSpace, I:84, 109-110, 457
- Stage lists, II:334, 354, 380-381
- Staged alerts, II:334-335, 378, 489
- StageList record, II:353-354, 484
- Standard File Package, I:334, 354-356, II:407-419, 438-446, 495
- Standard packages, I:333-335, 354-357, 480
- Standard patterns, I:234-236, 467
- Startup handle, I:64, 337-338, II:413
- Startup information, I:337-339, 349-352, 363-365, 479-481, II:401, 413-414, 416
- Static text items, II:329-330, 335, 352, 368, 384
- StatText type, II:329
- Sticky space character, II:207
- StillDown, II:30, 51-52, 456
- StopAlert, II:331, 336, 367-369, 488
- StopIcon constant, II:331, 367-369, 488
- STR resource type, I:380, 439, 501, II:512
- STR# resource type, I:380, 440-441, 502, II:513
- Str255 type, I:28, 34, 447, II:6
- Strikes, and fonts, I:387, 389-390
- StringHandle type, I:407-408, 483
- StringPtr type, I:407-408, 483
- Strings, I:28-29, 34-37, 407-408, 447-448, 483
 - conversion of, I:31, 49-50, 451
 - date and time, I:33, 55-57, 453
 - formats of, I:380-381
 - as parameters, I:22
- StringToNum, I:31, 49-50, 451
- StringWidth, I:400, 436-438, 488
- Structure region, window, II:77
- StuffHex, I:30-31, 41-42, 449
 - for bit images, I:117
 - for icons, I:205
 - and pattern storing, I:194
- StyleItem type, I:393, 487
- Subdirectories, II:395-396
- SubPt, I:121, 172-173, 463
- Subtraction, fixed-point, I:31
- Switcher events, II:17, 39-40
- SysBeep, II:62-63, 458
- SysEqu definition file, I:21
- SysErr definition file, I:21
- System clock
 - and events, II:14-16, 19, 60-62, 458
 - and insertion caret blinking, II:223, 254-255
 - and mouse movement, II:31
- System Error Handler, I:523
- System event mask, for event posting, II:27
- System file, I:280, 333-334
 - and Disk Initialization Package, II:407-408
- System font, I:384, II:143, 166
- System globals
 - chart of, I:539-541
 - memory addresses for, I:61
- System heap, I:65-67
- System resource file, I:280, II:268
 - cursors in, II:32
 - and desk accessories, II:152
 - and disk drivers, II:387
 - and window definition functions, II:90
- System windows, II:67
 - and accessories, II:160-161
 - closing, II:161
 - events in, II:134-135, II:464
 - and interception of events, II:21-22
- SystemClick, II:101, 134-135, 161, 464
- SystemEdit, II:163, 190-191, 469
- SystemTask, II:16-17, 61-62, 223, 458
- SysTraps trap macros, I:21
- Tab key
 - as Drive button, II:445
 - and ModalDialog, II:342
 - and TEKey, II:224
 - and text boxes, II:333
 - and word-break routines, II:238-239
- Tags, sector, II:386
- Tangent, I:48, 451
- Target text, for search and replace, II:236-237, 261-262
- TEActivate, II:223, 239, 254-255, 475
- TEAutoView, II:223, 250-251, 474
- TECalText, II:210, 212, 247-248, 474
 - and FixText, II:297

- TECalText—cont.
 - and TEUpdate, II:216
 - and word-break routines, II:238
- TEClick, II:220, 251-253, 475
 - and AutoScroll, II:291-293
 - and click-loop routines, II:237-238
 - and customized text selection, II:239
 - and dialogs, II:342-343
 - and DoSelect, II:222
 - and word-break routines, II:238
- TECopy, II:226, 257-258, 476
- TECut, II:226, 257-258, 476
- TEDeactivate, II:223, 239, 254-255, 475
- TEDelete, II:227-228, 258-259, 476
- TEDispose, II:212, 245-246, 341, 473
- TEFromScrap, II:230, 260-261, 476
- TEGetScrapLen, II:230, 259-260, 476
- TEGetText, II:211, 246-247, 473
- TEHandle type, II:206, 240-243, 472
- TEIdle, II:223, 239, 254-255, 475
- TEInit, II:211, 244-245, 325, 473
- TEInsert, II:227, 258-259, 476
- TEJustCenter constant, II:218, 241-243, 472
- TEJustLeft constant, II:218, 241-243, 472
- TEJustRight constant, II:218, 241-243, 472
- TEKey, II:224, 256-257, 342, 475
- TELength field, II:206, 210-212, 241-243, 245-246, 472
- Templates
 - alert, II:332-334, 353-354, 367, 380-381, 484
 - control, II:271, 304, 321, 332, 384
 - dialog, II:325-326, 329, 355-356, 382, 484
 - scroll bar, II:213-215
 - window, II:86, 140, 420
- TENew, II:211, 219, 245-246, 473
- TEPaste, II:226, 257-258, 476
- TEPinScroll, II:218, 250-251, 288, 474
- TEPtr type, II:240-243, 472
- TERec record, II:206, 240-243, 472
- TEScrapHandle, II:230, 259-260, 476
- TEScroll, II:218, 250-251, 286-288, 474
- TESetView, II:223, 250-251, 474
 - and program compatibility, II:300
- TESetJust, II:218, 245, 247-248, 474
- TESetScrapLen, II:230, 259-260, 476
- TESetSelect, II:220, 253-254, 475
- TESetText, II:211-212, 220, 246-247, 473
- TestControl, II:315-316, 482
- TEToScrap, II:230, 260-261, 476
- TEUpdate, II:216-218, 249-250, 474
- Text
 - boxes. *See* Text boxes
 - characteristics of, I:434-435, 487
 - of dialog items, II:362-363, 486
 - drawing of, I:395-401, 435-436, 487-488
 - editing of. *See* Text editing and TextEdit
 - handles for, II:206, 211-213, 216
 - highlighting of, II:219, 252-254
 - items, static. *See* Static text items
 - measuring of, I:436-438, 488
 - of menu items, II:165-166
 - and QuickDraw, I:393-394, 431-433, 487
 - rectangles, II:291-293, 296-297
 - scrap. *See* Text scrap
 - substitution of, in dialogs, II:374-375, 489
 - wrapping of. *See* Wrapping, of text
- Text boxes, II:372
 - editing in, II:375-376, 489
 - and item lists, II:333
- Text characteristics, port, II:206
- Text editing and TextEdit
 - automatic scrolling, II:237-238
 - customized text selection, II:239
 - cutting and pasting, II:226-229, 257-258, 376, 476
 - display of, II:216-219, 223-224, 254-255, 475
 - edit records. *See* Edit records
- Text editing and TextEdit—cont.
 - and keyboard input, II:224-226, 256-257, 475
 - preparation, II:211-215, 244-247, 473
 - scrapless, II:258-259, 476
 - search and replace, II:236-237, 261-263, 477
 - selection, II:219-223, 239, 251-255, 475
 - and text scrap. *See* Text scrap
 - word-break routines, II:238-239, 265-266
- TEXT file type, I:337
- Text interface file, I:18
- Text menus. *See* Menus
- TEXT resource type, I:345, 380, 395, 438-439, 503, II:514
- Text scrap, II:226-227, 244, 257-259
 - accessing, II:229-236, 259-260, 476
 - compared to desk scrap, II:229-230
 - transfer of, II:260-261, 476
- TextBox, II:216, 249-250, 474
- TextEdit. *See* Text editing and TextEdit
- TextFace, I:393, 398, 434-435, 487, II:206
- TextFont, I:393, 398, 434-435, 487, II:206, 208
- TextH field, II:333, 349-351, 485
- TextMode, I:393, 434-435, 487, II:206
- TextSize, I:393, 398, 434-435, 487, II:206
- TextWidth, I:400, 436-438, 488
- TheEvent parameter, II:22, 45-46, 457
- ThePort global variable, I:112, 136, 164, 167-168, 462, 541
- Thumbing, II:270
- TickCount, I:212, II:15, 60-61, 458
- Ticks global variable, II:15, 60-61
- Time, I:33, 51-57, 452-453
 - posting of, for events, II:15, 19
 - storing of, on volume directory, II:401, 426, 428
 - and system clock, II:60-61
- Title bars, window, II:69-71, 326
- Toggling, of menu items, II:165

- Toolbox, II:2
 - traps for, I:14, 16
 - See also* Initialization, of
Toolbox
- ToolEqu definition file, I:21
- ToolIntf interface unit, I:18
- ToolTraps trap macros, I:21
- TopMem, I:89-90, 454
- TrackBox, II:107-108, 135-137, 465
- TrackControl, II:280-281, 317-318, 482
 - and alerts, II:336
 - and dialogs, II:342-343
 - and dials, II:286
 - and scrolling, II:288-289
- TrackGoAway, II:106-107, 135-137, 465
- Tracks, disk, II:385-388
- Transcendental Functions
 - Package, I:334, 354-356
- Transfer modes, I:196-197, 237-241, 467-468
- Trap Dispatcher
 - and error reporting, I:75
 - handler routine, I:14-15
- Trap handlers, I:13
- Trap macros, I:20-21, 525-532, II:408, 535-547
- Trap numbers, I:14
- Trap vectors, I:14
 - memory addresses for, I:61
- Trap words, I:14-15, 532-538, II:547-559
- Traps, I:13-16
- Trigonometric functions, I:31, 48, 451
- TxFace field, II:206, 241-243, 245, 472
- TxFont field, II:206, 241-243, 245, 472
- TxMode field, II:206, 241-243, 472
- TxSize field, II:206, 208, 241-243, 472
- Type declarations, Pascal, II:5-6
- Typcasting, I:24, 74
- Typefaces, I:382-384
 - in dialogs, II:347-348, 376-377, 489
- See also* Fonts
- U, for underline character
 - attribute, II:166, 195-196
- Underscore symbol, for trap macros, I:21
- Undo command, II:147
 - keyboard alias for, II:150
 - and SystemEdit, II:163
- UndoCmd constant, II:163, 190-191, 469
- UnionRect, I:124, 177-178, 464
- UnionRgn, I:129, 181-182, 465
- UniqueID, I:317-318, 478
- UniqueID, I:292-293, 317-318, 478
- Unit numbers, for drivers, I:343
- UnloadScrap, I:347, 370-371, 483
- UnloadSeg, I:333, 351-352, 480
- UnmountVol, II:395, 424-425, 491
- Unsigned integers
 - for character positions, II:210, 242
 - and selection range, II:220
 - for text length, II:206, 259
- Up arrow keys, and scrolling, II:269, 275, 288, 441, 444
- Update events, II:17, 92, 95-100, 128-130, 366
 - compared to window pictures, II:131
 - and control display, II:274
 - and InvalRect, II:407
 - priority of, II:20-21
 - and text display, II:216
- Update rectangle, II:216
- Update regions, window, I:202, 204, II:95-99, 129-130, 463
- UpdateEvt event type, II:97
- UpdateResFile, I:292, 318-319, 478
- UpdtControls, II:274, 310-312, 481
- UpdtDialog, II:365-366, 487
- Upgrading, and new ROMs, I:15
- UprString, I:29, 35-37, 448
- User interface, I:1, II:1-2
- UseResFile, I:281, 302-303, 289, 475
- UserItem item type, II:333-334
- Uses declaration, I:18-19
- UseWFont constant, II:273, 304-306, 479
- V, as Paste keyboard alias, II:150
- ValidRect, II:98-99, 129-130, 294, 463
- ValidRgn, II:98-99, 129-130, 463
- Variables
 - assembly language, I:539-541
 - global. *See* Global variables
 - memory allocation for, I:65
 - as parameters, I:22
- VBL (vertical blanking) interrupt, II:14-15, 54
- Vector tables, I:14
- Version data resource, I:340
- Vertical bar, blinking, II:208, 219, 223, 239, 362
- Vertical blanking interrupt, II:14-15, 54
- VHSelect record, I:119, 147-148, 458
- View rectangles, II:206-209, 241-242
 - adjusting of, to destination rectangles, II:286-287
 - coordinates of, II:245
 - for DoNew, II:213
 - rewrapping of text in, II:224, 246-247, 249
 - scrolling in, II:218-219
 - and TEScroll, II:250
 - and text rectangles, II:297
- Visibility
 - of controls, II:273-274, 302, 305, 310-312, 481
 - of cursor, II:35
 - of dialog items, II:363-364
 - of windows. *See* Window visibility
- Visible parameter, II:111, 117-118, 460
- Visible region, I:139-147, 160-161, 187, II:81, 97, 128
- Visual effects, and window resizing, II:106
- VolOffLinErr error code, II:395, 437-438, 494
- Volumes, II:392-395, 421-422, 490
 - buffers, II:393-394, 401, 424
 - current, II:392-393, 422-423, 490
 - ejection of, II:424-425
 - flushing of, II:394, 404, 424-425, 428, 491
 - mounting of, II:393, 395, 409, 424-425
 - names, II:392, 410
 - reference number, II:392-393, 439, 423

- WaitMouseUp, II:30, 51-52, 456
- Wedges, I:215-217, 260-262, 472-473
- What field, II:19, 37-38, 455
 - and DoEvent, II:23
 - and keyboard events, II:157
 - and window events, II:93, 97
- When field, II:19, 37-38, 48, 455
- Where field, II:19, 37-38, 48, 50, 455
- WIND resource type, II:118, 139-140, 514-515
- Window data records
 - compared to window records, II:85
 - and DoRevert, II:404
 - and DoSave, II:401
 - type definition for, II:212-213
 - and window drawing, II:216
 - and WindowDirty, II:225
- Window events
 - event messages for, II:43
 - and event queue, II:49
 - interception of, II:21
 - priority of, II:20
 - and system event mask, II:27
 - See also Activate and deactivate events; Update events
- Window highlighting, II:127-128, 462
 - and BringToFront, II:126
 - of close region, II:106, 136
 - and SelectWindow, II:134
 - of title bar, II:70-71
 - of zoom region, II:136
- Window positioning, II:69, 126-127, 462
 - and GetNewWindow, II:86, 118
 - and HideWindow, II:123
- Window visibility, II:69, 113
 - and NewWindow, II:118
 - and showing and hiding windows, II:122-123
 - and TrackGoAway, II:136-137
 - and window offsetting, II:111
- WindowDefProc field, II:90, 112-115, 459
- WindowKind field, II:112-113, 161, 326, 461
- WindowList system global, II:82, 114-115
- WindowPeek type, II:81-82, 112-113, 459
- WindowPic field, II:100, 112-115, 459
- WindowPtr type, II:81-83, 112-113, 459
- WindowRecord record, II:83, 112-115, 459
- Windows
 - accessory, II:68-69, 92, 118
 - activating and deactivating. See Activate and deactivate events
 - application, II:67
 - and bit maps, I:131-132
 - classes of, II:113, 119, 358
 - closing, II:73-74
 - and controls, II:120, 271-272, 304-306
 - creating, II:83-87, 119, 460, data record for. See Window data records
 - definition functions, II:90-92, 113, 117, 326
 - definition ID for, II:83, 90, 118
 - destroying, II:87-90, 120-121, 460, dimensions of, II:136
 - dirty. See Dirty windows
 - document, II:68-70
 - and edit records, II:212
 - event messages for, II:43
 - events involving. See Window events
 - file reference number of, II:225
 - as graphics ports, II:79-82, 113
 - highlighting of. See Window highlighting
 - list, II:82, 113-114, 116-117, 120
 - manager port, II:137-138, 465
 - and mouse, II:100-109, 132-137, 464
 - moving of, II:71-73, 124-125, 462
 - offsetting, II:109-111
 - owning, II:271-273, 305
 - pictures, II:100, 130-131, 463
- Windows—cont.
 - pointers, II:81-83
 - ports for, I:135, 139-143, 146, II:83, 106, 297
 - positioning of. See Window positioning
 - records, II:79-83, 112-115, 350, 459
 - reference constants for, II:119-121
 - regions of, II:77, 80
 - resizing of, II:106, 285, 293-300
 - and resources, I:276
 - and scroll bars. See Scroll bars
 - selection of, II:133-134, 464
 - setting properties of, II:121-122, 461
 - setting size of, II:77-79, 104-106, 124-125, 293-300, 462
 - showing and hiding of, II:122-123, 461
 - size region of, II:127
 - structure of, II:69-79
 - system. See System windows
 - templates for, II:86, 140, 420
 - titles for, II:69-70, 118, 121
 - types of, II:90-92
 - update region in, I:202, 204
 - updating of. See Update events
 - visibility of. See Window visibility
 - visible region of, II:81, 97, 128
 - zooming of. See Zooming, of windows
- WindowType parameter, II:90, 117-118, 462
- With statements, and dangling pointers, I:78
- Word boundaries, I:8
- Word wrap. See Wrapping, of text
- WordBreak field, II:238-243, 472
- Word-break routines, II:207, 238-239, 248, 265-266, 477
- Words
 - data, I:8, 40-41, II:8
 - text, II:207, 220, 248

- Wrapping, of text, II:207, 212,
242, 247-248, 474
and TEUpdate, II:216
and word-break routines,
II:238-239
- Wrapping rectangles. *See*
Destination rectangles
- Wristwatch cursor, II:33, 35,
390, 402
- WriteResource, I:293, 318-319, 478
- WStateData record, II:124-125, 462
- WStorage pointer, II:83
- X, as Cut keyboard alias, II:150
- XOrRgn, I:129, 181-182, 465
- YourClickLoop model, II:263-264, 477
- YourFilterFunction model, II:373
- YourWordBreak model, II:265-266,
477
- Z, as Undo keyboard alias, II:150
- ZeroScrap, I:346, 369-370, 482,
II:231, 261
- Zoom boxes, window, II:70, 74
definition functions for,
II:92
and program compatibility,
II:108-109
- Zoom region, window, II:77
- Zoom region—cont.
events in, II:107-109, 135-
137, 465
highlighting of, II:136
- ZoomDocProc constant, II:92, 108,
117-119, 460
- Zooming, of windows, II:70, 74-
77, 124-125
and mouse tracking, II:135-
136
and program compatibility,
II:74, 108-109, 113
and TrackBox, II:107-108
- ZoomNoGrow constant, II:92, 108,
117-119, 460
- ZoomWindow, II:108, 124-125, 462



Edit 211-

- for
craa -

offset 581



